

# SELECTED LATIN READINGS







# WESTERN MEDITERRANEAN

0                      100                      200                      300

MILES

# GERMANIA

Ex LIBRIS  
UNIVERSITATIS  
ALBERTAENSIS





# SELECTED LATIN READINGS


*Approved for use in the schools of Ontario*

*Authorized for use in the schools of Alberta*

*Authorized for use in the schools of Nova Scotia*

*Authorized for use in the schools of Saskatchewan*

*Authorized by the Catholic Committee of the  
Council of Education, Quebec*



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2017 with funding from  
University of Alberta Libraries



# SELECTED LATIN



# READINGS

*Edited by*

B. C. TAYLOR, M.A. *Professor of Methods in Classics in the Ontario College of Education. Instructor in the University of Toronto Schools.*

K. E. PRENTICE, M.A. *Instructor in the University of Toronto Schools.*

J. M. DENT & SONS (CANADA) LIMITED

This book is copyright. It may not be reproduced whole or in part by any method without permission in writing from the publishers.

*Copyright, 1953, 1960*  
*by*  
*J. M. Dent & Sons (Canada) Limited*

*First Printing, July, 1953*  
*Reprinted 1954, 1956, 1957, 1958, 1959*  
*Revised and enlarged edition, April, 1960*  
*Reprinted September 1960, 1961, 1962*

*Printed and bound in Canada*  
*by*

MARACLE PRESS LIMITED

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY  
OF ALBERTA



## PREFACE

In preparing this text, the editors have endeavoured to bridge the gap that at present exists in many schools where the Latin course presented in Middle School has a strong Livian emphasis and abruptly switches in Upper School to show an equally strong Caesarian bias. Students following such a course, and trained only in the vocabulary, syntax, and style of Livy, find their background less effective than it should be when required to handle the prose composition of Upper School based on Caesar.

As a solution to this problem, the editors here present, in the first section, an abridged 'Life of Hannibal' adapted from Nepos together with two portions of readings relating to Hannibal's career in Italy as presented in Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*. The second section introduces the student not merely to the style and contents of Caesar's writing, but also to the historical and political background of the vital period of history to which Caesar belongs. This section contains a portion of reading based on Caesar's invasion of Britain as told in Books IV and V of his *Commentaries on the Gallic War*, and two portions of reading from Caesar's *Civil War*. The first of these deals with the Battle of Pharsalus, which has long been considered a model of military strategy; the second presents a series of isolated episodes taken at random from the three books of the *Civil War*, and which are designed to show something of Caesar as a leader of men.

The third section of reading is devoted to Latin poetry. In it the student is introduced to some of the work of Vergil, the greatest of all Roman poets, by a summary of Books I-VI of the *Aeneid*, partly in English and partly in Latin.

It is felt, however, that Vergil should not be the only poet studied at this grade level. Therefore certain of the arresting stories from Ovid's *Metamorphoses* have been included in the selections of poetry readings, together with vital and amusing

excerpts from the writings of Catullus, Juvenal and Martial. The latter two belong to a later period of history, when decay had begun to gnaw at Rome's once-sturdy stock. They present a dark and powerful picture of their times.

The fourth and fifth sections of reading have been added as a concession to the many teachers who feel that, in the best interests of their Grade XII pupils who may never study Latin beyond that level, all prescriptions of Latin reading should bring them into contact with only the greatest writers of Rome's golden age. The inclusion of selections from Cicero and Horace makes it possible for a teacher to offer a comprehensive taste of the story of Rome's greatness. Sufficient variety of new material is provided to avoid the danger of duplication in the Grade XIII prescriptions.

### *The Grading of this Text*

The material in the prose portions of this text has been carefully graded to enable the student to come to grips with the reading of each portion instead of bogging down early in a swamp of vocabulary and grammatical detail as yet untaught. The student is encouraged to read with some confidence the earlier paragraphs of each portion. The amount of editing in the later paragraphs is relatively small.

Because of this grading, the teacher will have available a much-needed source of sight passages.

It will be noted that very little simplification has been attempted in the selections from Cicero, whose artistry seems to set his prose beyond the reach of alteration, as is the case with poetry. The student will find a greater challenge in these passages, but it is hoped that the deliberate fulness of the notes will help him to solve his difficulties.

### *The Testing of Material in this Text*

Almost all the material contained in this text has been subjected to the fierce glare of class-room criticism. A representative battery of able teachers was appointed with the kind co-operation



## PREFACE

---

of the Ontario Department of Education to give the selected readings a thorough testing. Their valuable findings have been carefully considered by the editors, and at least ninety percent of their recommendations have been assimilated into the finished product.

After the actual testing in the class-room, the material was then turned over to a special committee chosen by the Ontario Department of Education. Following their exacting perusal of the manuscript, other important improvements were incorporated.

This text in its present form represents the composite opinions of at least eighteen top-flight teachers of Latin as to what passages should be included in such a text, and as to the form in which they should appear.

### *Suggested Prescriptions of Reading*

An attempt has been made to offer a somewhat shorter prescription than has been offered to Latin teachers for many years. At the same time, the graded prescription should be more easily covered. In addition, some freedom of choice is permitted the teacher.

Therefore in any year's prescription will be found certain basic items which must be read every year. This basic reading will include the 'Life of Hannibal', the 'Life of Caesar' and at least one hundred lines of Vergil, with the English connecting passages for Aeneid I-VI considered a necessary part of the course. In addition, each year's prescription will include a unit of Livy, a unit of Caesar, and at least one hundred lines chosen by the teacher at his own discretion from one of the two non-Vergil portions of poetry selections.

With the addition of Section Four, it is possible to substitute an appropriate selection of readings from Cicero in place of the 'Life of Hannibal' and the unit of Livy, thereby enabling the teacher to concentrate on the story of Rome's greatness. Similarly, readings from Horace in Section Five may be substituted for readings from Ovid.



## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The editors are indebted to the following teachers, who by their skilful experimentation and powers of critical analysis have caused this text to assume its present form: Miss Alice Bassett, Orono High School; Miss M. A. Bell, Bathurst Heights Collegiate Institute; Miss B. Blair, Beamsville High School; Mrs. E. E. Blair, Watford High School; Mr. J. H. Cameron, Patterson Collegiate Institute, Windsor; Mr. E. J. Collins, University of Toronto Schools; Mr. J. T. Cook, Jarvis Collegiate Institute, Toronto; Mr. G. T. Hindley, Guelph Collegiate Institute; Mrs. M. E. Holmes, Brampton High School; Miss M. Hynes, Port Colborne High School; Miss F. Ribey and Mr. R. H. King, Scarborough Collegiate Institute; Mr. A. H. Tennyson, Simcoe High School; and Miss I. M. Waterman, Erin High School. The editors also wish to acknowledge their appreciation of the help given by Miss H. C. Toll, the High School, Forest Hill, Mr. L. J. Saddler, Niagara Falls Collegiate Institute, and Mr. R. L. Smith, East York Collegiate Institute, in ratifying and supplementing the findings of the teachers who actually tested the material contained in this text. Their painstaking criticism and constructive suggestions have proved invaluable.

The editors are also grateful to Dr. Winifred Alston, Harbord Collegiate Institute, Toronto, for her sound suggestions, to Mr. A. S. Nease, Malvern Collegiate Institute, Toronto, for his able recommendations regarding selections from Vergil, and to Mr. H. C. Maynard of Bowmanville High School for his patient hours of editorial assistance.

Finally, they wish to acknowledge the generous advice of Professor Gilbert Bagnani, University College, Toronto, of Professor D. O. Robson, Victoria University, Toronto, and of Professor Emeritus Gilbert Norwood, former Director of Classical Studies in University College, who has solved many knotty problems relating to the Latinity of portions of the text. By the same

token, any failure to achieve Latinity must be considered the sole responsibility of the editors. In addition, the editors owe much to the scholarly assistance, cheerfully given, of Professor W. J. N. Rudd, of the Department of Classics, University College. His critical and thorough examination of the material dealing with Horace has proved to be invaluable.

The editors have availed themselves of the fruits of recent scholarship, and in that connection wish to acknowledge their indebtedness to W. H. Alexander, A. Y. Campbell, Eduard Fraenkel, J. R. Getty, Edith Hamilton, Gilbert Highet, J. B. Leishman, H. D. Sedgwick, Helen C. Toll, H. E. Gould and J. L. Whiteley. They also wish to thank Mr. Gardner Wade Earle, of Sarasota, Florida, and Mr. C. S. Brubacher of Toronto for their translations from Horace. Thanks also to Alfred A. Knopf Inc., New York, for permission to use a translation of Horace by Gilbert Highet from *Poets in a Landscape*, copyright 1957 by Gilbert Highet; and to Bruno Cassirer Ltd., Oxford, England, for permission to reprint J. B. Leishman's translation of Horace's poem "To Faunus", from *Translating Horace*.

Every effort has been made to trace the source of each illustration used and to secure permission for its use. Information will be welcome which will enable the publishers in later editions to make any corrections and rectify any omissions.

Individual acknowledgments have been made throughout the book with the exception of those illustrations appearing on:

page 111, which is reproduced by permission of the publishers—Thomas Hope & Sankey Hudson Ltd., Manchester, England—in Canada, The Book Society of Canada, Ltd.

pages 217 and 226, which are reproduced from *Essential Latin* by Thompson, Tracy, and Dugit, courtesy Clarke, Irwin & Company Limited.

pages 162, 164, 174, 179, 197 and 198, which are reproduced by permission of the Istituto Italiano d'Arti Grafiche, Bergamo, Italy.



# CONTENTS

## Biographical and Historical Introduction

	PAGE
ROMAN PROSE WRITERS .....	3
ROMAN POETS .....	17
ROME VERSUS CARTHAGE .....	21

## Section One

### The Story of Hannibal

PART I	THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL: <i>Nepos</i> .....	31
PART II	HANNIBAL'S STAR RISES: <i>Livy</i> .....	41
PART III	HANNIBAL'S STAR SETS: <i>Livy</i> .....	57

## Section Two

### The Story of Julius Caesar

MILITARY INTRODUCTION .....	74
PART I THE LIFE OF CAESAR: <i>Suetonius</i> .....	87
PART II CAESAR IN BRITAIN: <i>Caesar</i> .....	100
PART III THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS: <i>Caesar</i> .....	113
PART IV CAESAR, THE GENERAL: <i>Caesar</i> .....	131

## Section Three

### Selections From Latin Poetry

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	154
PART I VERGIL'S AENEID, Books I-VI .....	163
PART II SELECTIONS FROM OVID	
<i>Pyramus and Thisbe</i> .....	200
<i>Baucis and Philemon</i> .....	207
SELECTIONS FROM JUVENAL	
<i>The Theme of the Satires</i> .....	214
<i>The Sportula</i> .....	216
<i>Living Conditions in Rome</i> .....	219
SELECTIONS FROM CATULLUS	
<i>A Dinner Invitation</i> .....	222
<i>What a Girl!</i> .....	223
SELECTIONS FROM MARTIAL	
<i>Now Aelia, You May Cough in Peace</i> .....	224
<i>I Do Not Love Thee, Doctor Fell</i> .....	224
<i>A Study in Black and White</i> .....	224
<i>To a Schoolteacher</i> .....	225
PART III SELECTIONS FROM OVID	
<i>Atalanta, Girl Athlete</i> .....	227
<i>Daedalus</i> .....	233
<i>The Touch of Gold</i> .....	238
SELECTIONS FROM JUVENAL	
<i>Brief Encounter—With a Hoodlum</i> .....	242
<i>The Teacher of Public Speaking</i> .....	244
<i>Hannibal's Reward for Ambition</i> .....	247

# SELECTIONS FROM CATULLUS

<i>The Grinner</i> .....	250
<i>Stop Thief!</i> .....	251

# SELECTIONS FROM MARTIAL

<i>He Truly Sorrows Who Sorrows Unseen</i> .....	252
<i>Don't Compliment Yourself, Fabulla</i> .....	253
<i>The Good Old Days</i> .....	253
<i>Ill Luck to an Ill-Wisher</i> .....	253

## Section Four

### Selections from Cicero

INTRODUCTION .....	256
--------------------	-----

# SELECTIONS FROM CICERO

<i>Cicero Lists the Crimes of Verres</i> .....	260
<i>Cicero Demands an Execution</i> .....	263
<i>Cicero Finds His Neighbours Distracting</i> .....	268
<i>Cicero Dictates a Letter</i> .....	269
<i>Cicero Writes to his Wife Terentia</i> .....	269
<i>Cicero Laments the Decline of Politics</i> .....	272
<i>Cicero's Brother Has Difficulties</i> .....	273
<i>Cicero Recognizes Caesar's Advantages</i> .....	274
<i>Cicero Tells his Wife to Prepare a Villa</i> .....	276
<i>Cicero Requests an Arrest</i> .....	277
<i>Cicero Outlines a Typical Daily Routine</i> .....	278
<i>Cicero Answers a Letter of Condolence</i> .....	279
<i>Cicero Appreciates One of his Villas</i> .....	283
<i>Cicero the Landlord Has a Repair Bill</i> .....	284
<i>Cicero Says that Age Need Not Fear Death</i> .....	284
<i>Cicero Cites a Case of Criminal Fraud</i> .....	288
<i>Cicero Comments upon Various Subjects</i> .....	292

## Section Five

### Selections from Horace

INTRODUCTION .....	296
SELECTIONS FROM HORACE	
<i>Trials on My Trip to Brundisium</i> .....	300
<i>Happy Shipwreck, Mevius!</i> .....	302
<i>To Pyrrha</i> .....	305
<i>Integrity is a Mighty Weapon</i> .....	307
<i>Now Must We Give Thanks!</i> .....	310
<i>Away with Persian Pomp!</i> .....	315
<i>In Praise of the Golden Mean</i> .....	316
<i>To the Spring of Bandusia</i> .....	319
<i>To Faunus</i> .....	320
<i>I'm Through with the Lists of Love</i> .....	323
<i>My Monument</i> .....	324
APPENDIX: SOME TRANSLATIONS AND PARAPHRASES OF HORACE ..	328
VOCABULARY .....	338
PRONUNCIATION OF NAMES IN ENGLISH .....	391
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN NOTES .....	393

BIOGRAPHICAL  
AND  
HISTORICAL  
INTRODUCTION

---

*ROMAN PROSE WRITERS*

Julius Caesar: 102-44 B.C.

Cicero: 106-43 B.C.

Nepos: 99-24 B.C.

Livy: 59 B.C.-A.D. 17

Suetonius: A.D. 77-?

*ROMAN POETS*

Catullus: 84-54 B.C.

Vergil: 70-19 B.C.

Horace: 65-8 B.C.

Ovid: 45 B.C.-A.D. 17

Martial: A.D. 40-102

Juvenal: A.D. 64-?



# SOME ROMAN WRITERS

*Political and  
Military Figures*

*Type of  
Writing*

HANNIBAL  
247-183 B.C. (?)

## THE GOLDEN AGE

JULIUS CAESAR 102-44 B.C.	{	*CICERO 106-43 B.C.	<i>Speeches Letters</i>	Prose
		*CAESAR 102-44 B.C.	<i>'Gallic Wars' 'Civil Wars'</i>	Prose
		*NEPOS 99-24 B.C.	<i>'Lives of Famous Men'</i>	Biography (prose)
		*CATULLUS 84-54 B.C.	<i>Poems</i>	Lyric Poetry
		SALLUST 86-34 B.C.	<i>'The Catilinarian Conspiracy'</i>	History (prose)
AUGUSTUS CAESAR 63 B.C.-A.D. 14	{	<i>Earlier</i>		
		*VERGIL 70-19 B.C.	<i>'Aeneid'</i>	Epic Poetry
		*HORACE 65-8 B.C.	<i>Satires Odes</i>	Lyric Poetry
		*LIVY 59 B.C.-A.D. 17	<i>'From the Found- ing of the City'</i>	History (prose)
		<i>Later</i>		
		*OVID 45 B.C.-A.D. 18	<i>'Metamorphoses'</i>	Mythology (poetry)

## THE SILVER AGE

DOMITIAN Made emperor A.D. 81	*MARTIAL A.D. 40-102	<i>'Epigrams'</i>	Epigram (poetry)
TRAJAN Made emperor A.D. 98	*JUVENAL A.D. 64-?	<i>'Satires'</i>	Satire (Poetry)
HADRIAN Made emperor A.D. 117	*SUETONIUS A.D. 77-?	<i>'Lives of the Twelve Caesars'</i>	Biography (prose)

\* Writers marked with an asterisk are represented in this book. Suetonius is used only to a limited extent in the 'Life of Caesar'.

# ROMAN PROSE WRITERS

Julius Caesar: 102-44 B.C.

## 1. The Early Years of Caesar

Considered by many to have been the greatest of all Romans. Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year 102 B.C. into a patrician family. From both his father and his mother he inherited the traditions of great nobility. His early education was that of the normal Roman boy of his class, with this important difference, however, that his tutor was from Cisalpine Gaul and not from Greece, as was customary. This fact may account for his later interest in Gaul.

Caesar was the nephew by marriage of Marius, the leader of the people's party in their struggle for reform. Stirred by admiration for Marius, Caesar became involved in the movement for liberal reform. The movement was not successful. The great general, Sulla, led the triumphant forces of reaction and when, on his return to Rome from a victorious war in the East, he began the systematic slaughter of those who had opposed him, young Caesar went into voluntary exile.

For a few years he served a dashing military apprenticeship with the legions of the East. Then he returned to Rome still further to advance his education by pleading in the law courts there. Dissatisfied with his achievements as an orator, he studied for a time at Molo's renowned school of rhetoric on the Island of Rhodes. These studies were effective. On his return to Rome about 73 B.C., after Sulla's death, he quickly made his mark as an orator. It was now time for him to begin the ascent of the political ladder.

At that period the two most prominent men in the Roman state were Pompey and Crassus. Pompey was an able general who had led Roman forces to victory in Spain and against Spartacus'

gladiators in Italy. Crassus was a financial magnate. In the year 70 B.C. these two men were elected consuls.

Embarked upon his political career, Caesar secured election in the quickest possible succession to the offices of quaestor, aedile, and praetor. He was now qualified to run, at any future date, for the office of consul. This prescribed sequence for office-holding the Romans called *cursus honorum* (the correct order of political offices). Then, in 61 B.C., Caesar left Rome to assume the duties of governor in the province of Further Spain. There, in addition to learning the functions of a civil administrator, he acquired, as a military commander, experience in handling legions. Caesar needed this experience. An ambitious man, he was well aware of Pompey's great popularity in Rome. Whoever would challenge Pompey's power must match his military achievement.

## 2. Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus

In the same year that Caesar left Rome for Further Spain, Pompey, who had served his term as consul and brought to a brilliantly successful conclusion his campaign in the East against Mithridates, returned to the city. He hoped to obtain grants of land in Italy on which to settle his veteran soldiers; he also expected the senate's approval for the settlement of affairs in the East which, like a later warrior, Lawrence of Arabia, he had undertaken on his own authority. The senate, however, fearing the growing power of Pompey, hesitated either to ratify his actions or to reward his soldiers. Pompey, then, was in a mood to listen when Caesar proposed the curious private arrangement which has become known in history as the First Triumvirate.

The triumvirate was a private agreement among three men and was designed to satisfy the immediate ambitions of each. To the coalition Pompey brought his popularity, his military prestige, and his following in the senate; Crassus his wealth and his influence with the Equites, the business class of Rome; and Caesar his growing reputation and his leadership of the people's movement. Caesar became consul in 59 B.C., either just before the coalition, or else just after it; we cannot be sure which. He completely overshadowed his fellow-consul Bibulus. Among his first acts as consul he satisfied Pompey's claims; he also arranged that one third of the sum that the Equites had agreed to pay for the privilege of

collecting taxes in Asia should be remitted, and that Crassus should be given the military command he desired. For himself Caesar secured the government of Cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum, and Transalpine Gaul, for a period of five years.

Caesar's purpose in securing this appointment was probably to free Rome from the last serious danger which threatened her from without, for Romans still remembered how Gauls, led by Brennus, had burned Rome in 390 B.C. It is also probably true that Caesar intended to gain military experience, without which he would never be able to compete with Pompey, who was a truly great general, although a dull-witted politician. In Gaul, too, Caesar would be able to train a standing army which would follow him devotedly if he aimed at political supremacy.

### 3. Caesar in Gaul

In March, 58 B.C., Caesar left Rome for Gaul. For the next ten years he campaigned during the summer months in Gaul, Germany, and Great Britain. The winters he passed in Gaul, acting as a circuit judge travelling from town to town. In the first two years of his campaigning, the Helvetii and the Germans, under Ariovistus, were defeated, and the Belgae crushed. Then, as a demonstration of strength, he led his legions against the Germans on the Lower Rhine.

The same year, late in the season, Caesar crossed the Channel and landed an army in Britain. He returned to Gaul to pass the winter, and the following year again invaded Britain. During his absence from Gaul his winter camps were attacked by Gallic tribes under the leadership of Indutiomarus, Catuvolcus, and Ambiorix. The movement to drive out the Romans spread and in the years 53-52 B.C. the native chieftain Vercingetorix led a national uprising which was, with difficulty, suppressed by Caesar. It was not until the year 50 B.C. that the resubjugated and pacified Gaul was organized.

In the meantime, Caesar was not unmindful of his own ambitions. He was well aware that his absence from Rome might work against the attainment of these ambitions. Against him was ranged the influence of the great orator, Cicero, and there was always present the possibility of mob violence in Rome. Accordingly, in 56 B.C. he arranged a meeting of the triumvirate at Luca,

in Etruria. At this meeting it was agreed that Caesar's term as governor in Gaul should be extended for five years from 54 B.C., that Pompey and Crassus should be consuls for the year 55 B.C., that Pompey should then be governor of the two Spains for five years from 54 B.C., and that Crassus should be governor of Syria for the same period.

#### 4. The Swing Toward Civil War

In spite of this seeming unanimity, however, all was not well with the triumvirate. A coalition which contained two such powerful and ambitious men as Pompey and Caesar could not long survive. Two things helped maintain the triumvirate in existence: the presence in it of Crassus, who acted as a buffer between his fellow triumvirs, and the marriage of Pompey to Julia, Caesar's only daughter. In the year 54 B.C. both Julia and her child died, and in the following year Crassus too died, following a rash and disastrous campaign against the Parthians. With the deaths of Julia and Crassus, the long-smouldering rivalry between Pompey and Caesar flared up. Only an opportunity was needed to bring the feud into the open. The opportunity was not long in presenting itself.

In 52 B.C. Rome saw the violence of mob rule, when gangs led by the rivals Milo and Clodius ranged the city. Among other outrages the senate house was burned to the ground. In this time of stress the senate turned to Pompey as the only man strong enough to restore order and the rule of law. He was appointed sole consul, an office which gave him an incomparable opportunity to strengthen his position against Caesar who, as we have seen, in the year 52 B.C. was much occupied in Gaul with the national uprising under Vercingetorix.

In the early days of the First Triumvirate, Caesar, as consul, had ridden rough-shod over senate and constitution in order to ensure that his laws should be enacted. In so doing he had won the enmity and jealousy of the senators. Both enmity and jealousy were increased by the success of Caesar in Gaul where, as governor, he was rapidly acquiring wealth, office, and fame (*opes, imperium, dignitas*, the trinity later attacked by the Roman poet Horace as disturbing happiness.)

Held by his governorship far from Rome, where in the end



the issue between him and Pompey must be decided, Caesar had chosen as his representative Curio, a reckless but very astute young man. Curio occupied the office of *tribunus*, and by exercising his power of veto he was able to delay the enactment of measures which were counter to Caesar's interests.

When Caesar was asked by the senate to hand over the command of his legions and return to Rome, he made, through his agent Curio, what he considered a fair proposal—that both he and Pompey should be required to hand over their commands. He knew that Pompey would refuse to do this and Pompey's refusal gave Caesar the excuse that he needed in 49 B.C. to cross the Rubicon from Gaul into Italy in the defence of his rights, at the head of an army.

Faced with the fact that Caesar was marching on Rome, the senate asked Pompey to undertake the defence of the state. The civil war had begun.

## 5. The Civil War

Not the least of Caesar's talents was his ability as a military historian, and the best account of his struggle with Pompey is contained in his *Commentaries on the Civil War*. In order that the selections for reading, which follow, should be completely understood, it is essential here that a summary of the contents of the three books of Caesar's *Civil War* should be made.

**Book 1.** Caesar started southward and in two months had won over practically all of Italy. Pompey set out at once for Epirus, in Greece, where he had decided to offer resistance, even though his generals were in control of Spain. Pompey's connections in the East gave greater promise of continued supplies than did his position in Spain. The next move rested with Caesar. He had to choose whether to follow Pompey, or, like a good general, to leave behind no hostile territory and first defeat the Pompeian armies in Spain. He decided on the latter course.

After sending an army to Spain, he himself prepared for the siege of Massilia at the mouth of the Rhone before leaving for Spain to join his forces there. Massilia had to be eliminated as it lay in the path of Caesar's reinforcements from Gaul, having been captured by a Pompeian army under Domitius.

The forces of Pompey in Spain were under three chief lieu-

tenants, Marcus Terentius Varro, Lucius Afranius, and Marcus Petreius. The two latter were engaged at Ilerda by Caesar who, in spite of dangers caused by flood waters, dislodged his foes from their position. He pursued them, letting loose his cavalry on their rearguard, and finally compelled them to lay down their arms from lack of food and water. Afranius and Petreius were allowed to go free, and their forces were disbanded.

**Book 2.** Meantime Caesar's forces in Gaul were besieging Massilia. To counter the threat presented by this city to his line of communications, Caesar had left a *legatus*, Gaius Trebonius, to undertake a siege of the town while he himself finished his business in Spain. After the Spanish campaign, Caesar hurried back to Massilia, to find that Trebonius had done his work well and that the city was ready to surrender.

Another measure taken by Caesar to secure the safety of Italy was to send Curio to get control, first of Sicily and then of Africa. After several successes in minor engagements in Africa, Curio was duped into risking his entire force of more than two legions in a single encounter. His army was annihilated and he himself was killed. However, the African reverse had no direct effect on Caesar's next undertaking, the struggle with Pompey in Greece.

**Book 3.** After his successes in Spain, Caesar returned to Rome. He was appointed dictator and then consul for the year 48 B. C., and in a short space of time carried out several far-reaching measures. For example, the people of Rome feared an abolition of debts as a result of the civil war. Credit was beginning to fail in Italy and Caesar realized how damaging to public morale such a condition would be. He accordingly arranged for all debts to be settled on a fair basis.

Pompey had not been actively engaged in the war for nearly a year. During this time he had been able to concentrate at Dyrrachium and in its neighbourhood many legions and a wealth of supplies which he had gathered from Italy and from the Eastern provinces, where his influence had always been great. Pompey had also been able to build a strong fleet, and since winter was drawing near, he was certain that he would have the winter months in which to lay his plans. As a rule, in ancient times, the seas were closed to shipping during the winter months. It was unthinkable that Caesar would risk the winter gales and sail to



*Courtesy G. Bell and Sons*

**CAESAR MOVES HIS FORCES ACROSS THE ADRIATIC**  
His transport fleet, hastily assembled, must have been a motley one.

Epirus. Fully aware of the value of surprise as a weapon, Caesar did the unthinkable.

Determined to put an end to hostilities, Caesar marched from Rome to Brundisium, where he expected to find twelve legions ready to embark in a fleet large enough to carry them across the Adriatic. Instead, he found his legions sadly below strength and only half as much shipping as he needed. Undismayed, he transported half of his forces across the Adriatic so quickly that Pompey's fleet was unable to organize resistance against him. Many important sea-coast towns opened their gates to Caesar, and Pompey barely beat him to Dyrrachium in time to cause a stalemate for the winter. Then followed a cat-and-mouse game, with Caesar controlling the land and Pompey's fleet controlling the sea. As a result Caesar could not get reinforcements from Italy and Pompey's sailors could not set foot on land long enough to obtain food and water.

When winter was at last over, the rest of Caesar's legions at Brundisium avoided the blockade by sea, and under the guidance of Mark Antony managed to join forces with Caesar. The stage for the final act was now set. Both sides began to manoeuvre for position and to attempt to win over as many allies as possible. At





From Paramount's 'Cleopatra'

#### THE ROMANS FIGHT THE EGYPTIANS IN ALEXANDRIA

Caesar secured control of Egypt only after a struggle.

length Caesar managed to corner his opponent near Dyrrachium, and blockaded him with elaborate fortifications, in spite of the fact that his army was much smaller and not so well-equipped as that of Pompey. In addition, his blockade was on the outside of a circle, a notoriously difficult operation. Nevertheless Caesar made repeated attempts to entice Pompey into battle, and again made overtures for peace. There it was that two brothers from the Gallic people known as the Allobroges deserted from Caesar to Pompey. Such desertion from his army was so uncommon that Caesar devoted considerable space to the story. However, the episode was of strategic importance because the military information supplied by the brothers helped the Pompeians to break the blockade. Even so, a subsequent attack by Caesar's army in the southern sector almost won the day when by bad fortune it was separated into two parts. In the resulting confusion it was fortunate not to be annihilated. But Pompey, fearing an ambush, failed to press his advantage.

Caesar at once gave up the siege. Pompey's troops, confident

of victory, began to imagine a division of the expected spoils. But just as surprise had helped Caesar in one crisis, now rapidity of movement served him in another. He skilfully withdrew his legions from contact with Pompey's army and joined forces in Thessaly with Domitius, who commanded another Caesarian army. He was hotly pursued by Pompey, who closed in for the kill. The two armies faced each other near the town of Pharsalus, where Caesar at last became the master of the Roman world.

### 6. The Last Years of Caesar's Life

After Caesar had spent some time in Egypt, he left that country in 47 B.C. and went to Pontus in Asia Minor, where he defeated Pharnaces, the son of Mithridates the Great. The deciding battle was fought at Zela. After this battle Caesar sent to a friend in Rome the famous message, '*Veni, vidi, vici.*'

On his return to Rome his presence worked like magic. Order was restored and peace reigned in the city. He sped to Africa to



Scene from MGM's 'Julius Caesar'

'SEE WHAT A RENT THE ENVIOUS CASCIA MADE'.

Marlon Brando, as Mark Antony in Shakespeare's 'Julius Caesar', points to Caesar's blood-stained cloak.



overcome the remnants of the Pompeian party at Thapsus. Then he engaged in mopping-up operations against Pompey's sons and Labienus. The latter had once been a trusted officer in Caesar's army but had deserted to Pompey in 49 B.C. The deciding battle was fought at Munda in 45 B.C. This was the last battle Caesar ever fought.

The last few months of his life he spent in Rome framing legislation that was to guide Roman leaders for years to come. The senate made him dictator for life. Although his power was nobly won and honestly exercised, there were those who were prompted by jealousy to overthrow him. This they did by assassinating him on the Ides of March, 44 B.C.

Gaius Julius Caesar performed, to use the words of John Buchan, the 'greatest constructive task ever achieved by human hands.' His genius was many-sided; he achieved renown as a statesman, as a military leader, and as an author.

More than any other man, Caesar made it possible for Roman civilization to penetrate into Western Europe.

## 7. Caesar, The Writer

If it were possible to ask a Roman for his impressions of Caesar, he would probably say that he was one of Rome's greatest statesmen and one of her best military commanders. But he would be likely to say little about his accomplishments as a writer, largely because Caesar's statesmanship and military genius overshadowed any other excellence he may have possessed.

Yet Julius Caesar is best known to posterity as the author of two curious books of military history which recount his own experiences as a successful general. So muscular and clear-cut is his style and so lucid is his account of the strategy he employed in various campaigns, that his writings have long been considered as models for study by students in military academies and even by great military leaders.

The writings of Caesar remind a modern reader of the work of war-correspondents. The facts are stated baldly, and they are arranged so skilfully that even their terseness and vigour take on a dramatic quality. Here is history written by an eye-witness who is interested in presenting the truth. However, it should be remembered that Caesar's commentaries were really intended as

despatches to the senate; for he knew full well that every move he made would be critically analysed by the senate. Every move therefore had to be justified, usually by a statement of its successful conclusion. Thus did Caesar manage to silence his political opponents in Rome.

Caesar's writings won the praise of Cicero for their plain, simple directness. His construction of prose is so consistent and so regular that it has provided school-boys with a model for prose composition which has endured through the centuries. His Latin is unadorned; he shuns far-fetched words and exercises a strict economy of expression.

Finally, it should be said that, in view of Caesar's purpose in writing, it is greatly to his credit that he suppressed his own bias and personality as much as he did. For, in contrast to Cicero, who had saved Rome and never let it be forgotten, Caesar narrates his story in the third person. In this way he can be impersonal and objective, and his accounts are more likely to be accepted by the senate without question.

## Nepos: 99-24 B.C.

The life of Hannibal contained in this book is based on the one written by Cornelius Nepos. Nepos was a contemporary of Julius Caesar, of Cicero the orator, and of Catullus the poet. He remained a writer throughout his long life, taking no part in politics.

Catullus, in dedicating his poems to Nepos, mentions the latter's 'Universal History', written in three volumes. None of this work survives. Another work of Nepos, his 'Lives of Famous Men', was a collection of Roman and foreign biographies. Some of these, including the 'Life of Hannibal', did survive, and have remained popular for use in schools because of their interest, their simplicity, and their convenient length.

Like most ancient historians, Nepos is not scientific in his approach. His chronology, for example, is sometimes confused. This 'Life of Hannibal', however, provides a useful back-drop against which we may view the dramatic series of colourful scenes taken from the historian Livy's version of the Hannibalic War.

Livy: 59 B.C.-A.D. 17

Titus Livius, or Livy, was the only great writer of prose in the reign of Augustus Caesar. Along with the poets Vergil and Horace, Livy supported Augustus' policy of Roman 'moral rearmament' after the Civil War. His monumental history (in 142 books) he called *Libri ab Urbe Condita* ('A History from the Founding of the City'). In it he sought to instil in his fellow-Romans a patriotic pride in their glorious past, and likewise a confident belief in an even more glorious future under the rule of Augustus. Of his original work, only thirty-five books have survived, and these include the story of the wars with Carthage.

Like most ancient historians<sup>1</sup>, Livy falls far short of the scientific historical method which modern writers have developed for themselves. Certainly he did not personally examine all possible sources, or check topography. Exact dates and numbers and routes are matters of secondary importance to him. It is not surprising, therefore, that he is not very helpful to modern scholars in their efforts to solve such problems as the exact route by which Hannibal crossed the Alps. To Livy, Hannibal's exact route is of minor importance. It is basically with an artist's eye that he views his crossing, and it is with an artist's deft touch that he has immortalized the highlights of this and many another famous moment in Rome's story.

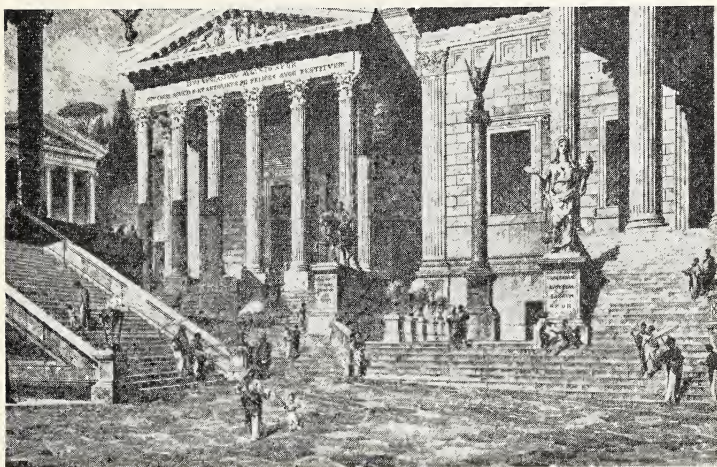
It must not be supposed, however, that Livy's writing is entirely devoid of historical method.

1. He warns us when he is dealing with legend, not fact, usually introducing it with some such expression as 'There is a story that . . . ' Then he narrates the story, if it possesses interest or dramatic value. For example, in Chapter 2, 'Hannibal's Star Rises', Livy introduces the story of Hannibal's dream with the words '*Fama est*—'

2. For his facts, he makes use of the several accounts of the Punic Wars available in his day, including a very fine one in Greek by

---

<sup>1</sup> The Greek historian, Thucydides, was the only scientific historian among the ancients. His account of the Peloponnesian War is admirably done by any standards.



THE ROMAN FORUM

Rome abounded in inscriptions for any historian to consult.

the historian Polybius. Where his authorities agree on a point, he follows them without independent research. His facts, however, he casts into as vivid a narrative as possible.

At suitable points in the narrative he introduces highly dramatic speeches which ring true, for they are appropriate to the situation and to the character of the speaker. Such words are not the words which were actually used in the situation, but they were the words which might well have been used. For example, see Hannibal's speech to his men before the scaling of the Alps (in Chapter 3 of 'Hannibal's Star Rises'), and also the prayer of the consul Scipio as he set sail for Africa (in Chapter 8 of 'Hannibal's Star Sets').

3. Where his authorities disagree on such matters as the size of an army, he is usually content to 'split the difference'.
4. Where his authorities disagree on other matters, he changes from one to the other as he deems best, but not usually with sufficient critical analysis. Sometimes this shifting to another authority results in inconsistencies in Livy's narrative.



Yet these are minor flaws indeed when Livy's writing is judged, not as history, but as a dramatic story, for that is what it is, and that is what Livy intended it should be. In brilliant panorama he gives us a succession of unforgettable great moments in the story of a great nation. His theme is the destiny of Rome (*Fatum Romanum*). It is understandable, though a matter of regret, that in the furtherance of this theme he has presented Rome's gallant enemy Hannibal as a typically treacherous Carthaginian whose 'Punic honour' (*Punica fides*) amounts to no honour at all. (For an example of this treatment of Hannibal in the pages of Livy, see Chapter 9 of 'Hannibal's Star Rises'. In this incident, no doubt, gallantry really inspired Hannibal to spare the farm of his opponent Quintus Fabius, but Livy ascribes an ulterior motive to the action.)

Yet, so vivid is Livy's portrayal, that Hannibal unquestionably emerges as the glamorous figure in the action. Perhaps also it is true, as one scholar<sup>1</sup> has put it, that one's attention focuses instinctively on any great soldier who goes down fighting, rather than on his conqueror—on the Hannibals, the Napoleons, the Rommels.<sup>2</sup>

## Suetonius: A.D. 77-?

The Life of Julius Caesar contained in this book is based partly on the 'Life of the Divine Julius' written by Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus. Suetonius is best known for his 'Lives of the Caesars', biographies of twelve emperors from Julius Caesar to Domitian. There is perhaps no other series of biographies so crammed with anecdote, so rich in interesting detail. Suetonius was one of the Emperor Hadrian's private secretaries, and so had access to a rich fund of intimate information; he tells us, for example, that Julius Caesar's eyes were a piercing black, and also is able to quote from several of Augustus' personal letters.

<sup>1</sup> Prof. E. T. Salmon, McMaster University, to whom the editors are indebted for much of the material on pp. 25-28.

<sup>2</sup> It is tempting to note similarities in the careers of Hannibal and of the German Marshal Rommel, the 'Desert Fox' of World War II. Both were professional soldiers, both relied on extreme mobility, both won their great successes away from their homeland, both were hampered by an enemy invasion of their homeland, both lost an African campaign, both experienced friction with their home government, and both ended their careers by an enforced suicide.



# ROMAN POETS

## Catullus: 84-54 B.C.

Gaius Valerius Catullus belonged to a wealthy and distinguished family. He was a younger contemporary of Cicero, Caesar and Nepos; he dedicated his poems to Nepos, and one of them takes the form of a thank-you note to Cicero, probably prompted by some legal service rendered. His brief but brilliant career ended in the year of Caesar's second expedition to Britain.

Catullus was a pioneer in the field of Latin lyric poetry, and skilfully adapted a number of Greek lyric metres to his Latin verses. It must be remembered that at this time Greek was still considered *the* language of literature, just as in the England of Chaucer's day French and Latin held that distinction. Catullus, like Chaucer, vindicated the claim of his native tongue to a place among the great literary languages.

The finest and best known of Catullus' lyrics are those addressed to his lady (Lesbia). His intensity of emotion has given him a place of honour in any list of the world's great lyric poets.

## Vergil: 70-19 B.C.

The greatest poet of the Romans was Publius Vergilius Maro. His father owned a small farm near Mantua, in Cisalpine Gaul, and gave his son a good education which included the study of oratory and philosophy in Rome.

Vergil inherited the farm when his father died, only to have it confiscated after the battle of Philippi, for it lay in a district known to have favoured the conspirators in the Civil War. Meanwhile, however, Vergil's poetry had begun to win attention, and he now came under the patronage of Maecenas, who acted for

Augustus in encouraging writers of talent. Vergil was compensated by the gift of another estate, and entered on a career in which he became virtually the 'poet-laureate' of Rome.

Ovid: 45 B.C.-A.D. 17

### 1. His Life

Publius Ovidius Naso was born into a wealthy family. His education, therefore, was an expensive one; in Rome he studied rhetoric and law under expert tutors, and he rounded off his studies by taking a post-graduate course in philosophy at Athens. But he was not drawn to law, and more and more he indulged in the writing of verse. Soon he was recognized as the 'poet-laureate' of fashionable society.

The writings of a poet generally reflect the age in which he lives. Rome at the time of Ovid afforded a life of ease and enjoyment, especially for the well-to-do classes. Every year there were scores of public holidays. By day, the populace was entertained by the gory chariot races or by the murderous gladiatorial exhibitions. The public baths were frequented, being in fact much like our modern social clubs. The boisterous Roman Theatre also played its part in keeping the Roman citizen amused. When the social set took over, its revelry by night could be heard all over the Mediterranean. It was to this set that Ovid belonged, and the type of poetry he chose to write found favour with his kind of society.

Near the end of his life, in A.D. 8, Ovid fell into disfavour at court, and he was banished to Tomi, on the Black Sea. He himself says the principal causes of his exile were *carmen et error*—an indiscreet poem and a mistake in judgment. On his death in A.D. 17 he was still lamenting his banishment.

### 2. His Writings

Ovid was unaffected by the serious motives of Horace and Vergil who helped Augustus to restore the fibre of Rome's moral life. He was the poet of pleasure. Above all else, he could tell a story with rapidity and brightness. His skill in versifying might be considered akin to that of W. S. Gilbert of 'Gilbert and Sullivan'

fame, whose gift of using words is entertaining in itself, without benefit of an ennobling theme. Here are his major works:

**(a) *Amores (Love Affairs)*.**

These poems purport to portray the love of Ovid and an unidentified lady whom he calls Corinna.

**(b) *Heroides (Heroines)*.**

The poems were in fact imaginary letters of love-sick heroines to their heroes, and the replies of the equally love-sick heroes.

**(c) *Ars Amatoria (The Art of Love-Making)*.**

This poem is written in a didactic style after the manner of a university professor lecturing on his particular field of research. Here was the expert's advice on how to win and keep affection, in three books (books one and two for men only, book three for women only).

**(d) *Remedia Amoris (The Antidotes to Love, or How to Fall Out of Love Again)*.**

**(e) *Medicamina Faciei (Beauty treatments)*.**

This work tells the ladies how to secure and retain a fine school-girl complexion.

**(f) *Metamorphoses*.**

This collection of miraculous transformations was the serious work of Ovid's life. In his clever narrative he presents in fifteen books a large portion of the tales of classical mythology. So smooth and fascinating is the treatment of his theme that his work became a standard source book on the subject not only for Renaissance writers but also for later Italian, French, German and English writers. Here is to be found his most important contribution to literature.

## Martial: A.D. 40-102

Marcus Valerius Martialis, of Spanish birth, was the most gifted writer of epigrams among the Romans. Little is known of the man personally, but he left fifteen books of epigrams to tell his story.

An epigram was originally an inscription, such as was put on

a monument or a tombstone, and in which it was important to say what was needed in as few words as possible. In the passing of time, it came to mean a short poem dealing with some person or incident worthy of observation. 'It must have the compression and conciseness of a real inscription, . . . but must be highly finished, evenly balanced, simple, lucid.'<sup>1</sup> The words fall into their places with a fitness that suggests the solution of a jig-saw puzzle; the reader feels that no other words could have been employed.

Martial, then, was a kind of poetic journalist, a newspaper columnist in verse. Life itself was his subject, and in his poems can be seen an intriguing procession of vignettes of Roman life: an invitation, an epitaph on a little child, an orator, a school teacher, a busybody, a poisoner, a gladiator, the elements of a happy life. All the people and the trivial incidents of everyday life are grist to his poetic mill. He is witty and observant, and touches every theme with a light hand. Everywhere in his writing there is evidence of good humour and a huge relish in living.

## Juvenal: A.D. 64?

Few authentic particulars are available on the life of Decimus Iunius Iuvenalis. We know that he flourished toward the end of the first century after Christ, and that he was a friend of Martial. He was probably born about A.D. 64, and is thought to have reached the age of eighty.

Like Horace, Juvenal was a satirist, but the Rome in which Juvenal lived was much more undermined by vice and corruption than the Rome of Horace. It is not surprising, therefore, to find that his style of writing is more energetic than that employed by Horace. He rants and raves, lashing out at the vices of corrupt Roman society with harsh invective. His pictures in words were drawn effectively from real life. With a few vigorous words, he brings to life a schoolroom, or the greedy crowd at the 'hand-out' (*sportula*), or the streets of Rome, or a drunken brawl, or the wickedness of men, women and all the host of parasites with which Rome abounded. His satires indeed present a dark and absorbing picture of the age in which he lived.

---

<sup>1</sup> J. W. Mackail

# ROME VERSUS CARTHAGE

## 1. The General Issues at Stake

Rome's war with Hannibal was the second of three Punic Wars fought by Rome with the commercial giant Carthage. A basic issue in the duel between the two cities was the 'freedom of the seas', in particular, freedom to use the Mediterranean Sea, which Carthage had come to regard as her own private property.

In systems of government, and in national aspirations, Rome and Carthage were poles apart. Rome had been progressing steadily toward democratic rule which recognized the rights of her allies. But Carthage had always believed in the oriental idea of rule by force, without sympathetic treatment of her allies. Romans, with all their faults, had valuable lessons to teach the world, lessons relating to such matters as unity and law and order. It was well for world progress, therefore, that in the struggle of giants it was Rome instead of Carthage that emerged the victor.

The struggle between Hannibal and Rome has a fascination for the reader. On the one hand, it depicts the military genius and gallantry of a mighty leader of men. On the other hand, it depicts the steadiness and unity of a mighty nation. Moreover, there is a moral in the victory of the nation over the individual. It is interesting to note that in more modern times similar duels have had similar endings. Napoleon and Hitler both had cause to complain of a similar steadiness among the British and of a similar refusal to admit defeat.

## 2. Carthage

The word 'Punic' is related to the word 'Phoenician', and is a reminder that Carthage was originally a colony of Phoenician traders, whose homeland Canaan was also known as Phoenice, which means 'the land of the purple dye'. Tyre, a great Phoenician city, was famous for this purple dye, and in the literature of all ages there are many references to the 'Tyrian Purple'.

Carthage itself was established by sea-faring merchants in a location singularly favourable both to agriculture and to com-



merce. In both these occupations the Carthaginians showed their Phoenician heritage, for they set the soil to work for them, but free men did not till it. The task of working the land fell to thousands of fettered slaves, or to Libyan farmers who were compelled to pay a quarter of their yearly revenue to their conquerors. In their quest for commerce, Carthaginian merchants set up trading posts along the north shore of Africa. These extended 600 miles eastward to Cyrene, and westward to the Atlantic. Their interests also included the western part of Sicily, as well as the vital islands of Sardinia and Corsica, and even the far western Spanish port of Gades (Cadiz). The trade monopoly which Carthaginian interests set up resulted in a rigid control over the Mediterranean. So complete was Carthaginian naval supremacy that the Italians themselves, so the story goes, were warned to ask for permission even to wash their hands in the sea.

It was natural that there should develop in Carthage two rival political parties which represented the interests of the two economic groups, the merchant democrats and the land-owning aristocrats. The merchant democrats were the traders and merchants who grew wealthy in commerce and who supported a large part of the city populace in commercial and industrial work. The land-owning aristocrats controlled Libyan agriculture, and tended to be peace-loving and stable, having little to gain from an extension of the trade empire. The military faction, therefore, belonged to the merchant democrats.

### 3. The Carthaginian Constitution

Carthage was in practice ruled by a few powerful families, although in theory all its officials were chosen annually by the citizens. These officials were:

2 'kings' (or 'suffetes' or 'judges')  
28 Councillors

{ These 30 were an Executive Council whose powers included nomination of the Commander of the army.

104 Senators

These in practice controlled the Executive Council, and had the power to force the Commander of the army to render an account of all actions.



#### 4. Carthaginian Weakness and Strength

The government of Carthage could not be sure that the people would follow its lead. Her dependent states were ground under her heel. Her battles were fought by mercenaries whose loyalty to a cause was non-existent. Hers was a nation of shop-keepers and artisans whose bodily vigour could not match that of the Roman farmer. Yet in her commerce was to be found also her strength; for her navy was supreme, and her riches could provide the costliest military equipment.

#### 5. Some Dates and Events of the Punic Wars

(Those marked with \* are referred to in the Latin of this text)

##### *First Punic War*

**265 B.C.**—\* First Punic War begins (Immediate cause—possession of Sicily.)

**260 B.C.**—Rome wins a naval victory at Mylae. (The result of Roman conversion of naval fighting into land fighting by the use of larger numbers of marines on board, and by the use of swinging gang-planks and of grappling-hooks.)

**256 B.C.**—Rome loses an expeditionary force led into Africa by Atilius Regulus.

**241 B.C.**—Rome wins a naval victory off the island of Aegusa (one of the Aegatian Islands), under the consul Gaius Lutatius Catulus. The ships had been built by private contributions of jewelry and property.

—The First Punic War ends.

**Peace Terms:** 1. Surrender of Sicily, which becomes Rome's first 'province'.

2. Payment of \$3,000,000 indemnity to Rome.

3. Integrity of Carthaginian state and territory.

##### *Between Wars*

**238 B.C.**—Rome takes over Sardinia, a Carthaginian possession, when invited to do so during a revolt from Carthage.

**236 B.C.**—\* Hamilcar Barca, Hannibal's father, begins operations in Spain. (His immediate object is to open up new territory for Carthaginian trade.)

Hannibal accompanies his father.

**228 B.C.**—\* Hamilcar is killed and his son-in-law Hasdrubal becomes commander.

**226 B.C.—**\* The Ebro Treaty is negotiated between Hasdrubal and the Romans. By its terms, the Carthaginians are not to cross north of the Ebro River bearing arms. (But Saguntum, an independent Spanish city, has an alliance with Rome, and yet is situated 100 miles south of the Ebro.)

**221 B.C.—**\* Hasdrubal, Hannibal's brother-in-law, is killed, and Hannibal becomes commander.

**221-219 B.C.—**\* Hannibal secures all Spain south of the Ebro, except Saguntum.

**219 B.C.—**\* Hannibal captures Saguntum.

### *Second Punic War*

#### **Hannibal's Star Rises**

**218 B.C.—**\* A skirmish at the Rhone River is won by the Romans led by Publius Cornelius Scipio the Father.

\* Hannibal crosses the Alps.

\* The battle at the Ticinus River is won by Hannibal against Scipio.

\* The battle at the Trebia River is won by Hannibal against Scipio.

**217 B.C.—**\* The battle at Lake Trasimene is won by Hannibal against Flaminius.

\* Quintus Fabius Maximus is appointed dictator.

**216 B.C.—**\* Fabius retires, and new consuls take over the conduct of the war.

\* The battle at Cannae is won by Hannibal.

#### **Hannibal's Star Sets**

**212 B.C.—**\* Syracuse (in Sicily) is captured and looted by the Romans under Marcus Claudius Marcellus as a punishment for aiding Hannibal.

\* In the looting, Archimedes is slain.

**211 B.C.—**\* The battle at the Metaurus River is won by the Romans;

\* In it, Hasdrubal, Hannibal's brother, is slain.

**204 B.C.—**\* A Roman expeditionary force sails for Africa under Publius Cornelius Scipio the Son.

**203 B.C.—**\* Hannibal is recalled to defend Carthage.

**202 B.C.—**\* The battle at Zama is won by Publius Cornelius Scipio the Son. The Second Punic War ends.

***After the Second Punic War***

**193 B.C.**—\* Scipio and Hannibal have a conversation during Rome's negotiations with King Antiochus of Syria.

**190 B.C.**—\* King Antiochus of Syria is defeated by the Romans at Magnesia in Asia Minor.

**183 B.C.**—\* Hannibal commits suicide in the kingdom of King Prusias of Pontus.

**6. Carthaginian Strategy*****(a) The Carthaginian Base in Spain:***

When the Carthaginians turned their attention to Spain after losing the First Punic War, their immediate purpose may have been economic rather than military; Spanish trading-posts were to compensate for the loss of Sicily. Soon, however, Spain assumed a military significance as a base for an overland invasion of Italy, especially after Carthaginians were enraged by the Roman seizure of Sardinia from Carthage for 'security' reasons.

It is tempting to compare Carthage after her defeat in the First Punic War with Germany after her defeat in World War I.<sup>1</sup> Both Carthage and Germany were powerful nations thirsting for revenge, both claimed to have surrendered on one set of terms and then to have had a severer set forced upon them, and both claimed that their armed forces had not been beaten decisively in the field, but by a 'stab-in-the-back' surrender on the part of the home government. Both Carthage and Germany proceeded to build up their armed strength for a 'second try', and both were allowed to do so because of the 'war-weariness' of their former conquerors, who were either clinging desperately to the hope of averting another war or else indulging in a complacent 'wishful thinking' that there would not be another one.

***(b) The Choice of Spain:***

Hannibal's invasion of Italy was calculated to prevent the Romans from invading Africa, for Carthage had not the military strength or the morale to withstand a long war near home. Moreover, Carthage's invasion of Spain had to be by land, not by sea, for in spite of her proud naval tradition, she by treaty no

---

<sup>1</sup> Such comparisons are interesting, but must not, of course, be considered perfect parallels; history does *not* repeat itself exactly. To take another example, France's colonial expansion after she had lost the Franco-Prussian War bears a striking resemblance to Carthage's expansion in Spain after she had lost the First Punic War.

longer was allowed a large enough fleet to ensure the complete control of the sea necessary for a sea-borne attack on enemy-held territory. She *did*, however, have sufficient local naval superiority to maintain communications with areas under Carthaginian control, such as Spain. And Spain was the logical base for an over-land attack, since Carthage did not control bases situated nearer to Italy, such as Sicily or the Balkan Peninsula. So it was that Hannibal devised the bold plan of marching over the Alps into Italy. Meanwhile his brother Hasdrubal was to stay with an army to secure the base in Spain against Roman attack. One of the major reasons for the final victory of the Romans was their realization that they must at all costs keep an army in Spain, which must never be allowed to fall under the complete control of the Carthaginians.

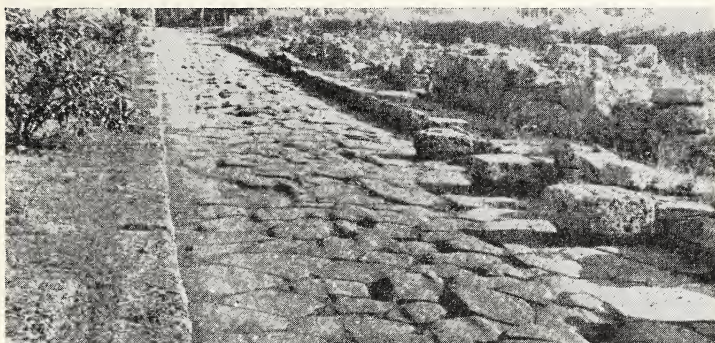
**(c) *Hannibal's Attack on Saguntum:***

Just as Germany's invasion of Poland, an ally of Britain, was the immediate cause of World War II, so too Hannibal's attack on the Spanish town of Saguntum, an ally of Rome, was the immediate cause of the Second Punic War. Hannibal appears to have had two reasons for his attack on Saguntum, which, though situated one hundred miles inside the Carthaginian sphere of influence, had an alliance with Rome. First, he wanted to secure the Carthaginian rear from possible attack. Second, he wanted the declaration of war to come from Rome; Rome was to be forced into declaring war. From the purely legal point of view, it may well be that Hannibal had an extremely good case, for it is by no means certain that Saguntum had been specifically excepted from the Ebro Treaty, which had acknowledged Spain south of the Ebro River as under Carthaginian influence. Morally, however, the war-guilt must be considered Hannibal's, for he deliberately set out to provoke a declaration of war.

**(d) *Hannibal's Policy in Italy:***

Hannibal was confident that once he was in Italy, his superior skill in tactics would prove too much for the non-professional Roman generals, and he was right. Yet he knew that even a series of Carthaginian victories in the field would not necessarily mean the smashing of Roman power. To smash Roman power he must either capture Rome herself, or else win over her Italian allies, and so isolate her. He chose the latter course, mostly from necessity, as he realized that his chances of taking by siege a strongly





THE VIA APPIA

Roman roads were first built for rapid troop movement.

fortified city like Rome were slim without the use of heavy equipment; and this he did not attempt to bring over the Alps. As steps in his plan to isolate Rome from her allies, he had already established a remarkable system of espionage in Italy, and had sent envoys into the province of Cisalpine Gaul (now northern Italy) to secure the support there of the Gauls who resented the extension of Roman influence.

## 7. Roman Strategy

### (a) *The Defence of Italy:*

We do not know for sure whether the Romans as a nation realized what danger lurked in Carthaginian activities in Spain after the First Punic War. No doubt there was in Rome some of the same complacency that existed centuries later among Germany's former conquerors after World War I. Neither do we know whether those Romans who *did* regard Spain as a menace anticipated that Hannibal would march over the Alps. It is a fact, however, that just before Hannibal began his invasion Rome built her great highway to the north (the *Via Flaminia*) to facilitate troop movements, and also established two powerful northern colonies.

When war did break out, and the danger from the Alps became a reality, the Romans did not attempt to blockade the Alpine passes. They lacked sufficient troops to guard all the passes, and could not afford to risk concentrating their forces at the wrong one. Some notion of the immensity of their problem may be





THE RUGGED ALPS

The mere sight of the mighty Alps must have discouraged Hannibal's men. gleaned from the fact that now, 2000 years later, historians are still unable to decide which pass Hannibal *did* use! The same problem of mountain passes presented itself a second time, when Hannibal crossed the Apennines into peninsular Italy.

Therefore the Romans decided not to block mountain passes, but instead to catch Hannibal at the river crossings. When war was declared, a Roman army tried to intercept him at the Rhone River in southern France, but arrived too late. In northern Italy, Roman armies did catch him at the river barriers of the Ticinus and the Trebia, but were defeated by his superiority in tactics.

**(b) *The Landing in Africa:***

But Roman counter-strategy involved more than defensive action; it included from the beginning a plan to crush Carthage itself by an amphibious assault on North Africa. The Roman disaster suffered in the First Punic War, when Regulus' army was defeated after a similar landing in Africa, had taught the Romans the need for long and careful preparations, just as the allies in World War II required long and careful preparations for their landing in Normandy. Circumstances combined to make the Romans wait fourteen years for their 'D-day', but (as in Normandy, more than two thousand years later) once their invasion was launched, it was only a matter of time until final victory was achieved.

# SECTION ONE

THE STORY OF  
HANNIBAL

---



**THREE SCENES IN THE CAREER OF HANNIBAL  
THE CARTHAGINIAN**  
His oath of hatred, his crossing of the Alps, and his suicide.



# PART I

## The Life of Hannibal: Nepos

### 1. Hannibal, a Military Genius

Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthaginiensis. Si, quod nemo dubitat, populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superavit, nemo negare potest Hannibalem praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia. Nam quotiens cum populo Romano congressus est in  
5 Italia, semper discessit superior. Romanos ipsos visus est superare posse. Sed in urbe Carthagine civium suorum invidia et multorum obtrectatio devicerunt unius virtutem.

### 2. His Hatred of Rome

Hic autem odium paternum erga Romanos conservavit. Olim

1 Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthaginiensis: these four words constitute a title for the biography; *filius* and *Carthaginiensis* are both in app. to *Hannibal*. quod: = (*id*) *quod*, 'that which', 'a thing which', 'a statement which'.

2 virtute: abl. of respect. So too *prudentia* in l. 3. *superavit*: 'has surpassed'. In line 5, however, *superare* has its military meaning of 'conquer'. 5 superior: 'victorious', 'the winner'. This word is placed last in its clause for emphasis, displacing the verb, which usually constitutes a grand climax in a clause. Note the similar emphasis given to *in Italia* (lines 4-5) and to *unius virtutem* (l. 7). Nepos is not entirely accurate here, as Hannibal did lose one battle in Italy, at Nola in Campania, in 215 B.C.

6 Carthagine: abl. case in apposition to *urbe*; lit., 'the city, namely Car-

thage'. This is the regular Latin idiom with geographical nouns like *urbs*, *oppidum*, *insula*, *provincia*, *terra*. (So too in l. 11.)

6-7 *civium* . . . *obtrectatio*: 'the jealousy of fellow-citizens and the criticism of his many enemies'. For his opponents, Hanno and the landlord aristocrats, see the *Introduction*, 2. 8 *autem*: never attempt to decide between 'moreover' and 'however' as the translation for this word until you have read the rest of the sentence. Here, 'moreover' fits the sense. In l. 74, 'however' makes better sense. Note that *autem* is a postpositive, i.e. it is placed second in its clause. In the English, place 'moreover' first. Three common Latin postpositives are *autem*, 'moreover', 'however'; *igitur*, 'therefore', (as in l. 18); *enim*, 'for' (as in l. 61). Olim: Hannibal told the story that follows to

- Hannibal ipse initium eius odii aperuit. 'Pater meus,' inquit,  
 10 'Hamilcar, puerulo me, non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens, in urbe Carthagine Iovi optimo maximo hostias immolavit. Quae divina res dum conficitur, mihi, "Visne," inquit, "mecum in castra proficisci?" Patri, "Noli dubitare," inquam, "me ducere." Tum ille, "Faciam," inquit. "Sed  
 15 tu mihi fidem da quam postulo." Simul me ad aram duxit eamque tenentem me iurare iussit numquam me in amicitia cum Romano fore. Id ego iusiurandum usque ad hanc aetatem conservavi.'

King Antiochus of Syria, during his exile. See l. 71.

9 eius: 'that'. Here it cannot mean 'his', as it would then have to refer to someone else's hate, not Hannibal's.

9-12 Pater meus . . . immolavit: this sentence is a typical Latin 'period', giving first a series of subordinate ideas, and ending, by way of climax, with the principal idea. English depends for its effectiveness upon shorter sentences. Participles like *proficiscens*, are often best translated by a principal verb ('my father Hamilcar was setting out').

9-10 'Pater meus,' inquit, 'Hamilcar': in translating, do not allow 'Hamilcar' to become separated from 'Pater meus'.

16 puerulo me: abl. abs., with temporal value. non amplius novem annos nato: 'not more than nine years old'; lit., 'having been born (*nato*, abl. to modify *me*) not (*non*) more than (*amplius*, which is regularly used instead of *amplius quam*) nine years (*novem annos*, acc. of duration of time).'

11-12 Iovi optimo maximo: 'to Jupiter, the Highest and Mightiest'. Hamilcar really sacrificed to the Phoenician god Baal. The last syllable ('-bal') in names like Hannibal and Hasdrubal are contractions of the god's name; *Hannibal* means 'Grace

of Baal'. In the title *optimo maximo*, the connective (*et* or *atque*) is regularly omitted.

12 Quae divina res dum conficitur: 'While (*dum*, placed late in its clause to give the connective *quae* first position) this (*quae*, co-ord. rel., joining this sentence to the preceding one) divine rite (*divina res*) was being completed (*conficitur*, pres. indic. gov. by *dum*)'.

15 fidem: 'word of honour', 'pledge'. eam: dir. obj. of *tenentem*. The oath was taken with the boy's hand on the altar, just as today it might be taken with his hand on a Bible.

17 Id ego iusiurandum: *Id* and *iusiurandum* are separated for emphasis, and the placing of *ego* between the two heightens the effect. usque ad hanc aetatem: 'right up to the present time'.

18 Hac . . . aetate: may be considered an abl. of time, 'at this age'; or else abl. of desc., describing the subject *Hannibal*; For the dates of events in this and later chapters, see the *Introduction*, 5.

19 Cuius: 'the latter's'. The co-ord. rel. regularly takes first place in the clause because it is a connective. Hasdrubale: Hamilcar's son-in-law. See the *Introduction*, 5. imperatore: abl. referring to *Hasdrubale*, and completing the part. *facto* in the abl. abs. construction. equitatu: dat. gov.





Courtesy Pictorial Education and Evans Brothers Limited  
HANNIBAL IN SPAIN

Once when he was preparing to besiege a town he came upon a man planting turnip seeds which needed four months to grow. Hannibal assumed the city had four months' food and withdrew.

### 3. The Crossing of the Alps

Hac igitur aetate Hannibal cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est. Cuius post mortem, Hasdrubale imperatore facto, equitatu  
20 omni praefuit. Hoc quoque interfecto exercitus summam imperii ad eum detulit. Id, ad urbem Carthaginem delatum, publice probatum est. Sic Hannibal, minus quinque et viginti annis natus imperator factus, proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae bello

by the *prae-* in the compound verb *praefuit*.

21 ad eum detulit: 'bestowed on him'. Note that *delatum* shows another common meaning of this verb, 'disclose', 'announce'. The mercenary soldiers of the Carthaginian army were naturally interested in seeing

the best man chosen as commander. Id: 'this appointment', 'this act'. ad ...delatum: 'was announced at...'. 22 annis: abl. of comparison.

23 factus: tr. as a principal verb. triennio: abl. of time, which may be subdivided into 'time when' and 'time within which'; *triennio* expresses 'time within which'.

- 25 subegit; Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, vi expugnavit; tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit. Montes Pyrenaeos transiit. Ad Alpes postquam venit, quae Italiam a Gallia dividunt, quas nemo umquam cum exercitu ante



#### HANNIBAL POINTS OUT ITALY TO HIS TROOPS

At the summit of the Alps, Hannibal encourages his weary men by showing them the Po Valley below. See lines 146 ff.

24 *foederatam civitatem*: 'a city-state allied with Rome'.

26 *alterum*: 'the second'. In numbering, *alter* is often used for *secundus*. *fratre*: Hasdrubal. See the *Introduction*, 5.

27 *Ad Alpes*: placed first for emphasis, so that the conj. *postquam* is given a later position.

28 *quas*: 'and which'.

29 *Herculem Graium*: Nepos does not mind interpolating a little myth-

ology into his history! According to the legend, it was a herd of cattle, not an army, that the famous strong man led over the Pyrenees and the Alps. This bit of cattle-rustling was the tenth of the Twelve Labours of Hercules. The cattle belonged to Geryon, a three-headed king of Spain. As a souvenir of his exploit, Hercules erected a pillar on each of the two sides of the Straits of Gibraltar. These were thereafter called the Pillars of Hercules.

30 eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat, copias traduxit in Italiamque pervenit.

#### 4. Victories in Italy

Congressus erat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione consule eumque reppulerat. Cum hoc eodem apud Ticinum decernit sauciumque inde ac fugatum dimittit. Tertio idem Scipio cum collega Ti. Longo apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. Cum his  
35 proelium commisit, utrosque perfregit. Inde per Ligures Appenninum transiit, petens Etruriam. C. Flaminius consulem apud Trasumennum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit. Hinc in Apuliam pervenit. Ibi obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitum uno proelio fuga  
40 vit, Paulum consulem occidit.

#### 5. Outwitting Quintus Fabius Maximus

Hac pugna facta Romam profectus est nullo resistente. In pro-  
pinquis urbi montibus moratus est. Ubi aliquot ibi dies in castris

29-30 in Italiamque: = *et in Italiam*. Prepositions are not important enough to carry enclitics like *-que* and *-ne*.

31 Congressus erat: the unusual position of the verb gives additional emphasis.

32 reppulerat: not true. The Romans won a cavalry skirmish at the Rhone, but were too late to prevent their foe from crossing the river in their march toward the Alps.

32-33 decernit, dimittit: the historical or vivid present. Tr. as a perfect.

33 saucium, fugatum: agree with an understood *Scipionem*, the dir. obj. of *dimittit*.

35 utrosque: 'both groups'. The singular *utrumque* would be required for the meaning 'both individuals'. Notice that the *-que* is not a connective, but part of the word *uterque*.  
per Ligures: 'through the territory of the Ligurians'. This is a favourite abb. in Latin instead of *per fines* + gen.

37 circumventum: tr. as a principal verb, parallel to *occidit*. This method of translating a part. is particularly useful when the part., as here, mod. the dir. obj. of a verb.

38-39 C. Terentius: Varro.

39 L. Aemilius: Paulus. uno proelio: i.e. at Cannae.

39-40 fugavit, occidit: join by 'and' in translating. Roman writers frequently omit connectives, especially where (as here) rapidity of action is being emphasized. The words are then set off by commas instead of being joined by *et*. The name for this lack of connective is asyndeton.

41 Romam: 'toward Rome', 'for Rome'. With the names of cities and towns, the prep. *ad* is omitted, and the accus. by itself indicates place to which. So too *Capuam*, l. 43. So also with the names of small islands, e.g. *Cretam* in l. 74. In the same way, the abl. by itself (without *ab*) expresses place from which. Nepos' chronology is wrong in this chapter.



- consedit et dum Capuam revertitur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, ei se obiecit. Hic clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine  
 45 ullo detrimento exercitus se expedit Fabiumque, callidissimum imperatorem, fefellit. Namque nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuven-  
 corum deligata incendit et multitudinem concitatam immisit. Quo repentino visu tantus terror iniectus est exercitui Romano-  
 rum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus. Longum est omnia  
 50 enumerare proelia. Quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit.

## 6. The Battle of Zama

Hinc invictus ad patriam revocatus bellum gessit adversus P.

Hannibal did not march on Rome until five years after the battle of Cannae. nullo resistente: abl. abs.; in tr. use 'without' which is often useful in tr. a negative part.

42 montibus: 'hills', i.e. some of the Seven Hills of Rome.

43 Capuam: Capua was the only important Italian city that went over to Hannibal, and it did so largely because it had once aspired to be the chief city of Italy. Q. Fabius Maximus: Nepos' chronology is astray again, as Fabius was dictator in 217 B.C., the year before Cannae, and was hoodwinked by Hannibal then.

44 ei: dat. gov. by the ob- in the compound verb *obiecit*. locorum angustiis: 'by lack of room in the area'.

45 exercitus: 'to his army'. It is objective gen., obj. of the action of losing implied in the noun *detrimento*.

46-47 iuvenecorum: some of these animals had belonged to Italian farmers, and some were wild, according to Livy's version of this story.

47 deligata: tr. as a principal verb, parallel to *incendit*. See note on *circumventum*, l. 37. concitatam immisit: 'stamped' gives the com-

bined force of these two actions of 'arousing' and 'sending off'.

48 tantus terror . . . Romanorum: English prefers to reverse this notion and to say that the army was thrown into a panic, although in slang we sometimes speak of a scare being thrown into someone. The real purpose of the trick seems to have been to make the Romans think the Carthaginians were retreating by torchlight. exercitui: dat. gov. by the in- in the compound verb *iniecit*. The words *exercitui Romanorum* are given the last position in the clause for emphasis.

49 sit ausus: subj. mood in a result clause. The perfect is used here in sec. seq. instead of the imperf. to draw attention to the fact that not even one man dared once. Longum est: 'It would be tedious'. The Latin idiom uses the indic. (*est*), although the English idiom would suggest a subj.

49-50 omnia enumerare proelia: *omnia* and *proelia* are separated for emphasis.

50 nemo . . . restitit: Nepos once again overlooks Hannibal's defeat at the battle of Nola in 215 B.C. (See the note on *superior*, l. 5.)

- 55 Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis, quem ipse primo apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Ticinum, tertio apud Trebiam fugaverat. Cum hoc apud Zamam congressus est; pulsus biduo et duabus noctibus ad oppidum Hadrumentum pervenit, quod abest ab Zama circiter milia passuum trecenta. Ibi reliquos e fuga collegit; novis dilectibus paucis diebus multos coegit.

### 7. Balancing the Budget at Carthage

- 60 Sed Carthaginienses bello cum Romanis finito Hannibalem domum revocaverunt. Huc ut rediit, rex factus est. Ut enim Romae consules, sic Carthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. In eo magistratu pari diligentia se Hannibal prae-buit ac fuerat in bello. Namque ex novis vectigalibus non solum pecunia Romanis ex foedere pensa est sed etiam pecunia superfuit ac in aenario reposita est. Deinde Roma legati Carthaginem venerunt. Han-



SCIPIO AFRICANUS

The conqueror of Hannibal

- 53 Hinc: i.e., from Italy. *revocatus*: tr. as a principal verb.  
 56 biduo, duabus noctibus: abl. of time. See note on *triennio* in line 23.  
 57-58 circiter milia passuum trecenta: the exact location of Zama is not known, so that the distance stated by Nepos may be too great. Other-

wise, the time for the journey seems much too short; *milia* is acc. of extent of space; *passuum* is part. gen. 58 e fuga: 'after (lit., 'out of') their escape'.

61 Huc: displaces the conj. *ut* as first word in the clause because it acts as a connective with the preceding sentence. Words denoting place and time are often placed first in Latin clauses because of their value as connectives. *rex*: 'magistrate', 'suffete', See the *Introduction*, 3.

61-62 Ut... consules: sc. *creantur*. Lit., 'Just as consuls are elected'; tr. 'Like the consuls'.

62 Romae, Carthagine: voc. This case is used with the names of cities, towns and small islands to express location in or at. It takes the place of the prep. *in* with abl.

63 pari diligentia . . . ac: abl. of desc.; tr. 'as far-sighted as'.

64 ex: 'as a result of'.

65 ex: 'in accordance with'.

66 Roma, Carthaginem: the prepositions *ab* and *ad* are omitted with the names of cities, towns and small



nibal ratus se peti navem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad regem Antiochum perfugit. Hac re palam facta Poeni bona eius publicaverunt, domum a fundamentis disiecerunt, ipsum exsulem  
70 iudicaverunt.

## 8. Outwitting the Cretans

At Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. Antiochus potentissimus rex fuit. Hic tam cupidus belli ab Hannibale factus est ut usque a rubro mari bellum conatus sit inferre Italiae. Antiocho fugato, Hannibal, Romanos veritus, Cretam venit. Vidit autem vir om-  
75 nium callidissimus in magno se fore periculo propter avaritiam Cretensium; magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de qua sciebat exiisse famam. Itaque capit tale consilium. Amphoras complures explet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. Has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae, simulans se  
80 suas fortunas illorum fidei permittere. His in errorem inductis statuas aeneas, quas secum portabat, omni sua pecunia explet

islands in expressing motion from and motion toward.

67 se peti: 'that he was the one being sought', 'that he was their quarry'.

67-68 in Syriam ad regem Antiochum: 'to King Antiochus in Syria'. The Latin idiom stresses the idea of double destination; in order to get TO the king, Hannibal first had to get INTO Syria.

69 ipsum: 'Hannibal himself'.

72-73 usque a rubro mari . . . Italiae: the word order places as much distance as possible between the 'Red Sea' and 'Italy'. *Italiae* is dat. gov. by the *in*- in the compound verb *inferre*.

73 conatus sit: for the mood and tense, see note on *sit ausus* in line 49. Antiocho fugato: at the battle of Magnesia. See the *Introduction*, 5. 74 Cretam: see the note on *Romam*, l. 41. autem: see the note on *autem*, l. 8.

74-75 vir omnium callidissimus: in app. to the subject contained in *vi-*

*dit*. Tr. 'being the shrewdest of all men'.

75 in magno se fore periculo: the separation of *magno* and *periculo* pictures Hannibal (*se*) as right in the middle of the great peril.

76 magnam . . . pecuniam: 'a large sum of money'. Notice that the separation of the two words emphasizes the size of the sum.

77 exiisse: 'had got out', 'had got abroad'. tale: 'the following'; capit: is a historical or vivid present, to be translated by a past tense.

78 summas: sc. *amphoras*. operit: distinguish between *operio* and *aperio*, which have opposite meanings.

79 praesentibus principibus: abl. abs. So too *his inscientibus*, lines 83-84. 81 statuas aeneas: do not confuse the adj. *aeneas* with the name *Aeneas*. Hannibal seems to have carried a great deal of baggage with him in his exile. These statues very conveniently were hollow, with detachable heads or else detachable bases.

85 easque in propatulo domi abicit. Principes templum magna cura custodiunt, non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille his inscientibus tolleretur sua secumque duceret. Sic conservatis suis rebus Poenus, falsis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum pervenit.

### 9. Hannibal's Surrender Demanded

90 Eo tempore accidit casu ut legati Prusiae Romae apud T. Quinctium Flaminiū consularem cenarent atque ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex his unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. Id postero die Flaminius senatui detulit. Patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimabant, legatos in Bithyniam emisērunt, qui ab rege peterent ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibi que dederet. His Prusias negare ausus non est.

### 10. Hannibal's Death

95 Hannibal habitabat in castello quod ei a rege datum erat, idque

82 magna cura: abl. of manner. Note that in this use *cum* is usually omitted if there is an adj. (here, *magna*).

83 non tam a . . . quam ab: 'not so much against . . . as against . . .'

83-84 ne . . . duceret: a purp. clause. In tr. avoid 'lest'. Use instead 'in case he might', or 'to prevent him from'.

84-86 conservatis, falsis, pervenit: tr. as a series of three principal verbs with a common subject (*Poenus*).

85 ad Prusiam in Pontum: see the note on *in Syriam ad regem Antiochum* in lines 67-68.

87 accidit casu: it is not necessary to translate *casu* here. Romae: loc. See note on *Romae*, l. 62.

88-89 cenarent, diceret: subj. in a noun clause of result. The clause is the real subject of *accidit*.

91 Hannibale vivo: abl. abs. with condit. force. Tr. 'as long as . . .'. sine: 'free from'.

92 qui . . . peterent: an adjectival cl.

of purp. Tr. by an infin., which is the commonest method of expressing purp. in English.

92-93 ne . . . haberet, (ut) . . . dederet: ind. commands. Tr. by an infin. ('not to . . ., and to . . .'), which is the commonest method of expressing an ind. com. in English. inimicissimum suum: 'their bitterest enemy'.

93 secum haberet: 'keep in his kingdom', 'harbour'. suum, secum, sibi: in clauses which are part of ind. quotation, reflexives usually refer to the person who is being quoted, as he tends to dominate all clauses within the quotation, even if he is not the grammatical subject of each clause. Here, for instance, the Romans and their envoys, who are being quoted, are referred to in *suum* and in *sibi*. However, the sense may require a reflexive to refer to the subject of that clause, even though he is not the person quoted. Here, *secum* refers to Prusias. negare: 'to say "no"'.  
96 haberet: subj. in a result clause.

sic aedificaverat ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet. Huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos adesse. Ille ei imperavit ut omnes exitus aedificii circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret num eodem modo undique obsideretur. Puer cum celeriter quid vidisset renuntiavisset omnesque exitus occupatos esse ostendisset, sensit id non casu factum, sed se peti. Itaque memor pristinorum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuerat, sumpsit. Sic vir fortissimus, post multos variosque labores, anno mortuus est septuagesimo.

97: Huc: for its position, see the note on *Huc*, l. 61.

97-98 venissent, circumdedissent: subj. gov. by *cum*—temporal referring to past time. The plup. indicates an action already completed at the time of the main verb (*dixit*). So too *renuntiavisset* and *ostendisset*. (l. 102).

98 puer ab ianua: 'the porter'. *Puer* often means 'slave', and may refer to a man just as readily as to a boy. Compare the French word *garçon* as sometimes applied to a waiter, and the British Colonial use of the word 'boy' in reference to native servants. 100 circumiret, nuntiaret: subj. in ind. commands. *sibi*: refers, as usual, to the person quoted (Hannibal) rather than to the actual grammatical subject of the clause. See note on *suum*, *secum*, *sibi*, l. 93.

101 num . . . obsideretur: an ind. quest., requiring the subj. Notice that a verb of asking is not needed to introduce an ind. quest. Here, the

porter doesn't ask the question, but tells the answer to the question that is in Hannibal's mind. So too *quid vidisset* in lines 101-102. *Puer*: = *Puer a ianua*. *Puer* is subject of *renuntiavisset* and *ostendisset*, but for *sensit* we must supply the subject *Hannibal*.

103 se peti: see the note on *se peti*, l. 67.

104 virtutum: 'deeds of bravery'. The plural of an abstract noun may be used to indicate concrete examples. The gen. is objective, denoting the object (or recipient) of the action of remembering implied in the adj. *memor*. *secum*: as usual when no one is being quoted, the reflexive refers to the subject of its own clause. *consuerat*: = *consueverat*.

106 septuagesimo: The date of Hannibal's death is probably 183 B.C., but his age at death is uncertain. It seems to have been a little less than stated by Nepos, perhaps sixty-four years.

## PART II

### Hannibal's Star Rises: Livy

#### 1. Is It Peace or Is It War?

*With typical regard for the formalities of international law, Rome would not declare war on Carthage without first learning whether Hannibal's attack on her ally Saguntum had official authorization.*

- 107 Romani, quod omnia iusta ante bellum fieri volebant, legatos in Africam mittunt. Illi postquam Carthaginem venerunt et senatus datus est, Quintus Fabius Maximus, princeps legatorum, 'Pub-



#### IS IT PEACE OR WAR?

The Roman envoys in the Carthaginian Senate.

Courtesy E.N.I.C.

107 Romani, quod : 'because the Romans'; English idiom does not follow the favourite Latin device of placing the sub. clause within the main clause. iusta : 'in accordance with international law'.

108 mittunt: an historical or vivid

present. Tr. by a past tense. illi : subject of *venerunt*; placed before its conj. *postquam* in order to emphasize the change of subject.

Carthaginem : the prep. *ad* is regularly omitted with the names of cities, towns and small islands. se-



- 110 *licone consilio,* inquit, 'Hannibal Saguntum oppugnavit?'  
 Tum ex Carthaginiensibus unus: 'De hac re ego nihil dicturus  
 sum nisi quod a vobis didici. Vos enim, ubi C. Lutatius consul  
 primo nobiscum foedus icit, quia neque ex auctoritate patrum  
 nec populi iussu ictum erat, negavistis vos eo teneri; itaque aliud  
 115 foedus publico consilio ictum est. Si vos non tenent foedera ves-  
 tra nisi ea quae ex auctoritate patrum aut populi iussu icta sunt,  
 nos Hasdrubalis foedus, quod ex auctoritate nostra non ictum  
 est, tenere non potest. Proinde nolite Sagunti mentionem facere,  
 et dicite id quod dicere vultis.'  
 120 Tum Romanus sinu ex toga facto 'Hic,' inquit, 'vobis bellum et

natus: 'an audience with the (Carthaginian) senate'.

109-110 *Publico . . . consilio*: lit. 'by official advice'; tr. 'on his government's authority'.

112 *nisi quod* = *nisi (dicturus sum) (id) quod*; tr. 'except what'. C. Lutatius consul: Gaius Lutatius Catulus, who had smashed the Carthaginian fleet in the final battle of the First Punic War off Argusa Island, and who had drafted tentative peace terms.

113 *quia*: its clause explains what follows (*negavistis*), not what precedes (*icit*). Sub. clauses like this regularly refer to what follows, not to what precedes. *ex*: lit. '(arising) out of'; tr. 'in accordance with'. In Rome a bill became law in two stages, (1) as a result of the sanction (recommendation) of the senators, and (2) by order of the people (by the vote of the assembly).

114 *eo*: = *eo (foedere)*. *teneri*: 'held' in the sense of 'obligated'.

116 *nisi*: see *nisi* in l. 112.

117 *nos*: acc., dir. obj. of *tenere*. Its position shows it is parallel to *vos* in the first clause. Hasdrubalis foedus: i.e. the 'Ebro Treaty', which, according to Livy, expressly reaffirmed the independence of Sagun-

tum, although that town now lay well within the Carthaginian sphere of influence, on the wrong side of the Ebro River. Made by Hasdrubal, who was Hamilcar's successor in Spain, the treaty had never been ratified in Carthage. Now (seven years later) the Carthaginian spokesman challenges the validity of the treaty. The question of the powers of a general (and the extent to which his arrangements commit his government) has often become an important issue in the course of history. To take three examples, Pompey before joining Caesar's First Triumvirate in 60 B.C. found the Roman Senate unwilling to ratify his arrangements in the East; Lawrence of Arabia (T. E. Shaw) had a similar problem with the British government in World War I; and General MacArthur had a somewhat similar difficulty with the United States' government regarding Japan after World War II.

*quod*: conj. (rather than a rel. pron.)  
 119 *id quod*: see *quod* l. 112. The Carthaginian speaker implies that the Roman envoys' real purpose in coming is to declare war.

120 *ex*: lit. 'out of'; tr. 'in'. Fabius makes a fold (like a pocket) in his toga. *Hic*: adv., = *in hoc sinu*. *vo-*



pacem portamus: utrum vultis, sumite.' Statim haud minus ferociter Carthaginienses conclamaverunt 'Da utrum vis.' Et ubi is iterum sinu effuso se bellum dare dixit, omnes responderunt se bellum accipere.

## 2. Hannibal Dreams of Success

*Legend says Hannibal had this dream just before he crossed the Ebro River in defiance of the Ebro Treaty. Livy is quite willing to record a good yarn like this as history.*

- 125 His rebus cognitis, Hannibal Nova Carthagine ad Hiberum flumen profectus est. Ibi fama est in somno visum esse ab Hannibale iuvenem divina specie. Iuvenis 'Ego ab Iove', inquit, 'dux in Italiam tibi missus sum. Proinde sequere; noli respicere.' Primo timens, Hannibal secutus est, neque respexit. Deinde, ubi humana  
130 cura respexit, vidit post sese serpentem mira magnitudine et post serpentem nimbium. Iuvenis ei miranti, 'Vastitatem Italiae,' inquit, 'vides.' Laetus, Hannibal Hiberum copias traduxit.

## 3. 'The Alps Are No Obstacle'

*It is altogether likely that Hannibal did bolster his men's morale by a speech before attempting the Alps. The words placed in his mouth by Livy are true to the situation and to the character of the speaker but were not of course uttered in precisely this form.*

Exercitus Hannibalis timebat quidem hostes, nondum memoria

his : dat. of interest; tr. 'for you', NOT 'to you', which would be *ad vos*.

123 iterum : Fabius lets the fold in his toga go 'again', so that it falls to its original position. Here, *iterum* refers to place, whereas it usually refers to time.

125 Nova Carthagine : the prep. *ab* is regularly omitted with the names of cities, towns and small islands.

126 fama est : followed by an ind. statement because equivalent to a verb of saying.

127 divina specie : abl. of external desc.

127-128 dux . . . tibi : 'as a guide for you'.

128 sequere : imperative.

129-130 humana cura : 'with human (i.e. natural) curiosity'.

130 mira magnitudine : abl. of external desc.

131 Vastitatem : the dragon symbolized the war with Rome, and the cloud the destruction of Italy that was to follow in the war's wake.

132 Laetus : tr. as an adv.

133 timebat quidem : 'DID fear'; *quidem* emphasizes the word which precedes it, and seldom requires actual translation. So too in l. 139 *Alpes quidem*, 'the Alps', 'as for the Alps, they . . .'.

133-134 memoria superioris belli : i.e. their recollection of the defeat of Carthage in the First Punic War

- superioris belli deposita, sed magis iter immensum Alpesque  
 135 metuebat. Itaque Hannibal, postquam Italiam petere constituit,  
 apud milites orationem habuit. 'In conspectu,' inquit, 'Alpes ha-  
 betis, quarum alterum latus Italiae est. In ipsis portis hostium  
 fatigati consistitis. Quid Alpes aliud esse creditis quam montium  
 altitudines? Alpes quidem habitantur, coluntur. Hi legati Gallo-  
 140 rum qui adsunt non pinnis sublime elati Alpes transgressi sunt.  
 Neque erant maiores eorum indigenae sed olim Alpes cum liberis  
 ac coniugibus tuto transierunt. Militi armato nihil secum praeter  
 instrumenta belli portanti quid est invium aut inexsuperabile?  
 Romam, caput orbis terrarum, petentibus quid asperum atque  
 145 arduum esse videtur?'

#### 4. Hannibal Crosses the Alps

*The route by which Hannibal crossed the Alps has been the subject of much discussion, and Livy is not helpful. He is much more interested in painting a vivid word picture of the epic undertaking.*

Nono die in iugum Alpium pervenerunt. Per omnia nive op-

placed them under a psychological handicap.

134 iter immensum Alpesque: probably an example of the literary device known as hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units); tr. 'the tremendous journey over the Alps.' In hendiadys, the *que* (or *et*) adds an explanation; lit., 'the tremendous journey, that is to say, the Alps'.

135 metuebat: there is a contrast here between *metuo* ('I have a reasonable fear') and *timeo* ('I have a panicky or unreasonable fear'). Hannibal, postquam: for the word order, see the note, l. 107, on *Romani, quod*. Italiam petere: 'to make for Italy', 'to make Italy his objective'. This is the usual military meaning of *peto*. So too *petentibus*, l. 144.

136 apud: 'among', 'to'.

137 Italiae est: 'belongs to Italy'; lit., 'is Italy's'.

138-139 montium altitudines: = *montes altos*. This use of *altitudines* is an example of Livy's fondness for abstract nouns.

139 legati Gallorum: envoys from Cisalpine Gaul, i.e. Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps, modern Northern Italy. These Gauls were interested in siding against Rome whose northward expansion threatened them.

144 petentibus: a part. used as a noun; tr. 'to men who . . . '.

146 iugum: 'summit'.

146-147 Per omnia . . . oppleta: lit. 'over everything covered'; tr. 'over ground completely covered'. These words have been placed first in the sentence for emphasis, with the conj. *cum* placed later in its clause. *Incederet* and *videretur* are subj. mood governed by *cum* — temporal referring to the past. The imperf. is used in both to denote an action not yet

pleta cum prima luce agmen incederet et desperatio in omnium vultu videretur, Hannibal in promontorio unde longe ac late prospectus erat consistere iussis militibus Italiam ostendit, moeniaque eos tum transgredi non Italiae modo sed etiam urbis Romanae.

Procedere inde agmen coepit. Ceterum iter multo difficilius fuit quam in ascensu fuerat. Omnis enim via ita praeceps, angusta, lubrica erat, ut non sustinere se a lapsu possent atque alii super alios et iumenta et homines occiderent. Hoc modo in Italiam pervenerunt, quinto decimo die Alpibus superatis.

completed before the action of the principal verb.

146-151 *Per omnia . . . urbis Romanae*: this sentence is a typical Latin "period". A periodic sentence gives a series of subordinate ideas in chronological order, and ends by way of climax with the principal idea. In this sentence, notice the chronological presentation of the actions and ideas:

1. *Per* ..... *oppleta*  
—snow everywhere (a phrase given emphatic first position)
2. *cum* ..... *incederet*  
—a column moving ("when" — clause)
3. *et desperatio* ..... *videretur*  
—despair on all faces ("when" — clause)
4. *Hannibal in promontorio* .....  
—an elevation (part of principal clause)
5. *unde* ..... *prospectus erat*  
—a far view (rel. cl.)
6. *consistere* ..... *militibus*  
—an order to halt (part.)
7. *Italiam ostendit* ..... | climax  
—Italy sighted ..... | (the rest)
8. *moenia Romanae* ..... | of the prin-  
—encouragement given | cipal clause)

English depends upon shorter sentences for its effectiveness. Therefore in translating ignore the subj. conj. *cum*, and try breaking the one

Latin period into these three shorter English sentences:

- (1) The column was moving on \_\_\_\_\_, and despair was seen \_\_\_\_\_.
  - (2) Hannibal (therefore) ordered the soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ and pointed out Italy.
  - (3) (He also pointed) out that at that moment they \_\_\_\_\_.
- 149 *militibus* : dat. (NOT abl. abs.), ind. obj. of *ostendit*. Tr. *iussis* by a principal verb, parallel to *ostendit*.  
150 *eos transgredi*: an ind. statement gov. by the notion of speaking contained in *ostendit*.  
152 *Ceterum* : a conj. Do not confuse it with the pl. adj. *ceteri*, although originally the two were related. multo: abl. of measure of diff.  
153 *Omnis . . . via* : 'all the way'; *tota* would be more usual here than *omnis*, which usually refers to number ('every'). *praeceps*, *angusta*, *lubrica* : an example of a series with no connectives (A, B, C). The alternative is to put in ALL the connectives (A *et* B *et* C). English, of course, prefers to say A, B and C.  
154 *alii* : in app. to the subjects *iumenta* and *homines*; tr. 'on top of one another' (lit., 'some over others').  
154-155 *possent*, *occiderent* : subj. mood in result clauses introduced by

## 5. The Romans Learn a Hard Lesson at the Ticinus River

*Before the battle, the consul Scipio had sailed back from the Rhone, where he had arrived too late to intercept Hannibal's fast-moving army. Now, at the Ticinus, the Romans discovered that Hannibal's cavalry was well-nigh invincible. Scipio was wounded and saved only by the quick thinking of his seventeen-year-old son. Note this dramatic touch; in the midst of defeat a glimpse is given of the young Scipio who is destined later to conquer Hannibal at Zama.*

- Pavor perterritur Romanos, auxitque timorem consulis vulnus periculumque a filio aversum. Hic erat iuvenis, cui confecti huius belli laus est, Africanus ob egregiam victoriam de Hannibale  
 160 Poenisque appellatus. Equitatus consulem in medium acceptum non armis modo sed etiam corporibus protegens in castra reduxit. Hoc primum cum Hannibale proelium fuit; quo facile Romani intellexerunt equitatu meliorem Poenum esse et ob id campos patentés, quales sunt inter Padum Alpesque, ad pugnam Romanis  
 165 idoneos non esse.

*ut*, which by itself (even without a preceding *sic* or *ita*) sometimes means 'so that', 'with the result that'. Notice that *occiderent* is from *occido* (not from *occido*).

155 Hoc modo: abl. of manner.

156 quinto . . . superatis : an example of Livy's fondness for "tacking on" a sub. clause (here, an abl. abs.), after the main verb seems to have brought the sentence to a close.

158. periculumque : adding a second subject for *auxit*: tr. 'and so did his peril'.

158-159 cui . . . est : 'to whom belongs'; the dat. with *sum* may denote poss. confecti huius belli laus : lit. 'the glory of this ended war'; tr. 'the glory of having ended this war'. The obj. gen. often expresses a relationship between two nouns (here, *laus* and *belli*).

159 victoriam de Hannibale : de

('from') is the regular Latin idiom. but English prefers to say 'over'.

160 appellatus : tr. this part. as a principal verb. acceptum : tr. as a principal verb parallel to *reduxit*. A part. which modifies a dir. object (here, *consulem*) is often best translated in this way.

162 quo : a co-ord. rel. pron. referring to its antecedent *proelium*. It is abl. of means; 'from it', 'from this battle'.

163 equitatu : abl. of respect.

164 quales : = (*tales*) *quales*. Lit. 'such ones of what sort'; tr. 'like the ones which'. ad : this prep. often expresses purp. ('for').

170 ne quieto quidem hoste : abl. abs. Lit., 'not even (if) his foe (being) inactive'. In translating, transfer the negative 'not' to the main verb; 'did not intend . . . even if his foe was . . .', 'would not have been . . .



## 6. The Consul Flaminius Precipitates the Battle of Lake Trasimene

*After Ticinus, Scipio lost another battle at the Trebia River. One of the new consuls, Flaminius, threw caution to the winds in his desire to pin Hannibal down in Etruria, where the Carthaginians had wintered. The episode narrated here took place at Arretium, where Flaminius had arrived only to discover that Hannibal had slipped southward by another route, and was now between the Roman army and Rome.*

- 170 Flaminius ne quieto quidem hoste ipse quieturus erat. Tum vero, postquam res sociorum ante oculos suos vastari vidit, suum id dedecus esse ratus, ceteris omnibus in concilio salutaria magis quam speciosa suadentibus, iratus se ex concilio proiecit; signum-



Courtesy E.N.I.C.

### THE CONSUL FLAMINIUS IS IMPATIENT TO PURSUE HANNIBAL

even if his foe had been . . . .'. Tum vero: 'then', or else 'then, you may be sure'. Vero is used much like quidem to emphasize the word before it. See note on quidem, l. 133.

171-172 suum id dedecus esse ratus: 'he thought that it was a personal disgrace'. Id is accus., subject of the infin. esse. The separation of suum and dedecus (by the placing of id between them) emphasizes the thought.

172-173 ceteris omnibus . . . suadentibus: abl. abs.; tr. 'when all the other officers in the meeting were advising a safe course of action rather than a spectacular one'. Salutaria and speciosa are neut. pl. adjectives used as nouns, and are in the accus. case, as objects of suadentibus. The person advised would (if expressed) be the ind. obj., and would therefore be in the dat. case.

173 iratus: tr. as an adv. Compare Laetus, l. 132.



- 175 que pugnae cum proposuisset, 'Immo Arretii ante moenia sedeamus,' inquit, 'hic enim patria et penates sunt. Hannibal emissus e manibus populetur Italiam ad moeniaque Romana perveniat.' Cum ocius signa convelli iuberet et ipse in equum insiluisset, equus improviso concidit consulemque super caput proiecit. Per-
- 180 territis foedo omine omnibus, praeterea nuntiatur signiferum signum convellere non posse. Conversus ad nuntium, 'Num litteras quoque,' inquit, 'ab senatu adfers, quae me rem gerere vetent? Abi, nuntia ut effodiant signum, si propter timorem manu convellere non possint.' Incedere inde agmen coepit.

173-174 *signumque pugnae cum proposuisset*: 'when he had displayed the battle-signal'. The signal was a red flag raised in front of the commander's headquarters. *Pugnae* is obj. gen. The words *signum pugnae* are given the emphatic first position in the clause, with the conj. *cum* placed later. *Proposuisset* is subj. mood gov. by *cum*—temporal referring to the past. It is plup. to denote an action completed before the time of the principal verb (*inquit*).

174 *Immo*: here, it is a sarcastic 'of course!' Often, it is merely a word of rebuttal, 'on the contrary', 'instead'.

174-175 *sedeamus*: hortatory subj.

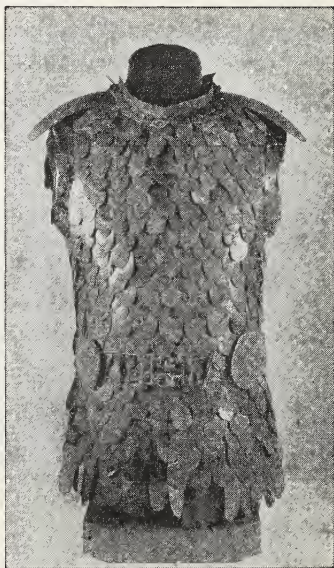
175 *hic*: i.e. at Arretium (instead of at Rome). *penates*: household gods, associated particularly with the family food supply; tr. 'homes'. *emissus*: tr. as a juss. subj. parallel to *populetur* and *perveniat*. 'Let Hannibal slip . . .'.

177 *Cum . . . insiluisset*: in tr. omit *cum* and treat as a principal clause. Both *iuberet* and *insiluisset* are subj. mood gov. by *cum*—temporal referring to the past. Notice the difference in the tense of the two verbs.

178 *super caput*: 'over its head'.

178-179 *perterritis . . . omnibus*: tr. as a principal clause.

180 *Conversus*: 'turning'. The perf.



Courtesy R.O.M.A.

#### ARMOUR FOUND IN L. TRASIMENE

part. pass. is here used with reflexive value.

180-181 'Num . . . adfers': sarcastic; 'You aren't (by any chance) . . . , are you?' Such a letter would have formed the grand climax in the series of obstacles!

181 *quae . . . vetent*: 'to forbid me

## 7. Quintus Fabius Maximus Is Appointed Dictator

*Hannibal had struck south through the marshes. In the hardships of this march, he lost the use of one eye, but he had an ambush ready for Flaminius when the latter came charging south again. Trapped between Lake Trasimene and the Appennines, the Roman army was almost annihilated. Flaminius too lost his life. In this crisis a dictator was appointed with absolute power (under martial law) for six months.*

185 Post caedem apud Trasumennum acceptam, dictatorem populus creavit Q. Fabium Maximum et magistrum equitum M. Minucium Rufum; iisque negotium ab senatu datum est, ut muros turresque urbis confirmarent et praesidia disponderent pontesque rumperent fluminum. Namque pro urbe ac penetibus proelio decertare constituerant quoniam Italiam tueri non potuerant.

## 8. The 'Fabian Policy' Worries Hannibal

*To this day a 'Fabian Policy' denotes a cautious policy of watchful waiting. The dictator's plan was undoubtedly sound as a temporary expedient, but from its very nature could never be a popular one in the eyes of men of action.*

190 Dictator exercitu accepto in viam Latinam egressus est, unde,

to engage'. *Vetent* is subj. mood in a rel. clause of purp.

182 *nuntia ut effodiant* : 'tell them to DIG up'; *effodiant* is subj. mood in an ind. com. *propter timorem* : 'because of their quaking'.

183 *possint* : subj. mood in a sub. clause in ind. disc. In other words, the subj. indicates that the "if"-clause is to be part of the message. The consul Flaminius already had a reputation for a sacrilegious disregard of the customary religious ceremonies. He had led his army out without waiting for the auspices, so anxious was he to engage Hannibal. 185 Q. Fabium Maximum : he had been the spokesman of the Roman peace mission to Carthage (lines 107-124).

186 *iisque* : *iis* is another form of

*eis*. *negotium* : 'instructions' (lit., 'the task').

187-188 *confirmarent, disponderent, rumperent* : subj. mood in ind. com. *pontes . . . fluminum* : 'the bridges over the rivers'. Rivers around Rome, like the Tiber and the Anio, are meant.

190 *exercitu accepto* : Fabius took command of the army from the consul Gnaeus Servilius, who had been Flaminius' colleague. *viam Latinam* : the Latin Way was an important south-bound road out of Rome; it ran into the Appian Way. *unde* : in tr., begin a new sentence with this word; 'From here . . . '.

191 *summa cum cura* : abl. of manner. Usually *cum* is dropped in such expressions when an adj. is present, but there are exceptions, as here.

itineribus summa cum cura exploratis, exercitum ad hostem duxit, numquam fortunae se permissurus. Haud procul Arpis in conspectu hostium castra posuit. Simul Poenus copias eduxit in aciem potestatemque pugnandi fecit. Sed ubi quieta omnia apud hostes  
 195 vidit, increpans victos esse illos Martios animos Romanorum, in castra rediit; ceterum tacita cura animum incessit quod cum duce haudquaquam Flamini simili futura sibi res esset ac tum demum, docti malis, Romani parem Hannibali ducem quaesivissent. Et prudentiam quidem novi dictatoris protinus timuit; constantiam  
 200 nondum expertus, temptare animum movendo crebro castra populandoque in oculis eius agros sociorum coepit. Fabius per loca alta agmen ducebat mediocri ab hoste intervallo, ut neque omitteret eum neque congraderetur.

hostem : the sing. is used because the one man Hannibal is uppermost in Fabius' mind. So too *Poenus* in l. 193.

192 permissurus : fut. part. expressing intention. Arpis : see the note on *Nova Carthagine*, l. 125.

194 pugnandi : the gen. of the gerund, completing the meaning of *potestatem* (obj. gen.). *quieta omnia : esse* is understood; ind. statement.

195 increpans : tr. as a principal verb; 'shouted the taunt that'. It is followed by an ind. statement. *illos Martios animos* : 'that much-vaunted warlike spirit (or morale)'. *Ille* sometimes means 'that famous'. Hannibal is sneering at the Romans' claim that they were descended from the god Mars, through Romulus.

196 ceterum : a conj. See note, l. 152. *incessit* : 'entered'.

196-197 quod futura sibi res esset : 'because, to quote his thoughts (*quod* with subj. used to quote someone's reason), his (*sibi*, dat. of poss.) dealings (*res*) were going to be (*futura esset*, separated for emphasis)'.

197 Flamini : gen., sometimes gov. by *similis* and *dissimilis* instead of a dat.

198 quaesivissent : 'had sought out'. For the subj., see note on *esset*, l. 197. 199 quidem : merely emphasizes *prudentiam*. See note on *quidem*, l. 133.

200 expertus : causal. *animum : dir. obj. of temptare*.

200-201 movendo, populando : gerunds, each governing a dir. obj.; this is not usual with gerunds.

201 in : 'before'.

202 mediocri intervallo : 'at a moderate distance'. The construction is really an abl. absolute; lit., 'the distance (being) moderate'.

202-203 ut . . . congraderetur : result clauses; for the use of *ut*, see note, l. 154. Fabius kept Hannibal well in sight, but did not engage him.

204 Accesserant duae res : 'in addition (i.e. to the unpopular Fabian policy) there had been two incidents'. The word *res* can be given almost any meaning by its context; it has been likened to a blank cheque, with the proper meaning to be filled in as required. *ad augendam invidiam dictatoris* : expresses purp.; 'to increase'; *augendam* is a gerundive, i.e., an adj., mod. *invidiam*. So too, *permutandis* (l. 209) is a gerundive, mod. *captivis*.

## 9. Quintus Fabius Maximus 'Cunctator' Grows Unpopular

*Note that Livy chooses to assign trickery, not chivalry, as Hannibal's motive in sparing the Roman dictator's farm. This is in keeping with his strong Roman bias. To Livy, 'Punic honour' (Punica fides) means 'trickery', yet Hannibal seems to have been a chivalrous foe.*

Accesserant duae res ad augendam invidiam dictatoris, una, insidiis ac dolo Hannibalis, quod, cum a perfugis ei demonstratus esset ager dictatoris, omnibus agris circa vastatis, ab uno eo ferrum ignemque et vim omnem hostium abstinere iussit, ut dictator occulti alicuius pacti praemium accipere videretur; altera dictatoris ipsius facto, quod in permutandis captivis non exspectata senatus auctoritas est.

Namque in permutandis captivis convenerat inter duces Romanum Poenumque ut, quae pars plures reciperet quam daret, argentum in militem praestaret. Ducentos quadraginta septem

204-205 *insidiis ac dolo*: abl. of means; tr., 'caused by a crafty trick'. For hendiadys, see note on *iter immensum Alpesque*, l. 134.

205 *quod*: '(namely,) the fact that'. This noun clause is in app. to *una (res)*, which is itself in app. to *duae res*. The second incident is introduced in exactly parallel form by the words *altera, quod* (lines 208-209).

205-206 *demonstratus esset*: subj. mood gov. by *cum*—temporal referring to past time.

206 *omnibus . . . vastatis*: tr. *vastatis* by a principal verb, parallel to *iussit*.

206-207 *ferrum ignemque et vim omnem hostium*: 'fire and sword and all enemy violence'. Note that the Latin idiom puts *ferrum* before *ignem*.

207-208 *ut . . . videretur*: purp. clause.

208 *pacti*: tr. the gen. by 'for'; the obj. gen. is used, as often, to show the relationship between two nouns.

209 *facto*: abl. of means, parallel to

*insidiis ac dolo* in lines 204-205; lit., 'caused by an act'; i.e., 'an act'.

209-210 *non . . . auctoritas est*: tr. as if active; 'he did not . . .'. It was a matter of courtesy, rather than a constitutional necessity, for the dictator to consult the senate regarding the exchange of prisoners. Notice, however, that all expenditures of public funds had to be authorized by the senate, even during a dictatorship.

211 *convenerat*: 'it had been agreed'; since it is equivalent to a verb of speaking or ordering it is followed here by *ut* and the subj. in a clause of ind. com. (*ut praestaret*) to which in turn are attached sub. clauses in ind. disc. (*quae . . . reciperet, quam . . . daret*).

212 *quae pars*: 'the side which'. Latin frequently places the antecedent (here, *pars*) inside the rel. clause. This is referred to as the incorporation of the antecedent.

213 *argentum . . . praestaret*: 'should make good (or furnish) a



- 215 cum plures Romanus quam Poenus recepisset, argentum pro eis debitum, quoniam Fabius non consuluerat patres, tardius erogabatur. Tamen ille non vastatum ab hoste agrum, misso Romam Quinto filio, vendidit fidemque publicam sua pecunia solvit.

### 10. Fabius Gives Advice to the Consul Lucius Aemilius Paulus

*At the end of the six months, the new consuls took over the conduct of the war from Fabius. One of them, Lucius Aemilius Paulus, favoured a continuance of the Fabian policy, but the other, Gaius Terentius Varro, was eager to engage Hannibal at once.*

- 220 Q. Fabius Maximus sic Paulum proficiscentem allocutus esse fertur: 'Si collegam tui similem, L. Aemili, haberes aut tu collegae tui esses similis, inutilis esset oratio mea. Erras enim, L. Paule, si tibi minus certaminis cum C. Terentio quam cum Hannibale futurum credis.

'Una ratio belli gerendi adversus Hannibalem est, qua ego bellum gessi. In Italia bellum gerimus, in patria ac solo nostro; omnia

sum of silver per soldier (or, for each soldier)'. The prep. *in* has a distributive force (i.e., the notion of per one, per two, etc).

214 cum: either temp. or conc. It is placed later in its clause to give the emphatic first position to the number (*Ducentos quadraginta septem*). Tr. here as a principal clause, ignoring *cum*, and break the sentence at *recepisset*.

215 quoniam . . . patres: explains why the money 'was being voted too slowly', not why it was 'owing'. See the note on *quia*, l. 113. tardius: abs. comp.

216 ille: indicates a new subject, i.e. Fabius. hoste: sing. because referring specifically to Hannibal. non vastatum: tr. by a rel. clause. Romam: see note on *Carthaginem*, l. 108.

217 fidemque solvit: 'and paid (or 'discharged') the debt (lit., pledge)'. 218 proficiscentem: 'when the latter (i.e. Paulus) was setting out'. In English a special effort is needed to show that this word describes Paulus, not Fabius.

219 tui: gen. of *tu*. *Similis* and *dis-similis* usually govern a dat. but regularly govern instead the gen. of pers. pronouns (e.g. *tui*), and sometimes also the gen. of other words (e.g. *collegae tui*, in lines 219-220). L. Aemili: voc.; names ending in *-ius* have their voc. in *-i*, as does *filius*.

219-220. Si . . . haberes aut . . . esses, . . . esset: pres. untrue condit. 220-221 Erras . . . si . . . credis: Pres. simple condit. 221-222 tibi . . . futurum (esse): 'that you (*tibi*, dat. of possessor) will have less of a struggle (*certaminis*, partitive gen.)'.

223 gerendi: a gerundive, i.e. an adj. agreeing with *belli*. qua: = *ea qua*; 'the one by which'.

- 225 circa plena civium ac sociorum sunt, qui nos armis, viris, equis, com meatibus iuvant iuvabuntque. Hannibal contra in aliena, in hostili est terra, inter omnia inimica infestaque, procul ab domo, a patria; nullae eum urbes accipiunt, nulla moenia; partem vix tertiam exercitus eius habet quem flumen Hiberum traiecit. Sedendo superaturi sumus eum. Haec una salutis est via, L. Paule, quam cives difficilem tibi magis quam hostes facient. Omnia audentem contemnet Hannibal, nihil temere agentem metuet. Omnia non properanti certa erunt; festinatio improvida est et caeca.'
- 230

### 11. The Other Consul Varro Precipitates the Disaster at Cannae

*Each consul had command on alternate days. In an emergency this was a weak arrangement, as was demonstrated at Cannae. Here too, the two consuls could not agree on policy.*

- Cum sententia utriusque consulis esset eadem quae antea semper fuerat, ceterum Varroni fere omnes, Paulo nemo fere adsentiretur, ad nobilitandas clade Romana Cannas urgente fato profecti sunt.
- 235

224 solo : a noun. Do not confuse *sōlus* the adj. with *sōlum* the noun.  
224-225 omnia circa : lit., 'everything round about'.

226 com meatibus : usually a collective sing., but here plural, perhaps to parallel *armis, viris, equis*, or perhaps in reference to repeated trips of supply-trains. contra : adv.; 'on the other hand'.

227 inter . . . infestaque : 'amid complete (*omnia*, lit., all things) unfriendliness and hostility'. ab domo : instead of *domo*, because adverbs of distance like *longe* and *procul* usually require *ab*.

228-229 partem vix tertiam : 'scarcely one-third'.

229 eius : adj. mod. the gen. *exercitus* (NOT a pronoun). quem flumen Hiberum traiecit: the verb governs two direct objects; *quem* is the object of *-iecit*, and *flumen* is the object of *tra-*, which may also be repeated as *trans* (*flumen*).

229-230 Sedendo : gerund; 'by avoiding battle.'

230 salutis via : 'road to safety', 'safe way'; *salutis* is objective gen., which often expresses a relationship between two nouns.

231 quam : 'and . . . it'.

231-232 audentem : a pres. part. used as a noun. Tr., 'the man who gambles all'. So too *agentem* (l. 232), and (*non*) *properanti* (l. 233).

234-235 Cum . . . esset . . . adsentiretur : either temporal or causal. In translating, omit *cum* and tr. by principal clauses. Notice that *ceterum* is a conj. joining the two cum-clauses. See note on *ceterum*, l. 152.

234 eadem quae : 'the same as'.

235 omnes : its verb is the plural *adsentirentur*, which is to be understood from the sing. *adsentiretur* in the next clause. nemo fere : 'whereas scarcely anyone'; lit., 'almost no one'. Notice that Livy has used asyndeton ('lack of connective') to contrast this clause with the preceding one.

236 ad nobilitandas . . . Cannas : expressing purpose—not so much the Romans' own purpose, as the pur-



THE PLAIN AT CANNAE

Courtesy E. Mazo

The site of the disastrous defeat of the Romans at the hands of the Carthaginian Hannibal.

Prope eum vicum Hannibal castra posuerat aversa a vento, qui per campos siccis nubes pulveris vehebat.

240 Hannibal spem nactus consules locis aptis ad equestrem pugnam, qua parte virium invictus erat, potestatem pugnandi facturos esse, instruit aciem, et Numidas trans flumen mittit. Illi ipsas prope portas Romanorum equis vecti sunt. Id vero adeo indignum visum est ut ob hanc causam unam Romani non protinus transirent flu-

pose of destiny. *urgente fato* : abl. abs.; 'with doom hanging heavy over them'.

237 *aversa a vento* : 'with its back to the wind'; *aversa mod. castra*.

239 *spem nactus* : 'taking hope'. The phrase is followed by the same construction as *spero*, i.e. acc. and fut. infin. *locis aptis* : abl. of place where. The prep. *in* is usually omitted if *locus* has a modifier, as here (*aptis*).

240 *qua parte virium* : 'in this branch (or arm) of his forces'; *parte* is abl. of respect. *erat* : indic., because this clause is inserted by Livy, and is

not quoted as part of Hannibal's thoughts.

241 *instruit, mittit* : historical or vivid present. *Numidas* : these were Hannibal's light cavalry, bareback riders from North Africa. His heavy cavalry were Spaniards. *Illi* : change of subject.

242 *equis* : abl. of means; tr., 'on their horses'. *Id vero* : 'this'. See note on *vero*, l. 170. *adeo* : an adv. Do not confuse it with the verb of the same spelling. It is followed by the result clause *ut . . . transirent, . . . instruerentque*.

243-244 *ob. . . unam . . . quod* : lit.,

men instruerentque aciem, quod summa imperii eo die Paulo  
 245 fuit. Itaque postero die Varro, cui eius diei imperium erat, nihil  
 consulto collega, signum proposuit instructasque copias flumen  
 traduxit, sequente Paulo, quia magis non probare quam non  
 iuvare consilium poterat.

## 12. Paulus Dies at Cannae

*The disaster at Cannae was the worst suffered by the Romans. The fighting was over when the incident related here took place. The scene is a famous example of Livy's power to paint a vivid picture in words.*

Cn. Cornelius Lentulus tribunus militum cum praetervehens  
 250 equo, sedentem in saxo, cruore oppletum, consulem vidisset, 'L. Aemili,' inquit, 'quem unum esse sine culpa cladis hodiernae dei iudicare debent, cape hunc equum, dum et tibi virium aliquid

'for this reason only, the fact that'. The *quod*-clause is in app. to *causam*. Freely, 'the only reason the Romans did not . . . was the fact that . . . '.

244-245 Paulo fuit : see note on *cui est*, in lines 158-159. So too *cui erat*, l. 245.

245 eius diei : gen. of desc.

245-246 nihil consulto collega : abl. abs.; 'without consulting his colleague at all'. *Nihil* is adverbial accus., i.e. a neut. accus. pron. used as an adv. It is more emphatic than *non*.

246 signum proposuit : just as Flaminus had done before him. See note, lines 173-174. *instructas* : tr. as a main verb, parallel to *traduxit*. See note on *acceptum*, l. 160. *copias flumen* : see note on *quem flumen Hiberum traiecit*, l. 229.

247 sequente Paulo : abl. abs. Tr. as a principal clause, and begin a new English sentence here.

247-248 quia . . . poterat : 'because he was better (*magis*, lit., 'more') able to disapprove of (*non probare*) the plan than he was to refuse (*non*) to support it (*iuvare*)'. He was able

to withhold his approval, but not to withhold his cooperation.

249 Cn. Cornelius . . . inquit : These words form a typical Latin periodic sentence, as defined in the note on lines 146-151. Observe the chronological presentation of the actions and ideas.

249-250 praetervehens, vidisset : tr. as principal verbs. English depends for its effectiveness upon shorter sentences.

250 vidisset : subj. mood gov. by *cum*-temporal referring to past time. Note that the main verb *inquit* is equivalent to a past tense, and so introduces sec. seq.

251 L. Aemili : see note on *L. Aemili*, l. 219. *quem unum* : 'the one man whom'; lit., 'whom alone'. *cladis hodiernae* : obj. gen. with *culpa*; tr. 'for'.

252-253 dum et . . . superest et . . . possum : do not translate the first *et*. Latin is very fond of balancing pairs of ideas with such expressions as *et . . . et*, *aut . . . aut*, *neque . . . neque*. *tibi . . . superest* : 'you (*tibi*, dat. of int.) have some strength (*virium*, part. gen.) left'.



superest et comes ego te tollere possum ac protegere. Noli funestam hanc pugnam morte consulis facere; etiam sine hoc satis lacrimarum luctusque est.'

255 Ad ea consul: 'Tu quidem, Cn. Corneli, abi, nuntia publice patribus ut urbem Romanam muniant; nuntia privatim Q. Fabio, L. Aemilium praeceptorum eius memorem et vixisse et mori. Me in hac caede militum meorum patere interire, ne accusator collegae mei fiam.'

260 Haec eos agentes prius turba fugientium civium, deinde hostes oppressere; consulem, nescientes quis esset, cecidere telis, Lentulum inter tumultum abstulit equus. Consul alter seu casu seu consilio cum quinquaginta fere equitibus Venusiam perfugit.

265 Haec est pugna Cannensis, Alliensi calamitati nobilitate par.

253 comes : in app. to *ego*; 'as your companion'.

254-255 lacrimarum: 'weeping', 'sadness'; part. gen., as is *luctus*.

256 Ad ea: 'said (*inquit*, understood) in reply to (*Ad*) this (*ea* = *ea verba*)'. Tu quidem: 'you'. See note on *quidem*, l. 133.

257 ut muniant : an ind. com. gov. by *nuntia* 'tell', l. 256; *nuntia* in l. 257, introduces an ind. statement.

258 praeceptorum . . . mori : 'was mindful of his (*eius*, subjective gen.) instructions (*praeceptorum*, obj. gen.) in life (*vixisse*) and at his death (*mori*)'.

259 militum : obj. gen. patere interire: which of these two words is an imperative, and which an infinitive?

259-260 ne . . . fiam : 'in case (*ne*, introducing a neg. purp.) I become my colleague's (*collegae mei*, objective gen.) accuser (*accusator*, pred. nom., subjective completion)'. Notice that a pass. verb. (e.g. *fiam*) is a copula verb.

261 Haec eos : both words are direct objects, *haec* of *agentes* ('while they were saying') *eos* of *oppressere* ('overtook', 'swamped'). prius : adv.; prius . . . deinde = primum . . . deinde, listing the two subjects of *oppressere*. The first subject, *turba civium*, refers to the fleeing survivors of what had been the Roman army.

262 quis esset : ind. quest. consulem, Lentulum : both given the emphatic first position; 'as for the consul', 'as for Lentulus'.

263 Consul alter : Varro.

263-264 seu . . . consilio : 'perhaps by accident, perhaps by intention'.

264 Venusiam : see note on *Carthaginem*, l. 108.

265 Haec est : English would say 'Such was'. Alliensi : 'at the Allia river'. Here, near Rome, the Roman army had disgraced itself by fleeing before Brennus' Gauls in 390 B.C. The anniversary of this defeat was marked in black on Roman calendars. nobilitate : abl. of respect.

# PART III

## Hannibal's Star Sets: Livy

At Cannae, Hannibal's star had reached its zenith. From that brilliant victory onwards, his star slowly set.

Hannibal decided not to march upon the city of Rome from Cannae. This decision has been a lively subject of debate among military experts ever since. It appears that Hannibal had sound reasons for it. The strongest arm of his forces, his cavalry, would have been of no use in siege operations. Also, siege machinery was not fully developed in his day. (It was Julius Caesar, 150 years later, who developed it to a point of real efficiency). In any case, he had not attempted to bring such heavy equipment over the Alps. His decision was not, then, a mistake in judgment on Han-



NEWS OF CANNAE REACHES ROME

A survivor tells shocked citizens of the disaster at Cannae.

nibal's part, but it *was* an indication of the weakness of his position.

Because of the wisdom of the treatment accorded her allies by Rome, no important cities helped Hannibal, except Syracuse in Sicily and Capua in Campania. Both these cities were taken and punished by the Romans, and Hannibal proved helpless to protect them.

During the wearing years spent by Hannibal in Italy, supplies and reinforcements were denied to him by his political rivals in Carthage. Hanno and his land-owning aristocrats had gained the upper hand. A victory by Hannibal could only strengthen the merchant-democrats, and might make Hannibal himself so powerful that he could establish dictatorial powers on his return to Carthage. It is not surprising, therefore, that Hannibal was permitted to languish without assistance in Italy.

### 1. Hannibal Decides Not to Advance on Rome from Cannae

*Livy assumes that it was a mistake in judgment on Hannibal's part not to follow up his advantage.*

Ceteri legati Hannibali victori gratulabantur. 'Tanto bello confecto,' inquit, 'tibi et fessis militibus quietem da.' Sed Maharbal, praefectus equitum, rebatur Hannibalem morari non debere. 'Immo die quinto' inquit, 'victor in Capitolio epulaberis. Sequere; cum equitatu praecedam. Romani scient prius te venisse quam venturum esse.' Hannibal dixit voluntatem se laudare Maharbalis, sed se nolle consilium statim capere. Tum Maharbal: 'Non

266 bello : Hannibal's officers (*legati*) think that his victory at Cannae means the end of the entire war.  
269 Immo : 'on the contrary'; this word regularly, as here, expresses opposition to what has been said just before. *die quinto*: abl. of time. *victor*: 'as victor', 'as a conqueror'. *Capitolio*: the *Capitolium* was the temple of Jupiter. To it victorious Roman generals proceeded in their victory parades. So too, in World War I, the German Kaiser was scheduled to eat his Christmas dinner in Paris in 1914.

270 prius . . . quam : = *priusquam*. In tr. ignore *prius* until you come to its other half, *quam*. Sometimes, as here, *prius* is placed in the main clause to act as a kind of advance warning, while *quam* continues to mark the beginning of the "before" clause. Here the verb *scient* should be translated twice for best results.  
272 *se nolle consilium statim capere* : since Maharbal's plan to take Rome depended on immediate action, Hannibal's answer really amounted to a rejection of the plan.

omnia vero eidem dei dedere: vincere scis, Hannibal, victoria uti nescis.' Mora eius diei existimatur saluti fuisse urbi.

## 2. A Roman Trickster Gets No Sympathy at Rome

*The Roman prisoners mentioned here were in camp at the time of the battle of Cannae, and surrendered without a fight. Note that Hannibal abides by the laws of war. Note also his very generous treatment of Rome's Italian allies in an attempt to win them away from Rome.*

- 275 Hannibal post pugnam Cannensem, captivis productis segregatisque, socios, sicut antea ad Trebiam Trasumennumque lacum, benigne adlocutus sine pretio dimittit. Romanos quoque satis benigne adloquitur. 'Non internecinum mihi est cum Romanis bellum,' inquit; 'de dignitate atque imperio decertamus. Itaque  
280 vos captivos vos redimere patiar.'

**Tum Maharbal:** sc. a verb of saying (e.g. *inquit*).

**272-273 Non omnia vero eidem dei dedere:** 'To be sure (*vero*), the gods (*dei*, nom. pl.) haven't given (*dedere* = *dederunt*) everything (*omnia*, here = 'all abilities') to the same man (*eidem*, dat. sing., to one and the same man)'; *vero* (like *quidem*) merely emphasizes the word before it (here, *omnia*), and does not really require translation.

**273 vincere, uti:** comp. infinitives, completing *scis* ('you know *how*', like the French "*savoir*") and *nescis* ('you don't know *how*'). *victoria:* abl. gov. by *uti*.

**274 eius diei:** gen. of desc. *saluti fuisse urbi:* 'to have been the salvation (*saluti*, dat. of purp.) of the city (*urbi*, dat. of int.)'. For the question of the wisdom of Hannibal's decision, see p. 57.

**275-277 Hannibal . . . dimittit:** this is a typical Latin "period". A periodic sentence gives a series of subordinate ideas in chronological order, and ends, by way of climax, with the principal idea. In the present sentence, notice the chronological pre-

sentation of the actions and ideas:

1. *Hannibal*  
— Hannibal (subj. = who?)
2. *post . . . Cannensem*  
—after Cannae (phrase, = when?)
3. *captivis productis*  
—parading of prisoners (abl. abs.)
4. *segregatisque*  
—grouping of prisoners (abl. abs.)
5. *socios*  
—the allies of Rome (dir. obj.)
6. *adlocutus*  
—a talk (part.)
7. *sine pretio dimittit*.  
—a release (main vb.)

English depends upon shorter sentences for its effectiveness. Therefore tr. the participles as main verbs with 'Hannibal' as their subject, and begin a new sentence at *socios*.

**277 dimittit:** an historical ("vivid") pres.; tr. by a past tense. Hannibal's consistently generous treatment of Rome's allies no doubt was intended to win them over to him. It is a tribute to Rome's relations with her allies that Hannibal's efforts were almost completely unsuccessful.

**278 mihi:** dat. of poss., 'mine is not a war of extermination'.

**279 de dignitate:** 'for honour'.



Iussit decem deligi et Romam ad senatum ire. Illi Hannibali iuraverunt se redituros esse. Missus est cum his Carthalo, nobilis Carthaginien-  
 285 in castra rediit. Sic iureiurando soluto, ante noctem socios consecutus est. Ubi eos Romam venire nuntiatum est, lictor Carthali occurrit et ante noctem ex finibus Romanis excedere eum iussit.

Legatis captivorum senatus datus est. Tandem, multis sententiis dictis, patres conscripti decreverunt captivos non redimere. Nam  
 290 T. Manlius Torquatus, unus ex patribus 'Quinquaginta milia civium sociorumque,' inquit, 'eo ipso die caesa sunt. Si tot exempla virtutis hos captivos non movent, nihil umquam movebit; si tanta clades vilem vitam non fecit, nulla faciet.'

295 Unus ex legatis captivorum, simulans se iusiurandum fallaci re-  
 ditu in castra solvisse, domum abiit. Quod ubi ad senatum relatum est, hic deprehensus ad Hannibalem deductus est.

281 deligi : pres. infin. pass. Illi : 'They'; a change of subject.

282 Missus est . . . Carthalo : the reversal of the usual word order adds emphasis.

284 iis := *eis*. minime Romani ingenii homo : 'a fellow (*homo*, sometimes used as an uncomplimentary substitute for *vir*) with a nature (*ingenii*, gen of desc.) not at all (*minime*) Roman (*Romani*, placed before its noun instead of after it for additional emphasis).' Livy the patriot is taking particular pains to indicate that this trickster is not a typical Roman. *velut aliquid oblitus* : 'as if he had forgotten something', 'pretending he had forgotten something'. Ordinarily, verbs of remembering and forgetting (like *oblitus*) gov. a gen., but they gov. the accus. of neut. pronouns (like *aliquid*).

286 lictor : see vocab. Here, the *lictor* is acting merely as an official messenger.

289 senatus : 'an audience with the senate'.

291 Torquatus : this nickname ('with a chain') had been gained for the family by an ancestor who had slain a gigantic Gaul in single combat and had put the Gaul's chain collar (*torquis*) about his own neck as a trophy. Sternness was a characteristic of this family; for instance, this same ancestor later executed his own son during the war with the Latins for disobeying orders and accepting a challenge to single combat.

292 *eō ipso die* : abl. of time. The day is the one on which Cannae was fought.

294 nulla : sc. *clades*.

295 Unus : the trickster referred to in l. 284. He now left the senate house to go home, whereas his nine colleagues left for Hannibal's camp.

296 Quod : 'This', 'This information'; a co-ord. rel.



### THE DEATH OF ARCHIMEDES

The famous scientist is busy with a geometric problem, and is slain during the sack of Syracuse.

### 3. Archimedes Is Slain in the Sack of Syracuse

*Roman vengeance now fell upon the city of Syracuse in Sicily for going over to the Carthaginians. The Roman general Marcellus took the city after a blockade lasting three years. During this siege the city benefited tremendously from the inventiveness of its famous citizen Archimedes, an outstanding mathematician and scientist. One story is told that, among other things, he actually set fire to the Roman fleet by means of huge burning glasses. He is still famous for his 'Water Screw' and for his 'Principle of Displacement'.*

Tandem Syracusani portis apertis legatos ad Marcellum mittunt, nihil petentes aliud quam salutem sibi liberisque suis. Marcellus militibus 'Vobis,' inquit, 'est tota praeda urbis.' Cum multa irae,

298 portis apertis : tr. as a principal verb, parallel to *mittunt*.

299 nihil aliud quam : 'only'; lit., 'nothing other than'.

300 Vobis est : 'To you (*vobis*, dat. of poss.) belongs.'

300-303 Cum multa . . . interfectus est : these words form a typical

multa avaritiae foeda exempla ederentur, Archimedes in tanto tumultu, intentus formis quas in pulvere descripserat, ab milite nesciente quis esset interfectus est. Aegre id Marcellus tulit sepul-  
 305 turamque curavit, et propinquis honori praesidioque nomen ac memoria eius fuerunt.

#### 4. Hannibal Finds that Roman Morale Is High

*When the Romans were attacking Capua, Hannibal feinted toward Rome in an unsuccessful attempt to relieve the pressure on his ally. The Romans believed it was a real attempt to capture the city, and that the gods caused the storms to save the city.*

Hannibal ad Aniensem fluvium tria milia passuum ab urbe Roma castra movit. Instructis utrimque exercitibus ad hanc pugnam, in qua urbs Roma victori praemium erat, magna tempestas bis utramque aciem perturbavit. In religionem ea res apud Poenos  
 310 versa est, et Hannibal dixisse fertur modo sibi mentem non dari, modo facultatem, urbis Romae capiendae.  
 Minuere etiam spem eius duae, parva magnaue, res: magna erat

Latin "periodic" sentence, as defined in the note on lines 275-277. Notice the chronological presentation of the actions and ideas. In tr. ignore *cum*, making *ederentur* a main verb, and begin a new sentence at *ab milite*.

301 multa: mod. *exempla*. *ederentur*: 'were to be seen', 'were in evidence'; subj. gov. by *cum*—temporal referring to the past.

302 in pulvere: 'in the sand', perhaps in the courtyard. Archimedes, true to the tradition of scholarly concentration, is oblivious to the confusion all about him, and is busy with a geometric problem.

303 quis esset: ind. quest. Tr. by an English noun. Aegre tulit: 'felt badly (or angry) about'; lit., 'bore with difficulty'.

304 propinquis honori praesidioque: 'a source of honour and protection (*honori, praesidio*, dat. of purp.) for his relatives (*propinquis*, ds<sup>4</sup> of int.)'.

307 ad: 'for'; *ad* often expresses purp.

309 In religionem . . . versa est: 'was interpreted as an omen'; lit., 'was turned into an occurrence with religious significance'. The gods were thought to be protecting Rome by sending the storms.

310-311 dixisse fertur . . . capiendae: 'is said to have remarked that at one time (*modo*, meaning just after his victory at Cannae) the inclination (*mentem*) wasn't granted him, and at another (*modo*, meaning the present occasion) the opportunity to capture (*capiendae*, gerundive, mod. *urbis*) the city of Rome'.

312 Minuere: = *Minuerunt*. The verb has been placed first for emphasis: 'lessening his hope there were . . .'. duae, parva magnaue, res: 'two incidents, a trivial one, and an important one.'

313 quod: 'the fact that'; its verb is *audivit*. This cl. is parallel to *quod*

quod cum ipse ad moenia urbis Romae armatus sederet, milites sub vexillis auxilio Hispaniae profectos esse audivit. Parva autem  
 315 erat quod per eos dies emptor Romae inventus est eius agri in quo Hannibal ipse castra habebat, nihil ob id deminuto pretio.

## 5. Hasdrubal Is Defeated and Killed at the Metaurus River

*During Hannibal's long struggle in Italy, his brother Hasdrubal had been fighting Roman forces in Spain. When Hasdrubal came over the Alps to join Hannibal in Italy, he was intercepted at the Metaurus River by the consuls C. Claudius Nero and M. Livius.*

Ingens certamen erat, atroxque caedes utrimque edebatur, Primo impetu elephantum perturbaverant hostes; deinde crescente certamine inter duas acies versari velut incerti quorum essent, haud  
 320 dissimiles navibus sine gubernaculo vagantibus. Claudius cum in adversum collem frustra impetum facere conatus esset, aliquot cohortes post aciem circumduxit atque hostium latus adortus est.

... *inventus est* (l. 315). *ad* : 'near', 'before'. *armatus* : 'under arms', 'ready for battle'. *sederet* : subj. in a *cum*-concessive cl.

314 *sub vexillis* : 'with banners flying', jauntily, and with no attempt at concealment. *auxilio Hispaniae* : 'to reinforce (*auxilio*, dat. of purp.) Roman troops in Spain (*Hispaniae*, dat. of int.).' Hannibal's brother Hasdrubal led a powerful Carthaginian army in Spain.

315 *Romae* : loc. *eius agri* : obj. gen., object of the action of "buying" implied in the noun *emptor*; 'for that farm'.

316 *nihil* . . . *pretio* : 'without any reduction in price (just) because of that'; lit., 'the price (*pretio*, abl. abs.) in no way (*nihil*, adv. acc., = a strong negative) having been reduced because of that'. *Nihil* is an example of the use of neut. acc. pronouns and adjs. as adverbs. Latin comp. adverbs are another example of this use—e.g. the adv. *celerius* ('more quickly') is formed from the neut. acc. adj. *celerius* ('quicker').

317 *certamen* : between the army of Hasdrubal and that of the consul Claudius. *edebatur* : 'was to be seen', as in *ederentur*, l. 301.

318 *hostes* : 'their enemies', i.e. the Romans.

319 *versari* : hist. infin., i.e. an infin. used vividly for a main verb; 'moved about', 'drifted about'. *velut* . . . *essent* : 'as if not sure whose they were', i.e. which side they were on; *essent* is subj. in an ind. quest. introduced by the adj. *incerti*, which has the same verbal force as a part. such as *nescientes*.

320 *navibus* : dat. gov. by *dissimiles*. The Carthaginians' elephants had been effective as "tanks" in the first charge, but now when resistance continued, became a menace to friends as well as foe, like ships 'adrift' (*vagantibus*). *Claudius cum* : 'when Claudius'; English idiom does not follow the favourite Latin device of placing the sub. cl. within the main clause.

321 *frustra* . . . *conatus esset* : 'had failed in his attempt'.



Ita ex omnibus partibus, a fronte, ab latere, a tergo trucidantur Hispani Liguresque; et ad Gallos iam caedes pervenerat. Ibi minimum certaminis erat. Nam ei qui aderant, itinere ac vigiliis fessi, vix arma gerere poterant.

Hasdrubal fugientes revocavit pugnamque aliquot locis restituit. Postremo cum haud dubie fortuna victoriae hostium esset, ne superesset tanto exercitui suum nomen secuto, concitato equo, se in cohortem Romanam immisit. Ibi, ut erat dignum patre Hamilcare et Hannibale fratre, pugnans cecidit.

## 6. Hannibal Learns that He Has No Reinforcements

*The Romans' treatment of Hasdrubal's body was in marked contrast with the honourable burial accorded Roman leaders by Hannibal.*

C. Claudius consul, cum in castra rediisset, caput Hasdrubalis, quod servatum cum cura attulerat, proici ante hostium stationes

322 latus : a noun (not the adj.)

323 ex, a, ab, a : the Latin speaks of the action as coming FROM a certain quarter, whereas English prefers "in" or "on".

324 Hispani Liguresque : these were Hasdrubal's veteran troops. The Gauls (*Gallos*), formed the "rookie" part of his forces.

324-325 ibi . . . erat : 'here there was very little (*minimum*, a neut adj. used as a noun, lit., 'a very little quantity') resistance (*certaminis*, part. gen.)'.

325 ei qui aderant : 'the ones who were there'; many of the "rookie" Gauls had dropped by the wayside in exhaustion.

327 fugientes revocavit : 'rallied the ones who were fleeing'. aliquot locis : 'at several points'; the prep. *in* is usually omitted when *locus* has a modifier.

328-330 Postremo . . . immisit : another typical Latin "periodic" sentence, as defined in the note on lines 275-277. Notice the chronological

presentation of the actions and ideas. In tr., (1) treat the *cum*- clause as a complete sentence, omitting *cum*; (2) begin a new sentence at *ne*, making *concitato* a principal verb, parallel to *immisit*.

328 hostium : poss. gen.; 'the fortunes of battle were the enemy's', 'the fortunes of the day belonged to the enemy'.

329 exercitui : dat. gov. by *super-* in the compound verb *superesset*. suum nomen secuto : 'which had followed his fame'; he felt that they had given him a personal (*suum*) loyalty, and that he must die with them.

330 cohortem : 'host'; NOT a specific military unit here. ut erat dignum : 'in a manner worthy of'; *ut* here = 'as', 'just as', and *dignum* gov. the ablatives which follow.

331 pugnans cecidit : 'he was killed in action', the epitaph of many a brave man down through the ages.

332-5 Claudius . . . iussit : Another typical Latin "periodic" sentence. Here, we may break the tr. into four

335 captivosque Carthaginienses ostendi, duos etiam ex eis solutos ire ad Hannibalem et demonstrare quae acta essent, iussit. Hannibal, tanto simul publico familiarique permotus luctu, agnoscere se fortunam Carthaginis fertur dixisse.

### 7. Scipio Urges an Invasion of Africa

*Scipio, the son, had won great prestige in Spain in the struggle against Hasdrubal, avenging the earlier defeat and death of his father and his uncle. His plan to carry the war to Africa was opposed by conservatives like Quintus Fabius Maximus.*

340 Cum P. Scipio diceret se consulem creatum esse non modo ad gerendum bellum, sed etiam ad finiendum, neque id fieri posse nisi ipse in Africam exercitum traduxisset, Q. Fabius Maximus rogatus sententiam, 'Vincere ego prohibui Hannibalem,' inquit, 'ut a vobis, quorum vires nunc valent, vinci posset. Sed pax ante sit in Italia quam bellum in Africa.'

short sentences, using the following verbs :

1. *rediisset*, omitting *cum*
2. *attulerat*, omitting *quod*
3. *iussit* ("He ordered it"), gov. *proici* and *ostendi*
4. *iussit* ("He also ordered"), gov. *ire* and *demonstrare*.

332 C. Claudius consul *cum* : see note on *Claudius cum*, l. 320.

334 etiam : 'actually'.

336 tanto . . . luctu : the word order does much to emphasize the intensity of Hannibal's double grief, "national" (for his country) and "personal" (for his brother); *tanto* and *luctu* are emphasized by being separated. 337 fortunam : 'sinking fortunes', 'fate'; his brother's fate he recognized as a symbol of his country's coming fate.

338 diceret : subj. gov. by *cum*-temporal referring to past time. In tr. omit *cum*, and treat *diceret* as a main verb. Begin a second sentence at Q. Fabius Maximus.

339 gerendum, finiendum : gerund-

ives mod. *bellum*, to avoid the use of trans. gerunds. *neque id fieri posse* : 'but that this wouldn't be possible'; *posse* is used as a fut. infin. when needed.

340 traduxisset : subj. in a sub. cl. in ind. disc., with the plup. subj. replacing the fut. perf. ind. of the original; Scipio's actual words were in the form of a more vivid fut. cond.; *neque id fieri poterit* (fut.) *nisi ipse in Africam exercitum traduxero* (fut. perf.)

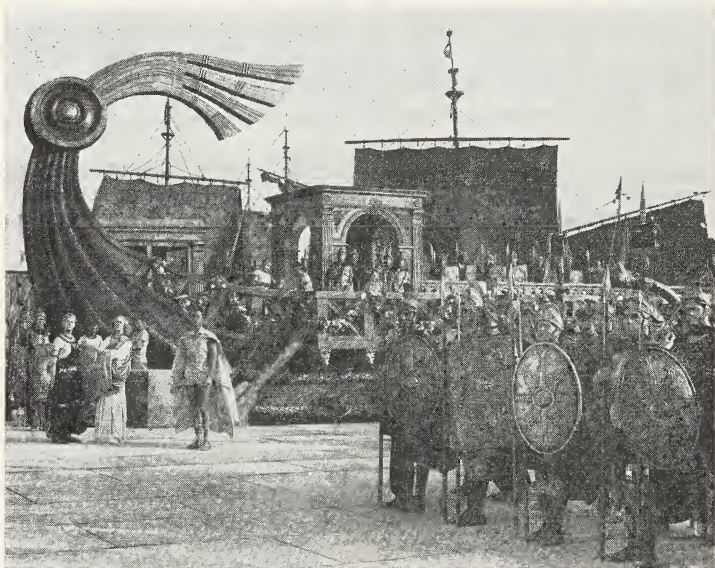
341 rogatus sententiam : 'on being asked his opinion' in the senate; *sententiam* is a so-called "retained accus.", retained by the pass part. *rogatus*; for in the act. the verb *rogo* may take TWO accusatives, e.g. *Eum sententiam rogo*, 'I ask him his opinion'. Vincere : 'from winning', a comp. infin. completing the meaning of *prohibui*.

342 quorum . . . valent : 'whose vigour is now at its peak'; as an older man, Fabius looks to the younger generation to finish the job.

345 Ad haec Scipio 'Requiescat aliquando,' inquit, 'laccessita iam diu Italia; vastetur in vicem Africa. Africa sit reliqui belli sedes; eo terror fugaque, populatio agrorum, defectio sociorum, ceterae belli clades, quae in nos per quattuordecim annos ingruerunt, vertantur.'

### 8. Scipio Prays for the Success of the Venture

*Scipio spent a year equipping and training his invasion force in Sicily. Finally he was ready to sail from the Sicilian port of Lilybaeum. The imaginary words which Livy puts in his mouth here are, as usual, true to the situation and to the character of the speaker.*



Courtesy United Artists' Corp.

#### SCIPIO SETS OUT FOR AFRICA

342-343 ante . . . quam : = *antequam*; see note on *priusquam*, l. 270.

343 sit : juss. subj.; Fabius thinks the Romans should drive Hannibal from Italy before attempting an expeditionary force into Africa.

343 Ad haec : 'In reply to this'. Re-

quiescat . . . Italia : 'let Italy have a rest'; juss. subj. So too *vastetur*, *sit*, *vertantur*.

345 sedes : 'seat', 'theatre'. eo : adv., = *in Africam*, and mod. *vertantur*; 'upon Africa let there be turned', 'to Africa let there be transferred'.

Prima luce Scipio e praetoria nave, silentio per praeconem facto,  
 350 'Dei deaeque', inquit, 'qui maria terrasque colitis, vos precor ut  
 quae in meo imperio gesta sunt, geruntur, post gerentur, ea mihi,  
 populo Romano, sociis, bene eveniant; precor ut nos salvos in-  
 columesque, victis hostibus, triumphantes reducat; precor ut  
 355 hostium ulciscendorum facultatem detis; precor ut quae populus  
 Carthaginiensis in civitatem nostram facere conatus est, ea mihi  
 populoque Romano in civitatem Carthaginiensium faciendi facul-  
 tatem detis.' Post has preces partem caesae victimae, ut mos est,  
 in mare proiecit, tubaque signum dedit proficiscendi.

### 9. Hannibal Is Recalled to Defend Africa

*The invasion of Africa almost immediately transferred the theatre of war from Italy. Note however that Hannibal puts most blame for his position on his political enemies in Carthage.*

Nihil ultra in Italia ab Hannibale gestum est; nam ad eum legati  
 360 Carthagine eum in Africam revocantes venerunt. Frendens ac  
 paene flens dicitur legatorum verba audivisse. Postquam edita  
 sunt mandata, 'Iam palam,' inquit, 'revocant qui vetando subsi-

349 praetoria nave: 'his flag-ship'. Just as on land the Roman commander's headquarters were called his *praetorium*, so too at sea his headquarters were called *praetoria navis*. facto: 'causing', 'calling for'.

351 quae . . . ea: = *ea quae*; 'what', lit., 'those things which'. When, as here, the antecedent is placed after the rel. cl., it is given greater dem. force, and focuses attention on what has been said in the rel. cl. in *meo imperio*: 'under my command'. *mihi*: 'for me'. In tr., make it the last in the list of three; Latin is less polite but more logical in putting the first person before the other persons.

352 eveniant: subj. in an ind. com.; so too the other subjs. that follow.

354 ulciscendorum: gerundive, agreeing with *hostium*.

354-355 quae . . . ea: see note on *quae* . . . *ea*, l. 351; *quae* is dir. obj.

of *facere*, and *ea* is dir. obj. of the gerund *faciendi*.

355 in civitatem nostram: 'to our country'; *in* has the same meaning in l. 356.

355 mihi: for its position, see note on *mihi*, l. 351.

357 ut mos est: 'as is the custom', 'as is customary'; the portion thrown into the sea was, of course, intended to secure the goodwill of the deities of the sea, e.g. Neptune.

358 tuba: abl. of means. *proficiscendi*: a gerund, obj. gen. dep. on the action-noun *signum*; 'to set sail'. 360 Carthagine: belongs with *venerunt*; the prep. *ab* is omitted with the name of a city.

360-361 *Frendens ac paene flens*: 'Gritting his teeth and almost in tears'.

362 qui: = *ei qui*; 'the men who'.

363 mitti: comp. infin. with the gerund *vetando*; 'by forbidding the



365 dium et pecuniam mitti iam diu retrahebant. Vicit igitur Hannibalem non populus Romanus saepe caesus fugatusque, sed senatus Carthaginiensis obtreptatione atque invidia; neque reditu meo tam P. Scipio gaudebit quam Hanno qui domum nostram, quoniam alia re non potuit, ruina Carthaginis oppressit.'

### 10. Hannibal Seeks Better Terms From Scipio Before Zama

*Before Hannibal returned to Africa, the Carthaginians had already been forced to accept peace terms. These terms included the surrender of Spain, the limitation of the Carthaginian fleet to twenty ships, and the payment of a large indemnity. With the arrival of Hannibal, Carthage ignored the armistice, and through Hannibal sought better terms. Livy's description of the meeting of the two great commanders is a famous example of his power over words.*

370 Hannibal nuntium ad Scipionem misit, qui rogaret ut colloquendi secum facultatem daret. Itaque congressi sunt hi, qui erant non suae modo aetatis maximi duces, sed etiam omnis ante se



Courtesy E.N.I.C.

#### THE CONFERENCE BETWEEN SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL

sending of . . . iam diu retrahebant: 'had for a long time now been holding me back (before they openly recalled me)'. Latin uses the imperf. *retrahebant* in this type of sentence because the sense is 'long had been and still were'.

363-364 *vicit Hannibalem*: freely, 'Hannibal's conqueror is . . .'.

365 *reditu*: abl. of means with *gaudebit*; 'at my return'.

366 *tam . . . quam*: 'so much as'; these words are correlatives, like *tantus . . . quantus*, *talis . . . qualis*, *tot . . . quot*. Hanno: see *Introduction*, 5. *domum*: 'family'.

367 *potuit*: sc. *eam opprimere*. *ruina*: abl. of means.

368 *qui rogaret*: a rel. cl. of purp., dep. on a verb of 'sending'.

370 *suae . . . aetatis*: 'of their own generation'; notice that *non* and

- memoriae. Paulisper alter alterius conspectu, admiratione mutua prope attoniti, tacuere. Tum Hannibal prior: 'Ego qui saepe prope in manibus victoriam habui, ultro ad pacem petendam venio. Tamen gaudeo te mihi sorte datum esse a quo petam.
- 375 Patre tuo consule arma cepi, eodem imperatore Romano proelium commisi, nunc ad filium eius inermis ad pacem petendam venio. Utinam et vos Italiae et nos Africae imperio contenti fuissetis. Sed praeterita magis reprehendi possunt quam corrigi.
- Quod ego fui ad Trasumennum, ad Cannas, id tu hodie es. Potest
- 380 victoriam malle quam pacem animus. Sed melior tutiorque est certa pax quam sperata victoria; illa in tua, haec in deorum manu est.
- 'Est quidem eius qui dat, non qui petit, condiciones dicere pacis.

*modo* are sometimes separated to 'bracket' and emphasize another word (here, *suae*).

370-371 *omnis . . . memoriae*: 'of all history', 'of all recorded time'.

371 *alter alterius conspectu*: *alter* is in apposition to the plural subject of *tacuerunt*; 'the one at the sight of the other', 'at the sight of each other'. Where, as here, the word in apposition represents only a part, not the whole, it is said to be in partitive apposition.

372 *prior*: sc. *dixit*; 'was the first to speak'. The comparative *prior* is used instead of *primus* because Hannibal was the first of the TWO to speak.

373 *victoriam*: 'final victory'; Hannibal is thinking of the whole war, not just of individual battles. *ad pacem petendam*: *ad* here expresses purp.

374 *te . . . datum esse*: an ind. statement, gov. by *gaudeo*, a verb of mental action. a quo *petam* is subj. in a rel. cl. of purp.; 'from whom to ask it'.

375 *Patre*: abl. abs.; 'when your father was consul'. So too *eodem*.

377 *et vos . . . et nos*: ignore the first *et* ('both') in translating; Lat-

in is much fonder than English of indicating a 'balance' or 'parallelism' by the use of pairs of words like *et . . . et, neque . . . neque, aut . . . aut*. So too in l. 391 *neque . . . neque*, and in lines 392-393 *et . . . et*. Italiae, Africae: obj. gen., dep. on *imperio*, which is abl. gov. by the adj. *contentus*; 'content to rule Italy', content to rule Africa'.

378 *praeterita . . . corrigi*: the Latin equivalent of 'there's no use crying over spilt milk'; 'what's done (*praeterita*, neut. pl. used as a noun) can be more easily criticized than rectified'.

379 *Quod . . . id*: = *Id quod*; for the effect of the word order, see note on *quas . . . ea*, l. 351. Potest: 'Can (if it is willing to take such an unwise risk)'.

380 *animus*: may be general ('one's heart') or specific ('your heart', sc. *tuus*).

381 *certa pax*: 'an assured peace'.

383 *Est quidem eius qui*: 'It belongs to the one who', 'It is the privilege of the one who'; *quidem* ('to be sure', 'of course') seldom requires *tr.*; it emphasizes the word which it follows. *dicere*: 'to name', 'to indicate'.

385 Tamen omnia, propter quae bellum gestum est, vestra sint, Sicilia, Sardinia, Hispania, quidquid insularum toto mari inter Africam Italiamque continetur. Ego Hannibal peto pacem, qui non peterem si inutilem crederem; et propter eandem utilitatem pacem tuebor.'

### 11. Scipio Offers Only the Original Terms

390 Adversus haec imperator Romanus respondit: 'Tu de condicionibus superioribus pacis omnia subtrahis praeter ea quae iam diu in nostra potestate sunt. Neque patres nostri priores de Sicilia, neque nos de Hispania, fecimus bellum; vos lacessivisse et tu ipse fateris et dei testes sunt. Proinde si illae condiciones graviores videntur, bellum parate.'

### Prelude to Zama

395 Ita infecta pace ambo pronuntiaverunt ut arma pararent milites

384 omnia, propter quae . . . sint: 'let everything for which', 'let all the territory over which'; *sint* is juss. subj.

385-386 quidquid insularum . . . continetur: 'and whatever islands are contained', 'and all the islands that are contained'; lit., 'whatever quantity (a meaning of the neut. sing.) of islands'. Notice that Hannibal deliberately omits all mention of the two other major clauses in the earlier terms, namely the payment of the indemnity, and the reduction of the size of the Carthaginian fleet.

386-387 qui non peterem . . . crederem: = *qui eam non peterem si crederem eam esse inutilem*; a pres. untrue cond. Tr. *qui* as 'and I'; *inutilem* = 'inexpedient', and *utilitatem* = 'expediency'. These are the words of a realist, not those of an idealist; they constitute a pledge to keep the peace, but a pledge based on expediency (self-interest), not on moral considerations.

390 superioribus: 'former', 'original', contained in the armistice which Car-

thage had ignored.

390-391 omnia . . . praeter ea quae . . . sunt: 'everything except what has for a long time now been in our possession'; Latin uses the pres. *sunt* in this type of sentence because the sense is 'long have been and still are'. cf. *iam diu retrahebant*, l. 363. 391 priores: this is the important word, and belongs in both clauses: (1) *neque patres nostri priores de Sicilia (bellum fecerunt)* (2) *neque nos (priores) de Hispania fecimus bellum*; 'our fathers were not the aggressors in the war over Sicily (i.e. for the possession of Sicily) and we were not aggressors . . .'. For *neque* . . . *neque*, see note on *et* . . . *et*, l. 377.

392 vos lacessivisse: ind. statement gov. by *fateris*; 'that you (Carthaginians) were the aggressors'. Livy is being most emphatic about Carthaginian 'war-guilt'. *et tu ipse*: do not tr. *et*; see note on l. 377.

393 graviores: 'too severe'.

395 Ita infecta pace: 'And so (*Ita* = *Itaque*) a peace (*pace*, abl. abs.) was

animosque ad supremum certamen. Ad hoc certamen processerunt postero die duorum opulentissimorum populorum duo longe clarissimi duces, duo fortissimi exercitus, eo die scituri utrum Roma an Carthago iura gentibus daret. Non enim Africa aut Italia, sed  
 400 orbis terrarum, victoriae praemium futurus erat.

## 12. Hannibal and Scipio Meet Again, Years Later

*After his defeat at Zama, Hannibal first 'balanced the budget' as a suffete in Carthage, but was soon forced into exile. For years he remained a thorn in the flesh to Rome. Legend says that while he was at the court of King Antiochus of Syria he met Scipio and gave him the clever answer recorded here.*

P. Scipio Africanus legatus ad Antiochum missus, Ephesi cum Hannibale, qui se Antiocho iunxerat, collocutus est. Inter alia cum quaereret quem fuisse maximum imperatorem Hannibal crederet, respondit Alexandrum, Macedonum regem, quod parva  
 405 manu multos exercitus fugavisset quodque ad ultimas terras, quas videre supra spem humanam esset, pervenisset. Ei quaerenti dein-

not made (*infecta*, idiomatic for *non facta*).

396 processerunt: its two subjects are *duces* and *exercitus*. Notice that these are not joined by a connective like *et*; this device is termed "asyndeton" (lack of connective).

397 longe: 'by far'.

398 eo die scituri: begin a new English sentence here: 'That day they were destined to know . . . ' utrum . . . an: 'whether . . . or'; lit., 'which of the two, A or B', the regular way of introducing a double quest. in Latin, whether dir. or (as here) ind.

399 iura gentibus daret: 'was law-giver to the nations'.

401 legatus: 'as envoy'. Ephesi: loc.; Ephesus was a flourishing city on the coast of Asia Minor.

402 se Antiocho iunxerat: 'had attached himself to Antiochus', 'had allied himself with Antiochus', i.e. 'had joined Antiochus'; in this idiom,

*iungo* requires a dir. obj. (*se*) and either a dat. (*Antiocho*) or cum with abl. (*cum Antiocho*). Inter alia: 'among other things'; this phrase belongs inside the clause introduced by *cum*, which it has displaced as first word.

403-404 quem . . . crederet: *quem* ('what man?') is (1) subject of the infin. *fuisse* in an ind. statement introduced by *crederet*, (2) the interrog. word introducing the ind. quest. *quem . . . crederet*.

405 fugavisset: subj. in a sub. clause in ind. disc.; so too *esset* and *pervenisset*.

405-406 quas videre . . . esset: 'to see which was beyond (*supra* = *super*, 'over') an (ordinary) man's hope'; *quas* is (1) rel. pron. introducing the rel. cl. *quas . . . esset* which has been quoted as a sub. cl. in ind. disc. (2) dir. obj. of *videre*, which in turn is the subject of *esset*.  
 406 Ei quaerenti deinde: 'In reply



de quem secundum poneret, Pyrrhum dixit; neminem loca castrorum callidius delegisse praesidiaque disposuisse. Scipioni quaerenti quem tertium diceret, se ipsum dixit. Ridens Scipio, 'Quid tu dixisses,' inquit, 'si me vicisses?' 'Tum vero me,' inquit Hannibal, 'et ante Alexandrum et ante Pyrrhum et ante alios omnes imperatores posuissem.'



Courtesy E.N.I.C.

PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS, CONQUEROR OF HANNIBAL

The honorary title Africanus commemorated his victory at Zama.

to Scipio's next question'; lit., 'To him (*Ei*, ind. obj of *dixit*) asking next'.

407-408 *neminem . . . disposuisse*: an ind. statement dep. on *dixit*; 'No one, he said, had . . .'. *loca castrorum*: 'camp-sites'.

409 *diceret*: 'named'. *se ipsum dixit*: 'he said, "Myself"'. *Ridens*: why did Scipio chuckle over Hannibal's choice?

410 *dixisses*, *vicisses*: plup. subj. in a past untrue cond. So too *posuisses*, l. 412. *tum vero*: 'in THAT case'; see note on *vero*, l. 273. Notice

that *tum vero* takes the place here of an "if" clause (= 'if I HAD defeated you').

411 *et . . . et . . . et*: do not tr. the first *et* (= 'both'); see note on *et . . . et*, l. 377. Livy goes on to say that Scipio was well pleased with this answer of Hannibal's. The wily Carthaginian had cleverly managed to keep from naming a Roman in his "all-star" list, yet he had paid Scipio a supreme compliment by setting him apart from all others as "the man to beat"; to beat Scipio was to become automatically the world's greatest.

# SECTION TWO

THE STORY OF  
JULIUS CAESAR

---

# MILITARY INTRODUCTION

## Caesar's Army

### 1. Joining the Army

What incentives were there for the young Roman citizen to join the army of Caesar? True, he could be conscripted for service between the ages of seventeen and forty-six during a national emergency. But in ordinary times an army career was open to him if it had sufficient appeal. First, he had to be a Roman citizen, although some exceptions were made to include potential citizens from Cisalpine Gaul. Secondly, he could look forward to a yearly salary of 225 *denarii* (\$45.00), to which might be added plunder from captured towns and bonuses from the general. Next, his contract with the army was for twenty years. Finally, he could be certain that his life would involve hard fighting, hard building and even harder marching — all for the glory of Rome.

### 2. The Roman Private—A Legionary Soldier

#### *Personal Equipment*

##### *(a) Clothing:*

The legionary soldier wore a sleeveless woollen shirt, tight-fitting leather trousers or else leg bandages, a heavy cloak for bad weather which also served as a blanket at night (*sagum*), and heavy hobnailed sandals (*caligae*).

##### *(b) Defensive Armour:*

On his head he wore a helmet of leather strengthened by bands of metal (*galea*). About his upper body he wore a leather jacket strengthened by bands of metal (*lorica*). On his left arm was a curved wooden shield four feet high and two and one-half feet wide, with a metal knob in the centre.

##### *(c) Offensive Armour:*

Hanging from a scabbard on his right side was a two-foot

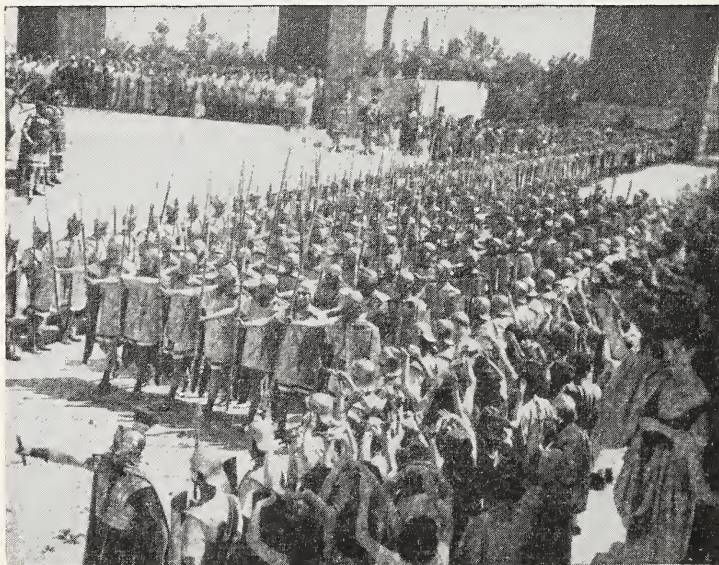




sword for thrusting (*gladius*). Carried on the right in this manner, the sword did not interfere with the shield. Higher officers who carried no shield wore the sword more conveniently on the left. The legionary also carried a seven-foot javelin (*pilum*), with a heavy wooden shaft and a long iron head which bent when it hit its mark, thus preventing a return throw by the enemy. After a battle, the *pila* were gathered and straightened for re-use by the Romans.

(d) *Personal baggage:*

On the march, the legionary soldier had to carry with him tools for digging and cutting, cooking utensils, a leather canteen for water, and food for two weeks. Such food consisted largely of *frumentum* which he ground for making bread and porridge. Most of these items he carried on his back, slung over a mallet or a forked stick. All in all his pack must have weighed from 60 to 70 pounds. No wonder a soldier thus laden down was called *miles impeditus*. If he marched in light marching order, i.e., without his heavy load, he was *expeditus*.

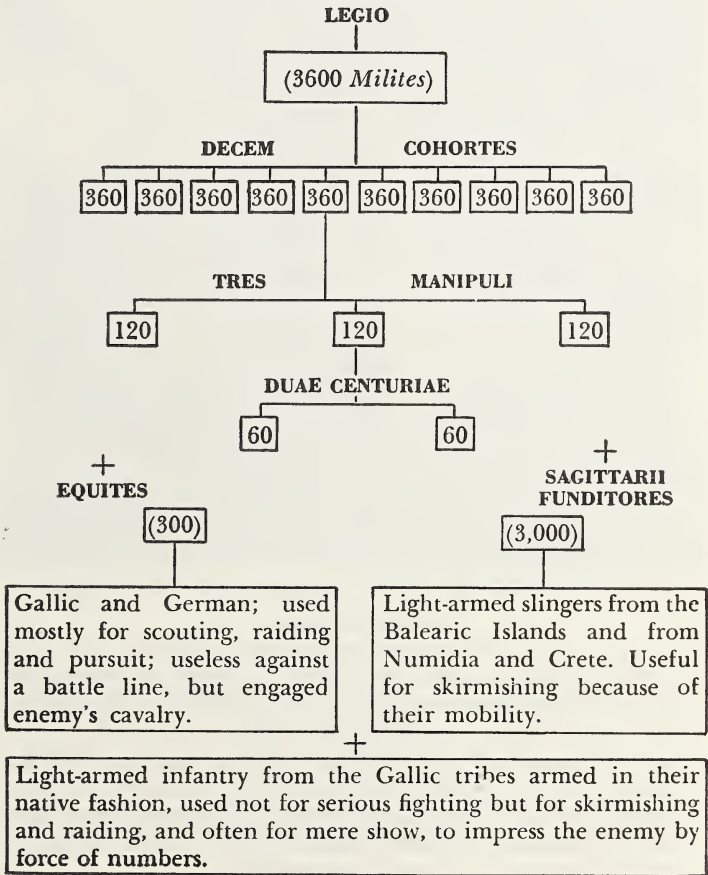


Scene from MGM's 'Quo Vadis'

A UNIT OF A LEGION ON FORMAL PARADE

### 3. Organization of a Legion

The full establishment of a legion was 6,000 men, but units were seldom maintained at full strength, so that the actual number of men in a legion was closer to about 3,600. The legion was the strategic unit of the army, like the much larger 'division' of modern armies, whereas the cohort was the tactical unit. To each legion were attached auxiliaries such as slingers, archers and cavalry.



Artillerymen and engineers were detailed from the ranks as required.

Reconnaissance was carried out by mounted scouts (*exploratores*) who usually went out in patrols or in small parties, or by single scouts (*speculatores*) whose job it was to infiltrate into the lines of the enemy.

#### 4. The Chain of Command

##### IMPERATOR

Commander-in-Chief

##### QUAESTOR

Second-in-Command

The Quaestors were elected yearly by the people at home. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province: he acted as quartermaster in charge of all supplies of food, pay, clothing, arms, equipment and even commanded a legion in battle if he was competent.

##### HEADQUARTERS STAFF

###### (a) *Legati*

Senior officers with rank of lieutenant-colonel. They acted as advisers to the *Imperator* and as deputies and assistants to the governor of a province. They were given command of:

- (1) A legion in battle.
- (2) A body of troops detached from main army and placed on special service.
- (3) A winter-camp.

*Note:* No *legatus* was in permanent command of a legion.

###### (b) *Tribuni Militum*

Junior officers, six in each legion. Each *tribunus* took command in rotation while the other five probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special duty. While some were experienced, capable soldiers, many were young men in search of military training before embarking on a political career, and had obtained the appointment through friends or relatives who had influence in Rome. Therefore the *tribunus* did not command a legion in battle. Rather, he took command only when it was in camp or on the march.





Scene from MGM's 'Julius Caesar'  
A ROMAN OFFICER AT EASE IN CAMP

**(c) *Praefectus Fabrum***

The chief engineer. The actual labour was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks. Duties included:

- Building of bridges
- Construction of camps
- Erection of siege works
- Repair of artillery
- Weapon maintenance
- Refitting of ships.



(d) *Centuriones*

Centurions, sixty in each legion. They were officers of lowly birth, promoted from the ranks because of personal bravery. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle, and they were expected to set an example of courage.

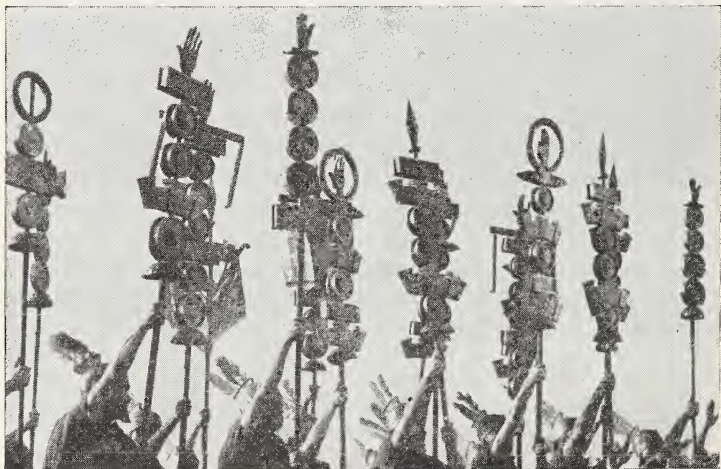
A centurion could not be promoted beyond the rank of centurion, although he could achieve promotion through the different grades of his own rank. The highest centurion of all was the first centurion of the first cohort. As a rule all six centurions of the first cohort were summoned to councils of war along with the *tribuni* and the *legati*.

They were responsible for the training of the men in the use of weapons and in battle procedure. In battle their position was at the right of their men who carried their shields on their left arms. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as for their skill and bravery.

(e) *Praefecti Auxiliorum*

Officers in command of the auxiliaries.

*Praefecti* were in charge of the cavalry, of the slingers, of the archers and of the light-armed infantry.



Courtesy E.N.I.C.

## 5. Standards of the Legions

### (a) *Aquila*:

This was an eagle of bronze or silver, the standard of the legion mounted on a wooden pole and kept in the headquarters (*praetorium*) of the camp. It was regarded with reverence, and its loss was the deepest disgrace which could befall a legion. It was in the charge of the first centurion of the first cohort and carried by a man conspicuous for his strength and bravery (*aquilifer*).

### (b) *Signa Militaria*:

These were the standards of the cohorts and the maniples. They varied in size and shape so that each soldier could find his place in hasty preparation for battle by looking for his unit's standard. At the top of each staff was a badge in the form of a metal disc shaped like an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the body of the staff were fastened the decorations of honour which had been bestowed on the cohort or maniple, i.e., discs, half-moons, wreaths, tassels. All through the battle, a soldier regulated his movements by those of his standards. For this reason the Latin forms for 'to advance' and 'to retreat' are *signa inferre* and *signa referre*.

### (c) *Vexillum Imperatoris*:

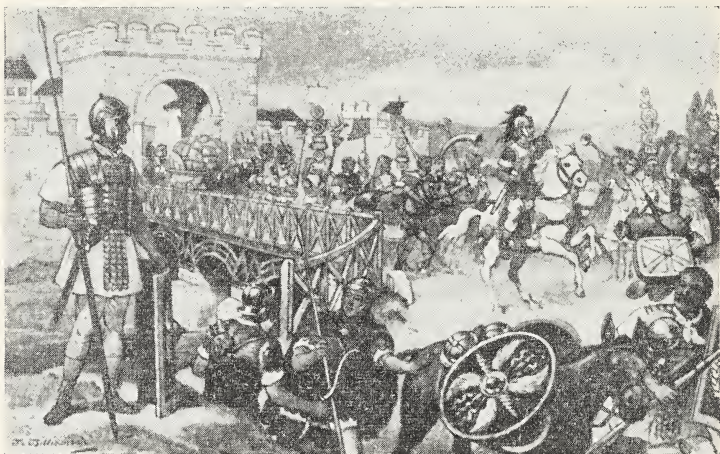
This banner was white, with an inscription in red letters, giving the name of the general and that of his army. It was sometimes used by the general in giving the signal for battle. A large, red banner was displayed at the general's tent before a battle.

### (d) *Vexillum Auxiliorum*:

A small banner was also carried by the cavalry and light-armed troops.

## 6. Impedimenta

As the name suggests, many difficulties had to be overcome in handling the baggage over hilly ground and forests and through swamps. The baggage of a legion consisted of tents made of animal hides, blankets, tools, provisions, artillery and hand mills for grinding grain. The baggage was carried by about 520 pack animals (mules and horses) per legion. The animals were driven by camp servants (*calones*) who were probably slaves.



Courtesy G. Bell and Sons

A LEGION IN COLUMN OF ROUTE

## 7. The March

The line of march was called the *agmen*; and much of Caesar's success can be attributed to his rapid movement of troops and to his conditioning of his men to stand the rigours of the march.

### (a) *Length of march:*

This depended on the need for haste and on the nature of the country over which the march was to be made.

(i) *The usual day's march* lasted from sunrise until early in the afternoon—perhaps seven hours—and covered from 12 to 19 English miles depending on the nature of the country.

(ii) *The forced march* covered up to 25 English miles. Caesar, like Napoleon, was able to inspire his men to great efforts on the march. He is known to have marched four legions without baggage over 50 Roman miles in 30 hours.

*Note:* The march had to cease early enough to allow for the fortification of the camp, which had to begin around the eighth hour. To bolster the spirits of the men, a day of rest was usually given about every fifth day.

### (b) *Formation of March:*

(i) *Through hostile country.*

Reconnaissance was done by patrols of cavalry. The *agmen* itself was comprised as follows:

- (a) *Agmen primum*, the vanguard, composed of light-armed infantry and scouts.
- (b) A single column of troops in light marching order; its size would depend on the total number of legions, cohorts and maniples in the *agmen*.
- (c) The baggage; often columns of infantry marched beside the baggage train to protect it against flank attacks.
- (d) *Novissimum agmen*, made up of the rest of the troops not marching behind the vanguard.

*Note:* In case of attack, the soldiers stacked their packs in one place under guard.

(ii) *Through safe country.* The *agmen* was then composed as follows:

- (a) All the troops in single column.
- (b) The baggage.

*Note:* Rivers which blocked the path were crossed (a) at a ford if possible, (b) by a bridge if necessary, constructed from long tree trunks or boats.

## 8. The Camp

In hostile country a camp was built every day as a protection against attack. In it the general could choose his own time and place for battle. In case of defeat, the camp provided a welcome refuge.

### (a) The Location:

A camp to be most effective was best situated on a hill sloping gently in the direction of the enemy, near water and near wood, although not too close to a forest in which the enemy could concentrate his forces.

### (b) Shape:

The camp was normally square or oblong in shape, and was laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, with every legion, cohort and maniple always in the same location. Near the centre of the camp was the general's headquarters (*praetorium*) in an open square. Usually there was one gate (*porta*) on each of the four sides, and that facing the enemy was called the *porta praetoria*, the commander's entrance.





Courtesy G. Bell and Sons

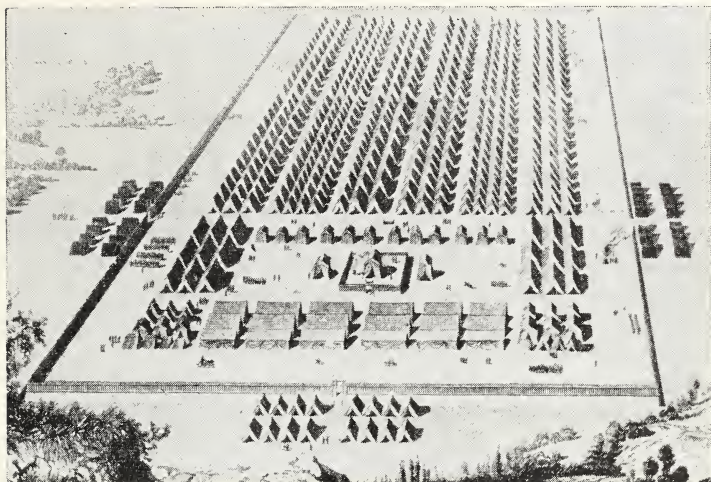
EACH MAN HAS HIS JOB IN THE BUILDING OF THE CAMP

### **(c) Building of the Camp:**

The vanguard was drawn up facing the enemy, so that it could give the necessary cover to the work of fortification. Meantime, the cavalry reconnoitred on all sides while engineers measured and staked out the camp, marking the key points with flags. Simultaneously the digging and other duties within the camp began. The work was usually finished in from three to four hours.

### **(d) Fortification of the Camp:**

Around the perimeter of the camp was dug a *fossa*, which was often 9 feet wide by 7 feet deep. The earth dug from the *fossa* was carried in baskets to form the material for the *vallum*. The outer slope of the *vallum* was steep and often faced with bundles of sticks or brushwood. Sometimes the inner slope was lined with logs so as to make steps up its gradual incline. On top of the *vallum* was enough space to enable the soldiers to move about freely behind the row of four-foot stakes, which was placed along the outer edge. In times of special danger towers (*turres*) were erected at intervals on top of the wall. An attacking enemy was held back for a time by the trench, and during their efforts to scale the rampart their ranks were exposed to missiles thrown from behind the protection of the palisade on the rampart.



Courtesy E. Mazo

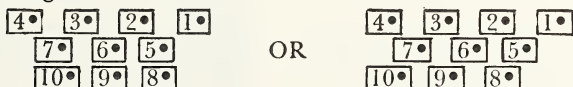
## CASTRA ROMANA

A place for everything, and everything in its place.

## 9. The Legion in Battle

(a) *The Battle-lines*

The commonest battle formation used by Caesar was the triple line (*triplex acies*) into which each legion was organized. Four cohorts were placed in the first line, with very little interval between them, while three were put in the second line and also in the third. The cohorts of the second line covered the intervals in the first. The position of the third line cohorts varied, as seen in this diagram.



*Note:* The dots indicate the positions of the chief centurions in each cohort.

In the first line were generally stationed the strongest, most experienced troops who could be depended on to bear the shock of an attack. Often the infantry and troops of the auxiliaries were placed on the flanks. Archers and slingers often skirmished at long range from a position in front of the main body of troops

When all was in readiness for the engagement, they were then withdrawn to the rear. The cavalry was best placed on the wings so as to present a threat of encirclement to the enemy. The commander himself usually took up a position between the cavalry and the infantry, so as to be able to direct the movements of both.

**(b) Battle Procedure:**

(i) If possible the *acies* was drawn up on a gentle slope facing the enemy, thus giving greater range to their javelins and greater force to their charge.

(ii) If several legions were involved, they were placed side by side, with the most experienced legions on the wings, and the best on the wing which was to begin the attack.

(iii) When all was ready for the attack, the general passed along the line briefly encouraging his men.

(iv) The signal was then given, either by the *tuba* or occasionally by the general's *vexillum*.

(v) The legions moved forward in succession.

(vi) To cover the interval between armies, the troops walked for a time, then broke into a run, with the first ranks holding their spears poised. At close range their volley of spears was devastating.

(vii) In the wake of the confusion caused by the spears, men of the first rank drew their swords and closed with the enemy. Each line contained eight or ten ranks. The men in each rank could not have stood shoulder to shoulder, but with some interval between them, otherwise the front rank could never have used its swords. In relieving the first rank after it became exhausted, the second rank moved up between the intervals while the first rank retired to reform and rest. Doubtless much of the legionaries' training was in learning how to do this without confusion. When the entire front line had taken its turn in engaging the foe, the second line moved up between the intervals while the first line retired. If the battle continued, the second line could retire and the first again move up on the offensive.

Meantime the third line acted as a reserve, and at the turning point of the battle it joined in the deciding attack.

During the engagement, the rear ranks in each line closed up to replace the fallen.

# PART I

## The Life of Caesar

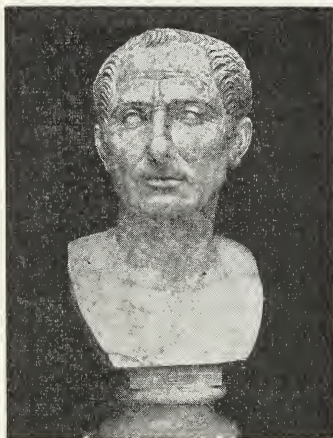
*Adapted from Suetonius and Others*

### 1. Caesar's Divine Ancestry

C. Iulius Caesar erat clarus Romanus. Erat clarissimus omnium Romanorum. Tota gens Iulia erat clara, nomen enim a Iulo, filio  
415 Aeneae, ceperat. Itaque olim Caesar 'A dea Venere,' inquit, 'sunt Iulii, cuius gentis familia est nostra.'

### 2. Dangers Under Sulla the Dictator

Sedecim annos natus patrem amisit. Praeterea fuit magno in peri-



JULIUS CAESAR

413 C.: = Gaius. Contrast C. with Cn. = Gnaeus, which is part of Pompey's name. Originally, C served the Romans as both G and C (=K).

414 gens: 'clan', 'family'. Family pride was high among Roman patricians, whose second name was their family name. e.g. C. Iulius Caesar. enim: a postpositive, i.e. placed second in its clause. In English, of course, place 'for' first in its clause. Three common Latin postpositives are enim, 'for'; igitur, 'therefore' (as in l. 420); autem, 'however', 'moreover' (as in l. 439). 415 Aeneae: the Trojan Aeneas, whose mother was the goddess Venus, escaped the destruction of Troy by the Greeks. His destiny was to perpetuate Troy in a new land, Italy. It was from his son Iulus or Ascanius, that the Julians claimed to derive their name. olim: in a speech at the funeral of a young woman relative. sunt: 'are descended'.

416 cuius gentis familia est nostra: lit., 'of which family our household is (a part)'; tr. 'and to this family our household belongs'.

417 sedecim annos natus: 'when six-



culo quod erat consanguineus eius Marii qui fuerat inimicus dictatori Sullae. Itaque Sulla iuvenem Caesarem ad caedem notare volebat, existimans Caesari multos Marios inesse. Caesar igitur ex Italia fugere coactus est.

### 3. Caesar's Ambition

Etiam adulescens, Caesar erat cupidus gloriae. Qui, post mortem Sullae, quaestor factus in Hispaniam pervenit. Ibi, animadversa apud Herculis templum Magni Alexandri statua, flevit et 'Nihil memorabile,' inquit, 'a me actum est aetate qua iam Alexander orbem terrarum subegerat.' Item, per parvum vicum iens, 'Apud hos,' inquit, 'esse primus malo quam apud Romanos esse secundus.'

### 4. The First Triumvirate

Postea Caesar cum Bibulo consul creatur. Statim se cum Cn. Pompeio et M. Crasso coniunxit. Ille magnam gloriam belli, hic

teen years old'; lit., 'having been born sixteen years' (acc. of duration of time).

418 consanguineus: this word usually means a blood relative, but here means a relative by marriage. Marii: for Marius and Sulla, see *Biog. Introduction*, 1.

419 ad caedem notare: lit., 'to mark down for death'; tr., 'to proscribe'. See lines 1-17 of Act IV, Scene I, of Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar", where a proscription list is being made out, and also Act IV, Scene III, lines 177 following, where the death of the victims is reported.

420 Caesari: dat. gov. by the *in-* in the compound verb *inesse*.

422 gloriae: obj. gen., object of the action of 'desiring' implied in the adj. *cupidus*. Qui: a co-ord. rel. pron. Instead of joining a sub. rel. clause to an antecedent, it joins a principal clause (a new sentence) to the preceding sentence. Tr. 'He'. Here, as often, it indicates a continuing subject, as opposed to *ille*, which often

indicates a change of subject

423 quaestor: the first political office in the *cursus honorum*; see *Biog. Introduction*, 1. As quaestor in Spain, Caesar would assist the governor and act as treasurer in receiving the provincial revenue from the tax collectors.

424 Alexandri: Alexander, the Macedonian who conquered the rest of Greece and then overran the Persian Empire, reaching even India. The story goes that at the age of twenty-one he wept because there were no more worlds to conquer.

425 aetate qua: abl. of time when; tr., 'at an age at which'.

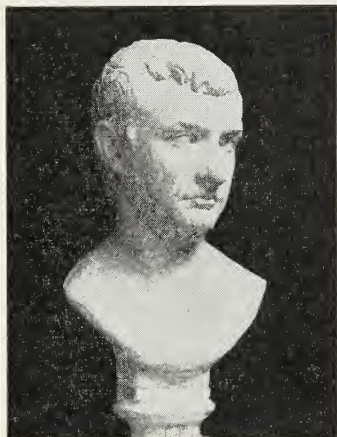
426-427 apud hos: 'among these villagers'; his desire to be at the top makes Caesar say that he would rather be 'a big splash in a little pond' rather than a 'little splash in a big pond'.

430 Pompeio, Crasso: see *Biog. Introduction*. 2. belli: obj. gen., which often expresses the relationship between two nouns where English relies on

435 magnam pecuniam habebat. Sic tres viri civitati Romanae impera-  
bant, neque alter consul Bibulus, collega Caesaris, ullam potes-  
tatem omnino habebat. Itaque cives Romani dicere solebant, non  
440 'Caesare et Bibulo consulibus,' sed 'Iulio et Caesare consulibus,'  
et 'Bibulo fieri consule nil memini.' Sub idem tempus Caesar  
Calpurniam duxit uxorem suamque filiam Iuliam Gnaeo Pompeio  
collocavit.

### 5. Caesar's Gallic Campaigns

Proximo anno proconsul Caesar in provinciam Galliam abiit.  
Novem autem annis quibus in imperio fuit, haec fere gessit. To-  
440 tam Galliam, quae montibus Pyrenaeis Alpibusque et fluminibus  
Reno et Rhodano continetur, in provinciam redegit. Germanos,



POMPEY THE GREAT

prepositions such as 'of', 'for', 'in'.  
434 Caesare et Bibulo consulibus:  
abl. abs.; lit., 'Caesar and Bibulus  
(being) consuls'; tr., 'when Caesar  
and Bibulus were consuls', or 'in the  
consulship of Caesar and Bibulus'.  
This was the regular Roman way of  
indicating a year, (59 B.C. in this  
instance).

435 Bibulo . . . consule: abl. abs.  
fieri . . . nil: ind. statement gov. by

*memini*; tr., 'I remember nothing  
happening'. The joking implication  
is 'I don't remember Bibulus being  
consul'. It is said that the unfortu-  
nate consul Bibulus hardly dared stir  
from his home during his year of  
office. *sub*: 'at about'. Usually *sub*  
with an accus. means 'just before'  
when referring to time.

436 Iuliam: Julia was Caesar's  
daughter by a previous marriage.  
Note that, as usual, the daughter's  
name is the feminine form of the  
family name. On her marriage she  
might, if she wished, use instead  
her husband's family name, which  
in this instance would be *Pompeia*.  
438 proximo anno: in March, 58 B.C.  
proconsul: 'as governor'. A consul at  
the end of his year of office became  
a *vir consularis* ('ex-consul'). If at  
that time he was appointed governor  
of a province he became a *proconsul*,  
(*'governor'*). Galliam: accus. in app.  
to *provinciam*; lit., 'the province,  
(namely) Gaul.' This is the regular  
Latin idiom with geographic nouns  
like *urbs*, *oppidum*, *insula*, *provin-*  
*cia*, *terra*.

439 haec fere gessit: 'he accom-  
plished the following, generally  
speaking.'

qui trans Rhenum incolunt, primus Romanorum aggressus, maximis adfecit cladibus. Aggressus est Britannos ipsos, ignotos antea. eisque superatis pecuniam et obsides imperavit.

- 445 Clari duces hostium a Caesare victi sunt—primum Divico, qui Helvetios e finibus in Galliam educebat; deinde Ariovistus, qui Germanos in Galliam ducebat; deinde Ambiorix et Indutiomarus, qui, complures civitates Gallorum ducentes, legiones Romanas e Gallia expellere conabantur; postremo Vercingetorix, qui  
450 omnes civitates Gallorum contra Caesarem ducebat.

### 6. Crossing the Rubicon

- Tota Gallia victa, patres, Caesarem iam veriti, eum sine exercitu a provincia discedere iubent. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar apud milites orationem habet. Conclamant milites sese velle imperatoris sui iniurias defendere. Itaque ille, mandatis patrum neglectis, cum exercitu ad Italiam proficiscitur. Ad flumen Rubiconem,  
455 qui provinciae finis erat, paulisper consistit. 'Etiam nunc,' inquit, 'redire possumus; tamen flumine transito omnia armis agere de-

442 *primus Romanorum aggressus*: 'he was the first of the Romans to attack'. Latin practises great economy of words, as in idioms like *Primus cognovi*, 'I was the first to find out'. Notice that in English also we may economize by saying 'I found out first'.

442-443 *maximis adfecit cladibus*: 'and inflicted very serious disasters upon them'. *Germanos* is really the dir. obj. of *adfecit* as well as of *aggressus*.

443 *Aggressus est*: placed first to emphasize the boldness of the attack.

444 *eis*: dat. (NOT abl. abs.), ind. obj. of *imperavit*, which in this idiom has also the dir. objects *pecuniam* and *obsides*. In translating this sentence, try using a series of three principal verbs: 'He attacked . . . , conquered them, and from them demanded . . . '.

446-449 Divico, Ariovistus, Ambiorix, Indutiomarus, Vercingetorix:

these names are nom., in app. to *duces*. See *Biog. Introd.* 3. *primum . . . deinde . . . deinde . . . postremo*: Tr. by four short English sentences, e.g. 'First there was Divico . . . Second there was Ariovistus . . .', and so on.

452 *Quibus rebus*: 'this', or 'this information'. For the co-ord. rel., see note on l. 422. *apud*: 'among', 'to'.

453 *Conclamant*: why is the verb first in its clause? See note on *aggressus est*, l. 443.

453-454 *imperatoris*: obj. gen. (NOT subjective!); tr. 'done to their commander'.

454 *defendere*: here, 'to avenge'. *ille*: indicating, as often, a change of subject; 'he', 'Caesar'. It means, lit., 'that other person in the last sentence, not the subject'.

455 *ad flumen*: *ad* often means 'at', 'near'.

457-458 *omnia armis agere debemus*: 'we must settle everything by force

hemus.' Deinde, flumen Rubiconem transgressus, 'Iacta' inquit, 'alea est.'

### 7. Pompey's Attitude

- 460 Interim ipse Pompeius, ab inimicis Caesaris permotus, quod neminem esse parem sibi volebat, se ab amicitia Caesaris averterat et cum communibus inimicis in gratiam redierat. Nam Pompeius, ut videtur, esse princeps apud Romanos volebat. Qui olim 'Sulla potuit,' inquit, 'Nonne ego potero?' De qua re Cicero, clarissimus  
465 orator Romanorum, qui rem publicam servari ac Caesarem vinci volebat, 'In hac re,' inquit, 'est nihil boni praeter causam rei publicae.'

of arms'. Once on the Italian side of the Rubicon they will be public enemies.

458-459 *Iacta . . . alea est*: 'The die (sing. of "dice") is cast'. *Iacta est* is a good example of the perf. tense that stresses a continuing or present state resulting from a past action.

460-461 *quod . . . volebat*: as regularly in Latin, the sub. clause belongs with what follows (*avertat*), not with what precedes (*permotus*).  
461 *sibi*: dat. gov. by the adj. *parem*.  
*se . . . averterat*: ignore *se* in translating.

462 *communibus inimicis*: 'their common enemies', i.e. men against whom Caesar and Pompey had formed the First Triumvirate.

463 *ut videtur*: lit., 'as it seems'. Idiomatic English would change 'as' to 'so', or else omit it altogether. *Qui*: co-ord. rel. denoting a continuing subject; see note, l. 422.

463-464 *Sulla potuit . . . Nonne ego potero?*: 'Sulla was able. Shall I not be able? (or Why not I?)' Pompey was thinking of Sulla's autocratic actions. (Quoted by Cicero in his Letters, (*ad Att. IX 10*.)

464 *Cicero*: Marcus Tullius Cicero, the most famous of Roman orators. His letters, from which quotations

are made in this chapter and others, give us a running commentary on events of his day. Some years before this (in 63 B.C.) he had climaxed his career when, as consul, he had thwarted the rebel Catiline's attempt to overthrow the government. A member of the *equites* (the middle and financial class), Cicero had hoped to heal Rome's internal troubles by a union of the political groups (*concordia ordinum*). The civil war between Caesar and Pompey caused all such hopes to fade. Cicero chose Pompey's side in the war, but with some misgivings. He felt that the members of Pompey's side were no better than those of Caesar's, but that at least they did seem to champion the survival of the country's constitution. When Caesar became a one-man ruler, he treated Cicero with great respect. So too, the conspirators at the time intended to enlist Cicero's aid, but did not. After Caesar's assassination, Cicero in a series of speeches (called the *Philippics*) lashed out against Mark Antony who, with the young Octavian (later Augustus), opposed the conspirators. Because of this, Cicero's name was put on the proscription list, and his head was car-





THE DEATH OF CICERO

Cicero forbade his slaves to defend him against Antony's soldiers.

### 8. Alarm in Rome

Primo Pompeius confidebat se Caesarem facile vincere posse. Olim  
 'Terram pede quatiā,' inquit, 'et protinus legiones aderunt.'  
 470 Interim Caesar per Italiam incredibili celeritate iter fecerat. Tum  
 unus ex Romanis 'Nunc,' inquit, 'terram pede quate, Pompei.'  
 Tamen ille primo ad oppidum Brundisium, deinde ad Graeciam,  
 magna classe parata, fugit. Tum 'Sol,' inquit Cicero, 'excidis-  
 se mihi e mundo videtur. Quoad Pompeius in Italia fuit, sperare  
 475 non destiti.'

ried back to Antony. See Shakespeare's play "Julius Caesar", Act IV, Scene III, where Cicero's death is reported to Brutus and Cassius.

466 hac re: 'this situation'.

466-467 est nihil . . . rei publicae: 'there is nothing good (*boni* = partitive gen.) except the cause (or principle) of the state (or constitution)'. (*Ad Fam.* VII. 3).

469 aderunt: 'will appear'. Pompey

was confident that at the stamp of his foot his former soldiers would flock to his colours.

470 celeritate: abl. of manner.

471 Pompei: voc. Names in *-ius*, and also *filius*, have vocatives in *-i*.

472 Brundisium: See note on *Galliam* I. 438. Brundisium was the port from which first Pompey and later Caesar sailed for Greece.

474 mihi: this dat. goes with *exci-*

## 9. The Civil War Between Caesar and Pompey

Ordo rerum est hic. Caesar, consultis de republica patribus, vali  
 480 dissimas Pompei copias, quae sub tribus legatis M. Petreio et L.  
 Afranio et M. Varrone in Hispania erant, aggressus est. Nam dixit  
 se ire ad Hispaniam ad exercitum sine duce et inde ad Italiam  
 485 reversurum ad ducem sine exercitu. Et quamquam obsidione  
 Massiliae impediabatur quae ei in itinere portas clauserat, brevi  
 tamen omnia subegit.  
 Hinc urbe Roma repetita, in Macedoniam transgressus, Pompe-  
 ium, per quattuor menses maximis munitionibus obsessum, tan-  
 485 dem proelio Pharsalico fugavit et fugientem Alexandriam perse-  
 cutus est. Ubi cognovit eum occisum esse, cum Ptolemaeo rege,

*disse* ('for me'), rather than with *videtur* ('to me'). (*Ad Att. IX, 10*).  
 476 ordo rerum est hic: 'The sequence of events is as follows (*hic*, adj.)'. de republica: 'about state matters', 'about the condition of the country'. Notice that by consulting the senate Caesar gave notice that he intended to adhere to Roman constitutional government.

477 Pompei: the gen. sing. of second decl. nouns ending in *-ius* or *-ium* is often spelled with only one *-i*.

477-478 M. Petreio et L. Afranio et M. Varrone: an example of a series containing all its connectives (A et B et C). The alternative is to omit all connectives (A, B, C). English, of course, prefers to say A, B, and C. For the three officers see *Biog. Introd. 5*.

479 ad exercitum sine duce: refers to Pompey's forces in Spain, with a slighting reference to the ability of their three commanders.

480 ad ducem sine exercitu: refers to Pompey, with a slighting reference to the quality of his army in Greece. The words *ad Italiam* are used because Caesar will return to Italy en route to Greece.

481 Massiliae: obj. gen. For *Massilia*

(Marseilles), see *Biog. Introd. 5*.  
 ei in itinere: 'to him (dat. of int.) when he was en route'; freely, 'in his path'.

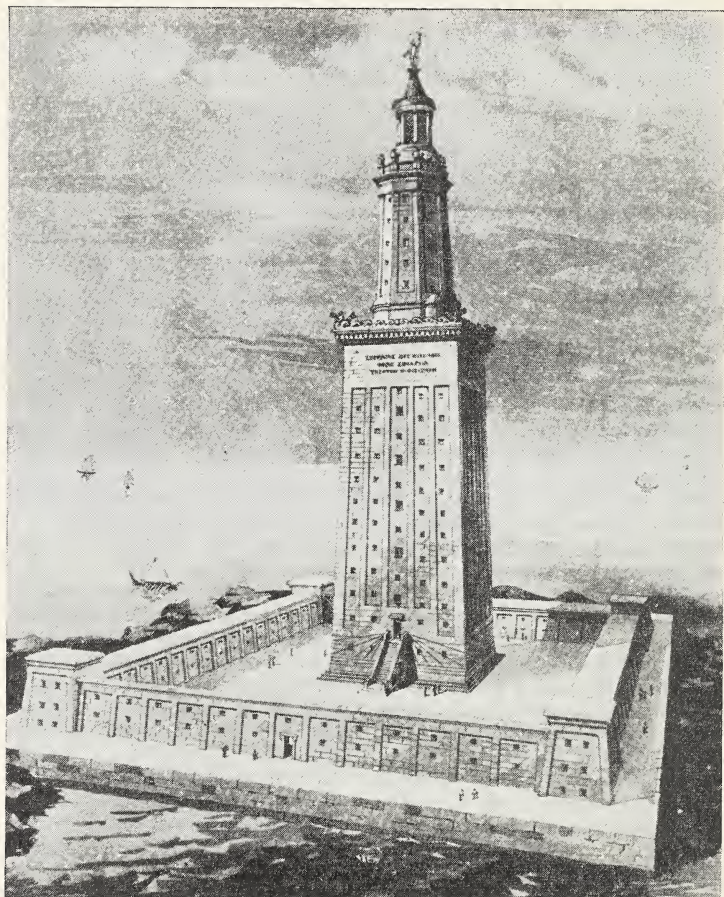
482 omnia: neut. pl. = 'all things', 'all opposition'; freely, 'he won a complete (or decisive) victory'.

483 Roma: abl. in app. to *urbe*. See note on *Galliam*, l. 438.

483-484 repetita, transgressus, obsessum: these participles, like most, may be translated as principal verbs. Here, treat them as parallel to *fugavit*. For the blockade at Dyrrachium referred to in *obsessum*, and for Pharsalus and Alexandria, see *Biog. Introd. 5*.

485 fugientem: modifies *eum* (*Pompeium*), understood. Distinguish *fugio* from the verb *fugo* which appears just before it (*fugavit*). Alexandria: 'to Alexandria'. With the names of cities, towns and small islands, the prep. *ad* is omitted, and the accus. by itself indicates place to which. In the same way the abl. by itself (without *ab*) expresses place from which, e.g. *Alexandria*, in l. 490.

486 Ptolemaeo rege: the Ptolemy dynasty of rulers was founded by the Greek general Ptolemy when Alex-



*Courtesy Illustrated London News*

### THE ISLAND OF PHAROS AT ALEXANDRIA

Its lighthouse and strategic location were vital to shipping.

under the Great's empire fell into three portions. The Ptolemy referred to here was Ptolemy XIV. On the death of their father, this ten-year-old boy and his sixteen-year-old sister Cleopatra had been left as

joint rulers of Egypt. Soon however, the boy's advisers drove Cleopatra out. They also arranged the assassination of Pompey, who was murdered as he came ashore (see lines 792-803). When Caesar came to



a quo sibi quoque insidias parari videbat, bellum sane difficillimum gessit. Regnum Aegypti victor Cleopatrae fratrique eius minori tradidit.

- 490 Alexandria in Syriam et inde in Pontum transiit. Ibi Mithridatis Magni filium, Pharnacem, qui omnes Romanos ex Asia expellere conabatur ad Zelam fugavit. Hinc Scipionem in Africa devicit, Pompei liberos in Hispania. Confectis bellis quinquens triumphavit.

### 10. Anecdotes of the Civil War

- 495 In Graecia Caesar, ad Dyrrachium proelio pulsus, quod Pompeius non institerat, negavit eum vincere scire.

Egypt, the young king was drowned during the hostilities that broke out. Finally Caesar declared Cleopatra and a still younger brother (Ptolemy XV) joint rulers of Egypt, under Roman jurisdiction. At the end of two years Cleopatra murdered this brother to put her son upon the throne.

487 a quo . . . parari: use the act. voice in translating, 'who, he saw, was preparing treachery (or, had some treachery in store) for him also'; *sibi* is dat. of int., and is reflex. to refer to the person who is being quoted (here, Caesar).

487-488 bellum sane difficillimum: 'a very difficult war indeed'.

488-489 fratri eius minori: 'to her younger brother'. See note, l. 486.

490 Alexandria: abl. See note on *Alexandriam*, l. 485. in Syriam et inde in Pontum: It is interesting to notice that Caesar entered the same areas as Hannibal had done as an exile about 150 years before this. See lines 71-86.

492 ad Zelam: 'near Zela' (compare *ad flumen*, l. 455). Scipionem: an officer of Pompey (not, of course, the general who had defeated Hannibal at Zama over 150 years before).

492-493 in Africa, in Hispania: see *Biog. Introd.* 6

493 Pompei liberos: Pompey's two sons, Gnaeus and Sextus, continued the struggle against Caesar and proved able opponents.

493-494 quinquens triumphavit: it was really a FOUR-fold triumph that Caesar celebrated in 46 B.C. and was carefully designated as being celebrated over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus, and Numidia (Africa), with no reference to the purely civil war fought between Caesar and the Pompeians. Permission to celebrate a triumph was the highest honour accorded to a victorious Roman general. He rode at the head of his victory parade to the Capitol, the temple of Jupiter, and for a brief time impersonated the king of the gods himself.

495 ad Dyrrachium. 'at Dyrrachium' (compare *ad flumen*, l. 455). For this incident, see *Biog. Introd.* 5.

495-496 quod Pompeius non institerat: explains *negavit*, not *pulsus*. See note on *quod* . . . *volebat*, lines 460-461.

496 vincere scire: when completed by an infin., *scio* means 'I know how' (compare the French "savoir").

497-498 Ipsi hoc voluerunt: these words were probably prompted by





From MGM's 'Quo Vadis'

### A ROMAN TRIUMPH

A slave behind his master repeats 'Remember, sire, you too are mortal'.

Proelio Pharsalico facto, caesos inimicos prospiciens, Caesar 'Ipsi hoc voluerunt,' inquit, 'non ego.'

In Aegypto, ad Caesarem urbi Alexandriae appropinquantem  
500 caput Pompei mortui latum est. Caesar se convertens flevit.

Alexandriae Caesar eruptione hostium subita in aquam inire coactus est. Cum desiluisset in mare, per aquam ducentos passus perfugit ad proximam navem, elata sinistra, ne libelli quos tenebat

sincere regret over the shedding of Roman blood; 'they wished this upon themselves, I didn't'.

499 Alexandriae: dat. (not gen.), in app. to urbi, which is in turn gov. by *appropinquantem*.

500 latum: from *fero*.

501 Alexandriae: 'in Alexandria'. The loc. is used with the names of cities, towns and small islands to express location in or at. It takes the place of the prep. *in* with abl. in aquam inire: 'to take to the water'.

Caesar and his men were fighting for the possession of the lighthouse-island of Pharos, which controlled the movement of shipping in and out of Alexandria.

502 desiluisset: subj. in a *cum*-temporal clause referring to past time; plup. to show an action already completed before the action of the main verb (*perfugit*).

502-503 perfugit: 'swam'.

503 elata sinistra: = *sinistra* (*manu*) *ex aqua elata*: abl. abs.



Barry Woodcut

## CAESAR SAVES HIS MANUSCRIPT

It is not clear how his soggy cloak can still flutter in the breeze.

madeferent, et paludamentum dentibus trahens, ne id ab hostibus  
505 caperetur.

In Asia, rege Pharnace ad Zelam celeriter fugato, Caesar eam vic-  
toriam celerem his verbis enuntiavit: 'Veni, vidi, vici.'

In Africa, ante proelium ad urbem Thapsum factum, hostes co-  
pias Caesaris fugaverant. Ille ubi signiferum suum cum ceteris  
510 fugientem conspexit, eum convertit et 'Erras,' inquit, 'signifer;  
ecce, ibi sunt hostes.'

503-504 ne . . . maderferent : a purp.  
cl. In tr., avoid 'lest'; here, try 'in  
case they should' or 'to prevent them  
from'.

504 paludamentum : accus., dir. obj.  
of *trahens*. This was the scarlet (or  
purple) cloak of the commander.  
dentibus : abl. of means; 'in his  
teeth', 'between his teeth'.

504-505 ne caperetur : see note on  
ne . . . maderferent, lines 503-504.

507 Veni, vidi, vici : this communi-

qué of Caesar's is a good example of  
terseness, being accentuated by a  
lack of connectives. The technical  
name for lack of connective is asyn-  
deton.

509 Ille : change of subj.; see note,  
l. 454.

510 Erras : there is humour in the  
suitability of both meanings of the  
word to the occasion—1. 'You are  
going the wrong way'. 2. 'You are  
making a mistake'.



Scene from MGM's 'Julius Caesar'

'BEWARE THE IDES OF MARCH'.

## 11. Caesar's One-Man Rule

Caesar moderationem atque clementiam in victoria admirabilem praebuit. Postea eos quibus nondum ignoverat in Italiam redire passus est. Statuas Sullae atque Pompei a plebe fractas reposuit.  
 515 Itaque hoc tempore Cicero 'Admirari soleo,' inquit, 'iustitiam et sapientiam Caesaris.'

Sed ne Caesar quidem rem publicam restituere potuit. Multi autem dicebant illum velle nomen 'regem' capere. Sed ille plebi regem eum salutanti respondit Caesarem se, non regem esse.

520 Brevi coniuratio orta est, etiam inter amicos Caesaris ipsius, Gaio Cassio Marcoque et Decimo Bruto principibus coniurationis.

512 admirabilem : mod. both *moderationem* and *clementiam*.

513 quibus : dat. gov. by *ignoverat*.

515 admirari soleo : 'I am constantly marvelling at' (*Ad. Fam. VI, 6*).

517 rem publicam : 'the constitution', 'the republic'.

520-521 Gaio Cassio Marcoque et Decimo Bruto principibus : abl. abs. Tr. as a principal clause. Notice that this is an example of a series with

all connectives inserted (*-que, et*). In Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar", Gaius Cassius Longinus is the "lean and hungry Cassius", and Marcus Brutus is Caesar's trusted friend. Decimus Brutus' name appears as Decius Brutus in the play. principibus : 'ring-leaders'.

522 futura caedes : 'his approaching assassination'. *haruspex* : 'sooth-sayer' (= 'truth-sayer'). By exa-



## 12. The Assassination of Caesar

Sed Caesari futura caedes prodigiis aperta est. Nam haruspex Spurinna nomine monebat ut Idus Martias caveret. Calpurnia quoque, uxor Caesaris, in somno vidit virum gladio occisum.

- 525 Sed Idibus Martiis Caesar, curiam ex consuetudine iniens, haruspici Spurinnae 'Erravisti,' inquit, 'nam Idus Martiae adsunt.' Ille respondit eas venisse, non praeteriisse. Atque in curia Caesar tribus et viginti vulneribus occisus est. Qui, Bruto inter inimicos viso, 'Et tu Brute,' inquit, et moriens sub statua Pompei cecidit.
- 530 Periiit sexto et quinquagesimo aetatis anno. Stella crinita per septem continuos dies lucem edebat creditumque est hanc esse animam Caesaris in caelum recepti. Sed Cicero, Caesare occiso, gaudebat. Uni ex coniuratoribus 'Tibi gratulor,' inquit, 'mihi gaudeo, te amo, tua tueor.'

mining the entrails of sacrificed animals he determined whether or not the omens were good.

523 ut Idus Martias caveret: subj. in an ind. com. So too in Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar", the soothsayer says "Beware the Ides of March". (Act I, Scene II.) The Ides of March fall on March 15.

524 virum: 'her husband'.

525 Idibus Martiis: abl. of time. ex consuetudine: 'as usual', ex acquiring the idea of 'in accordance with' from its basic meaning 'from', 'arising out of'.

528 Qui: a continuing subject; see note, l. 422.

528-529: Bruto, Brute: Marcus Brutus.

529 Et tu Brute: either 'and you, Brutus' (*et* = conj.), or, more probably 'Even you, Brutus!', 'You, too, Brutus!' (*et* = *etiam* = adv.).

529 sub statua Pompei: 'at the foot of Pompey's statue', by an irony of fate.

530 aetatis: part. gen. This word may be omitted in translation. per: this prep. is sometimes used with the accus. of duration of time.

531 creditumque . . . recepti: 'and it (impersonal) was believed that this was the spirit of Caesar, who (or, and that he) had been received into the sky'. Julius Caesar was believed to have been deified and Suetonius gives the title "The Deified Julius" to his biography. Mythology had already contained instances of the metamorphosis of humans into stars; for instance, the Greek twin brothers Castor and Pollux had become the "Twin Stars" (*Gemini*). 533 mihi: dat. of int.; tr., 'for myself', 'at my good fortune'.

534 tua tueor: "I am protecting your interests". (To Basilus — *Ad. Fam. VI*, 15). Cicero's callous attitude to the assassination reflects his intense relief; he had seen one-man rule supplanting the republican constitution, and hoped that now the "good old days" might return. Soon he saw that Mark Antony was an even graver threat, and in a letter to Cassius he wrote: 'I wish you had invited me to the banquet (i.e. the assassination) on the Ides of March; there would have been no left-overs (i.e. Mark Antony)' (*Ad. Fam. XII*. 4).



# PART II

## Caesar in Britain

### 1. Reasons for Caesar's First Invasion

*In the year 55 B.C. Julius Caesar determines to invade Britain, partly because of the British aid sent to the Gauls against him, and partly because of his curiosity about Britain. Even after much inquiry, he can discover little about the country itself and about its inhabitants.*

- 535 Exigua iam pars aestatis reliqua erat. Etsi in his locis maturae sunt  
hiemes, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, Caesar tamen  
in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod intellegebat auxilia  
omnibus fere Gallicis bellis inde hostibus nostris missa esse. Ipse  
540 magno usui sibi fore arbitrabatur insulam adire et genus homi-  
num perspicere et loca, portus, aditus cognoscere; quae omnia  
fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim quisquam temere  
praeter mercatores eo adiit, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram

535 Exigua . . . pars : it was now near the end of July.

536 ad septentriones vergit : 'inclines to the north', 'lies to the north', in relation to Italy's latitude.

536 Caesar : in his reports Caesar regularly refers to himself in the 3rd pers., but to his men as *nostris*.

538 omnibus . . . Gallicis bellis : abl. of time. Aid had been given to the Venetans and to other Gauls, but never on such a scale as to justify Caesar's invasion of Britain in retaliation.

539 magno usui sibi : double dat.; 'of great advantage (*usui*, dat. of purp., used idiomatically here instead of a subjective completion after *sum*) to himself (*sibi*, dat. of int.)'

540 loca : 'the country'. aditus : 'approaches', i.e. landing-points in addition to the *portus*. quae omnia fere : 'for nearly all these things'; quae is a coord. rel. It is hard to believe that the traders could not have told him what he wanted to know had they wished. If they were Gauls, they would have been unwilling that Britain should be opened up for rival Roman traders.

541 Neque enim quisquam : 'for no one'; neque enim regularly = *non enim*, and quisquam is the indef. pron. used after a neg. temere : 'without good reason'.

542 neque . . . quicquam : 'and nothing'. iis ipsis : 'even (*ipsis*) to them (*iis = eis*)'.

maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Galliam, notum  
 545 esset. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta  
 esset insulae magnitudo cognoscere poterat, neque quae aut  
 quanta nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent  
 aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui portus essent idonei ad  
 maiorum navium multitudinem.



*Courtesy Pictorial Education and Evans Brothers Limited*

#### JULIUS CAESAR QUESTIONS THE GAULS ABOUT BRITAIN

543 contra Galliam : 'opposite Gaul'.  
 545 esset : subj. mood in an ind.  
 quest.; so too the other subj. verbs  
 in this sentence. Notice that a verb  
 of asking is not necessary to intro-  
 duce an ind. quest.; here, for in-  
 stance, Caesar was unable to "find  
 out" the answer to the questions  
 which were uppermost in his mind.

546 usum belli : 'methods of war-  
 fare'.

547-548 ad . . . multitudinem : *ad*  
 often expresses purp.; 'for'. The re-  
 quirements of small numbers of  
 merchantmen would be far different  
 from those of a fleet of men-of-war.  
 549 His constitutis rebus : i.e. the  
 arrangements for shipping and for



Courtesy International Film Distributors

#### LOADING SUPPLIES FOR THE INVASION OF BRITAIN

### 2. The Preparations and Crossing

*While Caesar busies himself with preparations for the invasion, Gaius Volusenus, one of his lieutenants, is sent ahead to reconnoitre. Meanwhile Caesar consolidates his position in northern Gaul and prepares about 80 transport ships in which two legions can cross. To the cavalry he assigns 18 ships which are destined to be blown so far off course as to be temporarily useless.*

*He sets sail just after midnight on the morning of August 26, but after an easy crossing is not able to land at once because of the forbidding nature of the shoreline.*

His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam tempestatem tertia fere  
550 vigilia solvit. Equites in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves  
ascendere et se sequi iussit. Quae cum paulo tardius essent admi-

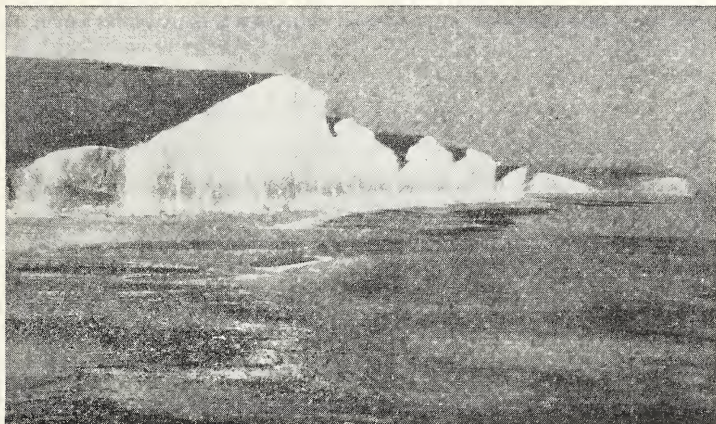
the protection of his base when he sailed from Gaul. *tertia fere vigilia* : abl. of time; 'about the third watch'. Caesar is purposely vague because the actual embarkation must have taken at least two hours. Caesar probably weighed anchor around midnight, with the crossing taking

at least  $8\frac{1}{2}$  hours for his fastest ships.

550 *solvit* : sc. *naves*. He is thought to have set out from Boulogne. in *ulteriorem portum* : probably the modern Ambleteuse.

551 *Quae cum . . . administrata* : 'when (*cum*-temporal, which governs





THE CHALK CLIFFS OF DOVER

Caesar sailed past the cliffs in search of a better place to land.

nistrata, ipse hora circiter diei quarta cum primis navibus ad Britanniam pervenit atque ibi in omnibus collibus dispositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci talis erat natura, atque montibus ita angustis mare continebatur, ut ex locis superioribus in  
 555 litus tela conici possent. Hunc locum nullo modo idoneum esse ad egrediendum arbitratus, ad horam nonam in ancoris expectavit. Tandem reliquae naves eo convenerunt. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, ostendit et quae ex Voluseno  
 560 cognovisset et quae fieri vellet, monuitque ut ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res administrarent. His dimissis et ventum et aes-

the subj. mood when referring to past events) these orders (*Quae*, neut pl., replacing *cum* as first word because it is a co-ord. rel.) had been carried out (*administrata essent*) a little (*paulo*, abl. of meas. of diff.) too late (*tardius* abs. comp.),' because of the difficulty in getting the horses aboard.

552 hora . . . quarta : about 8.30 A.M. at that time of year.

552-3 ad Britanniam pervenit : near Dover.

554-5 montibus . . . continebatur : 'the sea was so closely bordered by

steep cliffs'; these are the famous chalk cliffs.

556 possent : subj. mood in a result clause.

557 ad egrediendum : 'for (*ad*, expressing purp.) a landing (*egrediendum*, a gerund).' horam nonam : about 2.20 P.M. expectavit : = *moratus est*: usually, *expecto* is transitive.

559-60 quae ex Voluseno cognovisset : probably that there was a suitable landing place further along the coast; *cognovisset* and *vellet* are subj. in an ind. quest.

560-1 ad nutum et ad tempus : 'on



tum secundum uno tempore nactus, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

### 3. Difficulties in Landing

*The landing is made difficult by other factors as well.*

- 565 At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemiserunt equitatum et essedarios, quo genere in proeliis plerumque uti consueverunt. Deinde reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant, quodque milites magno onere armorum oppressi simul et de navibus desilire et

the instant and at the (right) time'. administrarent : subj. in an ind. com. best translated by an English infin. 561-4 His dimissis . . . constituit : a typical Latin period, or periodic sentence, with each sub. action recorded in chronological order, followed by the principal action by way of climax. e.g.

1. *His dimissis*—he dismisses the meeting
2. *ventum . . . nactus*—he obtains suitable sailing conditions
3. *dato . . . signo*—he gives the signal
4. *sublatis ancoris*—he weighs anchor
5. *circiter . . . progressus*—he proceeds
6. *aperto . . . constituit*—he runs his ships aground.

English is more effective in shorter sentences. Notice how the units of the Latin lend themselves to tr. by several main clauses.

561 *ventum* : a noun (not the verb *venio*) ; it, as well as *aestum*, is mod. by the adj. *secundum* ('favourable', a meaning which shows the connection with *sequor*, for 'following' implies 'favourable').

563-4 *aperto ac plano litore* : abl. of

place without *in*; between Walmer and Deal. *naves constituit* : 'he ran the ships aground', lit., 'he moored'. 566 *quo genere* : referring to *essedarios*; 'a type (of warrior) which'. Latin sometimes incorporates its antecedent (here, *genere*) within a rel. cl.

567 *reliquis copiis* : abl. of accompaniment; in references to military operations, *cum* is sometimes omitted if the noun is mod. by an adj. *navibus* : abl. of sep., without a prep.; = *e navibus*.

568 *has* : 'the following'; explained by the two clauses introduced by *quod*, 'the fact that'.

569 *nisi in alto* : 'except in deep (water)'; *alto* is the neut. sing. of *altus* used as a noun, i.e. a substantive. *constitui* : pres. infin. pass.; see l. 564.

570 *oppressi* : 'weighed down'. *simul* : mod. *cogebantur*; 'at one and the same time'.

570-1 *et . . . et . . . et* : In Latin connection is achieved either by using *et* between each of the series (*A et B et C*) or by omitting connectives entirely (asyndeton). Here *et* is repeated even before the first of the series, achieving greater emphasis.

in fluctibus consistere et cum hostibus pugnare cogeantur. Interim, illi aut ex arido aut paulum in aquam progressi audacter tela coniciebant et equos insuefactos concitabant. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius generis pugnae omnino imperiti non  
 575 eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus proeliis uti consueverant, utebantur.

#### 4. The Landing

*Caesar finds a way to land, his task made easier by the example of a courageous standard-bearer.*

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes repelli iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum pedem rettulerunt. Atque nostris militibus morantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, is qui decimae  
 580

571 consistere: 'get a footing'. 'stand firm'.

572 illi: change of subject; 'the enemy'. ex arido: 'from dry land'. See note on *alto*, l. 569.

573 insuefactos: 'trained' to go into the water. Quibus rebus: 'by these novelties'; the novelties were: (1) having to fight while wading in the sea; (2) having to fight men in chariots.

574 huius generis: gen. of desc. mod. *pugnae*, which is obj. gen. gov. by *imperiti*.

575 alacritate ac studio: abl. gov. by *utebantur* ('did not display'); so too *quo* is abl. gov. by *uti*. If *alacritate ac studio* is an example of hendiadys, it means 'lively enthusiasm'. In hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units) the *ac* or *et* has the force of adding an explanation; lit., 'zeal, that is to say, enthusiasm'.

577 Quod: co-ord. rel. displacing the conj. *ubi* as first word. *removeri*:

the first of four infns. which complete *iussit* and give Caesar's four orders.

578 remis incitari: 'to be rowed quickly'. ad latus apertum: 'over against the exposed flank', i.e. the right flank. The right hand, carrying the weapon, lacked the protection of the shield.

579 tormentis: Roman artillery hurled stones and other missiles by means of tension derived from the twisting of ropes.

580 res: must be translated to fit its context. Here it means 'manoeuvre' while in l. 584 it means 'action', 'engagement'. magno usui nostris: double dat.; see l. 539.

581 inusitato genere tormentorum: it is likely that Caesar means 'by artillery, a type of weapon with which they were unfamiliar', when he says 'by the unfamiliar kind of artillery'.

582-3 nostris militibus morantibus: abl. abs. with causal force.



THE LANDING IN BRITAIN

legionis aquilam ferebat, deos precatus ut ea res legioni feliciter  
 585 eveniret, 'Desilite,' inquit, 'milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus  
 tradere: ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium  
 praestitero.' Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi proiecit at-  
 que in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se,  
 ne tantum dedecus acciperetur, universi ex navi desiluerunt.  
 590 Item cum ex proximis navibus hos conspexissent, subsecuti hos-  
 tibus appropinquaverunt.

### 5. Caesar Wins Control

*At first the Romans are at a disadvantage. Caesar shows his usual consideration for his men when they are in distress, and soon wins control of the situation.*

584 *aquilam* : the "colours" of the legion, just as the *signum* was the standard of the cohort. The loss of military colours would naturally constitute a deep disgrace.

586-7 *meum . . . officium praestitero* : the separation of *meum* and *officium* tends to emphasize the extent of his duty. The Latin fut. perf. is sometimes used with great precision, where English uses a fut.

587 *cum* : temporal conj.

588 *cohortati . . . acciperetur* : 'urged one another (*inter se*) not to incur so great a disgrace (*ne . . . acciperetur*, ind. com., here passive, but better translated as active in English).'

589 *universi* : 'all with one accord'.  
 590 *cum . . . conspexissent* : 'when the men (to be supplied as the subject of *conspexissent*) on board (*ex*) the other ships (*navibus*) — begin-

Utrique acriter pugnaverunt. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firme insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, magnopere perturbabantur. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus  
 595 compleri iussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul atque in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius insequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum  
 600 tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad priorem fortunam Caesari deficit.

### 6. British Resistance

*Caesar enters into diplomatic relations with many of the British states and receives the submission of several of them. At this precise time a violent storm on the English Channel drives Caesar's cavalry from Britain and severely damages his men-of-war and transports. The British chiefs are quick to take advantage of the situation and make a sudden attack on the seventh legion which is surprised while foraging.*

*The British method of using war-chariots proves troublesome to the Roman soldiers who are lacking in cavalry support.*

Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coniciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu ro-

ning with the nearest (*proximis*) — had seen them'.

592-3 *ordines servare* : 'to keep their ranks'.

593 *firmе insistere* : 'to get a firm footing'. *signa subsequi* : 'to follow their standards', i.e. 'to keep up to their colours'.

594 *Quod* : co-ord. rel.

595 *speculatoria navigia* : 'despatch boats', rowed by a single bank of oars, generally used for reconnaissance. *militibus* : abl. of means. The men are mere instruments in the fulfilment of their commander's order; *militibus compleri*, 'to be manned'.

596 *quos laborantes conspexerat*, his : Caesar sometimes places the

rel. cl. before its antecedent, which then acts as a summing up or emphatic repetition; *his* is dat. gov. by *sub-* in the compound verb *submittebat*, 'he kept sending'.

597-8 *suis omnibus consecutis* : a rare example of the part. of a dep. verb used in an abl. abs., 'and as soon as all their comrades had joined them'; lit., 'all their comrades having caught up'.

599 *neque* : 'but . . . not'. *equites* : see lines 550-1.

600 *insulam capere* : 'to make (reach) the island'. *ad* : 'to complete'; *ad* expresses purp., as often. 602 *Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae* : 'The following (*hoc*) is their method (*genus*, lit., 'type') of fight-



- tarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum primum se inter  
 605 equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant ut illi, a multitudine hostium pressi, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant.
- 610 Nostris, novitate pugnae perturbatis, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Qua re facta, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium inopportunist esse tempus arbitratus, suo loco se continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones  
 615 reduxit. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continebant et hostes a pugna prohibebant. Interim barbari, magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt. Caesar nactus circiter triginta equites, ne hostes pulsus celeritate effugerent, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum  
 620 hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Deinde nostri, omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis, se in castra receperunt.

## 7. The Second Invasion; The People of Britain

*Peace is made on Caesar's terms, but the approach of the equinox cuts short the Romans' stay in Britain to a period of about three weeks, and they return to Gaul for the winter.*

ing in (*ex*, lit., from) chariots'. *per omnes partes perequitant*: 'they drive up and down in every direction'.

603 *equorum*: subj. gen.; 'inspired by the horses'.

604-5 *se . . . insinuaverunt*: 'have penetrated'.

605 *pedibus*: abl. of means, 'on foot'.

607 *multitudine*: 'a superior number'. *pressi*: condit.

608 *ad suos receptum*: 'retreat to their own lines'.

610 *Nostris*: dat. of int. with *auxilium tulit*. *tempore opportunissimo*: 'in the nick of time'; abl. of time.

612 *Qua re facta*: 'After producing this effect'. *ad lacessendum*: gerund,

'for harassing (the enemy)'; see l. 557.

614 *suo loco se continuit*: 'he maintained his position', lit., 'he kept himself in his own place'; *loco* is abl. of place without *in*, being mod. by an adj.

615 *dies*: acc. of extent of time.

616 *a pugna*: a variant construction for *pugnare*, with *prohibeo*.

617 *magna multitudine*: 'a great host'; abl. abs.

618-9 *ne . . . effugerent*: 'in case (*ne*, lit., lest) the foe, if beaten (*pulsi*) should escape (*effugerent*, subj. in a purp. cl.) because of their mobility (*celeritate*, abl. of cause, = *propter celeritatem*)'.

620 *diutius*: '(any) longer'.

*The following winter Caesar builds another fleet better suited for the landing in Britain. This time the fleet includes 800 transports and 28 men-of-war, and sets out for Britain, in the opinion of many experts on Caesar, from the harbour of Boulogne (Itius portus), on about July 6, 54 B.C.*

*Caesar lands without opposition, but again is so delayed by a disaster to his fleet that the enemy has time to unite against him under the leadership of Cassivellaunus.*

*At this point in his story he takes time to describe more fully Britain and its inhabitants.*

625 Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos esse in insula ipsa dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae causa ex Belgio transierant, et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaeque aedificia Gallicis simillima, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in interioribus regionibus, 630 in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non

623 interior: 'inland'.

623-4 quos natos esse . . . dicunt: 'who, they say, originated in the island itself'; quos introduces the rel. cl., and is also subj. of the infin. in the ind. statement.

624-5 qui . . . ex Belgio transierant: one of the British tribes was called *Atrebates*, a name imported from the Continent.

626-7 aedificia: sc. *sunt*; 'home-steads'. Gallicis: sc. *aedificiis*, large circular huts constructed of wicker on a timber frame, and with conical thatched roofs.

628 nummo aureo: the earliest were struck about 150 years before and were still uninscribed in Caesar's time. taleis ferreis: 'iron bars'. Many specimens have been found. They can be arranged in four groups according to their weight, the heaviest be-

ing twice as valuable as the next, four times as valuable as the third, etc. ad . . . examinatis: 'weighed to a certain standard'.

629 Nascitur: 'is found'. plumbum album: 'tin'; lit., 'white lead'. interioribus: i.e. Cornwall, near the sea but far from Caesar's landing place. 630 ferrum: i.e. in Wealden Forest, Sussex. aere: the Britons did import certain articles of bronze, but most of their bronze was made in Britain. 631 fagum: a mistake. The beech existed in Britain long before the coming of the Romans. Caesar had little chance for observation.

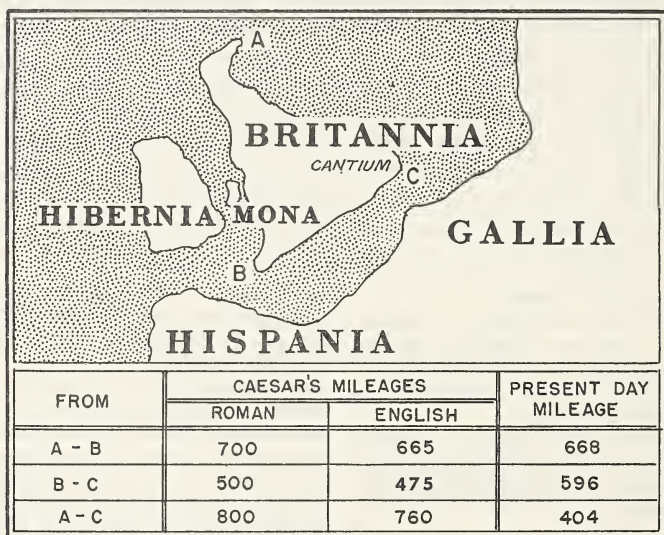
632 fas: = *fas esse*, 'that it is allowed (by the laws of God and nature)'. It is difficult to determine the origin of this superstition.

633 animi causa: 'for (*causa*, abl., expressing purp.) fun (*animi*, lit., the spirit)', 'as pets'.

putant; haec tamen alunt animi causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

### 8. Caesar's Conception of Britain

- 635 Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex



#### BRITAIN AS ENVISAGED BY CAESAR

Considering the fact that Caesar never sailed around the island, it is remarkable that his estimated distances are as accurate as they are.

634 remissioribus frigoribus: abl. abs., 'the cold being less severe'.

635 Insula natura triquetra: 'The island is (sc. est) triangular in shape (natura, abl. of respect)'. Begin a new sentence at cuius. contra: see l. 543.

636 quo: adv.; refers to angulus, 'to which'.

637 appelluntur: 'come to land', 'land'. ad orientem solem: 'towards the east.' inferior: sc. angulus.

639 Alterum: sc. latus. ad Hispaniam . . . solem: 'towards Spain, with a westerly trend'.



THE BRITONS SIGHT THE ROMANS

640 parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britan-  
 645 nia. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; com-  
 plures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de qui-  
 bus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub bruma  
 650 esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi  
 videbamus certis ex aqua mensuris noctes breviores esse quam in  
 continenti. Longitudo est huius lateris, ut fert illorum opinio,  
 septingentorum milium. Tertium est contra septentriones; contra  
 quam partem est nulla terra, sed angulus eius lateris maxime ad  
 Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitu-  
 dinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies  
 centum milium passuum.

640 *dimidio*: abl. of meas. of diff.; 'a half smaller', 'half as large'. The area of Great Britain is 84,000 square miles, and that of Ireland is 36,000.

641 *In hoc medio cursu*: 'half way across here'. *Mona*: perhaps the Isle of Man.

642 *subiectae*: 'adjacent'. *insulae*: probably the Hebrides.

643 *sub bruma*: 'about the winter solstice', Dec. 21.

644-5 *nisi videbamus*: qualifying *nihil*; 'except that we saw', 'but we did see'.

645 *certis ex aqua mensuris*: 'by exact measurements taken with a water-clock'. Unlike the sun-dial, a

water-clock did not depend on the sun, and was therefore used in a Roman camp to mark the *vigiliae*. *breviores*: Caesar's tests were taken in summer and would not be valid for the winter.

646 *ut . . . opinio*: 'according to the Britons' belief'; lit., 'as their belief says'.

647 *Tertium*: sc. *latus*.

648 *maxime*: expressing vagueness; 'if anything', 'more or less'.

649 *Hoc*: sc. *latus*; nom., subject of *existimatur*.

649-50 *in longitudinem*: 'in length'. It is a variation for *longum*, and is completed by an acc. of extent of space (*milia*).



### 9. The Customs of the Britons

Ex his Britannis omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a consuetudine Gallica differunt. Interiores plerique frumenta non  
 655 serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero Britanni se vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum colorem efficit, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu.

*After a number of encounters the Britons are decisively defeated, after which they avoid pitched battles. Meantime Caesar marches inland, receives the submission of several tribes and takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus who is finally forced to offer hostages. Caesar leaves Britain around September 20 after an invasion of more than two months' duration.*

650 Ita: = *Itaque*.

650-1 vicies centum: '2000'; *milium* is gen. of desc., while *passuum* is part. gen. The actual circumference of Britain (without allowance for indentations) is 1668 miles, whereas Caesar's 2000 Roman miles would make it 1900 miles. In his description of the geography of Britain, Caesar makes mistakes, of course, in orientation; yet, considering the meagreness of his information, he is surprisingly near the truth in essential details. His statement compares favourably with those of modern travellers and explorers regarding regions of which they have seen only a small part (Prof. Kelsey).

652 humanissimi: 'most highly civilized'. qui: = *ei qui*.

653 quae . . . omnis: 'a district which (*regio* has been incorporated into the rel. cl.) is wholly (*omnis*, often used for *totus* by Caesar) maritime'. 653-4 neque . . . differunt: 'and their habits do not differ greatly (*multum*, adv.) from those of the Gauls'.

654 Interiores plerique: 'Those dwelling inland, for the most part'. carne: from *caro*; 'on meat'. Caesar seems

to have been misinformed about the food and dress of the Britons. Corn was grown in the interior and linen and wool were used for clothing.

656 se vitro inficiunt: 'stain themselves with woad' (a plant whose leaves are used to make a bluish dye). caeruleum: 'bluish'.

657 hoc horridiores . . . aspectu: 'on this account (*hoc*, abl. of cause) they are rather wild-looking (*horridiores*, abs. comp., and *aspectu*, abl. of respect) in battle'.

658 ut . . . est: *ut* here = 'as'. Notice that *ut* plus indic. = (1) 'when', (2) 'as', but that *ut* plus subj. = 'that'. Caesar's story of his battles is a clear, unprejudiced, eye-witness account. He could tell with truth and conviction how his own army was run. When he told a story concerning the councils of his enemy, we may be sure he learned the truth to the best of his ability from someone who was actually present at such a council meeting. *suorum* . . . *hortatu*: 'because of the urging (*hortatu*, abl. of cause, used instead of *propter* + acc.) of all his men (*suorum*, subj. gen., representing the subject of the action implied in *hortatu*).'

# PART III

## The Battle of Pharsalus

### 1. Pompey's Confidence Before the Battle

*Pompey, enjoying a commanding superiority in the strength of his cavalry, promises his officers a speedy and bloodless victory.*

Pompeius quoque, ut postea cognitum est, suorum omnium hor-  
tatu statuerat proelio decertare. Namque in concilio superioribus  
660 diebus dixerat se ante concursum acierum exercitum Caesaris  
pulsurum esse. Id ubi plerique admirati sunt, 'Scio me,' inquit,  
'paene incredibilem rem polliceri; sed ratione consilii mei accepta,  
firmiore animo in proelium prodibitis. Persuasi equitibus nost-  
tris (idque mihi se facturos esse confirmaverunt) ut dextrum

658 (*cont.*) At a council meeting, strategy was discussed. The general traditionally listened to the sugges-  
tions both of his high-ranking offi-  
cers (*legati, tribuni*) and of his  
centurions, who were experienced  
lieutenants risen from the ranks. The  
centurions were at all times in close  
contact with the private soldiers, and  
would therefore reflect the opinions  
of their men. It is to be assumed that  
Pompey was beset by the urgings,  
not of private soldiers, but of their  
representatives, the centurions.

659 proelio decertare: 'to fight a  
pitched battle'; lit. 'to fight to a  
finish in battle (*proelio*, abl. of  
means).' Namque: introducing an ex-  
planation, 'for', 'in fact'.

660 acierum: subj. gen., representing  
the subject of the action implied in  
the noun *concursum*. Caesaris: Cae-  
sar usually refers to himself in the  
third person; his soldiers, however,

he often calls 'our men' (*nostri*).

661 Id: dir. obj. of *admirati sunt*. It  
displaces *ubi* at the beginning of the  
clause because it acts as a connec-  
tive.

662 ratione . . . accepta: 'if you  
learn the idea in my tactics', 'after  
learning the idea in my tactics'. A  
part. may have not only time value,  
but also condit. force. An abl. abs.  
is usually best translated by a clause.  
663 firmiore animo: abl. of manner.  
Persuasi: 'I have persuaded'. Caesar  
has injected a curious note of satire  
into the words of Pompey, who is  
made to say in effect 'I have per-  
suaded our cavalry merely to attack  
Caesar's right flank, then to go  
round to his rear and cut him to  
pieces', as if Caesar's men would do  
nothing to prevent such a move.

664 id: dir. obj. of *facturos esse*. It  
refers to Pompey's instructions to  
his cavalry (given in the *ut* clause).



Courtesy MGM studios

#### A COUNCIL MEETING OF ROMAN OFFICERS

Then, as now, top-ranking officers must often have planned by night.

- 665 Caesaris cornu ab latere aperto aggrediuntur et, circumventa ab tergo acie, perturbatum exercitum pellant. Ita sine periculo legionum et paene sine vulnere bellum conficiemus. Id autem difficile non est, quod tantum equitatu valemus.' Simul monuit ut essent animo parati ad posterum diem.

665 *ab latere aperto*: 'on the open flank.' The Roman legionary carried his shield on his left arm, so that his right side was more exposed to attack than was his left. Notice that Latin regards the attack as coming 'from' (*ab*) a certain quarter rather than as taking place 'in' it or 'on' it. *aggrediuntur*: subj. in a clause of indir. com.; so too *pellant*, line 666. 665-6 *circumventa . . . acie, . . . pellant*: tr. the two participles as ind. commands parallel to *pellant*; 'surround his line, throw his army into confusion and put it to flight'. Notice that the actions are given, as usual, in chronological sequence.

666 *legionum*: obj. gen.; i.e. 'without endangering the legions'.

668 *tantum . . . valemus*: 'we are so strong'; *tantum* is an adverb, mod. *valemus*. It is an example of the formation of an adv. from the neut. acc. sing. of an adj., to which the name adverbial acc. is often given. Another common example is the formation of a comp. adverb (e.g. *certius*, 'more certainly') from the neut. acc. sing. of the comparative of an adj. *equitatu*: abl. of respect. *ut essent parati*: subj. in a clause of indir. com. dep. on *monuit*.

669 *animo*: 'in mind', abl. of respect.

670 *Deinde*: 'Secondly', 'Next' (in a

## 2. The Speech of Labienus

*At the urging of Labienus, a deserter from Caesar's army, Pompey's staff members take an oath not to return to camp except as victors.*

- 670 Deinde Labienus orationem habuit. Quod Caesaris copias despiciebat, Pompei consilium summis laudibus extulit. 'Noli,' inquit, 'existimare, Pompei, hunc esse exercitum, qui Galliam Germaniamque devicerit. Omnibus proeliis interfui neque temere incognitam rem pronuntio. Minima pars illius exercitus superest;
- 675 magna pars interiit, quod accidere fuit necesse tot proeliis, multos autumni pestilentia in Italia consumpsit, multi domum disceserunt, multi sunt relict in continenti. Nonne audivistis cohortes

series. Labienus: Caesar inspired in his men such devotion and courage that desertion from his army was a rare occurrence. Titus Atius Labienus was an exception. He had been Caesar's chief general in his Gallic campaigns. Yet here we find him fighting for Pompey against his former commander. His intimate knowledge of Caesar's methods made him an invaluable asset to Pompey. Caesaris copias despiciebat: Labienus was probably the greatest cavalry general Rome ever had, whereas Caesar had not as yet been recognized as a tactical genius. Labienus no doubt gave himself much of the credit for Caesar's success in Gaul. When Labienus supported the cause of Pompey, he joined the forces of the man considered to be Rome's greatest general at the time. His contempt for Caesar's ability as a general, combined with the superiority of Pompey's cavalry, in which branch of the services Labienus excelled, must have contributed to the supreme confidence with which Pompey faced the battle with Caesar.

671 Pompei: = *Pompeii*; this abb. of the gen. is common in Latin. summis laudibus: abl. of means; tr. in the sing.

672 Pompei: the voc. case of a proper noun in *-ius* ends in *-i*; so too, *mi fili*, 'my son'.

673 Omnibus proeliis: dat. gov. by the *inter-* in the compound verb *interfui*. devicerit: subj. in a sub. clause in indir. disc. So too *manse-rint*, l. 678.

673-4 neque temere . . . pronuntio: 'and I am not making a rash statement about something that I do not know'; *rem* is the dir. obj. of *pronuntio*.

674 illius: i.e. the army which had conquered Gaul and Germany.

675 quod . . . accidere: 'a thing which (*quod* = *id quod*) was bound (*fuit necesse*) to happen (*accidere*)'; freely, 'an inevitable result.' *Quod* is neut. to refer to the preceding statement (*magna pars interiit*) and is acc., subject of *accidere*. tot proeliis: abl. of time.

676 autumni pestilentia: 'the autumn fever' frequent in the south of Italy. Some think the sickness may have been malaria, others that it was typhoid, or even dysentery. Such illnesses must have been common among soldiers in hot weather.

677 in continenti: sc. *terra*. The expression means 'on continuous land'



Brundisii ex iis, qui per causam valetudinis manserint, esse factas? Hae copiae, quas videtis, ex delectibus horum annorum in citeriore Gallia sunt refectae. Ac vero quod fuit virium Caesari, proeliis Dyrrachinis interiit.' Haec cum dixisset, iuravit se nisi victorem in castra non reversurum esse reliquosque hortatus est ut idem facerent. Hoc laudans Pompeius idem iuravit; nec vero ex reliquis quisquam iurare dubitavit. Haec tum facta sunt in concilio. Magna spe et laetitia permoti, omnes discesserunt; ac iam victoriam exspectabant.

### 3. Pompey's Forces

*Pompey draws up his forces which total forty-five thousand men organized into one hundred and ten cohorts.*

Caesar, cum castris Pompei appropinquavisset, animadvertit aciem eius ad hunc modum instructam esse. Erant in sinistro cornu

hence 'on the mainland'. To a Roman, the mainland was Italy. Because Pompey had enjoyed superiority not only in cavalry but also on the sea, Caesar had been forced to leave some of his troops on the Italian side of the Adriatic.

678 Brundisii : loc., 'at Brundisium', a city near the south-east tip of Italy which has always been recognized as an important shipping and naval port. per causam valetudinis : = *propter valetudinem*. The ill-health was the result of the *autumni pestilentia*, line 676. Cohorts composed of men recovering from fever did not inspire fear in Labienus.

679 horum annorum : gen. of desc.; 'of these last years', 'recent'.

679-80 in citeriore Gallia: in Hither Gaul, i.e. roughly, between the Alps and the Po River, in what is now the north of Italy. Labienus means that such soldiers could not be expected to be a match for real Romans or Italians.

680 quod . . . Caesari: = *id quod virium* (part. gen.) *fuit Caesari* (dat. of poss.); 'what strength Caesar had'; lit., 'what of strength was to Caesar'.

681 proeliis Dyrrachinis: abl. of time. Pompey at first had been hemmed in by Caesar at Dyrrachium, but by good fortune was able to achieve a break-through. From that time until the two armies again faced each other at Pharsalus, Pompey kept Caesar on the defensive.

cum dixisset: *cum*—temporal clause, referring to past time, and therefore requiring the subj.

681-2 nisi victorem: 'except as victor', in app. to *se*.

683 Hoc: referring to the suggestion made by Labienus in the previous sentence.

684 quisquam: is used as an indef. pron. ('someone', 'anyone') in a sentence which contains any kind of negative.

687 Caesar cum: 'when Caesar'; English idiom does not follow the favourite Latin device of placing a sub. cl. in the middle of the sentence.

687-8 Caesar . . . instructam esse: The information that follows was largely the result of personal obser-

690

legiones duae traditae a Caesare initio dissensionis ex senatusconsulto; quarum altera prima, altera tertia appellabatur. In eo loco ipse erat Pompeius. Mediam aciem Scipio cum legionibus Syriacis tenebat. Ciliciensis legio coniuncta cum cohortibus Hispanis in dextro cornu erat collocata. Has firmissimas se habere Pom-

vation on the part of Caesar and his officers. Caesar had also mounted scouts or patrols (*exploratores*), who did reconnaissance, and unmounted scouts or spies (*speculatores*), who specialized in infiltration into the ranks of the enemy. *ad hunc modum*: 'in the following manner'. in sinistro cornu: the most experienced legions were placed on the wings with the very best on the wing which was to begin the attack.

689 *legiones duae . . . dissensionis*: after Caesar had completed his subjugation of the Gallic tribes, his agent Curio, in the office of *tribunus*, undertook to safeguard Caesar's interests in Rome. Curio tried to carry a motion in the Senate that both Caesar and Pompey should disband their armies, and return to private life. Pompey refused, and, sponsored by the Senate, began forming at Capua an army to oppose Caesar. The core of this army was to be the first legion, which he had lent to Caesar and now demanded back, and the fifteenth, which the Senate had required from Caesar as his contribution for a Parthian war. It was important for the Senate to keep Caesar away from Rome since Caesar's interests were in organizing a free and united Italy, a prospect which was feared and dreaded by the racketeering aristocratic class. It was natural that the Senate should support Pompey if only because he opposed Caesar. *initio*: abl. of time. *ex senatusconsulto*: 'in accordance with a decree of the Senate'; *senatus*

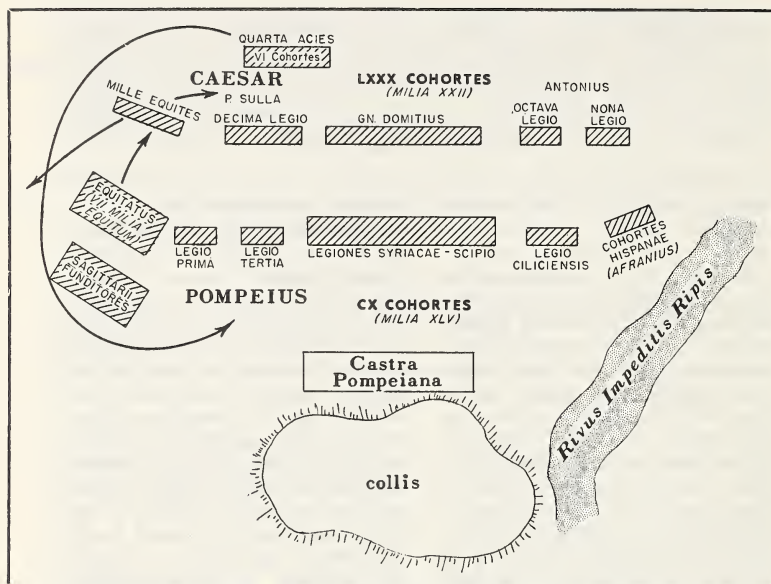
*consultum* may be written as two words, or as a single word.

690 *quarum*: co-ord. rel.; 'of these'.

691 *Mediam aciem*: 'the centre.'

Scipio: Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio. After the death of Pompey's first wife Julia, the daughter of Caesar, in 54 B.C., Pompey married Cornelia, daughter of Metellus Scipio, and made his father-in-law his colleague in the consulship. Scipio was also made an officer in Pompey's army during the Civil War. *legionibus Syriacis*: Syria, roughly corresponding to Asiatic Turkey, had been conquered by Pompey in 64 B.C. Roman legionaries still formed the backbone of Roman legions. These Syrian legions were composed mostly of Romans who had been on duty in Syria. Foreign mercenaries were employed in some branches of the service, e.g. slingers from the Balearic Islands, archers from Crete and cavalry from Gaul.

692 *Ciliciensis*: 'from Cilicia', a district in the S.E. of Asia Minor abounding in robbers and pirates. In 67-66 B.C., Pompey drove the Cilician pirates from the sea and made the level portion of Cilicia into a Roman province. *cum cohortibus Hispanis*: see note on *Syriacis*, l. 691. In the meeting of Pompey, Caesar and Crassus at Luca in 56 B.C., it was decided that Pompey should be consul in 55, after which he was to become governor of Spain for five years from 54 B.C. (See Introduction, 3) These Spanish cohorts were transferred to Pompey by Lucius



THE DISPOSITION OF TROOPS FOR THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS

peius existimabat. Reliquas inter aciem mediam cornuaque inter-  
 695 iecerat et centum decem cohortes expleverat. Haec erant quadra-  
 ginta quinque milia militum, evocatorum circiter duo; quae tota  
 acie disperserat. Reliquas cohortes septem in castris propinquisque

Afranius, who was one of his chief lieutenants in Spain before Caesar's victory there.

693-4 Has ... existimabat: construe: Pompeius existimabat se habere has (legiones) firmissimas: lit. 'Pompeius considered he had these as his most reliable (legions)'; more freely, 'Pompey considered these (legions) to be the most reliable he had.'

694 Reliquas: sc. legiones. Taking the number of cohorts given later in the sentence, tell the approximate number of legions Pompey had in his battle line.

695 Haec: 'These units', referring to all the legiones and cohortes listed above; neut. pl. to agree with milia. erant: 'numbered', 'amounted to'.

696 evocatorum: re-enlisted veterans, i.e. reservists recalled to join the colours after being demobilized. The veterans are included in the forty-five thousand; duo = duo milia.

696-7 tota acie: abl. of place where. With an expression of place involving totus, Latin does not generally use a prep.; 'throughout the entire line'.

castellis praesidio disposuerat. Dextrum cornu eius rivus quidam impeditis ripis muniebat; quam ob causam totum equitatum, 700 sagittarios, funditores omnes in sinistro cornu obiecerat.

#### 4. Caesar's Forces

*Caesar draws up his forces which total twenty-two thousand men organized into eighty cohorts. But fearing the strength of Pompey's cavalry, Caesar forms opposite them an unprecedented fourth line.*

705 Caesar superius institutum servans decimam legionem in dextro cornu, nonam in sinistro collocaverat, etsi erat Dyrrachinis proeliis vehementer attenuata. Huic sic adiunxit octavam, ut paene unam ex duabus efficeret, atque alteram alteri praesidio esse iusserat. Cohortes octoginta in acie constitutas habebat, quae erant viginti duo milia militum; cohortes duas castris praesidio reliquerat. Sinistro cornu Antonium, dextro P. Sullam, mediae aciei

698 castellis: 'posts' for guards; they commanded the surrounding terrain. praesidio: dat. of purp.

698-9 rivus quidam impeditis ripis: quidam here has the force of 'a'; impeditis ripis is abl. of desc. involving external or physical characteristics. Hence, tr. the expression 'a stream with steep banks'. Pompey's arrangement of his troops was faulty, considering his superiority of force, because he was unable to manoeuvre on his own right. He was thinking too much in terms of defence rather than offence.

699 muniebat: 'protected'. totum equitatum: 'the entire cavalry force', a collective noun used in the sing.

701 superius . . . servans: 'following his earlier practice', i.e. his practice in Gaul. decimam legionem: his favourite legion. Because of its loyal service in Gaul, Caesar had made it his praetoria cohors, which was the personal body-guard of the commander-in-chief.

702 Dyrrachinis proeliis: see note, l. 681.

703-4 sic . . . ut . . . efficeret: result; sic ut, 'with the result that'. From the two badly depleted legions he was able to form a single, almost complete one.

704 alteram alteri: 'the one . . . to the other'; alteri is dat. of inst., forming part of the double dat. const. with praesidio, dat. of purp.; tr. 'to support each other'.

705 Cohortes octoginta: Caesar had altogether 11 legions (110 cohorts), of which 23 cohorts were carrying out other assignments; so that there were 30 cohorts not actually in the battle. The 80 remaining should have contained about 28,800 men, but this number had been pared down by the chances of war to 22,000. in acie . . . habebat: 'he was keeping formed up in line', 'he had there already formed up in line'. erant: see l. 695.

706 castris praesidio: double dat., 'to guard the camp'.

707 cornu . . . dextro . . . aciei: dat. gov. by the prae- in the compound verb praefecerat.



Cn. Domitium praefecerat. Ipse contra Pompeium constitit. Simul,  
 710 his rebus animadversis quas demonstravimus, timens ne a multi-  
 tudine equitum dextrum cornu circumveniretur, celeriter ex tertia  
 acie sex cohortes detraxit. Ex his quartam aciem instituit equita-  
 tuique eam obiecit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Monuit victoriam  
 eius diei in earum cohortium virtute constare. Simul tertiae aciei  
 715 id fieri vellet, vexillo signum daturum esse.

### 5. A Soldier's Example

*Crastinus, a retired veteran serving again in his old commander's army, promises Caesar that he will play the part of a brave man.*

Erat Crastinus evocatus in exercitu Caesaris, vir singulari virtute.

708 Ipse . . . constitit: Pompey had taken up the regular place for a Roman commander, between his infantry and cavalry, where he could superintend the movements of each. Now Caesar takes up position 'opposite' (*contra*) him.

709 his . . . demonstravimus: the reference is to the details of the disposition of Pompey's forces as outlined in the preceding paragraph. a multitudo: abl. of agent. Caesar has in mind the men themselves who make up Pompey's 'large number'.

710 circumveniretur: subj. in a clause of fearing.

711 sex cohortes detraxit: each of the six was drawn from a separate legion. quartam aciem: Caesar's genius lay partly in his adaptability. By forming an unprecedented fourth line he was able to cover the intervals between the units of his formation and at the same time offer protection against an encircling movement. equitatui: dat. gov. by the *ob-* in the compound verb *obiecit*; Pompey's cavalry is meant.

712 vellet: subj. in ind. quest. Notice that an ind. quest. need not be intro-

duced by a verb of asking; here, for instance, Caesar pointed out (*ostendit*) the answer to the question which existed in his men's minds, namely, 'What did he want done?'

713 earum cohortium: i.e. the six cohorts of the fourth line.

713-4 tertiae . . . exercitui: 'to the third line in particular and to the whole army in general'.

714 iniussu suo: abl. of cause, 'without authority from him'.

714-5 se . . . daturum esse: an ind. statement. Notice that the Latin does not require a new verb of talking (e.g. *dixit*) to introduce further remarks made by the speaker; the original verb of talking (*imperavit*) continues on in effect, and may be followed by all types of ind. disc., not just by ind. commands. In such reported speeches a semi-colon or a colon indicates that further quotation follows. cum . . . vellet: subj. in a sub. clause in ind. disc. standing in sec. sequence for an original fut. indic.

715 vexillo: abl. of means, 'by waving a red flag'.

716 singulari virtute: abl. of desc.

Hic signo dato, 'Sequimini me,' inquit, 'socii mei qui fuistis, et vestro imperatori operam quam consuevistis date. Unum hoc proelium superest; quo confecto et ille suam dignitatem et nos nostram libertatem recuperabimus.' Simul respiciens Caesarem, 'Hodie,' inquit, 'imperator, aut vivo mihi aut mortuo gratias ages.' Haec cum dixisset, primus ex dextro cornu procucurrit. Quem milites circiter centum viginti voluntarii eiusdem cohortis sunt prosecuti.

### 6. Caesar's Battle Philosophy

*Pompey's plan of passively awaiting the attack of the enemy is considered by Caesar to be poor military strategy. Here are Caesar's views on the 'psychology of the charge.'*

725 Inter duas acies tantum erat relictum spatii, ut satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitus. Sed Pompeius suis praeceperat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neve se loco moverent aciemque eius distrahi paterentur. Quod nobis quidem nulla ratione factum esse a Pompeio videtur, propterea quod est quaedam animi alacritas naturaliter innata omnibus, quae studio pugnae incenditur. 730 Hanc non reprimere, sed augere imperatores debent; neque frus-

717 Sequimini: imper.

718 operam: 'loyal service'. Unum: emphatic by its position. 'This is the single battle remaining.'

719 et ille: sc. recuperabit. Do not translate *et* ('both'), as English idiom does not require the elaborate balancing of which Latin is fond. quo: co-ord. rel. 'when THIS is over'.

721 aut vivo . . . mortuo: lit., 'to me either living or dead'; freely, 'to me whether I live or die'.

722 cum dixisset: cum — temporal. primus . . . procucurrit: 'he was the first to run forth.'

723 voluntarii: 'willingly'.

725 tantum . . . ut: 'only so much . . . as', introducing a clause of result. spatii: part. gen. with *tantum*. ad concursum: 'for the charge'; *ad*, as often, expresses purp.

726 suis: dat. gov. by the *prae-* in the compound verb *praeceperat*.

727 neve: = *et ne*, which is not common Latin. loco: abl. of separation, without the prep. *ab*.

728 distrahi: almost with reflex. force, 'to disorder itself', and hence 'to become disordered'. Quod: co-ord. rel., 'This order'. nobis quidem: 'in my opinion, at any rate'. Caesar here injects his personal opinion into his narrative, even though he generally tries to be impersonal and objective. nulla ratione: abl. of manner; 'inadvisedly'.

729 propterea quod: 'for this reason, that', 'because'.

729-30 est quaedam . . . omnibus: 'there is a kind of (*quaedam*) eagerness of mind naturally implanted in everyone.' (*omnibus*, dat. gov. by the *in-* in the compound *innata*.)

730 studio pugnae: 'with a zest for fighting'; pugnae, obj. gen.

731 neque frustra: 'and to very good



Courtesy E.N.I.C.

### SIGNA UNDIQUE CONCINUNT

tra signa undique concinunt clamoremque universi tollunt; quibus rebus et hostes terreri et suos concitari existimant.

## 7. The Main Battle

*Caesar's experienced troops foil Pompey's plan. After a dangerous charge by Pompey's cavalry, Caesar's fourth line saves the day.*

735 Sed nostri milites dato signo cum infestis pilis procucurrissent atque animadvertissent non concurrere Pompeianos, rei militaris periti ac superioribus pugnibus exercitati sua sponte cursum repres-

effect'; by these words Caesar makes clear his own position on the question.

732 signa undique concinunt: 'the trumpets (*signa*, lit., 'signals') sound the charge together all along the line (*undique*)'. *universi*: 'all the men together'. This method of building morale is not unknown to the strategy of some football coaches. 733 et . . . et . . . : do not translate the first *et* ('both'); see note, l. 719.

734-7 Sed nostri . . . represserunt: here is an example of a typical Latin periodic sentence. This type of sentence gives a series of subordinate ideas in chronological sequence, and ends by way of climax with the principal idea. In the sentence quoted here, each action is presented in the order of occurrence, as follows:

1. *dato signo*, (abl. abs.), the first action is the giving of the signal.
2. *procucurrissent* (*cum*—temporal),

740 serunt. Fere ad medium spatium constiterunt, ne consumptis viribus appropinquarent. Parvo temporis spatio intermisso ac rursus renovato cursu pila miserunt. Deinde celeriter, ut Caesar praeceperat, gladios strinxerunt. Neque vero Pompeiani huic rei defuerunt. Nam et tela missa sustinuerunt et impetum legionum tulerunt et ordines conservaverunt pilisque missis ad gladios redierunt. Eodem tempore equites Pompei ab sinistro cornu, ut

the signal starts the men in motion.

3. *animadvertissent* (*cum*—temporal), during the charge they notice that the foe are not rushing to meet them.

4. *cursum represserunt* (main verb), under the circumstances, they slow down.

English relies for its effect on shorter sentences. Here, for instance, each of the Latin units might well be translated as an independent English sentence.

734 *infestis pilis*: probably originally an abl. abs., with the pres. part. of *sum* understood; 'their javelins (being) hostile', i.e. 'with their javelins at the ready (position)'. The expression may be treated as an abl. of manner.

735 *non concurrere Pompeianos*: an ind. statement; 'that the Pompeians were not charging to meet (*con-*) them'. *rei militaris*: obj. gen. with *periti*.

736 *pugnis*: abl. of means. *sua sponte*: for this use of the abl., see note on *infestis pilis*, line 734; 'of their own accord', 'automatically'. *cursum represserunt*: 'stopped their running', 'checked their charge'.

737 *Fere ad medium spatium*: 'approximately in the middle of No Man's Land', lit. 'to about the middle of the space (between armies)'.

737-8 *ne appropinquarent*: a neg. clause of purp.; 'so as not to come

to grips (with the foe) while in an exhausted condition (*consumptis viribus*, abl. abs.)'.

738 *Parvo . . . intermisso*: abl. abs., 'after a short interval of time had elapsed'.

738-9 *rursus . . . cursu*: abl. abs. 'again picking up stride', 'again renewing their charge.'

739 *miserunt*: 'discharged'. *ut*: 'as'.

740 *Neque . . . defuerunt*: 'And the Pompeians certainly (*vero*, which as usual, emphasizes the word before it, here, *neque*) did not (*neque*, used as usual for *et non*) fail to rise to this occasion (*huic rei*, dat. of indir. obj. gov. by the compound verb *defuerunt*)', 'The Pompeians certainly rose to this emergency'.

741-2 *Nam et . . . et . . . et . . . -que*: do not translate the first *et* ('both'). This unusual series of main verbs draws attention to the Pompeians' counter measures by presenting them in a list; *tela missa*: 'the hail of missiles'.

742 *tulerunt*: = *sustinuerunt*, 'withstood', 'stood firm under', 'met'. So too *tulit* in line 746. *ordines conservaverunt*: 'they kept steady in their ranks', 'kept their positions'.

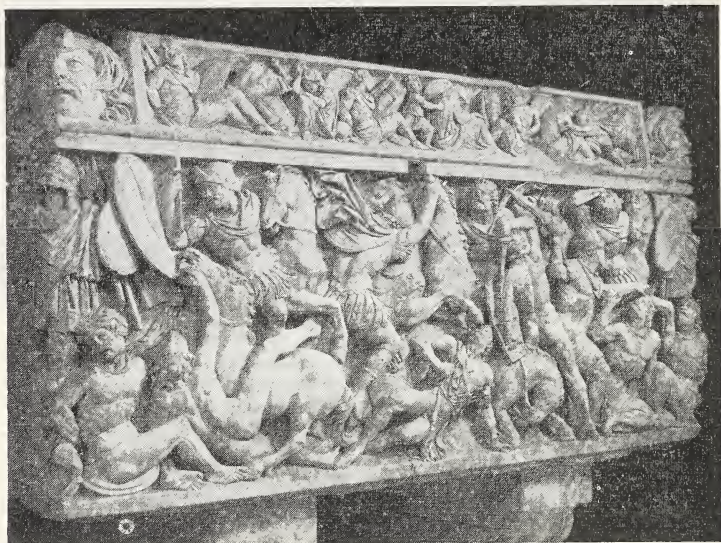
742-3 *ad gladios redierunt*: 'resorted to the sword', 'had recourse to their swords'.

743 *ut*: See line 739, above; freely, 'as they had been ordered', 'according to orders'.

744-5 *omnisque . . . profudit*: 'the



erat imperatum, universi procucurrerunt, omnisque multitudo sagittariorum se profudit. Quorum impetum noster equitatus non tulit, sed paulatim loco motus cessit. Equites Pompei acrius instare aciemque nostram a latere aperto circumire coeperunt. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quartae aciei, quam instituerat sex cohortium, dedit signum. Illi celeriter procucurrerunt. Infestis sig-



#### THE ROLE OF THE CAVALRY IN BATTLE

They were often used to pursue and overpower a weakened enemy.

whole array of archers rushed forth (*se profudit*), presumably behind the cavalry, and hence under their protection. The purpose of the archers' charge was not, of course, to engage in hand-to-hand fighting, but to give them a position closer to the enemy line from which to use their bows.

745 *Quorum*: co-ord. rel.

746 *loco motus*: 'dislodged from their position', 'forced from their position'; *loco*, abl. of separation

without *ab*; cf. the derivative "locomotive". *cessit*: 'gave ground'.

747 *Quod*: 'this manoeuvre'; notice how this co-ord. rel. has displaced the conj. *ubi* as first word, because it forms a connection with the preceding sentence.

748 *quartae aciei*: for the importance of Caesar's "surprise" fourth line, see note on line 711.

749 *Illi*: 'They', a change of subject, referring to the men comprising the six cohorts. *Infestis signis*: for this

750 nis tanta vi in equites Pompei impetum fecerunt, ut eorum nemo  
 consisteret omnesque conversi non solum loco excederent, sed  
 protinus fuga montes altissimos peterent. Quibus submotis omnes  
 sagittarii funditoresque inermes sine praesidio interfecti sunt.  
 Eodem impetu cohortes sinistrum cornu circumierunt eosque a  
 755 tergo sunt adorti.

### 8. The Defeat of Pompey

*Pompey's army is routed and the defeated general despairs of the future.*

Eodem tempore Caesar tertiam aciem, quae quiescente fuerat et se ad id tempus loco tenuerat, procurrare iussit. Itaque cum recentes atque integri defessis successissent, alii autem a tergo adorirentur,

use of the abl., see note on *infestis pilis* in line 734; 'with standards at the advance', 'in hostile array', 'with colours flying'.

750 tanta vi . . . fecerunt: a stirring picture of INFANTRY charging with unmatched energy on CAVALRY. The element of surprise was in their favour; Pompey's cavalry had not seen them, and were caught off-guard.

751 consisteret: subj. of result, 'held his ground'. conversi: a pass. form with a reflexive idea, 'wheeling (themselves) about'. loco excederent: lit., 'withdrew from their stations'. i.e. 'broke ranks'; loco, abl. of separation, without the prep. *ex*.

752 protinus fuga: lit., 'at once by flight', i.e. 'in headlong flight'; fuga, abl. of means; cf. our "Take to the hills, men!" Quibus summotis: the cavalry, not the mountains!

753 inermes sine praesidio: 'out of ammunition (*inermes* = *in*, 'without' + *arma*, 'arms') and without support (*praesidio*, their former shield of cavalry)'.

754 Eodem impetu: abl. of time, 'in the same attack'.

754-5 a tergo: see note on *ab latere aperto*, line 665.

756 quiescente: 'inactive', 'in reserve'. See note, line 758.

756-7 se . . . loco tenuerat: 'had maintained its position'; loco, abl. of means, or else abl. of place.

757-8 cum . . . successissent . . . adorirentur: here as often, it is not easy to decide whether the subjunctives are gov. by *cum*—causal, or by *cum*—temporal referring to past time; both make good sense. Notice, however that the other possibility, *cum*—concessive, would not make sense here.

758 defessis: an adj. used as a substantive; it is dat. of indir. obj. gov. by the *sub*- in the compound verb *successissent*. integri defessis successissent: in the usual *triplex acies*, (triple battle-line), four cohorts were placed in the first line, three in the second and three in the third. The cohorts of the second line were so placed as to cover the intervals between cohorts in the first line. From this reference, it would appear that Caesar's third line was drawn up so as to cover the intervals between the cohorts in the second line. When the battle was begun, the first line clashed with the foe. When they be-

- sustinere Pompeiani non potuerunt atque universi terga verte-  
 runt. Caesar vero intellexit initium victoriae ab iis cohortibus,  
 760 quae contra equitatum in quarta acie collocatae essent, ortum  
 esse, ut ipse in cohortandis militibus pronuntiaverat. Ab his enim  
 primum equitatus est repulsus; ab eisdem factae sunt caedes sagi-  
 765 tiorum ac funditorum, ab eisdem acies Pompeiana a sinistra  
 parte circumita est atque initium fugae factum est. Sed Pompeius,  
 ut equitatum suum repulsum esse vidit atque eam partem, cui  
 maxime confidebat, perterritam esse animadvertit, aliis quoque  
 diffusus, acie excessit. Protinus se in castra equo rettulit. Iis cen-  
 turionibus, quos in statione ad portam posuerat, clare, ut milites  
 770 exaudirent, 'Tuemini,' inquit, 'castra et defendite diligenter, si  
 quid peius acciderit. Ego reliquas portas circumeo et castrorum

came tired, the second line moved up with the first retiring through the gaps for a breathing spell. In this way, fresh troops always faced the foe. The third line usually acted as a reserve; at the crisis of the battle it joined in the crucial charge. a tergo: cf. lines 754-5, and see note on *ab latere aperto* in line 665. autem: = *et . . . cum*.

759 universi terga verterunt: it is said that on this occasion Caesar advised his soldiers to aim at the faces of Pompey's cavalry, who, being composed chiefly of the young noblemen of Rome, dreaded a scar in the face more than death itself.

760 vero: 'fully'; *vero* and *quidem* merely emphasize.

760-2 initium victoriae . . . esse: an ind. statement; 'that the beginning of (i.e. the initial step in) his victory had had its origin in (*ortum esse ab*, lit., had arisen from) those (*iis* = *eis*) cohorts'.

761 collocatae essent: subj. mood in a sub. cl. in ind. disc.

762 ut: 'as'. in cohortandis militibus: when all preparations for the engagement were made, the Roman

general usually passed along the line, encouraging his troops; *cohortandis* is a gerundive (an adj.), in agreement with *militibus*. *pronuntiaverat*: 'had predicted'. *Ab his*: sc. *cohortibus*.

763 ab eisdem factae sunt caedes: 'by the same (cohorts) the slaughter (of the archers and slingers) was brought about', 'the same cohorts were responsible for the slaughter'; *ab eisdem*, abl. of agent.

765-6 Pompeius ut: reverse the order in translating; see note on *Caesar cum* in line 687.

766 cui: dat. gov. by *confidebat*.

767 aliis: sc. *partibus*; dat. gov. by *diffusus* (semi-dep.).

768 acie: abl. of sep., without the prep. *ex*. equo: abl. of means. *centurionibus*: men of humble birth who had been promoted from the ranks because of merit. Their responsibilities were much the same as those of lieutenants in a modern army.

769 ad portam: 'near the gate'.

770 exaudirent: subj. of purp.

770-1 si quid: 'in case anything'.

771 acciderit: fut. perf. in the protasis ("if"-clause) of a more vivid fut. cond.; the verbs in the main



praesidia confirmo.' Haec cum dixisset, se in praetorium rettulit summae rei diffidens et tamen eventum exspectans.

### 9. Pompey's Escape

*Caesar's men, despite their battle fatigue, press their advantage and take Pompey's camp by storm. In it they find mute evidence of the rash optimism of the would-be victors—tables laid with costly silver, and tents covered with fresh sods and shaded with ivy. Meanwhile Pompey escapes from his camp to the sea, complaining of his lot.*

775 Pompeius, cum intra vallum nostri iam versarentur, equum nactus detractis insignibus imperatoris se ex castris eiecit. Protinus equo concitato Larisam contendit. Neque ibi constitit, sed eadem celeritate paucos suorum ex fuga nactus nocturno itinere non intermisso ad mare pervenit. Navem frumentariam conscendit saepe, ut dicebatur, querens tantum se opinionem fefellisse.

### 10. Losses on Both Sides

*Caesar proceeds to mop up the remainder of the Pompeian forces, who are forced to capitulate. He treats them kindly, pardons them all, and guarantees them against injury by his soldiers.*

780 In eo proelio Caesar non amplius ducentos milites, sed centuriones, fortes viros, circiter triginta amisit. Interfectus est etiam fortissime

clause are here imper. instead of fut.

772 praetorium: 'headquarters', which in a camp was in a tent.

773 summae rei diffidens: 'despairing of the whole situation', 'distrustful as to the general result'; rei, dat. gov. by diffidens.

774 Pompeius, cum: see note, l. 687.

775 insignibus imperatoris: the commander's uniform included a purple cloak and purple plumes in his helmet. If Pompey wished to travel without being recognized, such distinguishing features had to be removed. se . . . eiecit: 'rushed out'.

776 Larisam: Larisa was a town in Thessaly.

777 nocturno . . . intermisso: 'without darkness forcing him to halt';

lit., 'his trip by night not being interrupted'.

778 ad mare pervenit: i.e., the Aegean. saepe: with querens.

779 ut: see note, l. 658. querens . . . fefellisse: 'expressing regret that he had missed his guess so badly'; lit., 'that his notions (opinionem) had deceived him so much (tantum, adv.)'.

780 amplius: regularly used instead of amplius quam. ducentos . . . triginta: In Caesar's army there were 80 cohorts with an average of about 275 men in each. Since there were 6 centurions in a cohort, each centurion commanded about 45 men. Caesar's losses in centurions at Pharsalus were heavy compared with his losses in private soldiers.



pugnans Crastinus, cuius mentionem supra fecimus, gladio in os adversum coniecto. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pugnam proficiscens dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimabat, eo proelio excellentissimam virtutem Crastini fuisse. Ex Pompeiano exercitu circiter milia quindecim cecidisse videbantur, sed in deditionem venerunt amplius milia viginti quattuor (namque etiam cohortes, quae praesidio in castellis fuerant, sese Sullae dederunt). Multi praeterea in finitimas civitates perfugerunt, signaque militaria ex proelio ad Caesarem sunt relata centum octoginta et aquilae novem.

782 cuius . . . fecimus: see l. 716; *cuius* is an obj. gen.

782-3 gladio . . . coniecto: 'receiving a sword-thrust (*gladio*, abl. of means, lit., by a sword driven) full in the face'.

783 falsum: 'incorrect', 'ill-founded'.

783-4 id . . . quod . . . dixerat: 'the statement he had made'. in pugnam proficiscens: 'when going into battle'.

784 Sic: = 'As follows', i.e., 'Here is what Caesar thought.' eo proelio: either abl. of respect or abl. of time.

786 cecidisse videbantur: 'proved (lit. were seen) to have fallen (*cado*, not *caedo*)'.

787 namque: see note, l. 659.

788 praesidio: dat. of purp.

788 Sullae: Publius Sulla, nephew of the dictator; although he had been elected consul in 65 B.C., he was accused and condemned of bribery before entering upon the office. He served under Caesar in Greece, and commanded along with Caesar himself the right wing at the battle of Pharsalus.

789 perfugerunt: 'fled for refuge', signa militaria: each cohort and manipule had its own standard, a symbol which was invaluable in the din of battle; one had only to "follow

the standard", if orders could not be heard. Indeed, even until recent times, a soldier was told to "follow the 'colours,'" (a banner replacing the ancient symbol at the top of the pole). Since Pompey had 110 cohorts, the total number of such standards was 110 (cohorts) plus 330 (maniples). Loss of its standard was a disgrace to any military unit.

791 aquilae: the eagle was the standard of the legion. Since Pompey had 110 cohorts, he must have had 11 legions. Therefore most of the standards of his legions were captured. Pelusium: A strongly fortified city at the eastern extremity of the Delta; it lay in the midst of marsh country. It is frequently mentioned in the Bible under the name of Sin. Pompey had thought of going to Parthia and trying to form alliances there, although his envoy had just been thrown into chains for refusing to yield Syria to the Parthians. It is strange that he did not go to Africa to join the conquerors of Curio. (See *Biog. Introd.* 5).

792 Quibus cognitis rebus: The information referred to was that there seemed a very real danger of Ptolemy's army supporting Pompey. Pompey had sent deputies to Ptolemy to ask his permission to take



Scene from United Artists' 'Caesar and Cleopatra'

## CLEOPATRA ENTERTAINS CAESAR AT A FORMAL STATE DINNER

### 11. The End of Pompey

*Following his defeat near Pharsalus, Pompey flees to Amphipolis in Macedonia. After raising money through friends and tax collectors, he makes his way to Pelusium, in Egypt. There he finds King Ptolemy, a minor, engaged in war against his sister Cleopatra. He asks the King for permission to take refuge in Alexandria. The King's regents, fearful of Pompey's effect on their army, succeed in assassinating him.*

Quibus cognitis rebus amici regis Ptolemaei, qui propter aetatem eius regnum administrabant, sive timore adducti, ut postea prae-

refuge in Alexandria. After discharging their formal duties, the deputies had chatted informally with the king's troops (some of whom originally had been soldiers of Pompey), and seemed about to win the army's support.

793-5 sive . . . sive: 'whether . . . or'. The tr. of a sentence as long as this should be broken into several

principal clauses in English. e.g. 'Perhaps the friends . . . were influenced by a fear, . . . , that . . . Or perhaps they despised his (change of) fortune, as friends generally turn into enemies in time of (personal) disaster. To his messengers they publicly gave a courteous reply and bade him to approach the king.' 793 ut: 'as'.

795 dicabant, ne Pompeius sollicitato exercitu regio Alexandriam  
Aegyptumque occuparet, sive despecta eius fortuna, ut plerum-  
que in calamitate ex amicis inimici exsistunt, eis qui erant ab eo  
missi palam liberaliter responderunt eumque ad regem venire  
iusserunt; clam autem consilio capto Achillam, praefectum re-  
gium, hominem singulari audacia et L. Septimium, tribunum  
800 militum, ad interficiendum Pompeium miserunt. Ille ab his li-  
beraliter appellatus et quadam notitia Septimii adductus, navicu-  
lam parvulam conscendit cum paucis ex suis: ibi ab Achilla et  
Septimio interficitur.

794-5 ne . . . occuparet: subj. in a clause of fearing dep. on *timore adducti*, (= *timebant*); *timore* is abl. of means.

794 Alexandriam: city at the mouth of the Nile, founded by Alexander the Great in 331 B.C., famous for its broad principal streets and costly structures of marble. Alexander's object in building the city was to reap the profit of trade between Asia and Europe after the fall of Tyre. For from its position most trade had to pass by the Delta of the Nile. When a passage was made from the Mediterranean Sea and the Nile to the Red Sea, it became the centre of commerce for all the goods passing between Europe and the East Indies. It was also a famous seat of learning, possessing an extensive library which at one period consisted of 700,000 volumes.

795 despecta eius fortuna: abl. abs.

795-6 ut plerumque . . . exsistunt: Caesar speaks cynically here, for in the Civil War he personally suffered betrayal by friends (e.g. by Labienus); ex amicis inimici exsistunt, lit., 'enemies arise out of friends', freely 'friends turn into enemies'.

797-8 palam . . . clam: notice the emphatic positions of these contrasting adverbs.

798 Achillam: the names Achilles, Ptolemaeus and Alexandria all de-

rive from the Greek, having been introduced at the time of Alexander's conquests. praefectum regium: 'a commander in the king's army'.

799 singulari audacia: abl. of desc. L. Septimium: it was an ironic touch that a Roman should be instrumental in murdering Pompey in the interests of the king's advisers.

800 ad interficiendum Pompeium: a common way of expressing purp. in Latin; *interficiendum* is a gerundive (i.e. adj.) mod. *Pompeium*.

800-1 liberaliter appellatus: 'he was addressed with honour': *liberaliter* may mean 'with courtesy' or 'with respect'.

801 quadam notitia Septimii: *quidam* sometimes means 'a kind of'. Here, 'by a slight acquaintance with Septimius'; *Septimii* is obj. gen.

801-2 naviculam parvulam: the size of the craft is belittled by the two diminutives. The water, the two assassins said, was too shallow to admit of a larger vessel coming in to shore. Seeing a number of larger craft close by, Pompey is supposed to have smiled and then to have bidden farewell to his friends, aware of his impending murder.

802 ibi: i.e. aboard the tiny craft on the way to his larger vessel. Pompey was stabbed in the back. His head was later brought to Caesar. See illustration, p. 131.



# PART IV

## Caesar, the General

A versatile genius, Julius Caesar was one of the great men of history. There was, however, little to foreshadow his great destiny in his early years when the attainment of social success seemed the only ambition that he pursued. But his family background was aristocratic; from birth he was steeped in the lore of Rome, and growing up in a politically active family, he absorbed the traditions of the Roman constitution with all its strengths and weaknesses.



**POMPEY'S HEAD IS BROUGHT TO CAESAR**

The conqueror of the Roman world could feel no elation at the gruesome treatment of his valiant foe.



Earlier we read of the steps that Caesar took and the arduous course of training that he embarked on to overcome his deficiencies as an orator and to gain for himself the direct, terse, factual style that won him fame and which also marks his writings. With equally single-minded purpose, he devoted himself to the achievement of eminence in the fields of government and war. By the time he was forty, Caesar was a man marked out for greatness; yet true greatness was to elude him till he had proved himself a leader. It was on the field of battle that all the talents that he had developed during his long course of training were brought into play with dash and vigour.

Caesar had early learned how to handle men. He could speak to them in their assemblies in their own language, vigorously and imaginatively. His political training had taught him to meet and deal with any emergency as it arose. Frequently his approach to a problem was unorthodox, for to him the end justified the means. He employed the elements of surprise and speed of execution as no general before him had done.

It is the opinion of many historians that Caesar's every action was carefully calculated with an eye to his personal aims and objectives. This may be so. To his credit, however, it should be noted that the objectives which best served Caesar's interests also served the best interests of Rome.

The successful commander does everything in his power to secure the loyalty and respect of the officers and men under his command. Everyone who has undergone any form of military service knows of the constant 'griping' that goes on in every military camp. It is the duty of the commander to do his utmost to remove the sources of all such complaining. There are many things that he can do to ensure the willing co-operation of his soldiers. He can make certain that they have the best equipment possible and are well trained in the use of it. He can pay the closest attention to their physical comfort; it is the tired, hungry man who complains the loudest. He can see to it that his men are well paid and, equally important, that they receive their pay when it is due. An uninformed soldier is a bewildered soldier; the commander can make sure that his troops are kept informed about his intentions in every engagement. On occasion he may ask his sub-commanders for advice. Finally, he can reward handsomely both officers and soldiers for meritorious service.

All these traits of the good commander Caesar possessed.

In the Latin passages which follow will be discovered many of the factors which demonstrate his genius for leadership and the stamp of that greatness which historians of all ages have accorded to Julius Caesar.

The passages are all taken from the three books of Caesar's Civil War, the outline of which has been given elsewhere. The excerpts are presented in chronological sequence. Each should be referred to the above outline for a proper understanding of where it fits into the general scheme of the war.

### 1. Once Upon a Pay-day

*Sometimes circumstances make it difficult to pay the troops on pay-day, as happened on one occasion just before Caesar left Mas-silia for Spain.*

Caesar ubi audiuit Pompeium per Mauretaniam cum legionibus  
805 iter in Hispaniam facere, sex legiones in Hispaniam praemisit et



CAESAR THE GENERAL

The extracts which are given here are recorded in the order of occurrence. Each can be located exactly by referring to the brief synopsis of the three books of the *Bellum Civile* given in *Biog. Introd.* 5.

804 Caesar ubi: 'When Caesar'; English idiom does not follow the Latin fondness for 'sandwiching' sub. clauses between parts of the principal clause; cf. *Fabius, cum*, l. 811. Notice that Caesar invariably refers to himself in the third person; his soldiers, however, he usually calls 'our men' (*nostri*); *per Mauretaniam*: Such a report was not likely to be true. Pompey was in Greece at this time, and a march along the N. coast of Africa would be far more dangerous than a voyage to Spain; the march would be about 700 miles and through country which was known to be sympathetic to Caesar. 805 *sex legiones . . . praemisit*: The Pompeian forces were commanded

parem ex Gallia numerum quam ipse pacaverat. Stipendium autem militibus debitum tradere non potuit. Itaque a tribunis militum centurionibusque mutuas pecunias sumpsit; has pecunias exercitui distribuit. Qua re facta duas res consecutus est, quod animos centurionum tenuit et voluntates militum redemit.

## 2. A Team of Well-Trained Legati

While Caesar's *legati* sometimes made mistakes, they usually displayed a resourceful initiative which enabled them to turn impending disasters into victories.

*Fabius, one of Caesar's legati in Spain, averts a defeat by his quick thinking. Afranius and Petreius had taken up position with their armies near Ilerda and were in control of certain passes through the Pyrenees. Caesar had ordered Fabius to take an army and seize these passes.*

Fabius, cum Ilerdam pervenisset, non longe a Sicori flumine cessedit. Deinde ob inopiam rei frumentariae finitimarum civitatum animos litteris nuntiisque temptabat. In Sicori flumine effecerat

by Afranius, Petreius and Varro, who controlled 7 Roman legions as well as 80 Spanish cohorts and 5,000 Spanish cavalry. In addition to 6 legions and 3,000 cavalry, plus a similar force from Gaul, Caesar had in Spain an unspecified number of auxiliary forces. Caesar must have thought that Pompey was not on his way through Mauretania, otherwise he would not have supplied only enough troops to cope with those of Afranius and Petreius.

806 Stipendium: 'wages', 'salary', especially of soldiers.

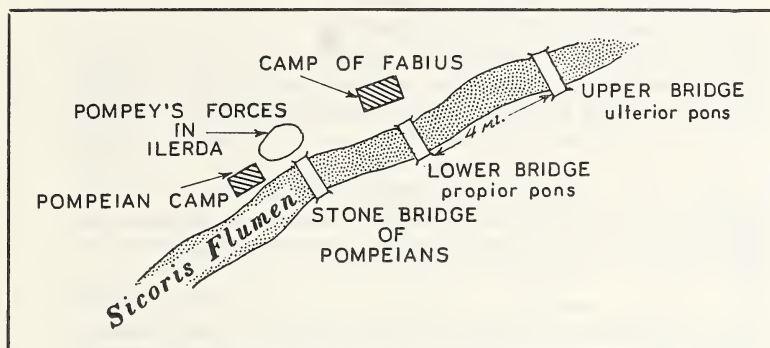
808 mutuas pecunias sumpsit: 'he negotiated a loan'; lit., 'he took borrowed money'. In the pl., *pecunia* means 'sums of money'. The whole story seems incredible in view of the fact that at the time the resources of Rome and all Italy were at Caesar's command. It has been suggested that either Caesar's supply lines had been broken at this time,

or that the story is a fabrication, or that it is out of place, or that it should apply to someone else, possibly Afranius.

809 Qua re facta: abl. abs. with the force of an abl. of means, 'By so doing'.

810 quod: 'the fact that', introducing noun clauses which are in app. to *duas res*. In tr. omit *quod*; 'he placed a claim upon (*tenuit*) the (continued) loyalty (*animos*) of the centurions, and he bought back the good will of the soldiers.'

813 animos: 'loyalty', 'inclination', as in l. 810. litteris nuntiisque: abl. of means; 'by letters and by messengers'. If this expression is an example of hendiadys ('one idea expressed through two units'), translate 'by messengers with letters'. temptabat: inceptive force of imperf., 'began to investigate', 'began to sound out'. Both Caesar and Pompey had to rely heavily on local support,



THE CAMPAIGN AT THE SICORIS RIVER

815 pontes duos distantes inter se milia passuum quattuor. His pontibus equites pabulationis causa mittebat quod ea, quae citra flumen fuerant, superioribus diebus consumpserat. Hoc idem atque eadem de causa duces exercitus Pompeiani faciebant, crebroque

and a good part of the general's responsibility was the winning over of the loyalties of cities and nations who could do him the most good. If a general looked to be likely to win out, he was certain to receive warm support from those peoples who still enjoyed freedom. At this time Caesar's superiority over Pompey in Spain had not yet been demonstrated.

814 inter se: 'one from the other'. milia: acc. of extent of space. His pontibus: abl. of route, a branch of the abl. of means, 'By these bridges'. 815 pabulationis causa: 'to forage'; causa (abl.) is a common method of expressing purp. in Latin. The chief object of the troopers' search was grain (*frumenta*) which was ground by the soldiers to produce flour from which could be made bread and porridge. If there were cities or towns

nearby the foragers could bargain for wine, fish and more elaborate food. It was not uncommon for the foraging party to plunder without thought of payment, although Pompey's troops had acquired a reputation for fair dealings. This was one reason why Pompey's troops were welcomed by many cities during the Civil War. When food was secured by the foraging party, it was conveyed back to camp either on pack animals or in wagons. ea. sc. *frumenta*, 'grain', 'crops', referring to 'food supplies' in general.

816 superioribus diebus: abl. of time. Hoc idem: acc.: eadem: abl. mod. causa.

817 exercitus Pompeiani: Latin is fond of coining adjectives from men's names, as *Pompeianus* from *Pompeius*, and *Fabianus* from *Fabius* (l. 819).



inter se equestribus proeliis contendebant.

820 Tandem legiones Fabianae duae, cotidiana ex consuetudine egressae pabulatoribus praesidio, propiore ponte flumen transierunt. Una cum his legionibus omnis equitatus sequebatur. Subito vi ventorum et aquae magnitudine pons interruptus est et reliqui equites interclusi sunt. Qua re cognita a Petreio et Afranio ex aggere atque cratibus, quae flumine ferebantur, celeriter Afranius suo ponte qui prope oppidum et castra erat, legiones tres equitatumque omnem traiecit duabusque Fabianis legionibus occurrit.

830 Cuius adventu nuntiato L. Plancus, qui legionibus Fabianis praecerat, necessaria re coactus, locum superiorem capit diversamque aciem in duas partes constituit, ne ab equitatu circumveniri posset. Ita congressus impari numero magnos impetus legionum

818 inter se: 'one with the other'. equestribus proeliis: abl. of means. They engaged 'in cavalry skirmishes'.

819 legiones Fabianae duae: food had indeed become a vital issue. In this elaborate foraging expedition the *equites* (l. 815) were the effective group in search of food. The *equites* were able to call on two full legions for protection; they in turn were escorted by the remainder of the cavalry. ex: 'in accordance with'; lit., '(arising) out of'.

820 pabulatoribus praesidio: double dat., 'to escort the foragers'. propiore ponte: see note on pontibus, l. 814. 821 Una: adv.; 'in accompaniment', 'along', 'together'; originally *una via*, abl., 'by a single road'. omnis: often used by Caesar for *totus*.

822 aquae magnitudine: 'by the swollen state of the river'.

823 Qua re . . . Afranio: 'When Petreius and Afranius had learned of this accident'. *Qua* is a co-ord. rel. mod. *re*. Other examples are *Cuius* (l. 828), *Quarum* (l. 836).

824 ex aggere atque cratibus: 'from the building materials and the framework'. Wicker hurdles or frame-

works (*crates*) were used to make the roadway of a temporary bridge, and on these earth, brushwood and other materials were laid. These now came floating downstream, thus indicating the collapse of the bridge. flumine: abl. of means, 'by the river', freely, 'downstream'.

826 legionibus: dat. with *occurrit*.

828 Cuius: i.e. of Afranius. legionibus: dat. gov. by the *prae-* in the compound verb *praecerat*.

829 necessaria re: 'by the emergency' in which he found himself. *superiorem*: 'higher', but often the word refers to time, not position, as in l. 816. *capit*: hist. pres., used for vividness.

829-30 *diversam* . . . *constituit*: 'he formed in line with two fronts looking opposite ways'; *diversam* means 'facing in opposite directions', so that it is hardly necessary for Caesar to add *in duas partes*.

830-1 *ne* . . . *posset*: subj. in a neg. clause of purp., 'to forestall the possibility of encirclement by the cavalry'.

831 *congressus*: perf. part. with concess. force. *impari numero*: abl. of

835 equitatusque sustinet. Commisso ab equitibus proelio signa legionum duarum procul ab utrisque conspiciuntur, quas C. Fabius ulteriore ponte subsidio nostris miserat suspicatus duces hostium occasione et beneficio fortunae usos nostros oppressuros esse. Quarum adventu finis proelii factus est ac suas uterque legiones reducit in castra.

### 3. When Times Are Tough

Even a successful commander must be prepared for temporary setbacks. Almost every great leader the world has seen occasionally has had to combat his men's mental depression following a reversal of fortune.

*On one occasion in Spain, Caesar is effectively cut off from his supply lines. The price of grain at once skyrockets. His men grow weak from lack of food. There is need for his usual quick action. Caesar's opponents, on the other hand, make the mistake of counting their chickens before they are hatched.*

Ob haec omnia annona crevit; quae res saepe peior fit non solum

manner, describing the resistance of Plancus; 'with an inferior force'. magnos: 'large-scale'. legionum: subj. gen. Notice that here, as always, 'legions' is synonymous with 'infantry', as opposed to 'cavalry'. 832 signa: see note, "Caesar's Army."

833 conspiciuntur: tr. as an act. verb, 'both sides (*ab utrisque*) from afar caught sight of the standards of the two legions which . . .'. Change the voice of a Latin verb if by so doing you improve the quality of the English. Similarly it may be an improvement to begin a new English sentence at *quas* ('These').

834 subsidio nostris: double dat. suspicatus: perf. part. with causal force. A new English sentence, however, may be begun here.

835 occasione, beneficio: abl. gov. by *usos*. *usos*: 'taking advantage of'; this part. may also be tr. as a verb, parallel to *oppressuros esse*.

836 Quarum adventu: 'On the arrival of these legions'; *adventu* is abl. of time. *uterque*: 'both generals', i.e. Plancus and Afranius.

838 Ob haec omnia: just before this point in his account Caesar had listed a series of misfortunes which had left his men in a desperate position. His camp had been pitched in a fork between two rivers, and was now isolated by a flood which had washed out the only bridges connecting his camp with the mainland. As a result he was cut off from the supplies he might have expected from friendly states or from his own foraging parties. Meantime, Afranius' army was well stocked with food from the previous year's crop, while the grain standing in the fields was not yet ripe. Even the cattle, which might have served as a secondary resource against famine, had been removed to a distance by their owners. This combination of circum-

- 840 inopia praesentis, sed etiam timore futuri temporis. Iamque ad denarios quinquaginta in singulos modios annona pervenerat, et inopia frumenti militum vires deminuerat, atque incommoda in dies augebantur: et paucis diebus tanta rerum commutatio facta erat, ut nostri magna inopia necessariorum rerum trepidarent, illi omnibus rebus abundarent superioresque iam haberentur. Caesar 845 iis civitatibus, quae in amicitia cum eo erant, quod minor erat frumenti copia, pecus imperabat; paucos ex equitibus ad longin-

stances resulted in a sharp rise in the price of grain to famine level. Notice that grain (not meat) was the regular diet of the Roman soldier. crevit: from *cresco*, not *cerno*. quae res: quae is a co-ord. rel. mod. res; res has been likened to a blank cheque and must be tr. in such a way as to fit the context. Here it means something like 'advance in price', referring to the rise in the annona. It may also be tr. by 'disaster', 'situation', etc.; tr. 'This situation is often aggravated', i.e. 'becomes worse' (*peior fit*).

839 inopia . . . temporis: Caesar frequently shows a fine insight into mob psychology. In one or two phrases he can make us picture the growing fears of his men both for the present and for the future: inopia and timore are abl. of cause, equivalent to ob plus acc.

839-40 ad denarios quinquaginta in singulos modios: 'to fifty denarii per peck'; the regular price in Rome at this time was a little less than one denarius. It is virtually impossible to calculate the purchasing power of the denarius in Caesar's time in terms of the modern dollar, but this inflated price of fifty denarii per peck was the equivalent of perhaps \$150 per peck, a price even higher than those which prevailed on the European black market during and immediately after World War II.

841 incommoda: 'inconveniences'. 'misfortunes'.

841-2 in dies: 'from day to day'.

842 augebantur: tr. as an intr. verb, 'were increasing'. paucis diebus: abl. of time. rerum commutatio: 'reversal of fortune'; rerum is objective gen. 843 inopia: abl. of cause; see note on inopia and timore, l. 839. necessariorum rerum: 'of essential supplies'. trepidarent: 'became panicky'; subj. of result. So, too, abundarent and haberentur, l. 844. illi: i.e. the Pompeians; illi balances nostri, l. 843. The contrast between nostri and illi is made greater by the lack of connective (asyndeton).

844 rebus: abl. of resp. haberentur: 'were considered'. This is frequently the meaning of habeo; see l. 905 and l. 923-4.

845-6 quod . . . copia: gives the reason for what follows (i.e. why Caesar demanded cattle), not for what precedes (i.e. why the states were on friendly terms with him). Notice that such a sub. adv. clause regularly belongs with what follows, not with what precedes.

845 minor: abs. comparative, 'quite scanty'. It is to be assumed that the states which were friendly to Caesar had depleted their grain reserves by gifts of food to his army to the point where they themselves went short.

846 imperabat: impero in the sense

quiores civitates dimittebat; ipse praesentem inopiam omnibus modis deminuere conabatur.

850 Afranius Petreiusque et eorum amici Romam ad suos pleniora de incommodis Caesaris perscribebant. Quibus litteris multa rumore addebantur ut Romae multi crederent bellum paene confectum esse. Multi cives domum Afranii concurrebant magnaeque gratulationes fiebant. Praeterea multi ex Italia ad Cn. Pompeium proficiscebantur, alii, ut principes talem nuntium attulisse, alii ut  
855 ante eventum belli ad Pompeium venisse viderentur.

of 'demand' takes the acc. of the thing demanded (*pecus*) and the dat. of the person on whom the demand is made (*iis civitatibus; iis = eis*).

847-8 ipse . . . conabatur : Caesar was not entirely cut off from his allies. He was still in contact with those on his side of the river bank. See note on line 838.

849 Romam ad suos: lit., 'to Rome', 'to their friends, more freely, 'to their friends in Rome'. Latin stresses the 'double destination' in such phrases. pleniora: 'fuller than usual', 'fuller than the truth', hence 'exaggerated accounts'. The neut. pl. of the adj. is here used as a noun, i.e. is a substantive.

850 Quibus litteris: dat., ind. obj. of *addebantur*; *rumore*, 'from hearsay'.

851 ut: 'with the result that'. Romae: locative. crederent: subj. of result; *ut* sometimes means 'with the result that', 'so that' without the aid of *sic* or *ita*.

852 domum: *ad* is omitted with this word, which is treated like the names of cities, towns and small islands when motion towards is being expressed. concurrebant: 'flocked'.

852-3 magnae . . . fiebant: 'hearty congratulations were extended'. The adj. *magnus* may be tr. not merely in a quantitative way, i.e. 'great,

large', but in a qualitative way, so as to bring out its flavour in each context. Hence, *magna vox* is 'a loud voice', *magna urbs* is 'an important town', *magnae copiae* is 'a strong army'.

853 ex Italia ad Cn. Pompeium: Pompey was in Epirus, across the Adriatic from Italy. Rather than accompany his forces to Spain, he preferred not to cut himself off from the East, on which his greatest hopes were built. If he had gone to Spain, a single defeat would have been fatal; in the East, he could draw on his wide connections and continue the fight.

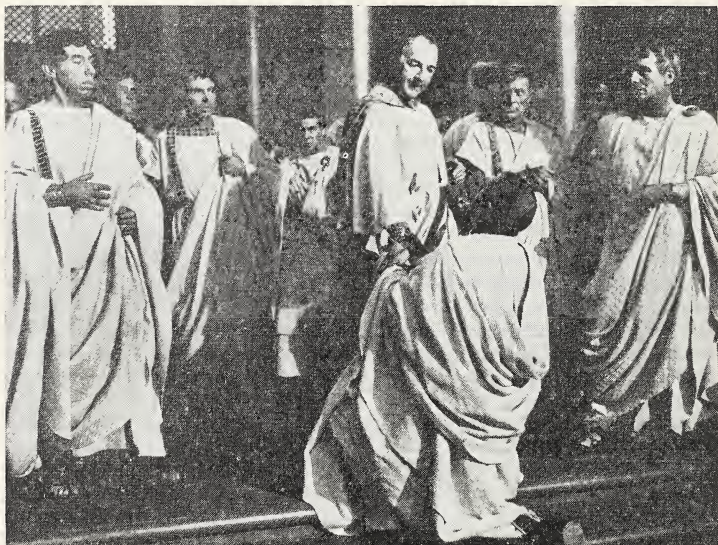
854-5 ut principes . . . viderentur : the first of two purp. clauses, each having the subj. *viderentur* as its verb; 'in order that they might seem to have been the first (*principes*, originally an adj., not a noun) to bear such welcome news'. A lit. tr. will show that the Latin uses a 'short-cut'; 'in order that they might seem to have reported such a message first'.

While Caesar had been able to send off messengers to the more distant states to demand grain, he was still in an awkward position, since he could not cross the river, the opposite bank of which was held by the enemy. Now he had to call on his experience. A few years before, in



#### 4. The Last Round-up

In his dealings with a conquered foe, Caesar displayed much clemency, *clementia*. Certainly it is true that he usually treated his victims with generosity. Such treatment may well have been prompted by a sincere sense of pity and a real desire to avoid bloodshed so far as war can permit. However, it may be significant to consider what far-reaching results can follow from such lenient action.



Scene from MGM's 'Julius Caesar'

##### THE LAST APPEAL TO CAESAR'S CLEMENCY

Before stabbing him, the conspirators seek to distract Caesar's attention by an appeal for mercy.

Britain, he had learned how to make boats of light timber, wicker-work and hides. He had some of these boats made, and after taking them 22 miles along the river by wagon, he transported a few troops across the river. They at once consolidated their position on the opposite bank, and were soon joined by a whole le-

gion. A bridge, quickly begun on both banks at once, was finished in two days.

Meantime the enemy were not even aware of what was going on, and Caesar's cavalry surprised their foragers, intercepting a large number of cattle and people. Caesar's troubles were over for the moment.

If, for example, all survivors in a defeated army are pardoned and sent back home unharmed, it is entirely possible that many others who hear of the pardon will be tempted to capitulate without a fight. This is especially true of troops who have been recruited from the provinces. Also, many of those pardoned are bound to feel a personal attachment to the man to whom they owe their lives. Every such act will help to build a devoted following for a general. As a result soldiers will be attracted to his colours as if by a magnet. We may be sure that Caesar, a wise judge of human nature, was thoroughly aware of all the advantages resulting from the generous treatment of a valiant foe.

Furthermore, if Caesar was aiming, as some suggest, at political supremacy in Rome, it can be argued that it was preferable for him to have live supporters than dead opponents. Perhaps that is why he tried to convert his Roman rivals to his way of thinking by first bending them to his will and then bestowing upon them a magnanimous pardon.



*Courtesy Braun & Company, Mulhouse*

#### VERCINGETORIX THE GAUL SURRENDERS TO CAESAR

Vercingetorix, the leader of a Gallic national effort to expel the Romans, was not granted the mercy which Caesar later showed in the Civil War.

*Caesar finally cornered Afranius and Petreius near Ilerda, but instead of risking casualties in battle, he preferred to starve his enemies into submission.*

*Now, in his final settlement of Spain, his rival generals are allowed to go free and their forces are merely disbanded. He himself as usual shows imagination in his treatment even of vanquished legionaries.*

Caesar pollicitus est se ex eo tempore, dum ad flumen Varum venirent, frumentum daturum esse; se quae quisque eorum in bello amisisset, quae essent penes milites suos, restitutum esse. Militibus aequa aestimatione facta pecuniam pro his rebus dis-  
860 solvit. Quasumque postea controversias inter se milites habuerunt, sua sponte ad Caesarem in ius adierunt. Petreius atque Afranius, cum stipendium ab legionibus paene seditione facta flagitaretur, postulaverunt ut Caesar cognosceret, eoque quod statuit utrique contenti fuerunt. Parte circiter tertia exercitus biduo

856 *ex eo tempore* : 'from the present time'.

856-7 *dum . . . venirent* : 'until they should reach'; *dum* meaning 'until' often implies purp. or anticipation and in this sense requires the subj. 857 *frumentum daturum esse* : i.e. to the surrendered Pompeians. *quae quisque . . . essent* : 'the possessions which (*quae* = *ea quae*) each . . . had lost, and which (*quae* = *et quae*) were . . .'. Both verbs are subj. in a subj. clause in indir. disc.; *amisisset* stands for an original perf. indic. in the dir., and *essent* stands for an original pres. indic.

857-8 *se . . . restitutum esse* : another indir. statement, still gov. by *pollicitus est*. The semi-colon (sometimes a colon) indicates that here is another unit of indir. speech; notice that no second verb of 'speaking' is used to introduce the new unit in the Latin.

859 *Militibus . . . pecuniam . . . dissolvit* : lit., 'He paid money to his

men', i.e. 'he recompensed his men in money' (for the loot that was now being restored to the Pompeians).

861 in *ius adierunt* : *in ius ire* means 'to go to law', 'to have a case tried'. Here, 'they went to Caesar to have the case tried'. Caesar had had a great deal of experience as a judge. In the winter seasons during his campaigns in Gaul, he had frequently acted as a circuit judge, travelling from town to town.

862 *cum* : = causal. *paene seditione facta* : 'mutiny almost having broken out'; freely, 'who were on the point of mutiny'.

863 *cognosceret* : 'investigate'; subj. in a clause of indir. com. *eo . . . quod statuit* : 'with that which he decided', i.e. 'with his decision'; *eo* is abl. of cause dep. on *contenti*.

864 *utrique* : 'both sides', in the argument between commanders and men. Notice that the sing. *uterque* would be required if the meaning were 'both individuals'. *Parte . . .*



865 *dimissa*, duas legiones suas antecedere, reliquas subsequi iussit; eique negotio Q. Fufium Calenum legatum praeficit. Ut Caesar imperaverat, ex Hispania ad Varum flumen iter factum est atque ibi reliqua pars exercitus dimissa est.

### 5. The Curious Case of Curio

One of the chief reasons for the success of an army trained by Caesar was the system of promotion by merit which he employed. This was especially true of his *legati*, who were chosen for their jobs solely because they possessed ability.

Caesar tried to bind his officers to him with the strongest ties possible. Sometimes he bought their loyalty, as in the case of Curio. When Caesar was absent from Rome during the period just before the civil war, his opponents in Rome tried to undermine his position. An effort was made to force him to disband his legions and return unprotected to the city. Somehow his interests had to be protected while he was absent from Rome. Accordingly, he approached a brilliant, unpredictable young *tribunus plebis* named Curio, who by his power of veto could prevent unfavourable legislation from being passed. Curio was heavily in debt, and Caesar won his allegiance by paying his debts. So well did Curio

*dimissa* : It had been decided that any Pompeian who had any land or possession in Spain should be discharged first; these amounted to 'approximately one-third' of the total number of prisoners. *biduo* : abl. of time.

865 *duas* . . . *subsequi* : By separating his own army into two parts on the march, he made it difficult for the defeated soldiers to change their minds about proceeding quietly to the Var.

866 *Ut* : 'As'.

867 *iter factum est* : tr. as *active*.

In spite of the trouble they had caused, Afranius and Petreius were allowed to go free. Both rejoined Pompey. Afranius was present at the battle of Pharsalus, while Pe-

treius again fought Caesar's forces in Africa. Both fought for Pompey at Thapsus in Africa in 46 B.C. Thus while Caesar had much to gain by granting a pardon to his foes, sometimes he prolonged hostilities by making it possible for a defeated enemy to fight again another day. By his victory in Spain, Caesar removed the threat to his flank from the west. His success partly stems from his excellent generalship. But even more does it stem from the fierce loyalty and determination he inspired in his men; for him they crossed the Segris in flimsy boats, endured many days' famine in time of flood and boldly advanced upon the Italian towns in Spain with slender hopes of success.



follow instructions that he was appointed to Caesar's staff and placed in charge of an expedition to Africa. His instructions were to wrest the province of Africa from the Pompeians, who were based near the town of Utica. With him he was careful to take competent military advisers, being fully aware of his lack of experience in war. In Africa he met with success after success in several minor engagements, such as the one described below. Because of these successes he became impatient of final victory. He was desperately anxious to return triumphant to his master. Being a man of vigorous action and of violence, he exposed his army unnecessarily, and sustained the heaviest loss possible—annihilation of his army. He himself was killed in action. Africa remained Pompeian until Caesar, in a later campaign, won the battle of Thapsus.

*A successful skirmish is fought by Curio with Publius Attius Varus.*

870 Erat vallis inter duas acies, non magna, at difficili et arduo ascensu. Hanc uterque sperabat hostium copias transire conaturus esse, ut aequo loco proelium committeret. Simul ab sinistro cornu equitatus omnis P. Attii et una complures levis armaturae interiecti, cum se in vallem demitterent, cernebantur. Ad eos Curio equitatum et duas cohortes mittit; quorum primum impetum  
875 equites hostium non tulerunt, sed admissis equis ad suos refuge-

869 at : 'but on the other hand', introducing a contrast with what precedes. *ascensu* : abl. of external desc.; freely, 'difficult and steep to climb'. 871 *aequo loco* : 'on favourable ground', 'in an advantageous position'. With *locus* mod. by an adj., place where is expressed by the abl. without the prep. *in*.

872 *una* : adv.; see the note on *Una* in l. 821. *complures . . . interiecti* : "Caesar's enthusiasm for this arrangement, learned from the Germans (*Bel. Gal.* 4.13), seems to have been shared by other officers of the time. But Attius had not realized that the foot-soldiers, either by holding the horses' manes or in some

other way, must learn each to keep up with a horseman; whence the particularly clumsy use here made of a most effective arrangement." (Moberly & Last, p. 189) *levis armaturae* : gen. of desc.; 'of the light infantry', lit., 'of light equipment'. 873 *se . . . demitterent* : 'were letting themselves down', i.e. 'were descending'; the subj. is gov. by *cum*-temporal referring to the past. *Ad eos* : 'To meet them'.

874 *quorum* : sometimes a rel. pron. takes its gender from the nearer of two antecedents. More often (as here) it uses the masc. form if one of the antecedents is masc.

875 *admissis equis* : *admitto* often

run; relictī ab his qui una procurrerant circumveniebantur atque interficiebantur ab nostris. Huc tota acies Vari conversa suos fugere et concidi videbat. Tunc Rebilus, legatus Caesaris, quem Curio secum ex Sicilia duxerat, quod sciebat eum habere magnum  
 880 usum in re militari, 'Perterritum,' inquit, 'hostem vides, Curio: quid dubitas uti temporis opportunitate?' Ille postquam militibus imperavit ut memoria tenerent ea quae pridie sibi confirmavissent, eos sequi sese iubet et praecurrit ante omnes. Adeo erat impedita vallis ut in ascensu, nisi sublevati a suis, primi non facile  
 885 enī possent. Sed milites Atii propter timorem suum et fugam caedemque suorum nihil de resistendo cogitabant, omnesque se iam ab equitatu circumveniri arbitrabantur. Itaque priusquam

means 'let go'. Here the horses have been 'given free rein', i.e. are racing 'at a full gallop'.

876 relictī: The perf. part. pass. used as a substantive, or noun, 'those who had been deserted', i.e. the light-armed infantry, mentioned in l. 872.

877 Huc . . . conversa: 'facing in this direction'; the perf. part. pass. often contains a reflexive idea.

878 concidi: from concido.

881 quid: 'why?' This use of the accus. as an adv. may be an abb. for *ob quid?* or *propter quid?* meaning 'because of what?', 'why?'. uti temporis opportunitate: lit. 'to use the opportunity of the occasion', freely, 'to take advantage of the situation'; *opportunitate* is abl. gov. by the verb *utor*.

882 memoria tenerent: 'hold in memory', i.e. 'keep in mind'; *memoria* is abl. of means; *tenerent* is subj. in an ind. com. quae . . . confirmavissent: a sub. cl. in ind. disc. The armies of Curio and Varus were facing each other just outside the town of Utica. When he should have attacked at once, Curio had foolishly allowed communications to pass between the two forces. The Pompeians

had managed to undermine the morale of Curio's troops, and Curio had lost confidence in his men. After his appeal to their loyalty, they had reaffirmed their faith, and urged him to engage the enemy soon and put their courage to the test.

883 praecurrit ante omnes: 'rushed on ahead of all'.

883-4 Adeo . . . vallis: = *Vallis erat adeo* (adv., 'so', 'so very') *impedita* ('difficult to climb', lit. 'obstructed').

884 nisi sublevati: lit., 'unless helped up'; tr. 'without help'. primi: substantive, 'those in front'.

885-6 fugam caedemque suorum: see lines 874-7.

886 nihil . . . cogitabant: 'gave no thought (*nihil*, acc. used as an adv.) to resistance (*de resistendo*, lit. 'about resisting')'; *resistendo* is a gerund gov. by *de*, a rare construction, as *in* and *ad* are the only preps. that commonly gov. a gerund.

886-7 se . . . arbitrabantur: The Romans were always desperately afraid of being surrounded and attacked from the rear. Their protective shields covered them in front only, while an attack in the rear could best be effected by the most mobile part of an ancient army, the cavalry.

telum iaceretur omnis Varii acies terga vertit seque in castra recepit.

## 6. All Is Fair in Love and War

But in Caesar's army it was not only the top-ranking officers who were appointed by reason of their ability. His junior officers also, the *centuriones*, were highly skilled in actual combat, and invariably won their rank by their ability in action.

*By the example of each centurion the hundred or so men under his command were often inspired to accomplish the seemingly impossible. The exploit of Fabius Pelignus, a centurion in Curio's army, is a forcible reminder that all is fair in love and war.*

- 890 Qua in fuga hostium Fabius Pelignus quidam ex infimis ordinibus in exercitu Curionis agmen fugientium consecutus est. Magna voce Varum legatum Pompeianum nomine appellans ita petebat ut unus esse ex eius militibus et monere aliquid ac dicere velle videretur. Ubi ille saepius appellatus aspexit ac constitit et, quis  
895 esset aut quid vellet, quaesivit, humerum apertum gladio appetit paeneque Varum interfecit; quod periculum ille, sublato ad eius impetum scuto, vitavit. Fabius a proximis militibus circumventus interficitur.

888 iaceretur : anticipatory subj. as in l. 857. seque . . . recepit : If Curio had immediately stormed the Pompeian army after its retreat into camp, he might have been successful. Instead, he too returned to camp and soon began a siege of Utica. Meantime King Juba of Numidia, the son of a man who owed his throne to Pompey and hence himself a strong supporter of the Pompeian cause, brought reinforcements to Varus. After an initial success in a skirmish with Juba's vanguard, Curio began to press his apparent advantage, only to find that Juba's force was being steadily augmented and was beginning to surround the now exposed Roman army. The hostile cavalry finished the job, cutting off the Romans from the high ground to which they hoped to flee.

890 Qua in fuga : This is the flight

referred to in lines 874-6. *Qua* is a co-ord. rel. mod. *fuga. ex infimis ordinibus* : 'a centurion of the lowest rank'.

891-2 Magna voce : abl. of manner; for tr. of *Magna*, see note on *magni*, ll. 852-3.

892 nomine : abl. of means.

892-4 ita petebat . . . videretur : 'he made his request so insistently (*ita*) that he appeared to be one of Varus' men who wished (lit., and to wish) to speak to him and to give him some advice'; *velle* is completed by both *monere* and *dicere*.

894 ille : change of subject.

894-5 quis esset, quid vellet : ind. quest. dep. on *quaesivit*.

895 humerum apertum : The vulnerable shoulder was the one which was not protected by the shield, i.e. the right shoulder.

896 quod : a co-ord. rel. mod. *pericu-*



CENTURIO

LEGATUS

*Courtesy E. Mazo*

Note the centurion's medals and swagger-stick.  
The legatus wears more elaborate equipment.

*lum*; 'this danger'. *sublato* : from *tollo*.

896-7 *ad eius impetum* : 'to ward off his attack'.

Before this episode took place, Caesar by a sudden movement of his troops had cut off Pompey from his base at Dyrrachium. Pompey then took up a comfortable position south

of Petra, being well-supplied by his superior shipping. Amazingly enough Caesar then decided to blockade Pompey, although his army was poorly supplied and but half the size of the besieged army. Even so, his plan was almost successful, until two Gallic officers deserted from Caesar to Pompey. This story is given [here](#).





THE CONSPIRATORS AFTER CAESAR'S MURDER

Among them were trusted friends who betrayed him.

### 7. They Bit the Hand that Fed Them

*Those whom Caesar has once rewarded sometimes take advantage of his generosity.*

Erant apud Caesarem ex equitum numero Allobroges duo fratres,  
 900 Raucillus et Egus, singulari virtute homines, quorum opera  
 optima Caesar omnibus Gallicis bellis erat usus. His domi ob has  
 causas amplissimos magistratus mandaverat agrosque in Gallia ex  
 hostibus captos praemiaque pecuniae magna tribuerat. Hi prop-  
 ter virtutem non solum apud Caesarem in honore erant, sed etiam

899 apud Caesarem : 'with Caesar',  
 'in Caesar's army'; so too in line 924.  
 This meaning of *apud* is similar to  
 that of the French word "chez". Al-  
 lobroges : the Allobrogi were a  
 warlike tribe of Gauls living in the  
 N.E. corner of the *Provincia*.

900 virtute : abl. of desc.

900-1 quorum opera . . . usus : opera

is abl. (from *opera*, not *opus*) gov.  
 by the verb *utor*; 'whose services  
 Caesar had found most capable'.

901 bellis : abl. of time. domi : 'in  
 their native country'; locative.

903 pecuniae : gen. of equivalence;  
 the rewards were in money.

904 in honore erant : 'occupied a  
 position of esteem', 'were held in  
 esteem'.

905 *apud exercitum cari habebantur*: sed adducti amicitia Caesaris, et barbara arrogantia elati, despiciebant suos stipendiumque equitum et praedam omnem sibi avertabant. Quibus rebus permoti illi universi Caesarem adierunt. Palam de eorum iniuriis questi, ad



Courtesy, The Louvre, Paris

#### ANCIENT MILITARY RECORDS

Nominal rolls were of the type shown at the left.

905 *cari habebantur*: 'were regarded with affection'; *habeo* often has this meaning, as in lines 923-4. *Caesaris*: subj. gen., 'the friendship offered by Caesar'.

906 *barbara*: both the Greeks and the Romans used this word to refer to anyone or anything which was not Greek or Roman, respectively. To the Romans, therefore, it means non-Roman, or 'foreign' and came to involve the qualities naturally attributed to such people — 'savage', 'uncivilized'.

906-7 *stipendiumque . . . avertabant*: This could have been done either by taking a personal commission on

each man's pay for expenses supposedly incurred on behalf of the troops, or by drawing dead men's pay, as mentioned in l. 909-10. Such sharp practices have not been unknown in much more recent times. 907 *praedam . . . avertabant*: 'they appropriated for themselves all the loot (which had been given them for division among their men)'. *illi*: change of subject, referring to *suos*, l. 906.

908 *eorum iniuriis*: *eorum* is subj. gen.; 'their crimes', 'the crimes committed by them'.

908-9 *ad cetera*: 'to the other charges'; *cetera* is a neut. pl. adj.

cetera addiderunt falsum equitum numerum deferri, eorumque stipendium averti.

Caesar multa virtuti eorum concedens rem totam distulit; illos privatim accusavit, monuitque ut ex sua amicitia omnia exspectarent et ex praeteritis suis beneficiis reliqua sperarent. Magnam tamen haec res illis iram et contemptionem ad omnes attulit. Quo pudore adducti et arbitrati fortasse non se liberari, sed in aliud tempus reservari, discedere a nobis et novam temptare fortunam novasque amicitias invenire constituerunt. Et collocuti cum paucis ex amicis suis, primum conati sunt praefectum equitum C. Voluse-num interficere, ut postea bello confecto cognitum est, ut bona fide perfugisse ad Pompeium viderentur; postquam id difficilior visum est, quam maximis mutuis pecuniis sumptis, multis equis emptis ad Pompeium transierunt.

Quos Pompeius, quod erant honesto loco nati virique fortes habe-

used as a noun, as in *et cetera (etc.)*. 909 falsum equitum numerum deferri: 'a false nominal roll of their cavalry was submitted', i.e. casualties were not reported, yet pay continued to be requisitioned in the dead men's names.

911 multa . . . concedens: 'making generous allowances'; multa is an example of the frequent use of an accus. neut. adj. as an adverb. This usage is often called adverbial accus. 912-3 ex . . . amicitia, ex . . . beneficiis: in these phrases, ex means 'on the basis of', 'commensurate with'; lit. '(arising) out of', 'in accordance with'. See note on ex, l. 819. exspectarent, sperarent: subj. in ind. com.

912 omnia: 'all kinds of benefits'.

913 reliqua: sc. beneficia; 'favours yet to come'.

913-4 Magnam . . . attulit: 'However, this incident (or, conduct) brought upon them everyone's bitter anger and contempt'; lit., 'brought for them (illis, dat. of int.) to everybody a bitter anger and contempt'. Like res, magnus must be translated

ingeniously so that its true flavour is brought out in each context. Here, for instance, 'bitter' is a good translation, whereas in l. 903 magna means 'generous'.

914-5 Quo pudore: 'By chagrin over this predicament'.

915 in aliud tempus reservari: The brothers may have remembered the case of Acco the Senonian who, although pardoned by Caesar during hostilities in Gaul, was punished by him as soon as the war was over. (*Bel. Gal.* 6.4 and 44). The prep. in with the acc. often has a notion of purpose, as here; 'for'.

916 discedere: 'desert'.

919-20 bona fide: 'in good faith', i.e. 'with proof of their sincerity'; abl. of manner.

920 difficilior: abs. comp., 'too difficult (to carry out)'.

921 quam . . . sumptis: 'after borrowing as much money as possible'. See l. 808.

921-2 equis emptis: presumably done to impress Pompey.

923 Quos: co-ord. rel. and dir. obj. of circumduxit; 'Pompey took them

925 bantur et in honore apud Caesarem fuerant, quodque novum et  
 praeter consuetudinem acciderat, omnia sua praesidia circum  
 duxit atque ostendit. Nam ante id tempus nemo aut miles aut  
 eques a Caesare ad Pompeium transierat. Multi autem paene coti-  
 die a Pompeio ad Caesarem perfugiebant. Sed hi fratres, cognitis  
 930 omnibus rebus de munitionibus Caesaris, haec ad Pompeium  
 omnia detulerunt.

### 8. 'Keep the Colours Flying High'

In Caesar's army each man took pride in his own job. As in more modern armies, the safety of each unit's colours was a vital matter for morale. The duty of each standard bearer was to carry his standard into the midst of the fray, so that his fellow-soldiers could follow the standard even when orders could not be heard in the din of battle. The standard of a legion was surmounted with an eagle (*aquila*) and it was carried by an *aquilifer*. On the other hand, the standard of a cohort (*signum*) was carried by a *signifer*.

*Here is a story revealing the typical conduct of a Roman aquilifer in the heat of battle. In such courage as this is to be found the secret of Rome's military success.*

around on a tour of inspection and pointed out all his lines of defence'; *omnia sua praesidia* is really *dir.* obj. of both *circumduxit* and *ostendit*. *honesto loco nati*: lit. 'born in an honourable station'; when *locus* and an adj. are used in an expression denoting place where, the prep. *in* is usually omitted. Tr. 'of distinguished birth'.

924-5 quodque . . . acciderat: 'and because it (or, their arrival) had been a novel and unprecedented occurrence'; lit., 'and because it had happened as (something) new and exceptional'.

928-9 cognitis . . . rebus: By way of explanation of this phrase, Caesar goes on to say "as they had taken note of the times fixed for each detail of the blockade, of the distances

between point and point, and of the degree of military efficiency practised at this post or that, according to the character or zeal of the various officers commanding each." rebus: as with *magnus*, the tr. of *res* must be selected to fit its context. Here it means 'details'; in l. 907 *rebus* may be rendered as 'actions'; *rem.* in l. 911 is 'matter'; in l. 914 *res* may be 'event' or 'occurrence'.

929-30 haec . . . omnia: 'this information, all of it'. The idea in *haec* is extracted from the preceding abl. abs., which is thus used somewhat loosely. The information supplied by the brothers helped Pompey to break the blockade imposed by Caesar, forcing Caesar to withdraw into Thessaly before his final victory at Pharsalus.





CORNICEN

AQUILIFER

FUNDITOR

In eo proelio cum gravi vulnere esset adfectus aquilifer et vires ei deessent, conspicatus equites nostros, 'Hanc aquilam ego,' inquit, 'et vivus multos per annos magna diligentia defendi et nunc moriens eadem fide Caesari restituo. Nolite, obsecro, pati, quod ante in exercitu Caesaris non accidit, rei militaris dedecus admitteri, incolumemque ad eum deferre.' Hac re gesta aquila conservatur.

931 In eo proelio : This phrase acts as a connective, displacing *cum*, which would normally precede it. The Allobrogian brothers (chapter 7), had given information of a weakness in Caesar's blockade line where part of the structure had not yet been completed.

932 ei : dat. gov. by the *de-* in the compound verb *deessent*.

933 et vivus . . . et nunc moriens : tr. so as to bring out the contrast; *et* . . . *et* need not always be translated 'both . . . and'. 'This eagle have I defended in life . . . ; now in

the hour of death I . . . '.

934 eadem fide : abl. of manner. quod : *id quod*.

935 ante : adv. rei militaris dedecus admitteri : 'a military disgrace to be incurred'; *admitteri* is comp. inf. dep. on *pati*.

936 incolumemque : *sc. aquilam*; *-que* here means 'but'; and *incolumem* means 'safe' after being exposed to danger, as opposed to *tutus*, which also means 'safe', but frequently without the same element of danger. Hac re gesta : abl. abs., with force of abl. of means.

# SECTION THREE

SELECTIONS FROM  
LATIN POETRY

---

# INTRODUCTION

## I. Some Characteristics of Latin Poetry

1. Latin poetry employs no *rhyme*. Rhyme did not become popular until the Middle Ages. Latin poetry does, however, employ *rhythm*, which in Latin poetry is produced by the arrangement of long and short syllables in each line.

2. Instead of referring to a person or a thing directly by name, a Latin poet often uses a mythological allusion. This reference to mythology enriches the poem, and at the same time gives the reader the thrill of being able to recognize the allusion. Here are some examples of mythological allusion:

(a) Vergil tells how Aeneas is finally to reach 'Italian shores', but he refers to them as 'Lavinian shores' (*Laviniae litora*), for Lavinia was destined to be Aeneas' bride in Italy, and the Italian town he founded was to be named Lavinium in her honour.

Arma virumque cano, Troiae qui primus ab oris  
Italiam fato profugus *Laviniae* venit  
litora — (lines 1-3)

(b) Ovid (in "Baucis and Philemon") tells how Jupiter and Mercury sought hospitality on earth, but he refers to Mercury as 'the descendant of Atlas' (*Atlantiades*)

Iuppiter huc specie mortali, cumque parente  
venit *Atlantiades* positus caducifer alis. (lines 279-280)

(c) Ovid (in "Pyramus and Thisbe") tells us that Pyramus and Thisbe lived in Babylon, by saying that they lived 'where the Assyrian queen Semiramis is said to have encircled the city with walls of sun-dried bricks.'

Pyramus et Thisbe, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter,  
altera, quas Oriens habuit, praelata puellis,

contiguas tenere domos, *ubi dicitur altam  
coctilibus muris cin cisse Semiramis urbem.*

(lines 215-218)

3. Latin poets usually prefer a 'vivid particularization' instead of a 'vague generalization'. For example, rather than speak merely of 'a wind', which would be a generalization, they are likely to specify a definite wind, which is to the Roman much more vivid because it is a particularization; e.g. In "The Boatrace", Vergil tells us that the winning ship sped across the finish line 'more swiftly than the south wind' (*Noto citius*); he is not content to say 'more swiftly than the wind'. (line 166)

4. Latin poetry exhibits a great flexibility of word order and yet the grammar remains clear because of the case-endings. Skilful use of word order to produce special effects is part of the artistry of Latin poets. A few of the many fascinating variations are discussed below:

(a) Since the first and the last position in a line of poetry are the most important, a word is often placed first or last to emphasize it. If the verb, which often comes last in its clause as a climax, is placed first in its line or in its clause, it is given even greater emphasis.

e.g. (i) *Miratur molem Aeneas . . .*

= 'Astonished was Aeneas at the massive buildings' (line 32)

(ii) *Instant ardentis Tyrii . . .*

= 'On pressed the Tyrians at fever-heat' (line 34)

(b) Grammatically related words (e.g. noun and adjective) are often separated in order to draw special attention to the ideas which they express. When separated, they command our attention twice, instead of once.

e.g. (i) Sederat Hippomenes *cursus* spectator *iniqui*  
= 'the race . . . , the *unequal* race' (line 425)

Notice that the separation of *cursus* and *iniqui* is the result of the 'interlocking' order in which the words are placed.



- (ii) Tabuerant cerae; *nudos* quatit ille *lacertos*  
 = 'bare are the arms that he flutters' (line 503)

Notice that the separation of *nudos* and *lacertos* is the result of the 'parallel' order in which the words are placed. Notice also that *nudos* and *lacertos* occupy the two emphatic positions in the clause.

(c) Sometimes the separation of grammatically related words actually seems to produce a word picture or sketch of the meaning conveyed by the words.

- e.g. (i) *iecit* ab obliquo *nitidum* iuvenaliter *aurum*  
 = 'He threw . . . the glittering . . . golden apple'.  
 (line 471)

Here, the golden apple may be pictured speeding far off to one side of the course. Notice too, that the word order represents the action as seen by the girl Atalanta: 'He threw something . . . something glittering . . . a golden apple.'

- (ii) Daedalus interea Creten *longumque* perosus  
*exsilium* . . . (lines 477-478)

Here, the separation of *longum* ('long') and *exsilium* ('exile') seems to depict the length of Daedalus' exile.

(d) Sometimes words which are *not* grammatically related are placed side by side in what is called juxtaposition. If the two words have a similar meaning, their juxtaposition intensifies that meaning. If their meanings are opposite, their juxtaposition gives a sharp contrast.

- e. g. (i) . . . *saevae* *memorem* Iunonis ob iram  
 = 'cruel unforgetting  
 Juno's wrath' (line 4)

Here, the juxtaposition of *saevae* ('cruel') and *memorem* ('unforgetting') intensifies the idea of the goddess Juno's remorselessness in persecuting the hero Aeneas.

Notice that this juxtaposition is the result of the interlocking order in which the two adjectives and their nouns are placed.

- (ii) *Aridus e lasso* veniebat anhelitus ore  
 = 'Dry from tired lips came panting breath' (line 459)

Here, the juxtaposition of *aridus* ('dry') and *lasso* ('tired') intensifies the idea of Hippomenes' fatigue in the race.

Notice once again the interlocking word order which results in the juxtaposition.

- (iii) . . . '*Una duos*', inquit, '*nox perdet amantes*'.  
 = 'one night two lovers' (line 248)

Here, the juxtaposition of *Una* ('one') and *duos* ('two') produces a sharp contrast.

Notice the interlocking word order which results in the juxtaposition. Notice also the displacement of the verb *perdet* from the last position in the line to give that emphatic position to *amantes*.

- (iv) quo superiniecit textum rude sedula Baucis  
 = (a coarse coverlet (for the guests), but an attentive hostess' (line 291)

Here, the juxtaposition of *rude* and *sedula* contrasts the kindly attentiveness of the old woman Baucis with the humble nature of what she has to offer to her guests.

Notice that this juxtaposition is the result of the chiasmic arrangement ("chiasmus") of the nouns and adjectives. This arrangement derives its name from the Greek letter "Chi" (X):

textum ——— rude  
 sedula ——— Baucis

## II. The Dactylic Hexameter

### 1. The Dactyl and the Spondee

Most of the poetry contained in this book is written in dactylic hexameter lines. These lines contain six feet (rhythmic units), each of which is either a dactyl or a spondee. A dactyl has one long syllable followed by two short syllables (— ∪ ∪); a spondee has two long syllables (— —).



to pronounce the syllable. A short syllable is the equivalent of one musical beat, and a long syllable is the equivalent of two musical beats. Notice that either a dactyl (— ∪ ∪ or q q q) or a spondee (— — or q q) has the value of four musical beats.

The rhythm of a line of Latin poetry comes from its procession of long and short syllables, with the long syllables taking twice as much time to say as the short ones. And a syllable *does*, when pronounced properly, take twice as long to say

- (a) if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong

e.g. *ā* should take twice as long to say as *a*

*ī* should take twice as long to say as *i*

or

(b) if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, for these consonants retard the pronunciation. Such a syllable is regarded as long by position rather than by nature, and its short vowel is pronounced with its naturally short quantity.

#### 4. Oral Reading

(a) *Natural Word Stress Versus Poetic Stress*: In Latin poetry, words usually keep their normal prose accent, i.e. the second last syllable is stressed if it is long by nature or by position; otherwise, the third last syllable is stressed.

It may happen, however, usually in the first half of a line, that this normal stress does not blend with the 'shape' of the foot. Thus in

e.g. *ārmă vī|rūmqŭē cā|nŏ̄, Trŏ|iāē quī|pŕīmŭs āb|ŏrīs* (line 1)

the words *cano* and *Troiae* receive their natural stress on the second last syllable, whereas it is their last syllable that begins a foot. Therefore in pronouncing both *cano* and *Troiae* care should be taken to do no violence to the natural stress or to the poetic stress. This can be achieved by giving equal stress to the syllable requiring the natural accent and to the one requiring the poetic accent as beginning a metrical foot.

(b) *The Caesural Pause*: Good oral reading avoids the 'sing-song' effect that results when the reader is more preoccupied with the mechanical division of lines into feet than he is with the actual sense of the whole passage. We should pause only at natural sense pauses, rather than pause indiscriminately at the end of each foot or of each line. For example, there is between the words



*cano* and *Troiae* a natural sense pause (and breathing pause) called the *caesura* (from *caedo*, I cut). Observance of each line's caesural pause is of prime importance in reading a passage of Latin poetry according to sense. In most lines, a caesural pause occurs inside the third foot (as above), or else inside the fourth foot, and sometimes inside the second foot. It is not uncommon to find two caesural pauses inside a single line. It is part of the poet's artistry that the caesura occurs inside a foot (not at the end of a foot), so that the weave of the foot prevents the caesural pause from actually cutting the line into two short fragments; the line remains an artistic whole in spite of the pause at the caesura.

### 5. The Rules for Scansion

The actual oral reading of a line of Latin poetry is the only real proof that we understand its metre. The written scansion of lines is merely a means to the end of oral reading. Since, however, a knowledge of scansion is necessary for good oral reading, some of its mechanical details must be noted.

In the scanning of Latin poetry, it is necessary to understand

A. The length of syllables.

B. The system of dividing words into syllables.

C. The principles governing elision.

Rules for these points are given below. After the rules are quoted lines of poetry containing examples that are numbered to correspond to the rules themselves.

#### A. The Length of Syllables

1. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a vowel that is naturally long (i.e. marked long), or if it contains a diphthong. (See lines 1, 2, 3.)
2. A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel that is immediately followed by *x*, *z* or by two or more consonants. (See lines 1, 3.)
3. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel and is also short by position. (See line 1.)
4. An *h* (being a breathing, not a letter) is ignored in scansion and cannot assist in making a syllable long by position. (See lines 2, 3.) The combination *-qu* counts as one consonant.
5. If an *l* or an *r* is the second of two consonants, then the syllable preceding the two consonants may be treated as short instead of long if the metre requires. (See line 3.)

6. If an *l* or an *r* is the first of two consonants, then the preceding syllable is always long by position. (See lines 2, 3.)
7. Double consonants (including *ll* and *rr* as well as *x* (=ks) and *z* (=ds) always make the preceding syllable long by position. (See line 3.)

### B. The Division of Words into Syllables

1. The *u* in *qu* counts neither as a consonant nor as a vowel and therefore does not form a separate syllable. (*See lines 1, 2.*)
2. Semi-consonantal *i* (=y) is not a vowel and therefore does not form a separate syllable. (*See line 1.*)
3. A foot is introduced by a consonant wherever possible (*See lines 1, 2.*)
4. A foot may be introduced by more than one consonant if the combination is pronounceable. (*See lines 1, 3.*)
5. A foot is not introduced by more than one consonant if the combination is unpronounceable. Consequently double letters (e.g. *ss*) are always split. (*See lines 2, 3.*)
6. A consonant which is the last letter of a word is not separated from the word merely to begin a foot with a consonant. Such a word remains entire. (*See lines 1, 2.*)
7. The letters of a prefix are not split merely to begin a foot with a consonant. Such a prefix remains entire. (*See line 2.*)

[illegible]

1. Ārmā vīrūmquē cānō, Trōiāe quī prīmūs āb ōrīs

(line 1)

		B	B	B	B	B	B
		6	3	5	5	7	1
A	A						
1	4		A		A		A
			6		1	1	1

2. Sēdērāt | Hīppōmē|nēs cūr|sūs spēc|tātōr īn|iquī

(line 425)

		B 4		B 5					
A 7	A 5	A 1	A 6	A 1	A 6	A 4	A 2	A 1	

3. Cālīdā | pēr tēnēbrās, vēr sātō | cārdīnē, | Thīsbē

(line 233)

**C. The Principles Governing Elisions:**(from *elido*, 'I scratch out')

In any combination of	
A Word Ending in	Next Word Beginning with
1. any vowel or diphthong (See lines 4, 6, 7.)	a. any vowel or diphthong (See lines 4, 5, 7.)
2. any vowel + m (See lines 5, 7.)	b. h + any vowel or diphthong (See lines 6, 7.)
*Elide (scratch out) <i>this</i> syllable	Scan <i>this</i> syllable

4. C C  
1 a  
4. Cōrrīgīt, ātqu(e) Itē rūm iūvēnēm pōst tērgā rēlīnquīt  
(line 466)

The *i*- in *iuvenem* is semi-consonantal, hence there is no elision.

5. C C  
2 a  
5. Mīrā tūr mōl(em) Aenēās, māgālā quōndām  
(line 32)

6. C C  
1 b  
6. sūbmīs sōqu(e) (h) ūmīlēs īn trārūnt vērticē pōstēs  
(line 289)

7. C C C C  
2 b 1 a  
7. māgnānīm(um) (h)ērō ūm, pūēr (i) īnnūptaequē pūellāe  
(line 199)

\*Exception: it is the *e* in *est* that elides in combinations like *decorum (e)st*, *fabricata (e)st*.

# PART I

## Vergil's Aeneid

Vergil's country background gave him a deep love of nature, as he shows in his *Eclogues*, and a keen interest in farming, as is revealed in his *Georgics*. He is most famous, however, as a national poet, author of an epic poem called the *Aeneid*, in which he gave to the Roman race a divine origin, and a promise of peace and power under the leadership of Augustus.

His merit as a poet was soon recognized. His works were often read and recited for their beauty, and their patriotism. The people of the Middle Ages revered him as a prophet, because in his Fourth Eclogue he had prophesied the birth of a babe whose arrival would bring peace and prosperity to Rome. Later generations of Christians who read the poem thought that the child referred to was Christ. This so-called 'Messianic' Eclogue—the prophecy of the Messiah's birth—did much to keep Vergil's name alive during the Dark Ages.

His aim in writing the *Aeneid* was to arouse in the Romans national pride in their heroic traditions and to present Augustus as the champion of the national cause. The need of such faith was apparent after the chaotic years of civil war and moral degeneration which had culminated in the Battle of Actium, 31 B.C. This battle left Augustus with supreme control of affairs.

The *Aeneid* has for its subject the heroic deeds that led to the founding of Rome. The hero of the story and father of the Roman race is Aeneas, the son of the Trojan Anchises and of the goddess Venus. From his son, Iulus, the Julian family of Rome had descended. Thus Augustus, being a member of the Julian family, was the logical ruler of Rome.

The structure of the *Aeneid* is built upon the stories of Homer's great epics, the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, which Vergil



chose as his models. The *Iliad* is the story of the Trojan War, while the *Odyssey* tells of the wandering of Ulysses on his journey home after the war. Similarly, the first six books<sup>1</sup> of the *Aeneid* relate the wanderings of the Trojan Aeneas after the same war; and the last six books describe his wars in Italy, where his descendants were to found a new Troy—Rome.

While the plot of Vergil's story is complete, the poetry sometimes lacks the perfect polish which its author intended to give it had he lived three years longer. He had already spent ten years in writing it, but wanted three more before being satisfied to have the poem published. His method of writing was to jot down many lines while inspired and then to polish them at a daily rate of not more than ten lines. To test the appeal of his lines, he used to read them to his friends, whose reactions he would study. When he realized death would prevent completion of the poem, he ordered that it be burned rather than left in its unpolished state. Augustus, however, well aware of its flattering contents and of its poetic worth, prevented its destruction and had it published soon after Vergil's death in 19 B.C.

<sup>1</sup>A 'book' in the *Aeneid* is the equivalent of modern 'chapter'.



Pierin Del Vaga (1500-1547)

#### AUGUSTUS PREVENTS DESTRUCTION OF THE AENEID

Vergil's *Aeneid* was thereby enabled to survive and to win its place among the greatest literary masterpieces ever written.

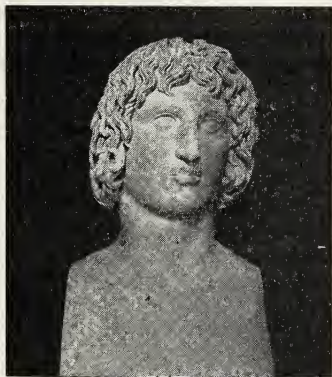
## Book One

## 1. The Theme of the 'Aeneid'

- 1 Arma virumque canō, Trōiae quī primus ab ōris  
 Italiam fātō profugus Lāvinaque vēnit  
 litora—multum ille et terris iactātus et altō  
 vī superūm, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob iram,

1 Arma virumque cano: an effective topic sentence, announcing the theme of the Aeneid. It is to be an epic dealing with *Arma*, war-adventures (like Homer's Iliad), *virum*, the hero (Aeneas), *Troiae*, his old home, *Italiam*, his new home, *fato*, the destiny of Rome (the 'Fatum Romanum') *profugus*, his wanderings (like Homer's Odyssey), *deos*, a religious theme, *Romae*, a national theme.

Troiae....oris: = *qui* (with antecedent *virum*) *primus ab oris* (from *ora*), *Troiae* (*Troiae* displacing *qui* in the emphatic first position, and with *oris* in the emphatic last position).



P. VERGILIUS MARO

2 Italiam: = *ad Italiam*. Prepositions are often omitted in poetry. So too, in 1. 3, *litora* = *ad litora*, *terris* = *in terris*, and *alto* = *in alto*.

2-3 Laviniaque litora: *Lavina* is an example of mythological allusion (see Introduction, I, 2a).

3 multum...alto: 'much (*multum*, adv.) buffeted he (*ille*, added for emphasis) both on land (*terris* = *in terris*, plural in reference to the many shores visited) and on the deep (*alto*, a noun, parallel to *terris*). A new English sentence might be begun here: 'Much buffeted was he ...'. Notice how the position of *iactatus* between *terris* and *alto* pictures the buffetings of Aeneas amidst land and sea.

4 superūm: -ūm is an older form than -orum for the gen. pl.; Vergil uses it frequently.

saevae...iram: = *ob memorem iram saevae Iunonis*. The prep. *ob* has been displaced by more emphatic words. Notice that the 'interlocking' word order (Introduction, I, 4d, t) produces the juxtaposition of *saevae* and *memorem*, to emphasize the idea of the goddess Juno's remorseless persecution of the hated Trojan Aeneas. Juno had a double reason for hating the Trojans: 1. a Trojan, Paris, had slighted her in awarding the golden apple to Venus as the most beautiful of the goddesses; 2. descendants of the Trojans were des-

- 5 multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem  
inferretque deōs Latīō—genus unde Latīnum  
Albānique patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.

(I, 1-7)

When the story opened, the hero Aeneas and his followers had just set sail from Sicily. They were still on the high seas, bound for Italy and blissfully unaware of an impending storm which was to stem from Juno's relentless hatred of the Trojans. For the goddess, observing the untroubled progress of the Trojan ships, asked Aeolus, the guardian of the winds, for a storm so violent as to destroy the fleet.

## 2. Juno Visits Aeolus, the God of the Winds

Hic vāstō rēx Aeolus antrō

luctantēs ventōs tempestātēque sonōrās

- 10 imperiō premit ac vinclis et carcere frēnat.

Illī indignantēs māgnō cum murmure montis

tined to destroy her favourite city, Carthage.

5 multa....passus: 'enduring (*passus*, perf. part. of *patior*) many hardships (*multa*, neut. pl. used as a noun) too (*quoque*) in war (*bello*, abl. of means) as well (*et* = *etiam*)'. A new English sentence might be begun here: 'He endured many hardships...'. Notice that *passus* is active, because it is from a dep. verb, whereas *iactatus* (l. 3.) is pass. because it is from a non-deponent. *dum conderet urbem*: 'until he should found a city'; the subj. *conderet* is used because the action is a purposed one, purposed by destiny, quite as much as by Aeneas. So too *inferret* in l. 6.

6 Latīo: dat. gov. by *in-* in the compound verb *inferret*; 'into Latium'. *genus unde Latīnum*: = *unde* (*fruit*) *genus Latīnum*; *genus* displaces *unde* in the emphatic first position. 'From him (*unde* = *a quo*, *ab Aenea*) came our Latin race.' The reference is to

Lavinium, the town in Latium founded by Aeneas.

7 Albani...patres: 'our Alban forefathers'; referring to the city of Alba Longa founded by Aeneas' son Ascanius (Iulus). Here the kingdom lasted 300 years. Then Romulus, the founder of Rome, was born. The name Alba Longa means 'Long Ridge'. *altae...Romae*: separated for emphasis, allowing the topic sentence to end on its keynote of 'lofty Rome'.

8 Hic: adv., in the isle of Aeolia. *vasto antro*: = *in vasto antro*; prepositions are often omitted in poetry.

10 vinclis et carcere: abl. of means; 'with prison-bonds', 'with dungeon-fetters'. This is an example of the literary figure called hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units); in this figure the *et* is explanatory; lit., 'in fetters, that is to say, in prison'.

11 Illi: change of subject; 'they', i.e. the winds. *magno cum murmure*



circum claustra fremunt; celsā sedet Aeolus arce  
scēptra tenēns mollitque animōs et temperat irās.

Ad quem tum Iūnō supplex hīs vōcibus ūsa est:

- 15 'Aeole, namque tibi dīvum pater atque hominum rēx  
et mulcere dedit fluctūs et tollere ventō,  
gēns inimica mihi Tyrrhēnum nāvigat aequor  
Ilium in Italiam portāns victōsque Penātēs:  
incute vim ventīs submersāsque obrue puppēs,

- 20 aut age diversōs et disice corpora pontō.' (I, 52 ff)

A terrible storm ensued, scattering the ships far and wide.

'Loud peals of thunder from the poles ensue;  
Then flashing fires the transient light renew;  
The face of things a frightful image bears,  
And present death in various forms appears.'<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>All verse translations quoted are from Dryden or Rhoades.

montis : cum = 'to the accompaniment of', 'to'; *montis* refers to the mountain which contains Aeolus' cave. Volcanic rumblings were sometimes explained by the ancients as caused by subterranean winds. Notice how the alliteration, and the imitative harmony (onomatopoeia) of *murmure*, copy the sound described.

12 *circum* : 'crowding around'. *celsa arce* : = *in celsa arce*, i.e. on the mountain peak, like some feudal baron in his fortress. Aeolus is a much more informal monarch in Homer's *Odyssey*. In this story he speeds Odysseus (Ulysses) on his way by releasing the west wind, and casually presents him with the rest of the winds confined in a bag.

13 *sceptra* : a poetic pl., often used for metrical convenience; here, for instance, the sing. *sceptrum* would not scan. Tr. by the sing. *animos* : 'their feelings'; *iras* is poetic pl.

14 *Ad quem* : a co-ord. rel.; 'to him'. Here, *ad* plus acc. ('in the direction

of') is almost equivalent to a dat. of ind.obj. *usa est* : 'uttered'.

15 *namque* : '(I appeal to you), for . . .' introducing the reason for her appeal. *dīvum* : = *divorum* = *deorum*; Jupiter is meant in *divum pater* and *hominum rex*. Note the scansion of *tibi*, and also of *mihi* l. 17.

16 *et mulcere . . . vento* : = *dedit* ('has given the power') *et* ('both') *mulcere fluctus* (acc. plur.) *et tollere* (*fluctus*) *vento*.

18 *victosque Penates* : the second dir. obj. of *portans*. Juno's anger and scorn flare up in the taunt *victos*. The *Penates* are really "household gods", but are often referred to, as here, in a more national sense.

19 *incute vim ventis* : 'rouse the winds to fury'; lit. 'strike violence into the winds' (*ventis*, dat. gov. by *in-* in the compound verb *incute*). The alliteration accentuates the earnestness of Juno's words. *submersas . . . obrue* : = *obruet et submerget*. Notice that here the perf. part. gives the result of *obruet*, instead of giving



## 3. The Storm

Haec ubi dicta, cavum conversâ cuspide montem  
impulit in latus: ac ventî velut âgmine factô,  
quâ data porta, ruunt et terrâs turbine perflant.  
Incubuere mari tötumque â sêdibus imîs

- 25 ünâ Eurusque Notusque ruunt crêberque procellis  
Africus et vâstôs volvunt ad litora fluctûs:  
Insequitur clâmorque virûm strîdorque rudentum.  
Eripiunt subitô nûbês caelumque diemque

an action that takes place before it.

20 *diversos* : sc. *viros*, the crews as contrasted with the ships. *disice* : scan the first *i* long (*-ice* = *iace*). *ponto* : = *in ponto*, 'over the deep'.

21 *Haec ubi dicta* := *Ubi haec* (neut. pl. nom.) *dicta sunt*; *Haec* ('this') displace the conj. because it acts as a connective, referring to *Aeolus*' assent to *Juno*'s request. *conversa cuspide* : abl. abs.; tr. as a main verb parallel to *impulit*. The *cuspidis* is perhaps the same as *sceptra*, line 13. Note how the hard "c" sounds of this line imitate the sound of the spear-butt upon the rock.

22 *in latus* : 'upon the side'; acc. because involving motion. *velut agmine facto* : abl. abs.; 'as if formed up in a column', 'formed a column, as it were'.

23 *qua data porta* := *qua* (adv.) *porta data est*, a sub. cl. mod. *ruunt*; freely, 'through the opening provided'. In an enchanted isle such as *Aeolia*, we must not question how the opening is produced, but at any rate the *claustra* (l. 12) have been thrown open. *ruunt* : intr., 'rushed forth'; in l. 25 below it is tr., 'up-turned'. Notice the vivid hist. pres.

24 *Incubuere* := *Incubuerunt*, from *incumbo* (not from *incubo*, which occurs below, l. 29) Note how the speed of the winds' descent is stressed by

(1) the change to the perf. tense after the preceding pres. tenses (2) the emphatic position of the verb; so too *insequitur* (l. 27), *Eripiunt* (l. 28), *Intonuer* (l. 30.) *mari* : dat. gov. by *In-* in the compound verb *Incubuere*.

24-26 *totumque* . . . *Africus* := *et totum mare* (dir. obj.) *a sedibus imis* ('from its nethermost depths') *una* (adv., 'all together', introducing the three winds which are the subjects) *Eurusque* (*-que*, 'both', may be ignored) *Notusque Africusque creber procellis* ('with its frequent squalls', lit., 'frequent in respect to squalls'). The English may sound more natural in pass. form. Notice the singling out of three specific winds (by vivid particularization) instead of a vague mention of winds in general (*Introduction*, I, 3)

26 *vastos* . . . *fluctus* : the separation of these words helps us picture the size of the waves, and also makes possible the alliteration in *vastos volvunt*.

27 *virum* : = *virorum*, 'the crews'. Notice how in this line (1) the emphatic position of *insequitur* imitates the swiftness of the havoc (2) the harsh sound of the winds is imitated in *clamor* and *stridor*, as well as by the other 'r' sounds.

28 *caelumque diemque* := *et* ('both')

Teucrōrum ex oculis; pontō nox incubat ātra.

- 30 Intonuēre poli et crēbris micat ignibus aethēr  
praesentemque virīs intentant omnia mortem.

(I, 81-91)

Neptune, ruler of the sea, intervened, calming the waters so that Aeneas and his remaining ships could land safely on the Libyan coast of Africa.

When they were once again on shore, their minds turned naturally to food. Tired of soggy grain, their sole provision while at sea, Aeneas eagerly scanned the countryside for possible game. Luck was with him, for he saw a herd of grazing deer, several of which fell prey to his hungry arrows. The tasty venison revived the sagging strength of his men.

Aeneas and his friend Achates then explored the countryside, and met Venus who was disguised as a huntress. To their questions she replied:

'The rising city, which from far you see  
Is Carthage, and a Tyrian colony.  
Phoenician Dido rules the growing state,  
Who fled from Tyre to shun her brother's hate.'

As she turned to leave them, Aeneas recognized his mother, and called to her:

'But Venus with a dark haze hedged them in  
As on they strode, and a thick mantling mist  
Miraculous shed over them.'

They pushed on their way, and entered Carthage.

*caelum et diem* ('the light of day', 'the sun').

29 *Teucrōrum*: depends on *oculis*; notice the mythological allusion instead of a direct naming (*Introduction* I, 2). *ponto*: dat. gov. by *in-* in the compound verb *incubat*, which is displaced to give *ātra* the emphatic last position.

30 *Intonuere poli*: lit. 'the (north and south) poles thundered'; freely, 'the

heavens thundered from pole to pole'. *crebris . . . ignibus*: abl. of means. Flashes of lightning are meant, of course.

31 *praesentem . . . mortem*: = *omnia* (neut. pl. nom., 'all nature') *virīs* (dat. of int.) *praesentem mortem* (separated so as to command emphatic positions) *intentant*. English idiom requires 'threatened the crews with'.

#### 4. The Carthaginians and Dido Their Queen

Mirātur mōlem Aenēās, māgālia quondam,  
mīrātur portās strepitumque et strāta viārum.

Instant ārdentēs Tyriī: pars dūcere mūrōs

- 35 mōlīrīque arcem et manibus subvolvere sāxa,  
pars aptāre locum tēctō et conclūdere sulcō;  
iūra magistrātūque legunt sānctumque senātum.

Hīc portūs aliī effodiunt; hīc alta theātri

fundāmenta locant aliī, immānēsque columnās

- 40 rūpibus excīdunt, scaenīs decora alta futūrīs.

32 *Miratur* : Aeneas' astonishment is emphasized by (1) the emphatic position of the verb here and (by repetition) in the next line (*Introduction*, I, 4, a) (2) the use of the vivid hist. pres. instead of a past tense (3) the alliteration in *Miratur molem* (4) the four slow spondees with which the line opens. *molem* : 'massive structures'; this word is deliberately chosen here by Vergil, because of its implications of great mass, great weight, and great effort. He repeats the same idea of great effort when he uses the infin. *moliri* in l. 35. *magalia* : in app. to *molem*; 'once (the site of) huts', 'where once had been huts'.

33 *strata viarum* : a poetic variation of *stratas vias*, 'paved streets'; lit., 'pavements of streets'. This is an example of Vergil's fondness for transforming a commonplace prose phrase (e.g. *stratas vias*) into a poetic variation which, while bearing the meaning of the original prose, has the beauty of poetic diction. For another example, see *sorte trahebat* in l. 48.

34 *pars ducere* : 'some were building'; *ducere* is an hist. infin., that is, an infin. used vividly for an imperf. ind. Since such an infin. is really a verb, its subject (*pars*) is nom., not acc. The other infinitives, (lines 35-

36) are all hist. *Duco* is used of building long things, like walls and trenches.

36 *locum tecto* : 'a site for a dwelling', 'sites for dwellings'; *locum* is the dir. obj. of *concludere* as well as of *aptare*; *tecto* is dat. of purp. *sulco* : abl. of means; the furrow marked the boundary of the property, and also paid tribute to the goddess Demeter (Mother Earth) and to Ceres, the Goddess of Agriculture.

37 *iura* : 'principles of law'; see the note on *iura* . . . *legesque*, line 47. The details given in this line and the following ones are not to be applied too literally to Carthage itself; it is of Rome that Vergil is really thinking. The point, however, is that here in the rising city of Carthage Aeneas sees a way of life worthy of the one which he himself hopes to observe on new soil.

38 *Hic . . . hic* : adverbs; indicating two different spots, just as *alii* and *alii* (lines 38-39) denote two different groups of Carthaginians. *portus* : acc. plur.; Carthage had two artificial harbours, one for merchant ships, one for the navy.

38-39 *alta . . . locant* : 'are laying deep'.

40 *rupibus* : = *e rupibus*, another example of the omission of prepositions

'O fortunātī, quōrum iam moenia surgunt,'  
Aenēās ait et fastīgia suspicit urbis.  
Rēgīna ad templum, fōrmā pulcherrima Dīdō,  
incessit māgnā iuvenum stīpante catervā.

- 45 Tum foribus dīvae, mediā testūdine templī,  
saepa armīs soliōque altē subnīxa resēdit.  
Iūra dabat lēgēsque virīs, operumque labōrem  
partibus aequābat iūstīs aut sorte trahēbat.

(I, 421 ff)

Aeneas and Achates, still enveloped in a cloud, made their way to the court of Queen Dido. There to their surprise they found their comrades, whom they had given up for lost in the storm, asking for help. The queen was about to send scouts in search of Aeneas

in Latin poetry. So also, in 1. 45, *foribus* = *in foribus*, and *testudine* = *sub testudine*. *excidunt*: the scansion will show that it is from *excīdo* (not from *excido*). *scaenis* . . . *futuris*: *decora* (from *decus*) is in app. to *columnas*; *scaenis* is dat. of purp.; 'for stages that were to be'.

41 *fortunati*: 'fortunate people'; Aeneas wishes that he too were already building his destined city. Vergil is setting the stage for Aeneas' later decision to remain in Carthage. 43 *Regina* . . . *Dido*: the scansion will show that *pulcherrima* is nom. mod. *Regina*, and that *forma* is abl. (of resp.); 'most lovely in beauty', freely, 'of exquisite beauty'. Notice that *Regina* and *Dido* are given the emphatic positions in the line. Dido's queenliness is further emphasized by the verb *incessit*, which is often used to describe the stately movement of a goddess. This portrayal of Dido as every inch a queen helps to explain and justify Aeneas' later decision to remain in Carthage.

44 *magna* . . . *caterva*: abl. abs.

45 *foribus* . . . *templi*: 'at the entrance (*foribus* = *in foribus*) of the goddess' (*dīvae*) inner shrine (sc. a

word like *cellae*, a chapel in the middle of the temple) beneath (sc. *sub*) the temple's central (*media* abl., as the scansion will show) dome'.

46 *armis*: those of her courtiers. *solio alte subnixa*: 'enthroned on high'; lit., 'resting upon her throne'; *solio* is dat. gov. by *sub-* in the compound *subnixa*.

47 *Iura* . . . *legesque*: perhaps 'principles of law, statutes'. Notice that *iura* are legal principles involving obligations and rights, and are not necessarily written, whereas *leges* are specific (written) enactments. *operum* . . . *laborem*: 'the burden (*laborem*) of their tasks (*operum*)'; notice the diff. of meaning in *opus* (the task, the job) and *labor* (the toil). Dido is determined not to be accused of showing favouritism.

48 *partibus aequabat iustis*: the juxtaposition of *aequabat* and *iustis* stresses the fairness of the queen's dealings; 'she divided equally in fair shares'. *sorte trahebat*: this is Vergil's poetic variation for *sortem trahebat*; 'drew lots for it'; *laborem* is the dir. obj. of *trahebat* as well as of *aequabat*. See note on *strata viarum*, l. 33.



'When suddenly the cloud that wrapped them round gave way.  
The mists flew upward and dissolved in day . . .  
The Trojan chief appeared in open sight,  
August in visage, and serenely bright.  
Thus radiant from the circling cloud he broke,  
And thus with manly modesty he spoke:  
"He whom you seek, am I; by tempests tossed,  
And saved from shipwreck on your Libyan coast."'

Dido gave him a hero's welcome, and ordered a feast to be spread before them in the temple.

Aeneas sent Achates to the ships to bring back his young son Ascanius (Iulus), with gifts for Dido. But his mother, Venus, concealed Ascanius, and instructed Cupid to impersonate him at Dido's court. Cupid obediently accompanied Achates to the temple, and was received as Ascanius. Aeneas greeted him warmly with a father's love, and then with pride presented him to Dido. As she gave him a fond embrace, he, being Cupid, aroused within her a love for Aeneas.

The feast being then ready, they regaled themselves with food and wine, while a bard entertained them in song with the heroic deeds of the past. At Dido's insistence, Aeneas consented to tell the story of his wanderings.

## Book Two

"As you well know, fair Dido, the Greeks tried in vain for nine long years to capture Troy. At last when they could not succeed by manly warfare, they deceitfully

'And by Minerva's aid a fabric reared,  
Which like a steed of monstrous height appeared;  
The sides were planked with pine; they feigned it made  
For their return, and this the vow they paid.'

Within its hollow sides they hid chosen warriors, and then set sail, supposedly for home. In reality they hid behind the nearby island of Tenedos, having left the horse just outside the walls of our beloved Troy.

We Trojans were perplexed about the purpose of the horse. Priest Laocoön warned us to beware of treachery, and hurled his spear at the horse,

## 5. Laocoön Warns the Trojans to Beware

Primus ibi ante omnēs māgnā comitante catervā

- 50 Lāocoön ārdēns summā dēcurrit ab arce,  
et procul: 'O miserī, quae tanta īnsānia, cīvēs?  
Crēditis āvectōs hostēs? Aut ūlla putātis  
dōna carēre dolīs Danaūm? Sic nōtus Ulixēs?  
Aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī,  
55 aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs,

49 Primus ibi ante omnes: 'taking the initiative (*Primus*) at this crucial moment (*ibi*, temporal) before them all'. Laocoön, a priest of the god Apollo, had stayed on the high citadel to scan the sea for signs of the Greeks, whom he suspected. He was one of the sons of King Priam, and a brother of Hector and of Paris. *magna comitante caterva*: abl. abs.; freely, 'accompanied by a large throng'.

50 *ardens*: 'in hot haste'. *summa decurrit ab arce*: the separation of *summa* and *arce* results in emphasis, with *arce* displacing the verb in the emphatic last position. Other verbs in this selection displaced by emphasized words are *occultantur* (l. 54), *fabricata est* (l. 55), and *latet* (l. 57).

51 *et procul*: sc. *clamat*. *O miserī . . . cives*: *miserī* and *cives* are separated for emphasis. The result is almost that of two appeals to his 'unhappy countrymen'. *quae tanta insania*: sc. *est*. Forms of *sum* are frequently omitted in poetry. 'What means such great folly?' 'What foolish madness is this?'

52 *Creditis avectos*: = *Creditisne avectos esse*. Even in prose, *-ne* is often omitted, especially if the speaker is impatient or indignant. So too in the two questions that follow.

52-53 *ulla, dona, Danaum*: all three

words have an emphatic position, with additional emphasis from their separation; 'any gifts of the Greeks'. Notice the further emphasis from the alliteration in *dona, dolis, Danaum*, and from the juxtaposition of *dolis* (trickery) and *Danaum* (Greeks). *Danaum* (-ūm = -ōrum) is an example of naming by mythological allusion. Other examples are *Achivī* (l. 54) and *Teucrī* (l. 57). 53 *Sic notus Ulixes*: 'Is it (sc. *est*) this way (*Sic* mod. *est*, not *notus*) Ulysses is known to you?' Ulysses, 'wily Ulysses', was the embodiment of Greek cunning, and it was he who had directed the building of the horse.

54-57 *Aut hoc . . . aut haec . . . aut* error: Laocoön makes three guesses as to the purpose of the horse, 'either . . . , or else . . . , or else . . . '. Notice the grimness of the repetition. *hoc inclusi ligno*: the arrangement of these three words heightens the contempt which they express; the Greeks are actually pictured as 'enclosed by this wooden thing'.

55 *in*: 'against', 'for use against'; *in*, like *ad*, often expresses purp., especially hostile purp.

*machina muros*: juxtaposition for contrast (the Greek monster and the Trojan walls side by side). The alliteration adds extra emphasis.



Giulio Romano (1492-1546)

## DEATH OF LAOCOON AND HIS TWO SONS

inspectūra domōs ventūraque dēsūper urbī,  
aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite, Teucrī.  
Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs.'

(II, 40-49)

A Greek captive, Sinon, pretending to betray his native Greece, urged us to win victory by dragging the horse inside the walls so as to violate the Greek offering to Minerva.

Suddenly we saw two monstrous sea-snakes make for Laocoön and his two sons,

'And first around the tender boys they wind,  
Then their sharpened fangs their limbs and bodies grind.  
The wretched father, running to their aid  
With pious haste, but vain, they next invade;  
Twice round his waist their winding volumes rolled  
And twice about his gasping throat they fold.'

We interpreted the tragic death of Laocoön and his sons as punishment for having struck the horse, and so we believed that the

56 inspectura, ventura : fut. participles expressing purp. The dat. *urbī* would in prose be *in urbem* ('upon the city').

57 ne credite : would be *nolite credere* in prose.

58 et == *etiam*, adv. (not conj.). Laocoön's words "*timeo Danaos et dona ferentes*" have become a well-known quotation synonymous with suspicion of friendly overtures.

Greek Sinon spoke truthfully. Heeding his advice we broke down a portion of the city walls, set wheels under the horse, and dragged it inside. When we Trojans were deep in slumber after our rejoicing, Sinon opened wide the cavern in the horse's side. The concealed Greeks slid down the cable, slew our guards, and opened the gates for the Greek army, which had returned after nightfall.

## 6. The Greeks Return

Et iam Argīva phalanx instrūctīs nāvibus ibat

- 60 ā Tenedō, tacitae per amīca silentia lūnae  
litora nōta petēns, flammās cum rēgia puppis  
extulerat, fātisque deūm dēfēnsus inīquīs  
inlūsōs uterō Danaōs et pīnea fūrtim  
laxat claustra Sinōn. Illōs patefactus ad aurās  
65 reddit equus, laetique cavō sē rōbore prōmunt.

59 *instructis navibus*: abl. abs.; 'with ships arrayed', 'with its array of ships'.

60 a *Tenedo*: the prep. would normally be omitted in prose with the name of the small island. This nearby island had hidden the Greek fleet from view. *tacitae...lunae*: = *per amica silentia* (poetic pl.) *tacitae lunae* (separated to emphasize the peacefulness of the moonlit scene).

61-62 *flammas...extulerat*: 'after (*cum*, displaced to give emphasis to *flammas*) the royal flagship (*regia puppis*, belonging to Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, the commander of the Greeks) had raised aloft (*extulerat*, indic. sometimes gov. by *cum*-temporal referring to the past) the fire-signal (*flammas*, poetic pl., a "torch", "beacon flare").' The fire-signal served two purposes; it signalled the fleet to set sail for Troy, and signalled Sinon to release the Greeks from the horse.

62 *fatisque . . . iniquis*: 'protected by the unfair (*iniquis*, unfair to us Trojans) decrees (*fatis*) of the gods (*deum*, an older form than *deorum*).'

Notice how the sep. of *fatis* and *iniquis* (1) allots the emphatic first and last positions in the group to these words (2) depicts Sinon as 'protected' (*defensus*) because surrounded by the 'unfair decrees' (*fatis iniquis*). 63 *utero*: = *in utero*. *pineae*: mod. *claustra*, l. 64. It is an example of vivid particularization (*Introduction*, I, 3). Vergil's choice of 'pine' has no significance in itself; in l. 65, he singles out 'oak' (*robore*).

64 *laxat*: a main verb, parallel to *ibat* in l. 59, and a vivid hist. pres.; 'loosed (=freed) the Greeks . . . and loosed (=unfastened) the bars . . .'. This use of a verb in two different senses is called *zeugma*.

Notice that in this line and in the rest of the passage verbs listing the actions of the Greeks come like hammer blows at the beginning of the lines (*laxat, reddit, Invadunt, caeduntur, accipiunt*), with two others at the end of lines (*promunt, iungunt*). *ad auras*: instead of a dat. of ind. obj., perhaps because of the motion involved; 'to the light'.

65 *cavo . . . robore*: = *e cavo robore*.



Invādunt urbem somnō vinōque sepultam;  
caeduntur vigilēs, portisque patentibus omnēs  
accipiunt sociōs atque āgmina cōnschia iungunt.

(II, 254 ff)

Blissfully ignorant of this, I was beginning to enjoy sweet slumber

'When Hector's ghost before my sight appears:

This warning gives mid mournful words and tears:

"O goddess-born! escape by timely flight

The flames and horrors of this fatal night.

Now Troy to thee commends her future state

And gives her gods companions of thy fate."

### 7. Hector's Spirit Warns Aeneas

Tempus erat quō prīma quiēs mortālibus aegris

70 incipit et dōnō divūm grātissima serpit.

In somnīs, ecce, ante oculōs maestissimus Hector  
visus adesse mihi largōsque effundere flētūs.

Hēi mihi, quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō

Hectore quī redit exuviās indūtus Achillī,

66 somno vinoque sepultam: 'buried in tipsy (drunken) slumber', the result of the evening's celebration. This is an example of hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units'). In hendiadys, the *-que* adds an explanation; lit., 'in slumber, that is to say, in wine'.

67 portis . . . patentibus: abl. of means; 'through the open gates', opened by Sinon and by the men released from the horse.

68 agmina conscia: 'their confederate bands', the one released from the horse, and the one from the fleet.

69 quo: abl. of time when; 'at which', 'when'. mortalibus aegris: 'for weary mankind'; the sadness of man's life is a thought often present in Vergil's poetry. In this passage there is also a second reason for sadness: the Trojans are to be betrayed at the very moment when they are enjoying peaceful rest after so many years of war.

70 dono divūm: 'by Heaven's grace'; lit., 'by the gift of the gods (*divūm* = *divorum* = *deorum*)'. The soft 's' sounds of lines 69 and 70 imitate the approach of sleep (imitative harmony, or onomatopoeia). *gratissima*: 'with fullest charm'; notice the contrast with *maestissimus*, ('in deepest grief'), line 71.

72 visus adesse mihi: 'seemed (*visus est*) to be at my side (lit., 'to be present for me')'. Scan as *mihi*; so too *tibi*, l. 87.

73 Hei mihi: 'Woe is me!' Notice that here the English 'me', as well as the Latin *mihi*, is a dat. of int.; we must not say 'woe is I!'; *Hei* is monosyllabic. *qualis*: 'what a sight', 'what a piteous sight'. *quantum*: adv.

74 redit: hist. pres., for the moment is still vivid in Aeneas' memory; tr. by a past tense. *exuvias indutus Achilli*: 'clad in (*indutus*, used with

- 75 *squālentem barbam et concrētōs sanguine crīnēs*  
*vulneraque illa gerēns, quae circum plūrima mūrōs*  
*accēpit patriōs. Ultrō flēns ipse vidēbar*  
*compellāre virum et maestās exprōmere vōcēs:*  
 'O lūx Dardaniae, spēs O fidissima Teucrūm,
- 80 *quae tantae tenuēre morae? Quibus Hector ab ōris*  
*exspectāte venis?*

Aut cūr haec vulnera cernō?

Ille nihil, nec mē quaerentem vāna morātur,  
 sed graviter gemitūs imō dē pectore dūcēns,

- 85 'heu fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs', aīt, 'ēripe flammīs.

an act. force, lit., 'having put on himself') the armour of Achilles. (*Achilli*, gen., = *Achillis*). Hector had slain Achilles' dearest friend, Patroclus, who was wearing the armour of Achilles. Achilles, the greatest warrior of the Greeks, had quarreled with the commander Agamemnon and had refused to fight any longer. His rage against Hector over Patroclus' death resulted in his going once more into combat. On slaying Hector he dragged his body three times around the walls of Troy behind his chariot.

75-76 *squalentem barbam* . . . *gerens*: goes back in construction to *qualis erat*; 'he had an unkempt beard'.

76 *plurima*: 'in great number', 'so plentifully'; the reference is to the wounds his body received while being dragged around the walls of Troy.

77 *patrios*: separated from *muros* for emphasis; 'around the walls — his country's walls'.

77-78 *Ultrō* . . . *virum*: 'In tears myself (*ipse*, i.e. as well as Hector, line 72), I seemed to address (*compellare*, conj. 1, to be distinguished from *compellere*, conj. 3A) the hero first (*Ultrō*, taking the initiative)'.

79 *Dardaniae* := *Troiae*, by mytho-

logical allusion; its use here is very effective, for it brings to mind the great age and storied past of the city. *spes o fidissima*: *o* would normally precede *spes*; it need not be translated; *fidissima*, 'surest'.

*Teucrum* := *Teucrorum*.

80 *quae* . . . *venis* := *quae tantae* ('long') *morae tenuere* (sc. *te*)?

80-81 *Quibus ab oris*, Hector (voc.) *exspectate* (voc., 'long looked for') *venis*? As he dreams, Aeneas forgets that Hector is dead, and thinks he is returning from a long journey.

82 *cur* . . . *cerno*: 'why is it that I see these wounds?'.

83 *Ille* . . . *moratur* := *Ille* ('He', change of subject) *nihil* (sc. *respondit*, omitted to accentuate the urgency and need for haste) *nec moratur* (used transitively, 'and paid no heed to', 'and disregarded') *vana quaerentem* ('my idle questions', lit., 'me asking idle things'; *vana* is neut. acc. plur. used as a noun).

84 *sed* . . . *ducens*: 'instead (*sed*), he heaved (*ducens*, 'drawing out', expressing effort) a heavy (*graviter*, lit., 'heavily') sigh from deep down in (*imo*) his breast'. Notice the alliteration in *graviter gemitus*, and the imitative harmony (onomatopoeia).

85 *nate dea*: 'although you are the

Hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Trōia.  
 Sacra suōsque tibi commendat Trōia Penātēs;  
 hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere.'

(II, 268 ff)

I at once arose and rushed forth to the fray. My comrades and I fought valiantly, making our way to King Priam's palace through scenes of woe and death. Only three of us reached the palace. There we witnessed the shameful murder of our aged king Priam by Pyrrhus, son of the Greek Achilles.

Suddenly my mother Venus appeared to me, telling me that the immortal gods were responsible for the fall of Troy, and bidding me rescue my own helpless father and family. I rushed home and took my father upon my back, reassuring him with the words:

"These shoulders, see!  
 Shall bear thee up, nor feel that task a toil.  
 And since my hands are stained with recent slaughter,  
 Hold you, my father, in your guiltless hands,  
 Our country's gods, the relics, and the bands."

I took little Iulus by the hand, and set out with my wife Creusa following us.

'By choice we stray  
 Through every dark and every devious way.  
 I at every shadow now am seized with fear  
 Not for myself, but for the charge I bear.'

### 8. The Flight

Succēdōque onerī; dextrae sē parvus Iūlus

son of a goddess'; lit., 'you who are born (*nate*, voc.) from a goddess (*deā*, abl. without *ab*)'. Aeneas was the son of the goddess Venus.

86 ruit : 'is toppling'.

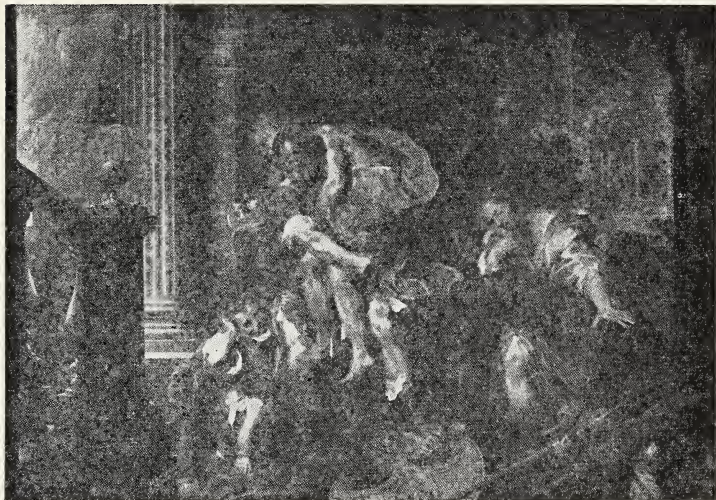
87 Sacra : 'her sacred things', referring particularly to the eternal fire of the goddess of the hearth, Vesta, and to her garlands or fillets. suos Penates : 'her own dear gods', 'her beloved gods'; *Penates*, strictly household gods', are referred to here in a more national sense.

88 *fatorum comites* : 'to share your

destiny'; lit., 'as the companions (*comites*, accus. in app. to *hos*) of your fate (*fatorum*, poetic pl.)'. *moenia* : 'a city'; although Lavinium was the city founded by Aeneas, Hector's words look ahead still farther to the founding of Rome by Aeneas' descendant Romulus. This is the first time Aeneas is told that he is to have the responsibility that attaches to a man of destiny.

89 *oneri*: dat. gov. by *sub-* in the compound verb *succedo*; compound verbs frequently govern a dative.





Frederico Baroccio (1526-1612)

## AENEAS ESCAPES FROM TROY

With him are his wife Creusa, his son Iulus, and his father Anchises.

- 90 implicuit sequiturque patrem nōn pāssibus aequīs;  
pōne subit coniūnx. Ferimur per opāca locōrum,  
et mē, quem dūdum nōn ūlla iniecta movēbant  
tēla neque adversō glomerātī ex āgmine Grāi,

89-90 *dextrae se . . . implicuit*: 'clung to my hand'; lit., 'entwined himself to'.

90 *non passibus aequis*: 'with steps that did not match (keep pace with) mine'; or, possibly, 'with stumbling steps'. Note the harmony of sound and sense in this line.

91 *pone*: adv.; do not confuse with *pono*. The words *pone subit coniunx* forbode the tragedy that is to follow, for Creusa is later lost. *Ferimur per opaca locorum*: 'we hurried along (*fero* in the pass. often means 'travel', lit., 'to be carried along') through the dark places (*per opaca*

*locorum* = *per opaca loca*)'; the refugees avoided spots that were illuminated by the flames of the burning city.

92 *me quem*: *me* is dir. obj. of *terrent*, *quem* of *movebant*. In translating, make them both subjects of pass. verbs; 'I, who a little while ago was not frightened by . . . , was now alarmed by . . .'. This gives a more natural English, and preserves the emphatic position of the pronoun *me* ('as for me').

93 *adverso glomerati ex agmine Grai*: 'Greeks massed in (*ex*, 'coming from') an opposing line'.

94 *omnes, omnis*: note the skilful



nunc omnēs terrent aurae, sonus excitat omnis  
 95 suspēsum et pariter comitīque onerīque timentem.

(II, 723-729)

Ah woe is me! How sorrowful I was when upon reaching safety, I found Creusa was not with us. I went back to find her, but alas! her spirit appeared to me and bade me not to mourn over her death but to seek a western land, where a kingdom and a royal bride awaited me. With heavy heart I joined the vast throng of Trojan refugees who were massed for exile.

## Book Three

With all available ships we set sail, leaving forever our beloved Troy, now in flames. We stopped first on the Thracian coast and then sailed south to the island of Delos in the Aegean Sea. Next we landed at Crete, where we began to build a city, thinking this to be our destined home. But we were wrong, for lo! one dark, still night, when I was wrapped in slumber, I beheld in a vision our household gods. They revealed to me that Crete was not to be our home. Disappointed, but ever obedient to the gods, we left Crete, again sailing for an unknown goal. A storm drove us blindly for three days to the Strophades Islands in the Ionian Sea, where to our horror, the Harpies, dreadful bird-like creatures with faces of women, pale with insatiable hunger, attacked us.

After a narrow escape we again embarked and sailed northward to Epirus in northern Greece. Here Helenus, one of Priam's sons, warned us to skirt the western coast of Sicily, rather than attempt the Strait of Messina between Sicily and Italy, because this strait was guarded on either side by Scylla and Charybdis. Scylla, as you know, dear Dido, is a six-headed monster that devours sailors, and Charybdis, the spirit of a whirlpool, thrice daily swallows and coughs up the waters of the sea.

emphasis on the idea of 'every' from:  
 (1) repetition of *omnes*, *omnis*, but with the variation of pl. and sing.  
 (2) separation of *omnes* from *aurae*, and of *omnis* from *sonus*, resulting in a chiasmic word order. (*Introduction*, 4, iv, E).

95 *suspensum*, *timentem*: mod. *me*; 'distracted as I was, and afraid

for...'. *comitique onerique* := *et* ('both') *comiti et oneri* (dat. of int.); Iulus and Anchises are meant, of course. Notice here the picture of Aeneas the tender father and the loving son, and how these touches of human love stand out against the background of ruin and slaughter.

Mindful of the advice of Helenus we sailed westward from Epirus. One morning the sun was just rising  
 'When we from far, like bluish mists, descry  
 The hills, and then the plains of Italy.  
 Achates first pronounced the joyful sound;  
 Then "Italy!" the cheerful crew rebound.'

### 9. Italy, the Promised Land, Is Sighted But Not Possessed

Iamque rubescēbat stellis Aurōra fugātis,  
 cum procul obscurōs collēs humilemque vidēmus  
 Italiam. Italiam prīmus conclāmat Achātēs,  
 Italiam laetō socii clāmōre salūtant.

- 100 Tum pater Anchīsēs māgnū crātēra corōnā  
 induit implēvitque merō, divōsque vocāvit  
 stāns celsā in puppī:  
 'Dī maris et terrae tempestātumque potentēs,  
 ferte viam ventō facilem et spīrāte secūdi.'

(III, 521-529)

My heart swelled with paternal pride, as I beheld the enthusiasm of young Iulus when he saw the land he would one day govern.

Knowing our destination to be the western coast of Italy, we made but a brief stop on the east coast, and then set out to sail around Sicily. As luck would have it, the sea calmed, and we were forced to go ashore in the Land of the Cyclopes. Here we

96 stellis fugatis : abl. abs. Notice the picturesque placing of Aurora in the midst of the scattering stars.  
 97 obscuros : 'dim', because of mist and distance. humilem : 'lying low on the horizon'; *Italiam* is given a dramatic emphasis by its place in the next line, and by its repetition. videmus : hist. pres., used here in a sub. cl. Notice that *videmus* is indic. because, in importance, it is really the main verb.

100 cratera : a Greek acc.; dir. obj. of *induit* and of *implevit*. corona : abl. of means, with *induit*; 'wreathed with a garland', a practice at Roman feasts. Some scholars think, however, that Vergil has misunderstood an

expression in Homer's Greek that really means 'filled brim-full'.

102 stans celsa in puppi : one of the few lines left uncompleted by Vergil's death.

103 Di . . . potentes : = *Dei potentes* ('who are rulers of', gov. obj. gen.) *maris et terrae et tempestatum*.

104 ferte . . . secundi : 'grant (*ferre*, lit. bring) an easy passage before the wind (*vento*, abl. of means), and blow (*spirare*, lit. breathe) auspiciously (*secundi*, referring to a favourable tail-wind).' Notice how the multiple alliteration (*f, v, s*) adds to the earnestness of the prayer.

spent a wakeful night, terrified by the mountainous thundering. At dawn the kindly light calmed our frightened minds as we beheld the source of the rumbling—Mt. Aetna. But suddenly we madly cut the cables and rowed for dear life. Our sudden panic was due to the approach of the giant Polyphemus, the Cyclops whose one eye Ulysses had put out.

‘He gnashed his teeth and groaned, through seas he strides  
And scarce the topmost billows touched his sides.’

Thanks to his blindness we managed to escape unharmed.

Scudding south and west along the coast of Sicily, we did not land again until we reached the western end, and

‘Here after endless labours, often tossed  
By raging storms and driven on every coast,  
My dear, dear father, spent with age, I lost.  
Heavy with grief we buried my dear father, and then set sail  
once more.

Then, o queen, arose the storm which drove us to thy shores.”’

## Book Four

The morning after the banquet Dido, fearing that her love for Aeneas was shameful because she had vowed to remain true to her dead husband, confessed her feeling to her sister. When Anna assured her that she should not reject this love, Dido was much relieved. She showed Aeneas over her wealthy city, and contrived means to keep him in her presence. For the next day a hunt was arranged, and at dawn Aeneas waited for her, while she, though late, in true womanly fashion tried on various gay robes, hoping to make herself irresistible. Presently she appeared, richly clad in royal apparel, and they were off.

During the days that followed, Aeneas seemed content to stay and share Dido’s kingdom, but since the gods above had decreed that he should found the Roman nation in Italy, Jupiter sent wingèd-footed Mercury to recall him to his duty.

### 10. Jupiter Bids Mercury Command Aeneas to Leave Carthage

105 Audiit Omnipotēns, oculōsque ad moenia torsit

105 Audiit : = *audivit*. Jupiter heard ing prince who wished to marry  
the prayer of Iarbas, a neighbour- Dido.

rēgia et oblītōs fāmae meliōris amantēs.

Tum sīc Mercurium adloquitur ac tālia mandat:

‘vāde age, nāte, vocā Zephyrōs et lābere pennīs,

Dardaniumque ducem, Tyriā Carthāgine quī nunc

110 exspectat fātisque datās nōn respicit urbēs,

adloquere et celerēs dēfer mea dicta per aurās.

Nāviget! Haec summa est, hīc nostrī nūntius estō’.

(IV, 220 ff)

Mercury delivered the message to Aeneas in a dream. Aeneas instantly awoke, and ordered his crew to make ready the ships. His plan of departure he concealed from Dido until an opportune time should present itself. But she, by her womanly intuition, sensed his change of plans and was overwhelmed with grief and resentment. Tearfully she implored him not to leave.

‘I beg you by these tears too truly shed,  
By these my prayers, if prayers may yet have place,  
Pity the fortune of a falling race.  
For you alone I suffer in my fame  
Bereft of honour, and exposed to shame.’

105-106 *moenia regia*: ‘the royal city’, Carthage.

106 *et oblitos . . . amantes*: = *et ad amantes* (pres. part. used as a noun, ‘the lovers’, Dido and Aeneas) *oblitos* (‘who were forgetful’) *famae melioris* (obj. gen. gov. by *oblitos*, ‘of their better, i.e. good, name’).

107 *adloquitur*: the last syllable must be scanned as long. *talia mandat*: ‘gave him this command’; *talia* is neut. acc. pl., lit., ‘such things’.

108 *vade age, voca, labere*: four imperatives; *age* is used in poetry as a mere interjection, and should be translated first; ‘Up!’, ‘Away!’ *pennīs*: abl. of means; ‘upon your wings’. Where were Mercury’s wings attached?

109 *Dardanium . . . ducem*: dir. obj. of the imper. *adloquere*. Jupiter’s scorn for Aeneas’ conduct is emphasized by the alliteration, and by the sharp contrast between *Darda-*

*nium* and *Tyria*. To sharpen this contrast, *Tyria Carthagine* is placed before *qui*.

109-110 *Tyria . . . urbes*: = *qui Tyria Carthagine* (abl. of place, without *in*.) *exspectat* (= *moratur*, as often in Vergil) *et (-que) qui non respicit* (‘pays no heed to’) *urbes* (either poetic pl. referring only to *Lavinium*, or else referring indirectly to Rome as well) *fatis datas*.

111 *celeres*: ‘swiftly’. Notice the dactyls of this line in which Jupiter is urging speed, and their contrast with the slow spondees of the line before in which he is criticizing Aeneas’ tardiness.

112 *Naviget*: jussive subj. *summa*: noun; ‘the main thing’. *hic . . . esto*: ‘herein (*hic*, adv., = *de hac re*) be (*esto*, old imperative, = *es*) our (*nostrī*, gen. of *nos*, = *noster*) messenger.’ Jupiter uses the kingly ‘we’.



Aeneas, torn between love and duty, replied that he would prefer to stay, but the Fates demanded his departure. When she could in no way dissuade him, she secretly determined to die. She called curses upon him and prophesied that her city and the kingdom he was to found should war continually. At dawn the sight of the Trojan ships now out at sea, added new fury to her madness.

### 11. Dido Curses the Trojans

- 'Haec precor, hanc vōcem extrēmam cum sanguine fundō.  
Tum vōs, O Tyrii, stirpem et genus omne futurum  
115 exercēte odiis, cinerīque haec mittite nostrō  
mūnera. Nullus amor populis nec foedera suntō.  
Exoriāre aliquis nostris ex ossibus ultor  
qui face Dardaniōs ferrōque sequāre colōnōs,  
nunc, ōlim, quōcumque dabunt sē tempore vīrēs.  
120 Litora litoribus contrāria, fluctibus undās  
imprecor, arma armis: pūgnent ipsique nepōtēsque.'  
(IV, 621-629)

113 Haec . . . fundo : 'For this I pray, and this last plea (*vocem*) I pour forth with my life-blood'. Dido has just prayed for Aeneas' defeat and death. It was at this ominous passage, the story goes, that Charles I of England opened a copy of Vergil in the Bodleian Library at Oxford when he sought to learn his future by resorting to the *sortes Vergilianae*.

114 Tum : i.e. even after Aeneas' death.

115 exercete odiis : 'pursue with your hatred'; the pl. *odiis* may refer to the successive hatreds of successive generations. mittite : 'offer'.

116 Nullus . . . suntō : 'Let there be (*suntō*, old 3rd pl., imper., = *sint*, jussive subj.) no friendship, no treaties between our peoples (*populis*, dat. of poss.)'.

117 Exoriare aliquis . . . ultor : lit., 'may you arise (*exoriare* = *exoriaris*, opt. subj.), someone (*aliquis*, in-

tended by Vergil to refer to Hannibal), as my avenger (*ultor*)', freely, 'Arise, my unknown avenger'. The use of the 2nd pers. in the verb with *aliquis* is a dramatic touch; Dido can see him, although she cannot name him.

118 qui sequare : = *qui sequaris*, a rel. cl. of purp.; 'to pursue', 'to hunt'.

119 nunc . . . vires : 'to-day, some day, whatever day the strength is given (lit., shall present itself)'. Notice the relentless approach of doom for the Trojans.

120 contraria : mod. *litora*, but belongs also with *undās* and *arma*; 'I pray for shores arrayed against shores'.

121 pugnent . . . nepotesque : 'let them be at war (*pugnent*, jussive subj), both (*-que*) they themselves and their children's children'. Notice how the extra syllable (*-que*) at the end of the line "finely suggests the unending hatred" (Prof. Sidgwick).

She rushed forth and mounted the pyre erected for the burning of her keepsakes received from Aeneas. There she plunged her sword deep into her heart.

## Book Five

From their ships the Trojans saw Dido's pyre in flames, and feared some evil would befall them. Not by surprise, therefore, did a terrible storm overtake them, forcing them to seek once more the coast of Sicily, near the grave of Anchises. The next day Aeneas offered sacrifices at his father's tomb.

'Scarce had he finished, when, with speckled pride,  
A serpent from the tomb began to glide;  
With harmless play amidst the bowls he passed,  
And with his lolling tongue assayed the taste:'

Joyfully Aeneas renewed his efforts, encouraged by this good omen. In honour of his father he decided to hold a day of sports with contests in rowing, running, boxing, and archery. When the chosen day arrived, everyone assembled for the entertainment. First was the boat race, contested by four crews. It was an exciting race, and by no means uneventful, especially when one boat crashed into a rock.

### 12. The Boat Race

*The start from the shore: Gyas captains the Chimaera, Cloanthus the Scylla, Mnestheus the Pristis, and Sergestus the Centaurus.*

Cōnsīdunt trānstrīs, intentaque bracchia rēmīs;  
intentī exspectant sīgnum, exsultantiaque haurit  
corda pavor pulsāns laudumque arrēcta cupīdō.

125 Inde ubi clāra dedit sonitum tuba, finibus omnēs,

122 transtris : = *in transtris*. Notice that the verb *Considunt* is placed first to emphasize the action: 'Down they sat'. *intenta* : sc. *sunt*; Vergil uses the word in this line to show the rowers' physical tenseness ('outstretched'), and in the next one to show their mental tenseness; (*intenti*, 'intently').

124 pavor, cupido : *haurit* serves twice as verb; tr. -*que* by 'and so

does'. The two emotions are fear of failure and desire for success. Notice the adaptation of sound to sense (imitative harmony, or onomatopoeia) in *pavor pulsans*, aided by the alliteration. *laudum* : poetic plur.

125-126 finibus suis : abl. of sep. without *ab*; 'from their starting-places'. In this passage, Vergil uses terms borrowed from the chariot races held in the Circus Maximus;



Courtesy International Film Distributors

#### FERIT AETHERA CLAMOR NAUTICUS

In galleys like this, rowing was scarcely sport for the oarsmen.

haud mora, prōsiluēre suīs; ferit aethera clāmor  
nauticus, adductīs spūmant freta versa lacertīs.  
Infundunt pariter sulcōs, tōtumque dehīscit  
convulsum rēmīs rostrisque tridentibus aequor.

*The turn at the rock: Cloanthus challenges Gyas for first place.*

130 Iamque propinquābant scopulō mētamque tenēbant

e.g. *fines* (so named because they marked the end as well as the beginning of the race); and *meta*, l. 130, the turning-point.

126 *haud mora* : sc. *est*; this clause is parenthetical. Tr. 'without delay'. Notice the swift dactyls in this line and the preceding one, whereas in the lines before them slow spondees predominate.

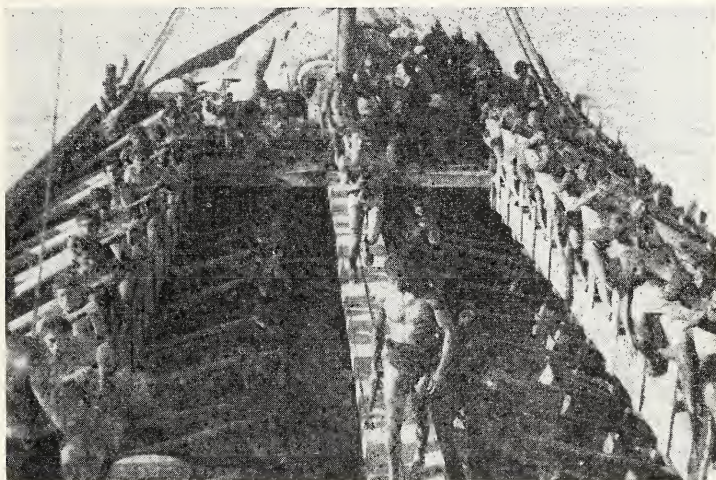
127 *adductis* . . . *lacertis* : abl. abs. The sep. of these two words helps us picture the long backward pull of the rowers' arms toward (*ad*-) their

chests (at the end of the stroke) from a position far in front of the chest (before the stroke.) Tr. 'by the backward sweep of their arms'. *spumant versa* : 'are churned into foam'; lit., 'foam, having been upturned'. Notice the use of "s" in this passage to imitate the seething of the waters.

129 *rostris* . . . *tridentibus* : referring to the three projecting points, one above the other, into which the beak or ram was divided.

130 *metamque tenebant* : 'and were





Courtesy International Film Distributors

## THE EXTREME PRECISION OF A GALLEY'S CREW

The split-second timing had to be regulated by a foreman.

cum princeps mediōque Gyās in gurgite victor  
rēctōrem nāvis compellat vōce Menoetēn:  
'quō tantum mihi dexter abis? Hūc dīrige gressum;  
litus amā et laevās stringat sine palmula cautēs;

135 altum aliī teneant.' Dixit; sed caeca Menoetēs

reaching (a sailor's use of *teneo*) the turning point (*metam*, here = *scopulus*).

131 cum . . . victor := cum *Gyas princeps* (adj., 'in the lead') et (-que) victor in medio gurgite ('at the half-way mark'; the actual word order places *Gyas* there!).

132 compellat voce: 'addressed'; a vivid hist. pres. Notice that *cum*-temporal gov. the indic., even in past time, if, as here, it really expresses the main idea. Here, for instance, the meaning is: 'When they were nearing the rock, he addressed . . .'. Menoeten: a Greek acc.

133 quo . . . abis: 'Where (*quo*, adv.), tell me (*mihi*, a kind of dat. of int.), are you going, so far (*tantum*, adv.) off (*ab*-) to the right (*dexter*, mod. subject of *abis*)?' huc: 'this way', i.e. 'to the left'.

134 litus ama: 'hug the shore': by *litus* he means the rock, which was on their left. *laevas* . . . *cautes*: = *sine* (imperative of *sino*) *ut palmula stringat* (poetic for *palmulam stringere laevas cautes*.) Notice the emphatic position of *laevas*; it is to the LEFT that he wants the helmsman to bear.

135 teneant: jussive subj. 'Let others



saxa timēns prōram pelagī dētorquet ad undās.  
 'Quō dīversus abīs?' iterum 'pete saxa, Menoetēl',  
 cum clāmōre Gyās revocābat; et ecce Cloanthum  
 respicit instantem tergō et propiōra tenentem.

- 140 Ille inter nāvemque Gyae scopulōsque sonantēs  
 rādīt iter laevum interior subitōque priōrem  
 praeterit et mētīs tenet aequora tūta relictīs.

*Man overboard!*

Tum vērō exārsit iuvenī dolor ossibus ingēns  
 nec lacrimis caruēre genae, sēgnemque Menoetēn

- 145 oblitus decorisque suī sociūmque salūtis  
 in mare praecipitem puppī dēturbat ab altā;  
 ipse gubernaculō rēctor subit, ipse magister  
 hortāturque virōs clāvumque ad litora torquet.

keep to the deep water.' Gyas is willing to risk piling up on the rock. Dixit: 'Those were his orders.' caeca: 'hidden'.

136 pelagi: i.e. deep water.

137 diversus: 'off your course', 'to one side' (i.e. to the right). iterum: mod. revocabat; 'Again Gyas was calling him back (re-, back on course)' Menoete: voc.

139 respicit: 'behind them he saw'; lit., 'he looked back at'. tergo: dat. gov. by in- in the compound verb instantem. propiora: 'the inside course'; neut. pl. adj. used as a noun.

140 Ille: change of subj. (Cloanthus). navemque: do not translate -que ('both').

141 radit . . . interior: 'he scraped (radit, lit., 'shaved') his way (iter) past to the left (laevum, mod. iter) on the inside (interior)'. Notice the use of swift dactyls in this line and in the next. priorem: 'the man in front' (i.e. Gyas).

142 tenet: 'reached', as in l. 130.

143 Tum . . . ingens: 'Then (vero merely stresses Tum) up blazed (ex-

arsit, emphatically placed) the young man's (iuveni, dat. of int. = Gyae) vexation in his heart (ossibus, abl. of place, without in; the marrow of the bones was thought to be the seat of the emotions)—a tremendous vexation (ingens, emphatically placed)'.  
 144 lacrimis: abl. of sep., gov. by the verb caruere (=caruerunt). segnem Menoeten: obj. of deturbat.

145 decoris: 'dignity'. sociumque: = sociorumque.

146 praecipitem: notice the touch of humour in the contrast between segnem, l. 144, and praecipitem: Menoetes is now, for once, NOT 'slow moving'. Notice also the grouping of emphatic 'p' sounds in praecipitem puppi. Menoetes suffered no real harm from his wetting, as Vergil tells in a passage omitted here. He climbed up on the scopulus, to the vast amusement of the spectators.

147 ipse . . . magister: 'he himself moved up to the tiller (took the helm) as steersman, himself as captain'.

148 clavum . . . ad litora: if clavum

*The return: Mnestheus comes up from fourth place to second, passing Sergestus and Gyas.*

- Sic Mnestheus, sic ipsa fugā secat ultima Pristis  
 150 aequora, sic illam fert impetus ipse volantem.  
 Et primum in scopulō luctantem dēserit altō  
 Sergestum brevibusque vadīs frūstrāque vocantem  
 auxilia et frāctīs discentem currere rēmīs.  
 Inde Gyan ipsamque ingentī mōle Chimaeram  
 155 cōsequitur; cēdit, quoniam spoliāta magistrō est.

*The finish: Cloanthus succeeds in holding first place.*

Sōlus iamque ipsō superest in fine Cloanthus:  
 quem petit et summīs adnīxus virībūs urget.  
 Et fors aequātīs cēpissent praemia rōstrīs,  
 nī palmās pontō tendēns utrāsque Cloanthus

means the rudder itself, then *ad* is correct: if it means the handle of the rudder (the tiller), then *ab* would be correct. In any case, this is poetry!

149 Sic Mnestheus: in some preceding lines (omitted here), Vergil has used the simile of a dove in flight; *Sic*, 'in like manner', 'just as swiftly'. Notice, when doing scansion, that the *-eu-* in *Mnestheus* is a diphthong. *ipsa . . . aequora*: 'the Pristis (Sea Serpent) herself (*ipsa*, nom.) in her flight (*fuga*, abl.) cut through the waters of the home stretch (*ultima aequora*)'.

150 volantem: 'flying along', emphatically placed.

151-152 Et primum . . . vadis: = *Et primum* (adv.) *dēserit* ('he left behind') *Sergestum* (delayed for emphasis) *luctantem in* (in, 'on', 'caught on') *scopulo alto* (*alto*, a last moment picturesque detail, 'that towered high above him') *brevibusque vadis* ('and in the shallow shoals').

153 discentem currere: 'learning how to speed along'; this touch of

humour is reinforced by the emphatic position of *fractis*, 'with shattered oars'.

154 Gyan: a Greek acc. ingenti mole: abl. of external desc.; 'with her huge bulk'.

155 cedit: sc. *Chimaera*: 'she fell back', lit., 'yielded'. *magistro*: abl. of sep. without *ab*; Menoetes was still sitting the race out, on the *scopulus*.

156 Solus iamque: = *iamque solus*; notice how *solus* and *Cloanthus* are placed so as to stress what was uppermost in Mnestheus' mind—*Cloanthus* alone remains to be beaten. *ipso . . . in fine*: 'at the very finish'.

157 quem petit: 'Mnestheus steered for him'. *summīs . . . urget*: 'crowded him, striving with all his might (with might and main)'.

158 fors: adv. *aequatīs . . . rostrīs*: 'with prows exactly level', 'in a tie'. *cepissent*: 'would have divided'; plup. subj. in a past untrue condition; *praemia* is poetic pl.

159 nī . . . fudissetque . . . -que vocasset: = *nisi fudisset* (ignore the first *-que*, lit. 'both') *et* (the second

- 160 fūdissetque precēs dīvōsque in vōta vocāset:  
 'dī, quibus imperium est pelagī, quōrum aequora currō,  
 vōbīs laetus ego hōc candentem in litore taurum  
 cōstituam ante ārās vōtī reus, extaque salsōs  
 porriciam in fluctūs et vīna liquentia fundam.'
- 165 Et pater ipse manū māgnā Portūnus euntem  
 impulit: illa Notō citius volucrique sagittā  
 ad terram fugit et portū sē condidit altō.

(V, 136 ff)

-que) vocasset (= vocavisset). *palmas ponto . . . utrasque* = *palmas utramque ad pontum* in prose.

160 in vota : *in* expresses purp.; 'to hear'. The prayer which Cloanthus now utters is, apart from the rather amusing circumstances in which it is made, a typical Roman 'bargaining' or 'contract' prayer, which promised a sacrifice to the god, provided the god kept his part of the bargain.

161 quibus . . . curro : 'who (*quibus*, dat. of poss.) rule the sea (*pelagi*, obj. gen.), and over whose waters (*aequora*, acc., dir. obj. of *curro*) I am flying'.

162 vobis . . . taurum : each word spoken by Cloanthus contributes to the earnestness of his plea:

*vobis* (dat. of int.)—it will be 'in your honour';

*laetus*—it will not be done with grudging heart;

*ego*—I will sacrifice in person (*constituo*=sacrifice).

*hoc* (separated from *in litore*)—I'll do it on this very shore;

*candentem*—it will be a snow-white offering;

*taurum*—it will be a bull (not a smaller animal).

163 voti reus : 'bound by my oath'; lit., 'as one bound (*reus*, in app. to *ego*) in respect to my vow (*voti*, a rare gen. of respect)'. The use of

this legal expression (like our own 'so help me God', or 'as God is my witness'), adds to the earnestness of the plea. *exta* : 'its entrails'; by a very convenient tradition, the gods were supposed only to want these portions of the victim. This left all the flesh for the worshipper.

164 *vina liquentia*: poetic pl., 'clear wine'.

165 *Portunus*: in app. to *pater*. *Portunus* was originally the god of harbours; from his name we derive such words as "opportunity" (originally an advantageous position for entering a harbour).

165-166 *euntem impulit*: sc. *navem*; 'pushed the boat (the Scylla) upon her way'. Notice how the swift dactyls (beginning with *impulit*), seem to speed the ship along.

166 *illa* : change of subject; 'she' (the Scylla). *Noto*, *sagitta* : abl. of comp. *Noto* is an example of vivid particularization. (*Introduction*, I, 3).

167 *portu . . . alto*: notice how the word order allows us to picture how 'in the deep harbour' (*portu alto*, abl. of place without *in*, or else abl. of means) the Scylla 'hid herself'. Notice also the effect of the switch from the pres. (*fugit*) to the perf. (*condidit*); the ship is 'flying' along, and then, suddenly, 'has hidden' herself from view.

The footrace proved equally exciting.

The third contest was the boxing-match, a favourite sport of the Trojans, and was won by Entellus over a younger opponent. As his prize, Entellus received a magnificent bull. As further proof that there was much life yet in his old frame, he approached the bull, and with one sledge-hammer blow between the horns, felled the poor creature.

Next followed the archery contest, in which Acestes' arrow when shot into the air, caught fire and disappeared like a shooting star. Aeneas accepted this as a good omen, and so awarded him the prize. The last item of the program was a demonstration battle enacted by Ascanius and the young men of the group while the older men watched with swelling pride. A call to real combat, however, put an end to this display, for the ships were seen ablaze in the harbour. They had been fired by the women who, tired of endless travel, had been tricked into this folly by the goddess Juno.

### 13. Jupiter Puts Out the Flames

Tum pius Aenēās umerīs abscindere vestem  
auxiliōque vocāre deōs et tendere palmās:

- 170 'Iuppiter omnipotēns, sī nōndum exōsus ad ūnum  
Trōiānōs, sī quid pietās antiqua labōrēs  
respicit hūmānōs, da flammam ēvādere classi  
nunc, pater, et tenuēs Teucrūm rēs ēripe lētō.

168 pius Aeneas: 'Aeneas the Dutiful', 'Aeneas the Good', an expression often used by Vergil to mark Aeneas as a man of destiny, and a man who is conscious of his responsibilities. umeris . . . vestem: a manifestation of great distress among many ancient peoples, e.g. the Hebrews of the Old Testament; umeris is abl. of sep. without *ab*, and *abscindere* is an hist. infin., used in a vivid desc. for an indic. verb (= *abscindebat*). So too *vocare* and *tendere*; notice that such infins. have their subject (*Aeneas*) in the nom. case. (not the acc.).

169 auxilio: dat. of purp.: '(called upon the gods) for help'.

170 exosus: = *exosus es. ad unum*: 'to a man', 'down to the last one'.

171-172 si . . . humanos: 'if your ancient loving kindness (*pietas*, a sense of duty; here, 'fatherly affection') has any regard for (lit., 'regards at all', with *quid* a neut. acc. used as an adv.) the hardships of mankind (*labores humanos*)'.

172 da: 'grant', 'allow'; in this sense *do* is completed by a comp. infin. (*evadere*). Note that *flammam* is dir. obj. of *evadere*.

173 nunc: its emphatic position expresses urgency. *tenuēs . . . leto*: 'snatch from ruin (*leto*, a type of dat. of int. use with verbs of "taking away") the slender fortunes (*tenuēs*



- Vel tū, quod superest, infestō fulmine mortī,  
 175 sī mereor, dēmitte tuāque hīc obrue dextrā.  
 Vix haec ēdiderat cum effūsīs imbribus ātra  
 tempestās sine mōre furit tonitrūque tremēscunt  
 ardua terrārum et campī; ruit aethere tōtō  
 turbidus imber aquā dēnsisque nigerrimus Austrīs,  
 180 implenturque super puppēs, sēmusta madēscunt  
 rōbora, restīnctus dōnec vapor omnis et omnēs  
 quattuor āmissis servātae ā peste carīnae.

(V, 685-699)

Aeneas was perplexed about the meaning of such events, until his father's spirit told him in a dream to continue on his way to Italy. Accordingly, he once more embarked and glided on over untroubled waters.

*res*) of the Trojans (*Teucrum = Teucrorum*). Notice the use of the letters 't' and 'r' in this line.

174-5 *tu . . . demitte* : = *tu infesto* ('levelled') *fulmine demitte id quod superest* ('what is left of us', 'those of us who remain') *mortī* (poetic for *ad mortem*, 'to our death') *si mereor*.

175 *hic* : adv., 'here and now.' *dextra* : = *dextra manu*.

176 *ediderat* : = *dixerat*.

176-177 *cum . . . furit* : 'when with a downpour of rain (*effusis imbribus*, abl. abs.) a black storm (*atra tempestas*, each in an emphatic position) raged (*furit*, an hist. pres., used vividly for a perf.) without restraint (*sine more*). Notice that *cum*-temporal gov. the indic. mood (*furit*) even when referring to past time if, as here, its verb really contains the principal thought; here, for instance, the meaning is really 'when he had said this a storm raged'.

178 *ardua terrarum* : 'the heights of land', 'the hills'; *ardua* is a neut. pl. adj. used as a noun. *ruit aethere toto* :

down from the whole sky (*aethere*, abl. of sep. without *ab*) rushed'. Notice in this line and the preceding one the use of *t* and *r*, imitating the force of the rain-drops.

179 *turbidus . . . Austris* : = *imber* (subj. of *ruit*) *turbidus aqua* (abl., as the scansion will show; lit., 'wild with water') *et (-que) nigerrimus densis Austris*; freely, 'a wild deluge of water, pitch-black with thickening squalls'. Notice the use of *s* in this line and the following ones to imitate the hissing of the rain-soaked flames.

180 *super* : adv. 'to overflowing'; *puppēs* in nom.

181 *robora* : 'their timbers'; note the use of vivid particularization (oak); so also in *Austris* (l. 179). *restinctus* : = *restinctus est*. The conj. *donec* is displaced to give the verb the emphatic position.

182 *servatae = servatae sunt*. The lost ships are left unnamed, so that we do not know whether they included any of the four that had shortly before taken part in the boat race.



Courtesy, American Export Lines, Inc.

#### THE CAVE OF THE SIBYL AT CUMAE

Echoes and rays of light from above create an eerie effect.

### Book Six

The Trojans landed in Italy at Cumae, where dwelt one of the famous Sibyllae, — prophetic women who were often consulted about the future. Aeneas went to the Sibyl's cave to beg a glimpse of what the future held for him.

#### 14. The Cave of the Sibyl

At pius Aenēās arcēs quibus altus Apollō  
praesidet horrendaeque procul sēcrēta Sibyllae,

185 antrum immāne, petit, māgnam cui mentem animumque

183 pius Aeneas : subj. of *petit*, of which *arcēs* and *secreta* are the dir. obj.; 'Aeneas the Dutiful', 'Aeneas the Good'. cf. l. 168. *arcēs* : 'the heights', or (if poetic plur.) 'the citadel'. Apollo's temple stood on a rocky hill (hence *altus*, 'on high')

and in the side of the hill was the Sibyl's cave.

184 horrendaeque . . . Sibyllae : = *et, procul* ('at a distance'), *secreta horrendae Sibyllae*.

185 antrum : in app. to *secreta*. *mag-nam* . . . *animumque* : = *cui* (dat.

Dēlius inspirat vātēs aperitque futūra.  
 Excisum Euboïcae latus ingēns rūpis in antrum,  
 quō lātī dūcunt aditūs centum, ōstia centum,  
 unde ruunt totidem vōcēs, respōnsa Sibyllae.

(VI, 9 ff)

The Sibyl's reply to Aeneas was ominous:

'O thou that hast

Escaped the dangers of the watery reign,  
 Yet more and greater ills by land remain,  
 Wars, horrid wars, I view—a field of blood,  
 And Tiber rolling with a purple flood.'

She assured him however that the settlement he was to establish would expand and flourish forever. One further request Aeneas asked—permission to visit his father in the underworld, where dwelt all souls departed from this earth, and those as yet unborn. She replied that he must obtain the golden bough as his passport. Guided by two doves sent by his mother, he joyfully plucked the golden bough, and then triumphantly returned. Soon the Sibyl led him into a cave which was one of the entrances of Hades. From here they proceeded into the realms beneath the earth, where they awaited Charon the ferryman who rowed the souls over the river Styx to the Underworld.

## 15. Charon, the Boatman of the River Styx

190 Portitor hās horrendus aquās et flūmina servat

gov. by *in-* in the compound verb *inspirat*) *magnum* (displacing *cui* for emphasis) *mentem* ('insight') *animumque* ('and inspiration'). Begin a new sentence at *cui* ('In her'). 186 *Delius*: an example of naming by mythological allusion (*Introduction*, I, 2). *futura*: 'the future'; neut. pl. of fut. part. used as a noun. 187 *Excisum...in antrum*: = *latus ingens Euboïcae rupis excisum erat in* ('into', 'to form') *antrum*. *Euboïcae*: notice (1) the typical reference to Cumae by mythological allusion

instead of by direct naming (2) the emphatic position, achieved through the use of parallel word order (*Introduction* I, 4, b, ii).

188 *quo, unde*: adv. (= *ad antrum, ab antro*).

189 *aditus, ostia*: these are perforations in the volcanic rock, and through them the words (*voces*) of the Sibyl reach the hearer from inside her cave.

190 *has aquas et flumina*: 'the waters of this river (Styx)'; an example of hendiadys.





Courtesy, The New York Public Library

### CHARON AND THE WATCH-DOG OF HADES

In the distance can be seen some of the condemned souls.

terribili squālōre Charōn, cui plūrima mentō  
cānitiēs inculta iacet, stant lūmina flammā,  
sordidus ex umerīs nōdō dēpendet amictus.

Ipse ratem contō subigit vēlisque ministrat

195 et ferrūgineā subvectat corpora cumbā,

191 *terribili squalore* : abl. of desc., mod. *portitor*.

191-192 *cui* . . . *iacet* : 'on whose (*cui*, dat. of poss., belonging in sense to all three nouns *mento*, *lumina*, *amictus*) chin (*mento*, abl. with prep. *in* omitted) bristles (*iacet*, from *iaceo*, not *iacio*, lit., 'lies', with the notion of neglect) a thick (*plurima*, lit., 'very much', 'in profusion') unkempt (*inculta*) grizzled beard (*canities*)'

192 *stant lumina flamma* : in tr. begin a new sentence here; 'his eyes (*lumina*, often used instead of *oculos*, perhaps for the metre) are fixed (*stant*) in a fiery gaze (*flamma*, abl. of means)'

193 *sordidus*, *amictus* : 'soiled is the cloak that . . .'. The slovenliness of Charon's appearance is accentuated by the word *nodo* (abl. of means, 'in a knot'); the ancient ferryman has secured his cloak by a knot instead of by the customary clasp.

194 *Ipse* : 'with his own hands'; he carries no crew! *velis* : a noun; 'tends to (adjusts) the sails'. This is the meaning, whether *velis* be taken as (1) dat., ind. obj. of *ministrat*, or as (2) abl. of means; lit., 'manages the craft (sc. *ratem*) with sails'.

195 *ferruginea* : abl., mod. *cumba* (abl. of means); notice that the separation of the adj. and noun al-



- iam senior, sed crūda deō viridisque senectus.  
 Hūc omnis turba ad ripās effūsa ruēbat,  
 mātērē atque virī dēfūnctaque corpora vitā  
 māgnanimūm hērōum, puerī innūptaeque puellae,  
 200 impositīque rogīs iuvenēs ante ōra parentum.  
 Stābant ōrantēs prīmī trāsmittere cursum,  
 tendēbantque manūs ripae ulteriōris amōre.

(VI, 298 ff)

Charon was angry when he saw Aeneas' mortal frame, but rowed him and the Sibyl across the river after seeing the golden bough. They then wandered through the various communities of Hades, meeting many Trojans whom Aeneas had known in the world above. There, too, Aeneas saw Dido sitting alone and looking most forlorn.

'In vain he then attempts her mind to move  
 With tears, and prayers, and late-repenting love.  
 Disdainfully she looked; then turning round,  
 But fixed her eyes unmoved upon the ground.'

lows the "murky boat" actually to contain its dead passengers.

196 iam senior: begin a new sentence here; 'He is (sc. *est*) an old man now, but a god's (*deo*, dat. of poss.) old age is vigorous'. Charon is classified as a god because he is immortal.

197 effusa: 'streaming', 'wildly'. By *turba* the dead are meant, and the nom. nouns in lines 198-200, are in app. to *turba*. When, as here, nouns in app. represent only a part (or group) of the whole, they are said to be in partitive app.

198 defunctaque . . . heroum: 'bodies (*corpora*, nom.) done with (*defuncta*, nom. mod. *corpora*) life (*vita*, abl. gov. by *defuncta*), the bodies (or 'empty shells') of stout-hearted (*magnanimum*, gen. pl.) heroes'. The dead heroes are selected from among the older people as being especially pathetic; so too in line 200, the youths are selected from among the young people.

199 pueri innuptaeque puellae: notice how the sound pattern (*pu . . up . . pu*) contributes to the sense of pathos, as does the cumulative effect of the repetition of *-que*.

200 rogis: 'on their pyres'; dat. gov. by *im-* in the compound verb *impositi*. ora: 'eyes'; lit., 'faces'.

201 Stabant: 'There they stood'; notice the emphatic position of this verb and of *tendebantque* in l. 202. orantes . . . cursum: = *orantes ut primi cursum transmitterent*; ('begging to be the first to make the crossing').

202 ripae ulterioris amore: 'in their yearning (*amore*, abl. of cause) for the farther shore (*ripae*, obj. gen.)'. This famous line forms a fitting climax to a passage that is itself famous as an example of Vergil's realization of the sadness in human life. Notice particularly the effect of "stretching" in the long word *tendebantque*, with the *-que* adding to its



Bartolomeo Pinelli (1781-1835)

## AENEAS MEETS THE GHOST OF DIDO IN HADES

## 16. Aeneas Addresses Dido's Spirit

Dēmisit lacrimās dulcīque adfātus amōre est:

'Infēlix Dīdō, vērus mihi nūntius ergō

205 vēnerat exstīnctam ferrōque extrēma secūtam?

Fūneris heu tibi causa fui? Per sīdera iūrō,

invītus, rēgīna, tuō dē litore cessi.'

(VI, 455, ff)

length. So too the distance of the shore is accentuated by the five syllables of *ulterioris*.

203 *dulcique . . . est* : = *dulcique . . . amore* ('with sweet words of love', abl. of manner) *adfatus est* ('addressed her', sc. *eam*).

204 *verus* : = *verusne*. It is the important word in the question, as its emphatic position shows; 'Was then the news that came (*venerat*, really plup.) to me (*mihi*, dat. of int.) true—that you (sc. *te*, subject of the ind.

statement) had perished (*exstinctam*, sc. *esse*, lit., 'had been blotted out') and with the sword (*ferrō*, abl. of means) had sought (*secutam*, sc. *esse*) to end it all (*extrema*, neut. plur. adj. used as a noun, 'your end', 'your doom') ?

206 *funeris* : placed first for emphasis; *tibi* : dat. of poss. 'your'. *per* : 'by'; the French "par" inherited this use of *per*.

207 *cessi dē* : = *discessi ab*.

Suddenly she rushed back into the shadowy grove where her former husband was awaiting her. Next the Sibyl led him onward to meet the shades of all those renowned in battle, among whom were Trojan and Greek heroes.

The Sibyl again hurried onward, permitting no delay. They passed Tartarus, the abode of the damned, and came next to the Elysian Fields, the abode of the blessed and happy. There Aeneas saw his father Anchises who inquired fondly about all the events since his death. Then, in turn, Aeneas asked about the throngs of people among whom they now stood.

“Then thus the sire: “The souls that throng the flood  
Are those to whom by fate are other bodies owed.  
In Lethe’s lake they long oblivion taste  
Of future life secure, forgetful of the past.” ’

Among these Anchises, filled with pride and joy, pointed out his future heirs. Greatest and dearest of these was Caesar Augustus who, said Anchises, would one day rule the Roman Empire with peace and prosperity. Anchises concluded by promising Rome dominion over the world.



*Marguerite Gerard (1761-1837)*

ANCHISES AND AENEAS AMONG THE SHADES OF HADES



## 17. Rome's Mission in the World

- 'Excūdent aliī spīrantia mollius aera  
(crēdō equidem), vivōs dūcent dē marmore vultūs,  
210 ōrābunt causās melius, caelīque meātūs  
dēscribent radiō et surgentia sīdera dicent:  
tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō—  
hae tibi erunt artēs—pācisque impōnere mōrem,  
parcere subiectis et dēbellāre superbōs.' (VI, 847-853)

Shortly after, Anchises dismissed Aeneas to the upper air by the Ivory Gate of Sleep. There he met his comrades again, and they proceeded into Italy, their promised land.

208 Excudent alii . . . equidem : 'others (*alii*, referring especially to the Greeks) shall mould (*excudent*, a fut. used in a prophecy) the breathing bronze (*spirantia aera*, neut. plur., = life-like statues) to a more life-like softness (*mollius*, adv., lit., 'more softly'), I do believe (*equidem* merely emphasizes *credo*)'.

209 dūcent : 'shall fashion', 'shall draw out'. Vergil may be thinking of the Greek sculptors' feeling that the marble block already contained the statue, which had merely to be revealed by the sculptor's skill as he chiselled off the excess stone. Vergil selects sculpture as a vivid particularization to represent all the fine arts, and concedes that Rome's mission does not lie here.

210 orābunt causas melius : 'shall plead more eloquently (*melius*, adv.) at the bar (*causas*, lit., 'their cases'). Vergil selects oratory as a vivid particularization to represent all literature, and it is the branch of literature in which Rome is strongest, with the Roman Cicero rivalling the Greek Demosthenes. Yet once again he concedes that Rome's real mission does not lie here, either.

210-211 caelique meatus . . . dicent : 'shall trace with the rod (*radius* is the rod used by astronomers to draw

diagrams on a sanded surface) the courses (*meatus*, acc. plur.) of the heavenly bodies (*caeli*, lit., 'of the sky') and predict (*dicent*) the risings of the constellations (*surgentia sidera*, lit., 'the constellations as they rise')'. Vergil selects astronomy as a vivid particularization to represent all the sciences, and concedes that Rome's mission does not lie here.

212 imperio : 'with supreme power'. memento : an old imper. form; 'remember', 'make it your mission'.

213 hae . . . artes : 'these shall be YOUR (*tibi*, dat. of poss.) accomplishments (*artes*, lit., 'arts')'. Skill in government and in the maintenance of law and order is to become a fine art under the Romans, and this is to be Rome's real mission in the world. This passage is perhaps the most famous in Vergil, and is worthy of memorization.

213 pacisque imponere morem : 'and to impose the settled rule (*morem*, lit., 'custom', 'habit') of peace (*pacis*, a reference to the *pax Romana*, 'Roman law and order', established by Augustus and maintained for centuries throughout the empire)'.

214 subiectis : a part. used as a noun; 'the vanquished'. So too *superbos*, 'the arrogant'; *subiectis* is dat. gov. by *parcere*.



## PART II

### Selections from Ovid

#### Pyramus and Thisbe

*The tragedy of Pyramus and Thisbe reminds one in several ways of the tragedy of Romeo and Juliet. Like the story of Romeo and Juliet, it has inspired imitation by several writers, but the best known is Shakespeare's good-natured burlesque of the tragedy in A Midsummer Night's Dream, Act III, Scene I (the rehearsal), and Act V, Scene I (the performance).*

*The stage is set. Enter Pyramus and Thisbe.*

- 215 Pyramus et Thisbe, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter,  
altera, quas Oriens habuit, praelata puellis,  
contiguas tenuere domos, ubi dicitur altam  
cottilibus muris cinxisse Semiramis urbem.  
Notitiam primosque gradus vicinia fecit:

215 alter : in app. to *Pyramus*; and *altera* is in app. to *Thisbe*.

216 quas Oriens habuit : tr. it after its antecedent *puellis*; 'fairest (*praelata*, lit., 'preferred') of the girls (*puellis*, dat. gov. by *prae-* in the compound verb *praefero*) that the East possessed.' Notice the alliteration in *praelata puellis*; it gives further emphasis.

217 contiguas domos : separated for emphasis, with *domos* displacing the verb *tenuere* as last word in the clause. Other verbs which are similarly displaced in favour of emphasized words are *crevit* (l. 6), *vetu-*

*ere* (l. 7), *potuere* (l. 7), *ardebant* (l. 8).

217-18 ubi dicitur . . . urbem : Ovid means the city of Babylon, but, instead of naming it directly, he uses a mythological allusion; Queen Semiramis and King Ninus were the mythological founders of Babylon. This use of an allusion instead of direct naming is characteristic of Latin poetry. (*Introduction*, 1, 2) Notice also the separation, for emphasis, of *altam* and *urbem*, each word being given the emphatic last position in its line. (*Introduction*, I, 4, b).

219 notitiam primosque gradus : 'the first steps in their acquaintance'; an

- 220 tempore crevit amor; taedae quoque iure coissent,  
sed vetuere patres. Quod non potuere vetare,  
ex aequo captis ardebant mentibus ambo.  
Conscius omnis abest; nutu signisque loquuntur.  
Quoque magis getitur, tectus magis aestuat ignis.

*Enter the Wall.*

- 225 Fissus erat tenui rima, quam duxerat olim,  
cum fieret, paries domui communis utrique.  
Id vitium nulli per saecula longa notatum—

example of the figure of speech called hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units). In hendiadys, the *-que* (or *et*) adds an explanation; lit., 'acquaintance, that is to say (*-que*), the first steps'. *vicinia fecit*: 'propinquity brought about'. 220 *taedae . . . iure*: 'in lawful marriage'. lit., 'by the law of the marriage-torch'. Ovid is thinking of a Roman custom—the torchlight procession which escorted a Roman bride to her husband's home. *coissent*: = *coïssent*, plup. subj. in a past untrue cond., of which the *si*-clause is suppressed (i.e. not expressed), but replaced by the *sed*-clause. In most of the earlier civilizations marriages were arranged by the parents of the young people.

221 *vetuere*: = *vetuerunt*. So too *potuere* (l. 221), and *dedere* (l. 231).

221 *Quod*: 'something which'; the antecedent *id* is understood, and is in app. to the statement made in the next line.

222 *ex aequo . . . ambo*: 'both were very much in love (lit. 'burned with love'), for their hearts (*mentibus*), abl. abs.) were equally (*ex aequo*, lit., 'in accordance with an equality') enslaved.' Notice the skill of the word order: *ex aequo* ('equally') and *ambo* ('both of them') are given the

two most emphatic positions in the line, and *ardebant* ('were intensely in love') is enclosed by the reason, *captis mentibus*.

223 *conscius omnis abest*: 'there was no go-between'; *abest* is an historical or vivid present tense. These are usually to be translated by an English past tense. There are many other examples in this poem, including the other verbs in ll. 223-4).

224 *Quoque*: = *et quo*. The full construction here would be *quo magis . . . eo magis*, 'the more . . . the more'. *Quo* and *eo* are abl. of measure of difference. Scansion will show that *Quoque* is not the adverb *quōque* = too. *ignis*: 'the flame of their love'. The word is given the emphatic last position. Latin poets regularly describe love as a flame; cf. our use in slang of "flame" for "lover".

225 *Fissus erat*: the subject is *paries*, (l. 226). *tenui*: an adjective (not a verb). *duxerat*: 'it had received'; one of the rarer meanings of *duco*.

226 *fieret*: subj. mood gov. by *cum*-temporal referring to past time. *paries . . . utrique*: 'the wall that was common to both (or 'the two') homes'; *utrique* is the dat. sing. of *uterque*. Apparently semi-detached houses were known to Babylon as well as to modern cities.



## OH, UNKIND WALL !

The stories related by Roman poets have inspired artists of many ages to illustrate them.

- quid non sentit amor?—primi vidistis, amantes,  
et vocis fecistis iter; tutaeque per illud  
230 murmure blanditiae minimo transire solebant.  
Sub noctem dixere 'Vale,' partique dedere  
oscula quisque suae, non pervenientia contra.

*The lovers appoint a rendezvous by night under a mulberry tree near the tomb of King Ninus. The lady gets there first, then enter the lion; exit Thisbe.*

227 *Id vitium* : acc., dir. obj. of *vidistis*. *nulli* : dat. of agent, which is ordinarily used only with a gerundive.

228 *primi vidistis, amantes* : 'You were the first to see (lit., 'saw first'), you lovers (*amantes*, voc., pres. part. equivalent to a noun).'

229 *vocis iter* : 'a passage-way for your voices'; *vocis* is subjective gen., subject of the idea of journeying present in *iter*.

229-230 *tutaeque . . . solebant* : 'and safely (*tutae*) through it (*illud* = *vitium* = *rimam*), in a tiny whisper, sweet nothings were wont to pass to and fro.' Notice how the word order depicts the 'sweet nothings' (*blanditiae*) as being conveyed 'by a whisper (*murmure*)' — a tiny one (*minimo*).'

231 *dedere* : = *dederunt* (from *do*). The scansion will show that it is not *dedere* (infin. of *dēdo*). Tr. 'and they

- Callida per tenebras, versato cardine, Thisbe  
egreditur, fallitque suos, adopertaque vultum  
235 pervenit ad tumulum, dictaque sub arbore sedit.  
Audacem faciebat amor. Venit ecce recenti  
caede leaena boum spumantes oblita rictus,  
depositura sitim vicini fontis in unda.  
Quam procul ad lunae radios Babylonia Thisbe  
240 vidit, et obscurum timido pede fugit in antrum,  
dumque fugit, tergo velamina lapsa reliquit.  
Ut lea saeva sitim multa compescuit unda,

gave, each (*quisque*, in partitive app. to the plural subject) to his own side (*suae parti*), kisses that did not come through to the other side (*contra*, adv.).' *Quisque* ('each of more than two') is unusual here for *uterque* ('each of two').

233 *Callida*: modifies *Thisbe*; tr. 'carefully'. *versato cardine*: 'opening the door', lit., 'turning the hinge'. Notice how the emphasis is made to fall, in l. 228-235, on Thisbe's actions, the following verbal ideas being placed first in their unit or else in their line: *versato*, *egreditur*, *fallit*, *adoperta*, *pervenit*.

234 *adoperta vultum*: 'with her face covered'; lit., 'covered in respect to her face'; *vultum* is acc. of respect, a usage with parts of the body and of clothing. So too, *oblita rictus* in l. 237.

235 *dicta*: abl., mod. *arbore*, as the scansion will show; 'appointed', 'trysting'.

236 *Audacem*: mod. an understood *eam*.

236-7 *Venit* . . . *rictus*: the word order contributes much to the effectiveness of the picture of the lioness: 'there comes (*Venit*, first for emphasis)—look!—a lioness, her frothing maw (*spumantes rictus*, acc. of respect; see the note on *adoperta vultum* in l. 234) besmeared (*oblita*,

really modifies *leaena*. The scansion will show that *oblita* is from *oblino*) with the fresh blood (*caede*) of cattle (*boum*, gen. pl. of *bos*).'

238 *depositura*: fut. part. expressing purpose, 'to slake'.

239 *Quam*: co-ord. rel. = *eam* = *leaenam*. ad *radios*: 'by the light'.

*Babylonia*: merely a reminder that the setting of our story is Babylon.

240 *vidit* . . . in antrum: an artistically constructed line. The verb *vidit* comes first in the line to depict the girl's shock as she sees the lion. Then follows a slow spondee (*ōb-scūr-*) to depict her momentary hesitation; the cave is murky and a little fearsome. Next come three swift dactyls as she flees to it for safety (*Introduction*, II, 2, a). Perhaps the separation of *obscurum* and *antrum* is intended to represent the distance which Thisbe runs in her terror.

241 *fugit*: *fugit* (pres., gov. by *dum*), not *fūgit* (perf.). *tergo velamina lapsa*: 'the mantle (*velamina*) which had slipped (*lapsa*, modifying *velamina*) from her back (*tergo*, abl. of separation without the prep. *ab*)'. *Velamina* is a poetic plural, to be translated as a sing. The poetic plural is often used as a metrical convenience; *velamina* might mean any wrap or garment. It is later called *tenuēs amictus* (l. 244), *vestem*



dum redit in silvas, inventos forte sine ipsa  
ore cruentato tenues laniavit amictus.

*Exit Pyramus.*

- 245 *Serius egressus, vestigia vidit in alto  
pulvere certa ferae, totoque expalluit ore  
Pyramus. Ut vero vestem quoque sanguine tinctam  
repperit, 'Una duos,' inquit, 'nox perdet amantes:  
e quibus illa fuit longa dignissima vita;*  
250 *nostra nocens anima est. Ego te, miseranda, peremi,  
in loca plena metus qui iussi nocte venires,*

(l. 247), and *velamina* again (l. 254).  
242 *multa compescuit unda*: 'had  
slaked with a long drink'. Notice the  
emphasis given the idea by the word  
order. Note also the emphasis of the  
alliteration in *saeva sitim*.

243 *inventos*: mod. *amictus*. Tr. as a  
principal verb, parallel to *laniavit*;  
'found the fine mantle accidentally  
(*forte*, adv., not the adj.), but not  
(*sine*) the girl herself.'

244 *cruentato tenues*: juxtaposition,  
to contrast the lion's bloodstained  
jaws and the girl's fine mantle;  
*tenues* . . . *amictus* is a poetic plural.

246 *certa ferae*: 'unmistakable  
tracks—a wild animal's'; the separa-  
tion of these words from *vestigia*  
adds emphasis.

246-7 *totoque* . . . *Pyramus*: 'Pyra-  
mus' entire countenance turned pale'  
or 'Pyramus' face turned completely  
pale'; *toto ore* is abl. of place where,  
with the prep. *in* omitted, as usual,  
with the adj. *totus*. Notice how the  
word order emphasizes the idea: (1)  
*toto* and *ore* are separated, with *ore*  
displacing the verb *expalluit* in the  
emphatic last position. (2) *Pyramus*  
is carried over into the emphatic  
first position in the next line.

247 *ut vero*: 'when however'; as  
usual, *vero* merely intensifies the

preceding word. *vestem*: 'the man-  
tle'; like *amictus* (l. 244), and *vela-  
mina* (l. 254), it may mean any  
garment or wrap.

248 *repperit*: the position of the  
verb at the first of the new line em-  
phasizes the boy's shock of recog-  
nition. It is Thisbe's mantle, and he  
assumes that she has been slain. *Una  
duos*: juxtaposition for contrast,  
made possible by the separation of  
*Una* from *nox*, and of *duos* from  
*amantes*. For *amantes* see note on  
l. 228.

249 *e quibus illa* . . . *vita*: the scan-  
sion will show that *dignissima* is  
nom., mod. *illa* (i.e. Thisbe), and  
that *longa* is abl., mod. *vita* (gov.  
by *dignissima*).

250 *nostra* . . . *anima*: 'my soul is  
guilty'; *nostra* reminds us of the  
modern "editorial we". It is, how-  
ever, an example of the poetic plural;  
*mea* would not scan here. So too,  
*Nostrum corpus* (l. 253), and *nostris  
sanguinis* (l. 256). *Ego te*: juxta-  
position to heighten the imagined  
tragedy. Even Latin prose is very  
fond of this juxtaposition of pro-  
nouns. *miseranda*: 'poor darling'. It  
is the voc. of the gerundive; lit.,  
'you to be pitied'.

251 *in loca plena metus*: this phrase

- nec prior huc veni. Nostrum divellite corpus,  
 O quicumque sub hac habitatis rupe, leones!  
 Sed timidi est optare necem.' Velamina Thisbes  
 255 tollit, et ad pactae secum fert arboris umbram.  
 'Accipe nunc,' inquit, 'nostri quoque sanguinis haustus!  
 Quoque erat accinctus, demisit in ilia ferrum.

*Re-enter Thisbe.*

- Ecce metu nondum posito, ne fallat amantem,  
 illa redit, iuvenemque oculis animoque requirit,  
 260 quantaque vitarit narrare pericula gestit.

*She spies her lover's body. Exit Thisbe.*

'Pyrame,' clamavit, 'quis te mihi casus ademit?  
 Pyrame, responde! Tua te carissima Thisbe

belongs with *venires*; it has been placed first for emphasis; *metus* is partitive gen. *venires* : = *ut venires*. This ind. com. is most unusual with *iubeo*, which normally requires a comp. infin.

252 nec : 'but . . . not'; it joins *veni* to *iussi* (not to *peremi*).

253 O quicumque leones : 'all you lions who . . .'; lit., 'O lions whosoever . . .'.

254 Sed . . . necem : 'But it is the mark of a coward (*timidi* is gen. of poss.) merely to wish for death (i.e. and not to seek it by suicide)'. Thisbes : a Greek gen. So too in l. 264.

255 fert : its object is *ea* (= *velamina*), understood. Notice the emphasis of the word order in this sentence; *tollit*, first in the line; *ad*, separated from *umbram*; and *pactae* separated from *arboris*.

256 Accipe . . . haustus : Pyramus is speaking to the mulberry tree; 'now drink deep (*Accipe haustus*, lit., receive drinks) of my blood too (*quoque*, i.e. in addition to Thisbe's blood).'

257 quoque : = *et quo*. The *-que* joins *inquit* and *demisit*. Tr. the rel. clause *quo* (abl. of means) *erat accinctus* after its antecedent *ferrum*; 'the sword with which he was girt (i.e. which hung from his belt)'.

258 posito : = *deposito*. ne fallat amantem : 'in case she should escape her lover's notice (i.e. not be seen by Pyramus)'; *fallat* is subj. in a purp. cl.

259 illa : 'she', a change of subject. oculis animoque : 'with eyes and heart'.

260 quanta . . . pericula : the separation of these two words adds size to Thisbe's recent perils! *vitari* : = *vitaverit*, perf. subj. in an ind. quest.

261 quis . . . casus : *qui* is the more usual form of the interrog. adj. mihi : 'from me'. It is dat. of int., which may for convenience be subdivided into dat. of advantage and dat. of disadvantage. The latter applies here. The juxtaposition of *te* and *mihi* increases the pathos.

262-3 Tua . . . nominat : 'It is your own darling (*carissima*) Thisbe who

nominat; exaudi vultusque attolle iacentes!'

Ad nomen Thisbes oculos iam morte gravatos

265 Pyramus erexit, visaque recondidit illa.

Quae postquam vestemque suam cognovit et ense vidit ebur vacuum, 'Tua te manus,' inquit, 'amorque perdidit, infelix! Est et mihi fortis in unum hoc manus, est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vires.

270 At tu, quae ramis arbor miserabile corpus nunc tegis unius, mox es tectura duorum, signa tene caedis, pullosque et luctibus aptos semper habe fetus, gemini monumenta cruoris.'

Dixit, et aptato pectus mucrone sub imum

275 incubuit ferro, quod adhuc a caede tepebat.

Vota tamen tetigere deos, tetigere parentes;

calls your name.' *Tua* and *te* are in juxtaposition for emphasis. So too *Tua te* in l. 267.

263 vultus iacentes: 'your prostrate face'; a poetic plural. The part. is from *iaceo* (not *iacio*).

264 Ad nomen Thisbes: 'at the name "Thisbe"'.  
 265 visa illa: 'when (once) he had seen her'; abl. abs. recondidit: sc. oculos.

266 Quae postquam: as usual the coord. rel. (*Quae*, 'she') displaces the conj. as first word. -que . . . et: = *et* . . . *et*, linking the two verbs *cognovit* and *vidit*, both of which are introduced by *postquam*. Ignore -que in translating. *cognovit*: 'recognized'.

ense: abl. of separation with *vacuum*; 'without its sword'.

268 infelix: 'poor boy', 'poor darling'. Est . . . amor: 'I (*mihi*, dat. of poss.) too (*et* = *etiam*) have a steadfast hand for (*in*, expressing purp.) this one task (*hoc unum*); I too have love.'

269 hic: i.e. *amor*. in vulnera: 'to inflict (*in*, expressing purp., as in *unum hoc* above) the wound (*vulnera*, poetic plural)'. The alliteration in *vulnera vires* adds to the em-

phasis.

270 At tu . . . duorum: = *At tu, arbor quae ramis miserabile corpus unius nunc tegis, mox es tectura (corpora) duorum*; *arbor* is in apposition to *tu*.

272 signa tene caedis: 'keep the marks of our death'; *signa* refers to the berries of the mulberry tree. Before Pyramus' death these berries had been white; now they are stained with his blood. *pullosque* . . . *aptos*: -que introduces the new clause, joining *tene* and *habe*; *et* joins *pullos* and *aptos*, both of which modify *fetus*, in l. 273.

273 gemini monumenta cruoris: notice the effectiveness of the word order, with *gemini* and *cruoris* on either side of *monumenta*.

274 Dixit, et: 'With these words'. pectus . . . sub imum: 'beneath her breast'; lit., 'close to the base of her breast'. Notice the effective position of *pectus* between *aptato* and *mucrone*.

275 ferro: dat. gov. by *incubuit*. a caede: 'with blood'; lit., '(fresh) from (Pyramus') death'.

276 Vota: 'her prayer'; poetic plural. The gods showed their sympathy



THISBE DISCOVERS THE BODY OF PYRAMUS

nam color in pomo est, ubi permaturuit, ater;  
quodque rogis superest, una requiescit in urna.

(*Metamorphoses*, IV, 55 ff)

### Baucis and Philemon

*The gods Jupiter and Mercury, wandering over Phrygia disguised as men, were refused shelter by all its inhabitants except two, Baucis and Philemon, who welcomed the guests into their humble cottage and gave freely of their hospitality. Jonathan Swift has written the story in English verse.*

*Here 'tis the poor who are generous.*

Iuppiter huc specie mortali, cumque parente

by granting Thisbe's request that hereafter mulberries should ripen to a dark colour (l. 277). The parents showed their sympathy by having the lovers' ashes placed in a single urn (l. 278).

277 in pomo : 'of the berry'.

278 quodque rogis superest : 'and (-que) what (quod = id quod) was

left (*superest*, historical present) from the funeral pyres (*rogis*, dat. gov. by *super-* in the compound verb *superest*).'

279 Iuppiter: the first of the two subjects of *venit*; the second subject is *Atlantiades*. Notice that the traditional English spelling Jupiter uses only one p. huc: i.e. to the home of



- 280 venit Atlantiades positis caducifer alis.  
 Mille domos adiere, locum requiemque petentes:  
 mille domos clausere serae. Tamen una recepit,  
 parva quidem, stipulis et canna tecta palustri:  
 sed pia Baucis anus parilique aetate Philemon
- 285 illa sunt annis iuncti iuvenalibus, illa  
 consenuere casa; paupertatemque fatendo

Baucis and Philemon. *specie mortali*: abl. of desc. *cumque* = *et cum*; *cum parente*: i.e. with Jupiter. 280 Atlantiades: an example of the use of mythological allusion instead of direct naming (*Introduction*, I, 2). The ending *-ades* is borrowed from the Greek to signify 'son of'. Such a word is called a patronymic since it includes the name of the father. English examples are names with the prefixes "Mac-", "Mc-", "O", "Fitz-", and names with the suffix "-son". Since Mercury was really the grandson of Atlas, we can see that a patronymic is sometimes used to refer to a more remote ancestor; 'descendant of Atlas'. *caducifer*: Mercury carried a staff called *caduceus*, on which were intertwined snakes facing each other at the top. *positis alis*: abl. abs. Here *positis* has the force of *depositis*. The 'wings' are the winged sandals which he wore in his capacity as Jupiter's messenger. These, together with his *caduceus*, he naturally laid aside when he disguised himself as a mortal. The position of *caducifer* between *positis* and *alis* cleverly implies the removal of the *caduceus* as well; 'with wings and wand laid aside'.

281 *adiere*: = *adierunt*. Similarly *clausere* (l. 282), *consenuere* (l. 286), *effecere* (l. 286), *tetigere* (l. 287), *vetuere* (l. 307), *flexere* (l. 312), *fuere* (l. 325), *dixere* (l. 332). *locum requiemque petentes*: Latin occasionally uses two nouns in the

same case, equivalent in English to a phrase with one of the nouns either in the genitive case or replaced by an adjective. This figure of speech is called hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units). Tr., 'seeking a place of rest'. In hendiadys, the *-que* (or *et*) adds an explanation; lit., 'a place, that is to say (*-que*), a rest'. *Mille domos*: The use of a sizeable round figure serves to emphasize how often the gods met failure before coming to Baucis and Philemon. This same idea is intensified by the repetition of the phrase and the emphatic first position it is given in each line. 282 *una*: sc. *domus* or *casa*. With *recepit*, sc. *eos*.

283 *quidem*: stresses or draws attention to the preceding word. Note the additional emphasis given to *parva* by its place at the beginning of the line. *stipulis* . . . *palustri*: the scansion will show that *tecta* is nom., whereas *canna* is abl., parallel to *stipulis*, and separated for emphasis from its adj. *palustri*. Tr. 'roofed (*tecta*) with straw and swamp reeds'. Thatched roofs are still to be found in parts of England. 284 *pia*: 'dutiful', 'good'; *pius* applied to a person implies that he is 'dutiful' in his relations to gods, state, and family. *parilique aetate*: abl. of description.

285-6 *illa* . . . *casa*: = *in illa casa*, (abl., of place where; in poetry the prep. *in* is frequently omitted) *annis* (abl. of time) *iuvenalibus iuncti*

effecere levem, nec iniqua mente ferendo.

Ergo ubi caelicolae parvos tetigere penates,  
submissoque humiles intrarunt vertice postes,

290 membra senex posito iussit relevare sedili,  
quo superiniecit textum rude sedula Baucis.

*sunt, in illa casa consenuerunt.* The affection felt by Baucis and Philemon for the house is emphasized by a number of devices: (1) the repetition of *illa*; (2) the position of *illa* both at the beginning and at the end of the line; (3) the alliteration in *iuncti iuvenalibus*, resulting from the separation of *iuncti* from *sunt* and of *iuvenalibus* from *annis*; and the alliteration in *consenuere casa*, resulting from the separation of *casa* from *illa*; (4) the sharp contrast between *consenuere* and *iuvenalibus*. *consenuere*: note the sharp contrast with *iuvenalibus*, and its emphatic position at the beginning of the line. The life-span of the old couple seems to be suggested by the separation of *illa* and *casa* (*Introduction*, I, 4, b).

286 *paupertatem*: direct obj. of *effecere*, and also to be understood with the gerunds *fatendo* and *ferendo*.

287 *levem*: pred. adj., mod. *paupertatem*, and completing the verb *effecere*. *nec iniqua menta*: 'in no discontented spirit', 'with a contented mind'; *nec iniqua* = *et aequa*.

288 *Ergo*: used mostly in logical reasoning; *itaque* and *igitur* are more common. *parvos* . . . *Penates*: 'humble home'. The *Penates* were the gods of the store-room. Here the word is used to refer, not to the household gods themselves, but to the home represented by them. When one word (*Penates*) is used for another (*domus*) because of some actual relation between the things signified, the figure of speech is called

metonymy. The two words *parvos* and *Penates* have been separated to allow the juxtaposition of *caelicolae* and *parvos*, and the contrast between the 'heaven-dwellers' and the 'humble' home they are entering (*Introduction*, I, 4, d, iii.)

289 *submisso vertice*: abl. abs. What impression of the house do you get on reading the first two words of the line (*submissoque humiles*)? For the juxtaposition of these two words see *Introduction*, I, 4, d, i. Notice also that the verb *intrarunt* (= *intraverunt*) has been displaced as last word in its clause to give more emphasis to the more important words *vertice postes*. *postes*: lit. 'door posts'. Often a part of an object is used to refer to the entire object. Here, *postes* means not just the posts, but the whole doorway. The use of a part to represent the whole is called synecdoche.

290 *membra*: dir. obj. of *relevare*; it may be omitted in translation. *iussit*: sc. *eos*. *posito* . . . *sedili*: abl. abs. Tr. by a main verb, parallel to *iussit*, and with *senex* as subj. of both verbs.

291 *quo*: adv., 'on which'; lit. 'to where'. *textum rude sedula Baucis*: for the effect of the juxtaposition of *rude* and *sedula*, see *Introduction*, I, 4, d, iv. The 'coverlet' (*textum*) is 'coarsely woven' (*rude*), but the hostess, Baucis, is 'attentive' (*sedula*). The generous hospitality of the impoverished peasants to their divine but unrecognized guests suggests a moral to all

Inde foco tepidum cinerem dimovit, et ignes  
suscitat hesternos foliisque et cortice sicco  
nutrit, et ad flammam anima producit anili.

- 295 Accubuere dei. Mensam succincta tremensque  
ponit anus, mensae sed erat pes tertius impar:  
testa parem fecit.

*During the meal strange things happen.*

Interea totiens haustum cratera reperi

those who read the passage. In spite of the meagreness both of her furniture and of the food she can offer, Baucis still offers the best she has. 292 *foco* : abl. of separation, without the prep. *a*. *tepidum* : still warm after yesterday's fire (*ignes* . . . *hesternos*). *dimovit* : 'stirred', 'raked'. 292-3 *ignes suscitāt hesternos* : each of these three words derives emphasis from its position: *ignes* is last in its line; *suscitat* is first in its line; and *hesternos* is separated from *ignes* for emphasis; 'embers—yesterday's embers'; *suscitat* is an example of the vivid historical present tense, usually to be translated by a past tense; so too *nutrit*, *producit*, (l. 294), *ponit* (l. 296), and many other verbs later in the poem.

294 *ad* . . . *anili* : *anima* is abl. of means; its adj. *anili* must be equivalent here to 'feeble'. The word order plays an important part in producing this delightful picture of the old woman; *anili* is separated from *anima* for emphasis and displaces the vb. *producit* as the important last word in the line. See *Introduction*, I, 4, b.

295 *Accubuere dei* : the Romans of Ovid's time were in the habit of reclining at meals on couches placed around a central *mensa* which held the food. The setting of this story is

presumably centuries before the time of Ovid, but by an "anachronism" the poet introduces into his story the table manners of a later age. For the emphatic position of the verb *Accubuere*, see *Introduction*, I, 4a.

295-6 *Mensam* . . . *ponit* : 'set the table'.

295 *succincta* : 'with her dress tucked up', by a cord around her waist over which the robe was bloused. With the hem of her dress thus out of the way, Baucis was able to bustle about more freely.

296 *mensae sed* : = *sed mensae*. *impar* : 'unequal', i.e. 'too short'. The reference to a table with one leg too short strikes a familiar note for most readers and Ovid's popularity is due in part to the homely pictures he draws from everyday experience. Ovid uses *tertius* because the table has three legs.

297 *testa parem fecit* : sc. *mensam*; 'a potsherd (or 'a broken bit of pottery') made the table level', i.e. propped up the short leg to the proper height. A *testa* was often a broken bit of pottery used either for writing upon or for other useful purposes about the house.

At this point in the story follows a description of the humble meal served to the gods. The food was all produced on the land of Baucis and





Courtesy, Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna

### A FEAST FIT FOR THE GODS

Jupiter and Mercury at last find hospitality in a poor home.

sponte sua, per seque vident succrescere vina.

300 Attoniti novitate pavent, manibusque supinis  
concipiunt Baucisque preces timidusque Philemon,

Philemon—cabbage, pork, ripe and green olives, cornel-cherries pickled in brine, endives, radishes, cheese eggs and wine. For dessert, nuts, dates, grapes, plums, apples and honey were served.

298 cratera : a Greek acc., subj. of the infin. *repleri* in an indir. statement gov. by *vident*. The *crater* was the bowl used by the Greeks and Romans in mixing water and wine; for they did not drink their wine undiluted.

299 succrescere : 'was supplied anew'. *vina* : Roman poets frequently

used a plural where a singular would be expected. This use of the poetic plural was often prompted by the sound of the line or by the requirement of the metre. Other examples of the poetic plural in this poem are *tecta* (l. 313), *delubra* (l. 321), *busta* (l. 324), *vota* (l. 325).

300 novitate : 'strange sight'. *supinis* : ordinarily means 'lying on the back'. Applied to hands it would mean 'with palms up', 'uplifted'. The customary Roman attitude of prayer was with arms raised and the palms uplifted.



et veniam dapibus nullisque paratibus orant.  
Unicus anser erat, minimae custodia villae,  
quem dis hospitibus domini mactare parabant.

- 305 Ille celer penna tardos aetate fatigat,  
eluditque diu, tandemque est visus ad ipsos  
confugisse deos. Superi vetuere necari.

*The vengeance of the gods.*

- 'Di' que 'sumus, meritasque luet vicinia poenas  
impia,' dixerunt. 'Vobis immunibus huius  
310 esse mali dabitur. Modo vestra relinquit tecta  
ac nostros comitate gradus et in ardua montis  
ite simul!' . . . Flexere oculos et mersa palude

301 concipiunt . . . preces : 'uttered prayers'. Note the emphatic position of *concupiunt*.

302 nullisque paratibus : dat. of int., applied here to things rather than to persons; *nullis*, 'lack of'.

303 Unicus : emphatic position. With *erat*, sc. *eis* (dat. of poss.). *custodia*: nom., in app. to *anser*; it is emphatically framed by the separated words *minimae villae*. Cf. the story of how the sacred geese on the Capitoline Hill in Rome saved the citadel from a surprise attack by the Gauls. The goose from that time on enjoyed a reputation among the Romans as a watchman. *villae* : the original meaning of *villa* was 'farm-house', as here. It later developed the idea of a summer house in which a city-dweller could take refuge from the heat of the city. Many of the most influential families in Rome built country homes of an elaborate nature, and the English word "villa" still suggests this meaning.

304 domini : 'the hosts'.

305 celer . . . aetate : *penna*: abl. of respect; *aetate*, abl. of cause (= *propter aetatem*). The juxtaposition of these balanced pairs, describing

the goose on the one hand and the old peasants on the other, produces a sharp contrast. See *Introduction*, I, 4.

306 est visus . . . confugisse : 'was seen to have fled for refuge'.

307 Superi vetuere necari : the killing of the goose would have been the ultimate in hospitality. The gods apparently were willing to take the thought for the deed.

308 Dique sumus : = *Et 'di sumus'*. *meritas luet* . . . *poenas* : 'will pay the punishment it deserves', 'will be punished as it deserves'.

309-310 Vobis . . . dabitur : Construe in this order : *Vobis dabitur esse immunibus huius mali*; lit. 'to you it will be granted to be free from this disaster'.

310 tecta : poetic plural; see the note on *vina* (l. 299). Notice that the emphatic separation of *vestra* and *tecta* is paralleled by the emphatic separation of *nostros* and *gradus* in l. 311. In both clauses the verbs are displaced from the last position. See *Introduction*, I, 4. b.

311 in ardua montis : 'onto the steep slopes of yonder hill'.

312 Flexere : = *Reflexere*. *mersa* : modifies *cetera*.

cetera prospiciunt, tantum sua tecta manere.

Dumque ea mirantur, dum deflent fata suorum,

- 315 illa vetus dominis etiam casa parva duobus  
vertitur in templum.

*The reward.*

Talia tum placido Saturnius edidit ore:

'Dicite, iuste senex et femina coniuge iusto  
digna, quid optetis.' Cum Baucide pauca locutus,

- 320 iudicium superis aperit commune Philemon:

'Esse sacerdotes delubraque vestra tueri  
poscimus; et quoniam concordēs egimus annos,  
auferat hora duos eadem, nec coniugis umquam  
busta meae videam, neu sim tumulandus ab illa.'

- 325 Vota fides sequitur: templi tutela fuere,

313 cetera : 'the rest of the country-side'; Latin often uses a neuter pl. adj. as a noun. tantum : adv., 'only'.  
314 deflent : 'weep over'. suorum : 'of their neighbours'.

315 illa . . . duobus : construe in this order : *illa vetus casa, parva etiam duobus dominis*. Emphasis results from the separation of *dominis* and *duobus*, with *duobus* occupying the important last position.

316 vertitur in templum : the thread of connection which holds together all the poems of Ovid's *Metamorphoses* is the change of form with which so many of the tales of mythology abound.

317 Saturnius : 'son of Saturn', i.e. Jupiter; for this naming by allusion, see *Introduction*, I, 2. placido . . . ore : 'calmly'.

318 iuste : 'good', 'righteous'; voc. with *senex*. coniuge : abl., gov. by *digna*.

319 optetis : subj. in an indir. quest. Cum Baucide pauca locutus : Ovid adds a knowing touch as to what ac-

tions help to produce a happy marriage.

320 iudicium . . . commune : 'their joint decision'.

321 Esse, tueri : in prose, *poscimus* would be followed by *ut* with the subj. in an indir. com.

322 concordēs : 'in perfect harmony'; this adj. is probably nom. plur., but it might be taken as acc. plur. with *annos*.

323-324 auferat, videam, sim : optative subj., expressing the pathetic wishes of an old, but happily-married couple. duos eadem : juxtaposition producing sharp contrast. See *Introduction*, I, 4, d.

324 neu sim tumulandus : 'and not have to be buried'; pass. periphrastic expressing necessity or obligation. ab illa : 'by her'; instead of a dat. of agent which would have been more usual with the gerundive *tumulandus*.

325 tutela : a sing. abstract noun referring to the joint custodians of the temple. A similar use of abstract for concrete has already occurred in *vi-*

donec vita data est. Annis aevoque soluti  
ante gradus sacros cum starent forte locique  
narrarent casus, frondere Philemona Baucis,  
Baucida conspexit senior frondere Philemon.

- 330 Iamque super geminos crescente cacumine vultus  
mutua, dum licuit, reddebant dicta, 'Vale' que  
'O coniunx' dixere simul, simul abdita texit  
ora frutex.

(*Metamorphoses*, VIII, 626 ff)

## Selections from Juvenal

### The Satires

#### *The Theme of the Satires*

Ex quo Deucalion, nimbis tollentibus aequor,

*cinia* (l. 308), and in *custodia* (l. 303).

326 *donec* : 'as long as'. *Annis aevoque soluti* : for hendiadys, see note on l. 281; lit. 'spent (or enfeebled), with years, that is, with age'; more freely: 'spent (or enfeebled), with the infirmity of age'.

327-328 *locique narrarent casus* : 'and were recalling incidents connected with the place'. The subs. *starent* and *narrarent*, are gov. by *cum*-temporal referring to the past. 328 *frondere Philemona Baucis* : sc. *conspexit*. This is the second change of form contained in the poem. See note on l. 316. *Philemona* : Greek acc.; so too *Baucida* (l. 329).

330 *Iamque . . . vultus* : Construe as follows : *Et cacumine iam crescente* (abl. abs.) *super geminos vultus* (separated for emphasis); tr. 'with the tree-tops already growing over their two faces'.

331 *mutua . . . dicta* : 'while they might (*dum licuit*, an example of *dum* gov. a verb in the same tense as the main verb, when the sense is

'all the time while') they exchanged words'. Notice the emphatic separation of *mutua* from *dicta*, and its important place as first word in the line; even in their last moments the old couple's thoughts were of each other. 'Vale' que : See use of *-que* in l. 308. The word *vale* was used by the Romans to mean 'Farewell', or 'Good-bye'.

332 *coniunx* : as the word means 'partner' or 'mate', it is a useful word in this context since it applies to both husband and wife.

332-333 *abdita . . . ora* : 'their faces, which were already hidden (by the bark)'. Notice that the separation of these two words makes possible the juxtaposition of *ora* and *frutex*, in which we have a vivid "before" and "after" picture of the metamorphosis; before, human faces (*ora*); after, foliage (*frutex*).

334 The gist of the following lines is that Juvenal's book is a hodge-podge, concerned with all the activities, emotions and passions of men since the Flood. He goes on to say that

335 navigio montem ascendit sortesque poposcit,  
 paulatimque anima caluerunt mollia saxa,  
 et maribus vivas ostendit Pyrrha puellas,  
 quidquid agunt homines, votum, timor, ira, voluptas,  
 gaudia, discursus, nostri farrago libelli est.

(Satire I, 81-86)

the degenerate condition of the Rome of his day presents a rich field for satire.

A satire was originally a kind of poetic medley set to music and sung on the primitive stage of early times. Italian humour was blunt and coarse, going directly to the point. Juvenal used satire to hold up the vice and folly of his age to ridicule, attacking them with irony and sarcasm.

334 Ex quo : sc. *tempore*, 'ever since'. Deucalion : In the ancient Greek version of the story of the Flood that destroyed mankind, Deucalion corresponds to Noah and Mt. Parnassus to Mt. Ararat.

Deucalion was the son of Prometheus ('Forethought'). After Zeus had decided to destroy mankind since it had become so degenerate, he saved Deucalion and his wife Pyrrha because of their goodness. Deucalion was advised by his father to build a ship, and when Zeus sent a nine day flood over the earth, the ship floated in safety until it came to rest on Mount Parnassus, near Delphi, in Phocis. Deucalion and his wife visited the Delphic sanctuary of Themis to ask how the race of man might be restored. They were told to cover their heads and throw the bones of their mother behind them. The bones, they finally decided, meant the stones of Mother Earth. When they threw stones behind them, those thrown by Pyrrha sprang up into women, those by Deucalion into men.

The story is beautifully told by

Ovid, (Met. I, 260 ff.).

Themis is said to be the personification of the order of things established by law and custom, whence she is described as reigning in the assemblies of men and convening those of the gods. As a prophetic deity, she is said to have been in possession of the Delphic oracle. Later, the god Apollo became the patron of this oracle.

tollentibus aequor : 'raising the water level'; *aequor*, acc.

335 sortes : 'The answer of the oracle'. It was Italian practice to give responses of an oracle by lot, i.e. wooden tablets with different inscriptions shaken out of a box or else shuffled and drawn. Responses of the oracle in a Greek temple were usually given by word of mouth, as at Delphi. montem : Parnassus, near Delphi, in Greece. The idea of climbing a mountain in a ship suggests incredulity on the part of Juvenal toward the entire myth.

337 maribus : from *mās* (NOT from *mare*). maribus . . . puellas : a situation presumably at the root of all troubles which were to befall mankind! Notice how the separation of *vivas* from *puellas* results in the emphatic juxtaposition of *maribus* and *vivas*, and in the alliteration of *Pyrrha puellas*.

339 discursus : lit., 'running to and fro'; used commonly to denote the aimless activity of idle persons. Tr. by some such word as 'distractions'. farrago : derived from *fār*, 'coarse



## The Sportula

*The sportula is a boon to all.*

340

Nunc sportula primo

limine parva sedet turbae rapienda togatae.

Ille tamen faciem prius inspicit et trepidat, ne

grain, corn', it is properly a mixture of various grains given to cattle in the form of a mash. Here it refers to the mixture of topics to be treated by Juvenal in his *Satires*. *libelli*: might mean a volume of satires, or only the one satire in which these lines occur.

340 Nunc: 'now-a-days'. Juvenal has just finished describing the immense dinner eaten by the rich man, and by way of contrast goes on to describe the present scantiness of the *sportula*, one of the standard institutions of Rome. *sportula*: 'little basket', 'dole'; a kind of regular handout given by a patron to his client, a standard feature of life in Rome under the Empire. At first clients were entertained at breakfast by their patron early in the morning and then accompanied him on his rounds to the *forum* as a mark of respect. But when clients became too numerous to be entertained in the usual way, it became the custom to give them food which they could carry away in baskets (*sportulae*); soon it became more convenient to pay the clients in money. The customary amount of the dole was *centum quadrantes* (i.e. 25 *asses* or  $6\frac{1}{4}$  *sesterces*). It is impossible to determine the equivalent purchasing power in modern times. Even now, the actual value of the dollar has varied in almost every year since the end of World War II. Assuming that the smallest unit in circulation, the

*quadrans*, roughly corresponds in purchasing power to the smallest practical unit in our own system, the nickel, we get the following ratio: *quadrans*=5 cents, *as*=20 cents, *sestertius*=80 cents. Thus the amount of the *sportula* may have been as high as \$5.00; it was certainly not lower than half a day's pay of an average labourer. However, this dole was not bestowed daily. More probably it was handed out every several days, and was exactly regulated on the account books kept by the steward of the *patronus*.

340-341 primo limine: 'at the outer threshold'; the prep. *in* is often omitted in poetry. Notice the emphatic position given both words, an indication of Juvenal's scorn; the clients don't even get inside the patron's home now! There is a similar indication of scorn in the late introduction of *parva* as a modifier of *sportula*.

341 *turbæ rapienda togatae*: = *rapienda* ('ready to be snatched') *turbæ togatae* (dat. of agent with the gerundive). Notice how the separation of *togatae* from *turbæ* gives added sting to Juvenal's scorn for the situation by giving *togatae* the emphatic last position; the formal garb of the Roman citizen, the *toga*, has degenerated into something one must wear in order to qualify for a handout!

342 Ille tamen: 'Just the same (i.e., in spite of the scantiness of the dole)



A MORNING SCENE IN THE HOME OF A ROMAN PATRON

suppositus venias ac falso nomine poscas.

Agnitus accipies; iubet a praecone vocari

345 ipsos Troiugenas; nam vexant limen et ipsi  
nobiscum. 'Da Praetori, da deinde Tribuno.'

the steward (who dispenses the *sportula* on behalf of his master the *patronus*)'

343 *suppositus*: 'under false pretences'. *falso nomine*: abl. abs., 'under an assumed name'. *venias* . . . *poscas*: subj. in a clause of fearing after *trepidat*.

344 *accipies*: sc. *sportulam*. So too with *poscas* in l. 343 and *Da* in l. 346.

345 *ipsos Troiugenas*: 'even (*ipsos*) the bluebloods'; Juvenal means members of the old Roman nobility, supposedly descended from the Trojan Aeneas. Some of the waiting throng are noblemen whose fortunes have sunk low. *vexant*: 'infest'. *et ipsi*: 'even they (*ipsi*) too (*et* = *etiam*)'.

Notice the emphatic position of these words.

346 *Da Praetori, da deinde Tribuno*: the steward (*ille*, l. 342) speaks these words to a slave. Notice that even holders of public office are to be found in the throng waiting for the handout! Juvenal draws a very unflattering picture of them jostling one another in the line-up for the dole, while preserving some semblance of dignity by accepting it in order of rank. The praetor is served first, as the senior magistrate. Candidates for public office in Rome had to pass through the following magistracies, allowing at least one year between any two of these offices: *quaestor*, *tribunus plebis* or *curulis*

*An ancient 'racket'.*

- Sed cum summus honor finito computet anno,  
 sportula quid referat, quantum rationibus addat,  
 quid facient comites, quibus hinc toga, calceus hinc est  
 350 et panis fumusque domi? Densissima centum  
 quadrantes lectica petit, sequiturque maritum  
 languida vel defessa et circumducitur uxor.  
 Hic petit absenti, nota iam callidus arte,  
 ostendens vacuum et clausam pro coniuge sellam.  
 355 'Galla mea est,' inquit; 'citius dimitte; moraris.'  
 'Profer, Galla, caput.' 'Noli vexare, quiescit.'

*aedilis, praetor, consul.* This sequence of office-holding was called *cursus honorum*. Cum summus honor . . . computet : 'since (*cum* is causal, but English may also use 'when' here in a causal sense) the consul (*summus honor*, the highest officer of the state) makes up his books'. The consul is going through his own private accounts, and may decide to economize by curtailing his handouts.

348 referat: 'brings him in'; subj. in an ind. quest. So too *addat; sportula*, the subj. of both questions is given the emphatic first position in the line, displacing *quid. rationibus*: 'to his accounts', i.e. 'to his income', 'to his revenue'.

349 comites : = *clientes*, the poor clients who accompany their patron through the day. quibus . . . est : 'whose (*quibus*, dat. of poss.) toga and shoes come (*est*, to be taken twice, once with *toga*, and once with *calceus*) from this source (*hinc*, i.e. from the *sportula*)' *calceus* : the correct 'full-dress' boot to be worn with the *toga*. It was often made of black leather, and its fastenings were thongs wound round the bottom of the leg and tied in front.

350 fumus : 'firing', 'fuel'. domi :

contrasts their wants at home (*panis, fumus*), with clothing they wear abroad (*toga, calceus*).

350-351 Densissima . . . lectica : 'The closely packed throng in litters'; *lectica* is used to denote those carried in the litters. The whole idea of a crowd of people going to collect their 'handout' in a fleet of taxicabs is intentionally ludicrous. centum quadrantes : the regular amount of the dole. (See note on *sportula*, l. 340). 352 languida vel defessa : apparently the dole had to be collected personally, regardless of the health of the recipient. circumducitur : presumably she 'goes the rounds' with her husband to several houses in succession.

353 Hic petit absenti : = *Hic cliens sportulam petit uxori absenti*. nota : indicates either that he is an old hand at the trick, or perhaps that the trick itself is well-known; 'practising a crafty trick which is now threadbare': construe *iam* with *nota*; *arte* is probably abl. of respect.

354 pro coniuge : *pro* means 'in place of', 'instead of'. Notice how skilfully placed is this phrase, which puts the 'wife' inside the 'closed (covered) sedan chair'.

355 est : 'it is'; spoken by the crafty husband to the steward.

*The clients keep trying.*

Iipse dies pulchro distinguitur ordine rerum:  
sportula, deinde forum, iurisque peritus Apollo.

Vestibulis abeunt veteres lassique clientes

360 vota que deponunt, quamquam longissima cenae  
spes homini: caulis miseris atque ignis emendus.

Optima silvarum interea pelagique vorabit  
rex horum, vacuisque toris tantum ipse iacebit.

(Satire I, 95 ff)

### *Living Conditions in Rome: The Threat of Fire.*

Quis timet aut timuit gelida Praeneste ruinam?

355 citius dimitte : sc. *nos*; *citius* is abs. comp., 'fairly soon', i.e. 'quickly'.  
moraris : trans., sc. *nos*; 'you're holding us up'.

356 Noli vexare : sc. *eam*; spoken by the husband in reply to the suspicious steward's request '*Profer, Galla, caput*'.

357 pulchro . . . ordine rerum : 'with a glorious succession of engagements'; Juvenal is being sarcastic; note how the sarcasm is highlighted by the emphatic position of *pulchro*.  
358 Apollo : in the forum of Augustus was to be found an ivory statue of Apollo, who is called 'versed in law' because he was always listening to the lawyers who were contesting cases in his presence.

359 Vestibulis : abl. of sep. without the prep. *ab*. The 'approach' or 'drive' leading from the street to the door of a rich man's house often took the form of a porch in which the clients sat.

Juvenal in this line makes a sudden shift from the law courts to the dinner-hour, although he had hinted (l. 358-359) that he would treat the events of the day in detail. *veteres* : the clients have 'grown old in the service' of the rich man.

360 vota : 'their hopes', i.e. of being invited to stay to dinner after their arduous attendance on their patron through the day. *longissima* . . . homini : 'a man's (*homini*, dat. of poss.) hope of dinner dies hard (*longissima*, sc. *est*, lit., 'is a very long one').'

361 miseris : dat. of agent with *emendus*. *emendus* : agrees with the nearer of the two subjects; sc. *est*.  
362 Optima : 'the finest products', a neut. pl. adj. used as a noun.

363 rex horum : i.e. the patron of these clients; the title *rex* is sarcastic, like our 'the great man'. *vacuis toris* : abl. of place without the prep. *in*. *tantum* : adv.; here, 'alone'.

364 gelida Praeneste : abl. of place without the prep. *in*; the loc. would have been used if the adj. *gelida* had not been added. The name is usually neut., but here fem., as the adj. shows. *Praeneste* was a town in *Latium*, 23 miles east of Rome. It is used here to represent the smaller, safer, more salubrious town as opposed to the big city. For this use of vivid particularization see *Introduction*, I, 2. *ruinam* : 'the falling of a house'.



- 365 Nos urbem colimus tenui tibicine fultam  
 magna parte sui; nam sic labentibus obstat  
 vilicus et veteris rimae contexit hiatum,  
 securos pendente iubet dormire ruina.  
 Vivendum est illic ubi nulla incendia, nulli  
 370 nocte metus. Iam poscit aquam, iam frivola transfert  
 Ucalegon; tabulata tibi iam tertia fumant;  
 tu nescis: nam si gradibus trepidatur ab imis,  
 ultimus ardebit quem tegula sola tuetur  
 a pluvia, molles ubi reddunt ova columbae.

(Satire III, 190 ff)

365-366 tenui . . . sui : 'supported, a great part of it, upon a slender prop'; *tibicen* is a 'buttress' or a 'flute-player'; a buttress supports a house just as the flute-player sustains the singer; *magna parte sui*, a type of abl. of resp. It is to be gathered that a great many of Rome's buildings were prevented from falling by the merest prop.

365 fultam : from *fulcio*.

366 sic : i.e. *tenui tibicine*. *labentibus* : probably neut., sc. *aedificiis*, 'tottering buildings'. The dat. is gov. by *ob* - in the compound verb *obstat*.  
 367 vilicus : originally the steward of a farm, later applied to the superintendent of any other project. Here it means the agent of the owner.

368 securos . . . ruina : = *nos securos dormire iubet pendente ruina* (abl. abs., 'while destruction hangs over our heads'). Notice the effect of the separation of *ruina* from *pendente*; the line opens in peace (*securus*) and ends with the crash (*ruina*).

369 Vivendum est : sc. *mihi* (dat. of agent), 'I must live'; the gerundive is here used impersonally in the pass. periphrastic conj. *illic ubi* : 'in a place where'.

370 Iam : introduced and repeated to make the scene more graphic. pos-

cit aquam : evidently the practical Roman, in case of fire, shouted "Water!", not "Fire!"

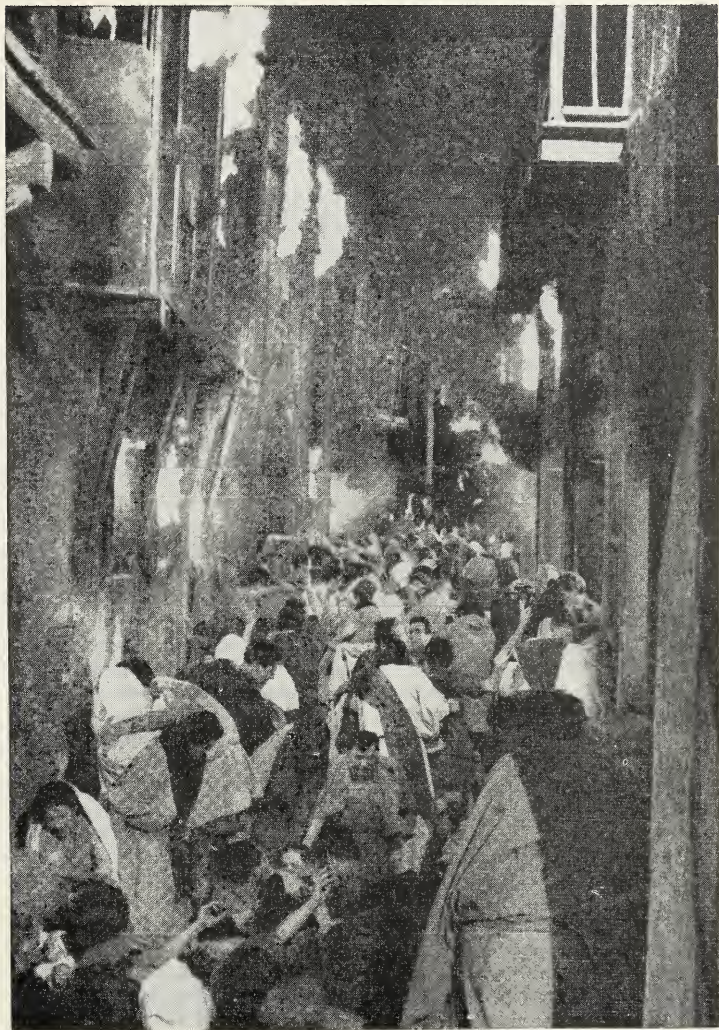
371 Ucalegon : Juvenal names the Trojan Ucalegon, having in mind Aeneas' description of the burning of Troy (Aen. ii, 310), where Ucalegon is mentioned as a next-door neighbour (*proximus*) whose house is ablaze (*ardet*). *tabulata tibi tertia* : 'the third storey (*tabulata*, poetic pl.) of the house in which you live (*tibi*, dat. of int., lit., 'for you')'. Notice the alliteration, and the long quantity of the final *i* in *tibi* for purposes of scansion.

372 trepidatur : impers. pass., 'the alarm is spread'. *gradibus . . . ab imis* : 'at the foot of the stairs'; as usual, the Latin prefers to speak of the noise as coming 'from' (*ab*) that quarter.

373 ultimus ardebit : 'he will be the last to burn'. *tegula sola* : sing. used for the pl., as is often the case in poetry; 'only the tiles'. The house is three storeys high, the third one (the attic) being described here.

374 ubi : 'where' reddunt : 'lay'.

Juvenal goes on to say that when the poor man loses all his possessions, no one will contribute to HIS relief-fund. But when the rich man's house burns, he is aided generously



*Scene from M.G.M.'s 'Quo Vadis'*

THE THREAT OF FIRE WAS ALWAYS PRESENT IN ROME

## Selections from Catullus

### A Dinner Invitation

- 375 *Cenabis bene, mi Fabulle, apud me  
paucis, si tibi di favent, diebus,  
si tecum attuleris bonam atque magnam  
cenam non sine candida puella  
et vino et sale et omnibus cachinnis.*
- 380 *Haec si, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,  
cenabis bene: nam tui Catulli  
plenus sacculus est aranearum.  
Sed contra accipies meros amores  
seu quid suavius elegantiusve est.*
- 385 *Nam unguentum dabo quod meae puellae  
donarunt Veneres Cupidinesque,*

by those who are ambitious to inherit his money. A poor man can afford an excellent house in the country for which he pays less rent than for a squalid room in the city.

375 *mi Fabulle*: a close friend of whom little else is known; *mi*, 'my friend', or else omit.

376 *tibi*: humorously substituted for *mihi*. Catullus has reversed the usual polite formula of invitations, and is really saying 'YOU have the pleasure'. *di*: = *dei*.

377 *bonam atque magnam*: i.e. of fine quality and with many courses; omit *atque* in translation. If he is to dine, Fabullus must provide the meal, even to the salt (*sale*), and also the entertainment (*cachinnis*)! Notice the humorous repetition of *et*, as Catullus keeps on adding items to his friend's shopping list.

378 *non sine: 'together with'. candida puella*: a mark of feminine beauty among the Roman aristocrats was a

radiant white skin which had been shielded from the sun. By contrast, a peasant girl's skin would be tanned and darker.

380 *venuste noster*: *venustus* indicates the possession of charming and gracious social manners; 'my charming fellow'.

382 *plenus . . . aranearum*: an ingenious word arrangement. 'FULL is your Catullus' purse—of COB-WEBS'.

383 *contra*: 'in return'. *meros amores*: *merus* usually refers to wine to which water has not been added, i.e. 'unmixed', 'pure'; tr., 'my hearty affection'. Note the poetic plural.

384 *seu . . . est*: 'and something that is more sweet and exquisite'; lit., 'or if there is something . . .'. Catullus means the *unguentum* (l. 385) which his lady (*puellae*) will be wearing.

385 *unguentum*: a standard part of any expensive feast. *meae puellae*:



quod tu cum olfacies, deos rogabis  
totum ut te faciant, Fabulle, nasum.

(Poem 13)

### What a Girl!

Ille mi par esse deo videtur,  
390 ille, si fas est, superare divos,  
qui sedens adversus identidem te  
spectat et audit  
dulce ridentem, misero quod omnes  
eripit sensus mihi; nam simul te,  
395 Lesbia, aspexi, nihil est super mi  
vocis in ore;  
lingua sed torpet, tenues sub artus  
flamma demanat, sonitu suoapte  
tintinant aures, gemina teguntur  
400 lumina nocte.

(Poem 51)

probably Lesbia, made famous by Catullus' verses.

386 Veneres Cupidinesque: a poetic pl. suggesting the many 'charms' and 'graces' of Venus and her mischievous son Cupid.

387 quod . . . olfacies: *quod* is coord. rel.; 'and when you smell IT'.

388 totum . . . nasum: *nasum* comes as a surprise ending, as in *arane-arum*, l. 382. Notice too the emphatic separation of *totum* and *nasum*; their distance apart tempts us to think of the length of the nose!

389 mi: = *mihi*; so too in l. 395.

390 si fas est: 'if religion allow'. *superare*: sc. *videtur*.

391 adversus identidem te: 'opposite (or, beside) you — again and again'; notice how the word order gives emphasis both to the adverb and to the pron.

393 dulce ridentem: lit., '(you) laughing sweetly', i.e. 'the music of your laughter'.

393-394 quod . . . mihi: = *id quod* ('a situation which', the privilege of being in your presence) *misero* (separated from *mihi* for emphasis) *mihi* (dat. of int. gov. by a verb of taking away) *omnes* (emphatically placed) *sensus* (acc. pl.) *eripit*. Freely, 'Why (*misero*), it (*quod*) robs me of all my senses!'

394 simul: = *simul atque*.

395 nihil . . . ore: 'no sound (*nihil*) of voice is left within my (*mi* = *mihi*) mouth'.

397 sed: 'instead'.

397-398 tenues . . . demanat: 'films of fire filter to the depths of my frame'.

398 suoapte: = *suo*, 'quite their own'; *-pte* is an emphatic suffix.

399 tintinant aures: he hears bells, apparently. *gemina*: abl. mod. *nocte*, although it belongs in meaning to *lumina*; 'both my eyes'. Such an adjective is called a transferred epithet.



## Selections from Martial

### *Now, Aelia, You May Cough in Peace*

Si memini, fuerant tibi quattuor, Aelia, dentes:

expulit una duos tussis et una duos.

Iam segura potes totis tussire diebus:

nil istic quod agat tertia tussis habet. (I-19)

### *"I Do Not Love Thee, Doctor Fell"*

405 Non amo te, Sabidi, nec possum dicere quare:

hoc tantum possum dicere, non amo te. (I-22)

### *A Study in Black and White*

Spectabat modo solus inter omnes

nigris munus Horatius lacernis,

cum plebs et minor ordo maximusque

410 sancto cum duce candidus sederet.

Toto nix cecidit repente caelo:

albis spectat Horatius lacernis. (IV-2)

402 duos : sc. *dentes*. Notice the juxtaposition of *una* and *duos* (one cough, two teeth).

403 totis: used in a broad sense to include number (*omnis*) as well as entirety (*totus*); 'all day, every day'. Notice the explosive alliteration with *tussire*.

404 nil . . . habet: lit., 'a third cough has nothing there which it can drive (out)'; i.e. 'there is nothing that a third cough can damage'; *agat* is subj. in a rel. cl. of purp.

405-406 Compare the verses written by Thomas Brown (1663-1704) about Dr. John Fell, Dean of Christ Church, Oxford, about 1670: "I do not love thee, Doctor Fell: The reason why I cannot tell: But this I know, and know full well, I do not love thee, Doctor Fell." Sabidi: voc. *tantum*: adv. 'only'.

407 modo: adv., 'a while ago', 'recently'. solus: Horatius was 'the only one' . . . to watch the games clad in black; everyone else was

wearing the usual winter white *lucerna*. Perhaps Horatius was absent-minded!

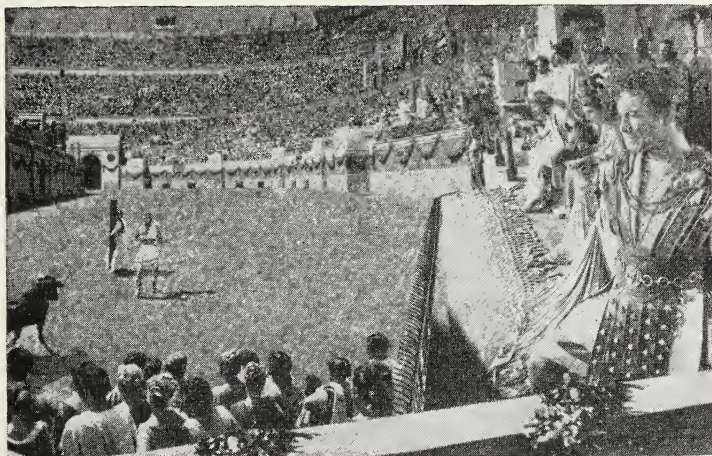
408 munus: a gladiatorial show. nigris . . . lacernis: abl. of desc.; 'clad in a black cloak'. Observe the emphatic position of *nigris*; the plural is poetic.

409 minor ordo maximusque: 'men of every station, lowly and exalted'; *ordo* means 'class', 'station', referring to the grades of society in Rome—patricians, knights, plebeians, clients, freedmen, and slaves.

410 sancto cum duce: the emperor, whose person was sacred; probably Domitian. candidus: 'arrayed in white'.

411 Toto . . . caelo: abl. of separation, without *ab*. Notice the emphatic position given each of the two words.

412 albis . . . lacernis: notice the emphatic position of *albis*, and also the contrast between this line and l. 408.

Scene from M.G.M.'s *'Quo Vadis'*

EVERYONE IN ROME WENT TO THE GAMES

*To a Schoolteacher*

Quid tibi nobiscum est, ludi scelerate magister,  
invisum pueris virginibusque caput?

415 Nondum cristati rupere silentia galli:

murmure iam saevo verberibusque tonas.

Tam grave percussis incudibus aera resultant,

413 Quid tibi nobiscum est: lit., 'what is there with us to you?'; i.e. 'what have you to do with us?' ludi: the elementary school in Rome was the *ludus*. Classes began before daybreak; the pupils sat on low, uncomfortable stools, while the master sat at a high desk. The 3 R's formed the bulk of the curriculum, with much stress on oral recitation of Roman laws, of stories of the Trojan war, and of Roman history. The discipline was very severe, and the frequent applications of the lash could be heard all over the neighbourhood because when weather permitted, classes were held in an open air garden or even in a recess off

the street. So far as we know, Roman schools were not co-educational. 414 caput: 'person'; cf. our expression 'he's a good head'.

415 rupere: = *ruperunt*.

416 murmure: 'scolding', 'grumbling'.

417 Tam . . . resultant: = *Tam grave* (adv. 'loudly') *aera* ('the bronze', poetic plural) *resultant* ('rings') *percussis incudibus* (abl. abs., lit., 'when the anvils are hammered', i.e. 'when it is hammered upon the anvils'). Bronze was used for most statues of men on horseback, such as the one mentioned in the next line.

418 causicum . . . equo: = *cum*



DISCIPLINE IN A ROMAN SCHOOL WAS SEVERE AND NOISY

- causidicum medio cum faber aptat equo:  
 mitior in magno clamor furit amphitheatro,  
 420 vincenti parmae cum sua turba favet.  
 Vicini somnum non tota nocte rogamus:  
 nam vigilare leve est, pervigilare grave est.  
 Discipulos dimitte tuos. Vis, garrule, quantum  
 accipis ut clames, accipere ut taceas? (IX-68)

*faber aptat causidicum* (emphatic, displacing *cum*) *in medio equo* (separated for emphasis): 'when the workman puts the lawyer on (lit., fits him to) the middle of the horse'. Martial and Juvenal make several scathing references to the lawyers' fondness for military statues of themselves.

419 in magno . . . amphitheatro: the Flavian amphitheatre, completed about fourteen years earlier. Notice the emphatic placing of *in magno* after *mitior*.

420 vincenti . . . favet: 'when his own "rooters" (*turba*) applaud the victorious shield-bearer (*parmae*; lit.

shield', dat. gov. by *favet*)'. Note the emphatic position of *vincenti parmae*. There were several classes of gladiators armed in different ways. One class carried small round shields called *parmae*. Betting was heavy and serious riots common in the arena.

421 Vicini . . . rogamus: 'We neighbours don't ask for a full night's sleep'.

423-424 Vis . . . taceas: 'Are you willing (*Vis = Visne*), chatterbox, to accept for silence (*ut taceas*, purp. cl.) as much as you receive for your shouting (*ut clames*, purp. cl.)?'



# PART III

## Selections from Ovid

### Atalanta, Girl Athlete

*Atalanta, the daughter of King Schoeneus of Boeotia, was a beautiful girl who was more interested in athletics than she was in young men. She told her suitors that she would marry the one who defeated her in a footrace—but all unsuccessful competitors were to be executed! In spite of this stipulation, many young men raced, and all lost, until Hippomenes, the son of King Megareus, came along. He came at first as a guest, to help in the judging, but he too, as we shall see, fell in love with Atalanta. From the goddess of love, Venus, he obtained three golden apples, just in case he needed help. As the story opens, he is sitting as a judge, watching other suitors race, and not at all convinced of their sanity.*

*Hippomenes changes his mind.*

425 Sederat Hippomenes cursus spectator iniqui  
et 'Petitur cuiquam per tanta pericula coniunx?'  
dixerat, ac nimios iuvenum damnarat amores;  
ut faciem et posito corpus velamine vidit,

425 Sederat : the verb is placed in the emphatic first position of the line. So too *dixerat* (l. 427), *obstipuit* (l. 429), *Dant* (l. 433). Sometimes somewhat less emphasis is given the verb by placing it first in its clause, though not first in its line e.g. *Petitur* (l. 426), *decursa . . . est* (l. 431), *pendunt* (l. 433). See *Introduction*, I, 4, a. *cursus spectator iniqui* : 'as a spectator at the unequal race'; *iniqui* is separated from its noun *cursus* (gen.) for emphasis.

It receives additional emphasis by occupying the emphatic last place in the line. Other examples of separation for emphasis are *nimios . . . amores* (l. 427), *posito . . . velamine* (l. 428), *festa . . . corona* (l. 432). See *Introduction*, I, 4, b.

426 *cuiquam* : poetic use of the dat. of agent, which is used in prose only with a gerundive. *per* : 'amid'.

427 *damnarat* : = *damnaverat*.

428 *faciem et . . . corpus* : Hippomenes first saw Atalanta's face and



- obstipuit tollensque manus 'Ignoscite,' dixit,  
 430 'quos modo culpavi nondum mihi praemia nota.'  
 Dum notat haec hospes, decursa novissima meta est,  
 et tegitur festa victrix Atalanta corona.  
 Dant gemitum victi penduntque ex foedere poenas.

*Hippomenes' proud challenge.*

- Non tamen eventu iuvenis deterritus horum  
 435 constitit in medio vultuque in virgine fixo  
 'Quid facilem titulum superando quaeris inertes?  
 Mecum confer,' ait. 'Seu me fortuna potentem

then, after she had laid aside (*posito* = *deposito*) her dressing robe, her figure.

429 ignoscite : sc. *mihi*. The raising of the arms to the sky (*manus tollens*) is a gesture of sincerity, as if he were praying to the gods.

430 quos : the understood antecedent is the voc. *iuvenes*. This group of young men had, however, already been led off to execution. *praemia* : sc. *erant*. Forms of the verb *sum* are often omitted in poetry; *praemia* is a "poetic" plural to be translated as a sing. Often this type of plural is used merely for metrical convenience. Here for instance, the singular *praemium* would have had its last syllable long by position, whereas *praemia* gives the required short syllable. So too *Signa* (l. 450).

431 haec : refers to *praemia*.

432 tegitur festa victrix Atalanta corona : notice these points : 1. *tegitur* is an historical ('vivid') present tense. These are usually to be translated by an English past tense. There are many other examples in the poem. 2. The scansion will show that *festā* is abl., mod. *coronā*, and that *Atalanta* is nom. 3. The separation of *festā* and *corona* gives *corona* the emphatic last position in the line, and also places in juxtaposition the words *festā* (festive)

and *victrix* (victorious). The *corona* was the laurel wreath of the winner.

433 victi : part. equivalent to a noun. Notice the contrast between *victi* and *victrix Atalanta*. Do the defeated young men sigh because they have lost their chance to marry Atalanta, or because they are going to lose their lives? ex : 'in accordance with'.

434 Non . . . horum : *Non* is separated from *deterritus*, and *horum* from *eventu*. Notice that the resulting position of the words pictures the fate (*eventu*) of these other young men (*horum*) as hovering around Hippomenes (*iuvenis*).

435 in medio : 'in the centre', 'in the open'.

436 Quid : 'why'? A short form for an original *ob quid?* (or *propter quid?*), = because of what? why? inertes : may refer to lack of skill ('mere amateurs'), or lack of speed ('slow-pokes'), or both. Hippomenes exhibits a typical Greek and Roman self-esteem. Notice that the separation of *quaeris* from its real object (*facilem titulum*) places it near *inertes*, the object of *superando*, so that Hippomenes seems also to be accusing Atalanta of seeking out 'slow-pokes' to defeat.

437 Seu : balanced by *seu* in l. 441. potentem : 'the winner'.

438 fecerit : fut. perf. in a more *viv*.

fecerit, a tanto non indignabere vinci.

Namque mihi genitor Megareus Onchestius: illi

440 est Neptunus avus, pronepos ego regis aquarum.

Nec virtus citra genus est; seu vincar, habebis

Hippomene victo magnum et memorabile nomen.'

### *Atalanta's reaction.*

Talia dicentem molli Schoeneia vultu

aspicit et dubitat, superari an vincere malit.

445 Atque ita 'Quis deus hunc formosis,' inquit, 'iniquus

perdere vult caraeque iubet discrimine vitae

coniugium petere hoc? Non sum, me iudice, tanti.

Nec forma tangor, (poteram tamen hac quoque tangi)

fut. cond. to express an action completed before that of the main verb (*indignabere* = *indignaberis*). Tr. by the English false (or vivid) present. *vinci* : 'of being beaten'; it is a comp. infin.

439 *mihi* : dat. of poss.; 'my'. So too *illi*. In the scansion of this line, notice that the last -i of *mihi* is long (as often), and that in *Megareus* the -eu- is a diphthong.

440 *ego* : emphatic subject of the understood verb *sum*.

441 *Nec . . . est* : 'My merit (or, prowess) is not less than (lit., does not fall short of) my lineage (or, family tree)'. *seu vincar* : balancing *Seu fecerit* (lines 437-8). The fut. *vincar* might well have been a fut. perf. like *fecerit*.

442 *Hippomene* : abl. abs., and in the emphatic first position; 'by a victory over HIPPOMENES'.

443 *Talia dicentem* : mod. *eum*, the understood obj. of *aspicit*. *molli Schoeneia vultu* : *Schoeneia* is an example of naming by allusion. So too *Hippomenes* is called *Megareus heros* in l. 455, and *proles Neptunia* in l. 461; see *Introduction*, I, 2. Notice that *molli* and *vultu* are separated for emphasis. Other examples

of separation for emphasis are *deus iniquus* (l. 445), *carae vitae* (l. 446), *coniugium hoc* (l. 447), *summam arenam* (l. 451), *viribus totis* (l. 454).

444 *dubitatur . . . malit* : 'was not sure whether (*utrum*, understood) she preferred to be beaten or to win'; *malit* is subj. in an ind. quest. The conjunctions *utrum* and *an* regularly introduce a double question.

445 *Atque ita* : = *Itaque*. *Quis deus formosis iniquus* : 'What god, unfavourable to handsome men'. *Quis* is unusual for *qui* as an interrog. adj.; *hunc*, the dir. obj. of *perdere*, has been placed in juxtaposition with *deus* to put the ideas "a god" and "this youth" in sharp contrast. See *Introduction*, I, 4, d.

446 *carae discrimine vitae* : 'at the risk (*discrimine*, a kind of abl. of means) of his very (*carae*, lit., dear) life'.

447 *coniugium hoc* : 'this marriage', 'marriage with me'. *me iudice* : abl. abs.; 'in my judgment'. *tanti* : gen. of price; 'worth so much', lit., 'of such (value)'.

448 *forma* : the scansion will show that this is abl. *poteram . . . tangi* : 'I could have been influenced'.

sed quod adhuc puer est; non me movet ipse, sed aetas.'

*The first apple helps.*

- 450 Signa tubae dederant, cum carcere pronus uterque  
 emicat, et summam celeri pede libat arenam:  
 adiciunt animos iuveni clamorque favorque  
 verbaque dicentum 'Nunc, nunc incumbere tempus!  
 Hippomene, propera! Nunc viribus utere totis!  
 455 Pelle moram, vinces!' Dubium, Megareïus heros  
 gaudeat an virgo magis his Schoeneïa dictis.  
 O quotiens, cum iam posset transire, morata est  
 spectatosque diu vultus invita reliquit!  
 Aridus e lasso veniebat anhelitus ore,  
 460 metaque erat longe. Tum denique de tribus unum

449 quod . . . est : 'by the fact that he is still a mere boy'. The *quod*-cl. is parallel to the abl. *forma*. *aetas* : 'his youthfulness'. Atalanta is trying to convince herself that her interest in Hippomenes is a sisterly one.

450-1 cum . . . emicat : 'when both darted forward from the starting-line'; *carcere* is abl. of sep., without the prep. *e*; *emicat* is hist. pres., which is sometimes used even in a sub. cl. Notice also that *emicat* is indic. because in importance it is really the main verb; usually *cum*-temporal requires the subjunctive when referring to past events.

451 summam arenam : 'the surface of the track'.

452 adiciunt . . . favorque : 'increasing (*adiciunt*, verb first for emphasis) the young man's (*iuveni*, dat. of int., or else of poss.) morale, were the shouts of encouragement (*clamorque favorque*)'; *clamorque favorque* is an example of hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units). It is probably also an example of onomatopoeia (imitative harmony), with the repetition of *-orque* representing the cheers of the crowd; *que* . . . *que* = *et* . . . *et* = 'both . . . and'.

453 verbaque dicentum : an additional subject for *adiciunt*; *dicentum*, another form of *dicentium*, mod. *spectatorum* understood. *tempus* : sc. *est*. So too with *Dubium* in l. 455. See note on *praemia*, l. 430.

454 Hippomene : a Greek voc. (not abl. as in l. 442). *utere* : imperative. 455 Pelle moram, vinces : 'Don't delay, and you will win!'; *Pelle* = *Expelle*. *Dubium* : sc. *est utrum*. For *utrum* . . . *an*, see l. 444).

456 his . . . dictis : abl. of means; 'at these words'. Notice the separation for emphasis of *his* and *dictis*, *virgo* and *Schoeneïa*, *gaudeat* and *magis*.

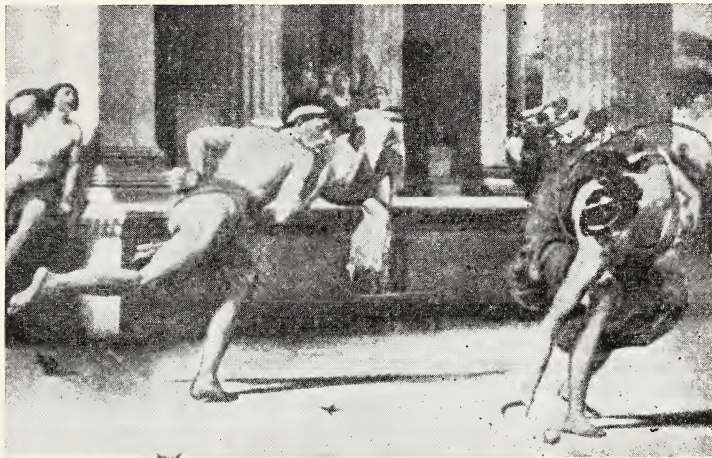
457 cum iam : 'just when'; lit., 'when already'. *transire* : = *praeterire*. So too *transit* in l. 468.

458 spectatosque . . . reliquit : 'and reluctantly abandoned her prolonged perusal of his face'.

459 Aridus e lasso : emphatic juxtaposition resulting from the separation of *Aridus* and *anhelitus*, *lasso* and *ore*; 'dry from wearied lips came his panting breath'.

460 de tribus unum : *dē* and *ex* are commoner than the part. gen. with numbers.





Courtesy Colonial Art Co.

#### ATALANTA IS DELAYED BY A GOLDEN APPLE

fetibus arboreis proles Neptunia misit.  
 Obstipuit virgo nitidique cupidine pomi  
 declinat cursus, aurumque volubile tollit:  
 praeterit Hippomenes: resonant spectacula plausu.

*The last apple decides the winner.*

465 Illa moram celeri cessataque tempora cursu  
 corrigit, atque iterum iuvenem post terga relinquit.  
 Et rursus pomi iactu remorata secundi,

461 *fetibus arboreis*: 'golden apples'. *misit*: = *emisit* = *iecit*.

462 *Obstipuit*: verb first for emphasis. Notice how this, and the separation of *nitidi* and *pomi*, present the order of events—'amazed . . . something glittering . . . an apple!' (*Introduction*, I, 4, c, i). So too in l. 471.

464 *praeterit*: verb first for emphasis; 'past her goes'.

465 *Illā . . . cursu*: *Illā* merely changes the subject from the boy to the girl. The *-que* in *cessataque* joins

*moram* and *cessata tempora*. Perhaps these form hendiadys; 'the time lost in the delay'. (See note on *clamorque favorque*, l. 452). In hendiadys, the *-que* (or *et*) adds an explanation; lit., 'the delay, that is to say (*-que*), the lost time'.

466 *post terga*: 'behind her'.

467 *rursus*: belongs with *consequitur transitque* rather than with *remorata*. She delayed (*remorata*) a second time (this would require *iterum*) because of the throwing (*iactu*, abl. of cause, instead of *ob iactum*)



consequitur transique virum. Pars ultima cursus restabat. 'Nunc,' inquit, 'ades, dea muneris auctor!'

- 470 Inque latus campi, quo tardius illa rediret,  
iecit ab obliquo nitidum iuvenaliter aurum.  
An peteret, virgo visa est dubitare: coegi  
tollere et adieci sublato pondera malo,  
impediique oneris pariter gravitate moraque.

- 475 Neve meus sermo cursu sit tardior ipso,  
praeterita est virgo: duxit sua praemia victor.

(*Metamorphoses X, 575 ff*)

of a second apple (*pomi secundi*, obj. gen.), but again (*rursus*, a third time, or more) took the lead.

468 Pars ultima cursus: 'the home stretch'; *cursus* is part. gen.

469 ades: imperative. dea: he means Venus, who had given him the gift (*muneris*) of three golden apples.

470 Inque latus: = *Et in latus*; *latus* is a noun, not an adj. quo: a conj., not an adv. It is used instead of *ut* to introduce a purp. cl. if a comparative (here, *tardius*) is contained in the clause.

471 iecit . . . nitidum . . . aurum: as in l. 462, the word order gives Atalanta's impressions — 'something thrown . . . something glittering . . . an apple!'

472 An peteret: = *Num peteret*, or *Peteretne*, an ind. quest. gov. by *dubitare*. coegi: the subject 'I' is used by the goddess Venus, who is telling the story. The understood object is *eam* (Atalanta). Was it the goddess of love, or just love, that compelled the girl to stop to pick up the apples?

473 sublato . . . malo: dat. gov. by *adieci*; 'I added weight (*pondera*, poetic plural) to the apple when she

had picked it up'. Did you look up the wrong word for *malo*? The following ancient jingle testifies that other Latin scholars have had their troubles too in finding the right word:

*Mālō*, I would rather be, (= *mālō*, I prefer)

*Mālō*, in an apple tree, (= *in mālō*, from *mālus*, -ī, f.)

*Malō* than an evil man, (= abl. of comp. from *malus*, -a, -um)

*Malō*, in adversity. (= *in malō*, from *malum*, -ī, n.)

(There is also *malus*, -ī, m., mast of a ship)

474 impedii: = *impedivi* (*eam*).

475 Neve: = *Et ne. cursu . . . ipso*: abl. of comp.

476 duxit sua praemia: 'led off (*duxit*, which also means 'married') his prize (*praemia*, poetic pl., the girl)'. Hippomenes and Atalanta did not, however, live happily ever after. Hippomenes forgot to discharge the vow he had made to the goddess Venus, who caused them to incur the displeasure of the goddess Cybele. The latter metamorphosed them into a lion and lioness to draw her chariot.

## Daedalus

*Daedalus, whose name means "Clever Craftsman", was an Athenian, and a renowned architect. According to legend, he taught his nephew his art, but then killed him out of jealousy when the pupil showed signs of excelling his teacher. Banished from Athens, Daedalus fled to the island of Crete, where he put his skill to work, as in the construction of the famous Labyrinth, which housed the Minotaur. Later he incurred the displeasure of King Minos, and was held in Crete against his will. At this point our story opens.*

*Daedalus plans to escape by air.*

Daedalus interea Creten longumque perosus  
 exsilium, tactusque loci natalis amore,  
 clausus erat pelago. 'Terras licet,' inquit, 'et undas  
 480 obstruat, at caelum certe patet; ibimus illac.  
 Omnia possideat, non possidet aëra Minos.'

477 Creten longumque exsilium : perhaps hendiadys (one idea expressed through two units); 'his long exile in Crete'. In hendiadys, the *-que* is explanatory; lit., 'Crete, that is to say, his long exile'. Creten is a Greek acc., = *Cretam*. So too *Boöten* (l. 488), and *Helicen* (l. 489); *longum* and *exsilium* are separated for emphasis, with *exsilium* in the emphatic first position in its line. See *Introduction*, I, 4, c, ii.

478 loci natalis : Daedalus was an Athenian.

479 clausus erat : 'was blocked'; the plup. often denotes a continuing state of affairs in the past, just as a perf. may denote a continuing state of affairs in the pres. The verb *clausus erat* is emphasized by being given the emphatic first position in its line. So too *obstruat* (l. 480) and many other verbs in the poem—e.g. *hortatur* (l. 497), *deseruit* (l. 500), *mollit* (l. 502), *Tabuerant* (l. 503). Sometimes somewhat less emphasis is given the verb by placing it first in the clause, though not first in its

line, e.g. *ibimus* (l. 480), *Dedit* (l. 493). See *Introduction*, I, 4, a.

481 possideat : juss. subj., with the



THE WINGS ARE MADE

*Last-minute briefing for the take-off.*

- Postquam manus ultima coepto  
 imposita est, geminas opifex libravit in alas  
 ipse suum corpus motaque pependit in aura.  
 485 Instruit et natum, 'Medio' que 'ut limite curras,  
 Icare,' ait, 'moneo, ne, si demissior ibis,  
 unda gravet pennas; si celsior, ignis adurat.  
 Inter utrumque vola. Nec te spectare Boöten

force of a concession. The words *Omnia possideat, non possidet aëra* form a 'chiasmus', so called from the Greek letter 'chi' (X) : e.g.

omnia                      possideat  
                                   X  
 possidet                    aëra

482 manus ultima : 'the finishing touches'.

483 geminas in alas : 'on the two wings'. Notice how the separation of *geminas* and *alas* gives a picture of Daedalus (*opifex*) in the centre, with a wing on either side. In this separation, *in alas* displaces the verb *libravit* in last position. Other verbs that are similarly displaced in favour of emphasized words are *pendit* (l. 484), *accommodat* (l. 491), *maduere* (l. 492), *tremuere* (l. 493), *produxit* (l. 496).

484 ipse suum corpus : *ipse* and *suum* are in emphatic juxtaposition; Daedalus himself first risks his own person before risking his son. (*Introduction*, I, 4, d). *mota pependit in aura* : 'was suspended (or, floated) in the air that he (i.e. his wings) beat'; *pendit* is from *pendeo*, I hang, (not from *pendo*, I weigh, pay), and *aura* is from *aura*, 'air' (not to be confused with *aurum*, 'gold', or with *auris*, 'ear').

485 Instruit et natum : *et* = *etiam*, an adv. In *Instruit*, the fateful nature of the step is emphasized by (1) the emphatic first position in the line; (2) the hist. (vivid) pres.

This hist. pres. is usually to be translated by an English past tense. There are other examples of it in this poem. 'Medio' que : the *-que* joins *instruit* and *inquit*; *Medio* is emphasized by its separation from *limite*; it is the word which the father wants his son to remember; 'It's a middle course I warn you to fly'; *limite* is abl. of means; *curras*, subj. in an ind. com.

486 demissior : 'too low', the abs. comp. Latin frequently uses an adj. mod. the subj. where English prefers an adv. mod. the verb.

487 gravet, adurat : subj. in purp. clauses. *si celsior, ignis adurat* : = *si celsior (ibis), ignis (pennas) adurat*. Modern science does not support Ovid's theory that a higher altitude means a higher temperature, but Ovid must be right if we judge by the way the story ends!

488 utrumque : 'the two extremes'; neut. acc. sing. of *uterque*, 'each', 'both'. *Nec . . . ensem* : 'I order you not (*iubeo nec* = *veto* in prose) to set your course by (*spectare*, lit., to look at) the Ploughman or by the Great Bear or by Orion's drawn sword'.

Daedalus is warning his son not to attempt any independent navigation. Although this is to be a daylight flight, Ovid does not hesitate to have Daedalus specify navigation by the stars, the usual method before

aut Helicen iubeo, strictumque Orionis ensem;  
 490 me duce carpe viam! Pariter praecepta volandi  
 tradit et ignotas umeris accommodat alas.

### The flight.

Inter opus monitusque genae maduere seniles,  
 et patriae tremuere manus. Dedit oscula nato  
 non iterum repetenda suo; pennisque levatus  
 495 ante volat comitique timet, velut ales, ab alto  
 quae teneram prolem produxit in aëra nido;  
 hortaturque sequi damnosasque erudit artes,  
 et movet ipse suas et nati respicit alas.

the invention of the compass. Notice also that here, as elsewhere, Latin poetry avoids vague generalization ('any stars') and substitutes vivid particularization (*Boötes*, *Helice*, *Orion*). The brightest star in the constellation *Boötes* is *Arcturus*. The Dipper is part of the constellation *Helice*. These are in the Northern Sky. *Orion*, the 'Hunter' is in the Southern Sky, along with his dog *Sirius*, the 'Dog-star'.

490 me duce : abl. abs. *praecepta volandi* : 'instructions in flying'; *volandi* is a gerund, obj. gen.

491 umeris : dat. of ind. obj.; 'to the (boy's) shoulders'. Notice the separation of *ignotas* and *alas*, which produces the same effect as in *geminas alas*, l. 483.

492 Inter opus monitusque : 'during the work (*opus*, the fitting) and the warnings (*monitus*, acc. pl.)'.

493 patriae : from the adj. *patrius*. Note the emphatic separation of *patriae* from *manus* : the hands trembled because they were a father's hands. Dedit . . . suo : note the emphasis given by the word order to Dedit (first in its unit), nato (last in the line), and suo (separated from nato); 'he gave his son—his dear son (*suo*) — a kiss never (*non iter-*

*um*) to be repeated (*repetenda*, a gerundive mod. *oscula*)'. The plural *oscula* may be an example of the poetic plural, which is to be translated as a sing. and is often used merely for metrical convenience.

495 ante : adv., 'in front', 'in the lead'. comiti : dat. of int.; 'for his companion', 'for the safety of his companion'. velut ales : sc. *timet*.

495-6 ab alto . . . nido : *ab alto* has been given the emphatic last position in one line, and *nido* in the other; *ab alto* is really part of the *quae*-clause. 497 hortaturque sequi : the *-que* need not be translated; it is a 'both', to balance the following *-que*, 'and'. Sc. *eum* as subject of *sequi*. In prose *sequi* would be expressed as an ind. command, with *ut* and the subj. *damnosasque erudit artes* : the word order emphasizes the irony of the situation. The 'techniques' (*artes*) will prove 'costly' (*damnosas*), yet it is the father who is 'teaching' them (*erudit*).

498 ipse suas : sc. *alas*. The juxtaposition of *ipse suas* is similar to that of *ipse suum* in l. 484.

499 audaci . . . volatu : notice that the word order throws the emphasis on the notion of reckless flying.

500 tractus : 'lured on'.





*Courtesy, Museum of Fine Arts, Boston*

TABUERANT CERAE: NUDOS QUATIT ILLE LACERTOS

*Motor trouble.*

- Icarus audaci coepit gaudere volatu,  
 500 deseruitque ducem, caelique cupidine tractus  
 altius egit iter. Rapidi vicinia solis  
 mollit odoratas, pennarum vincula, ceras.  
 Tabuerant cerae; nudos quatit ille lacertos,  
 remigioque carens non ullas percipit auras.  
 505 Oraque caerulea patrium clamantia nomen  
 excipiuntur aqua, quae nomen traxit ab illo.  
 At pater infelix, nec iam pater, 'Icare,' dixit,  
 'Icare,' dixit, 'ubi es? qua te regione requiram?'  
 'Icare' dicebat: pennas aspexit in undis;  
 510 devovitque suas artes corpusque sepulcro  
 condidit. Et tellus a nomine dicta sepulti.

(*Metamorphoses*, VIII, 183 ff)

501 altius egit iter: 'he steered a higher course'. The word order throws the emphasis on *altius*.

502 mollit . . . ceras: these words come in the order of climax; something melting—and smelling—the fastening of the feathers?—the wax!; *ceras* may be poetic plural, or may refer to the various pieces of wax used. Tr. 'softened the wax—smelling now—that held the feathers together'.

503 Tabuerant: the tragedy is emphasized by (1) the emphatic first position of the verb in the line; (2) the plup.—the worst had happened! nudos quatit ille lacertos: 'without wings (*nudos*, placed first for emphasis) were the arms that HE (*ille*, the boy, as contrasted with the father) flapped'.

504 remigio: abl. of sep. gov. by *careo*. From this verb comes our 'caret' symbol (∧), = 'is lacking.'

505 ora, caerulea, clamantia, aqua: the scansion will show that *caerulea* modifies *aqua* (abl. of means), and that *clamantia* modifies *ora* (subject of *excipiuntur*); *patrium* is an adj.

modifying *nomen*. Notice the pathos resulting from the word order in *patrium clamantia nomen*: his father's—crying it out—his father's name.

506 nomen traxit: 'derived its name'. These waters became known as *Mare Icarium*, 'the Icarian Sea'. So too the island on which the boy was buried (*tellus*, l. 511) was called *Icaria*. It is one of the group known as the *Cyclades*.

507 nec iam pater: 'no longer a father'.

508 qua . . . requiram: *qua regione* = *in qua regione*; *requiram* is delib. subj. Note the graphic position of *te* (the boy) in the middle of an unknown area (*qua regione*).

509 dicebat: 'kept saying'. The imperf. *dicebat* depicts the father's panicky repetition of the boy's name after his first two single calls (*dixit*, l. 507, and *dixit*, l. 508). Then after *dicebat* comes the single act denoted by *aspexit*—and the father calls for his boy no more.

510 sepulcro: abl. of means; 'in a grave'. Notice that the primary





Courtesy, Musco del Prado, Madrid

#### APOLLO'S OPINION OF MIDAS—A TWO-LEGGED DONKEY

### The Touch of Gold

*The Satyrs were a class of beings in Greek mythology, connected with the worship of Bacchus, the god of wine. They are represented as having bristly hair, the nose round and turned slightly upwards, the ears pointed at the top like those of animals, two small horns growing out of the top of the forehead, and a tail like that of a horse or goat. They are always described as being fond of wine.*

*This story describes how Silenus, a Satyr, the tutor of the youthful Bacchus, once wandered off under the influence of wine. He was found in this condition by subjects of King Midas, who took him to their king. Midas at once restored him to Bacchus who, in his joy at his teacher's return, gave Midas his choice of a reward.*

*A fool's choice of reward.*

*Huic deus optandi gratum, sed inutile, fecit*

meaning of *condo* is 'I lay away', 'I store', NOT 'I establish', 'I found'.  
511 *dicta* : *sc. est*; 'was named'.  
Forms of the verb *sum* are often omitted in poetry; *sepulti* belongs

with *nomine*.

512 *Huic deus* : *Huic* refers to Midas, *deus* to Bacchus. The central characters of the story are introduced early.

muneris arbitrium, gaudens altore recepto.

Ille, male usurus donis, ait: 'Effice, quicquid

515 corpore contigero, fulvum vertatur in aurum.'

Adnuuit optatis, nocituraque munera solvit

Liber, et indoluit, quod non meliora petisset.

*The reward is tested.*

Laetus abit gaudetque malo Bercyntius heros:

512-13 *Huic . . . recepto* : = *Huic deus, gaudens altore* (noun, abl. abs., not to be confused with the comp. adj. *altiore*) *recepto, fecit* (= *dedit*) *gratum* ('attractive') *sed inutile arbitrium optandi* (a gerundive) *muneris*.

513 *gaudens* : it is a pleasure to find a pupil so enthusiastic about his teacher's return—even though the teacher is not seen here in the best of lights!

514 *Ille* : change of subject, i.e. Midas. *male usurus donis* : 'destined to use the boon unwisely'; *donis* : abl. gov. by *usurus*. Roman poets frequently used a plural where a sing. might be expected. This "poetic plural" was often prompted by the sound of the line or by the requirement of the metre. Here, for instance, the singular *dono* would have lost its final -o by elision. Other examples of the poetic plural in this selection are *optatis* (l. 516), *munera* (l. 516), *munera* (l. 530), *dona* (l. 530). *Effice* : 'Bring it about that'; in Latin prose *efficio* is generally followed by *ut* and the subj. (noun clause). Here, the *ut* is understood. Note that *quicquid* is really subject of *vertatur* as well as dir. obj. of *contigero*.

515 *fulvum . . . in aurum* : notice the emphatic separation of *fulvum* and *aurum*, with the verb *vertatur* being displaced by *in aurum* in last position. See *Introduction*, I, 4, b. 516 *Adnuuit optatis* : these words

suggest a dignified picture of the god nodding assent to his wish (*ad+nuo*). *nocituraque munera solvit* : 'he bestowed the reward, harmful though it was to prove'.

517 *Liber* : a name sometimes used for Bacchus, perhaps standing for *Liberator*, with a humorous reference to the release from worry through the god's wine. *petisset* : = *petivisset*, subj. in a clause of quoted reason, with the sense of 'because, to quote Bacchus, . . .'. Such a clause is virtually a sub. cl. in ind. disc., and therefore requires the subj.

518 *Laetus abit* : frequently a Latin adj. is best translated into English by an adv. The verb *abit* is an example of the vivid hist. pres., standing for a past tense. Many other examples are to be found in this selection. *Laetus, gaudetque* : there are several examples of contrasting emotions to be found in the poem. Contrast the feelings of Midas, at this point, with those of Bacchus (*indoluit*, l. 517). Notice also that in the first six lines the poet builds up a sense of impending disaster, by the use of such words as *inutile, male usurus donis, nocitura, indoluit*. Then, after the suspense he creates, he switches suddenly to the buoyant rejoicing of Midas. *malo* : abl. of cause, with the neut. of the adj. used as a noun; 'in his misfortune'. When another part of speech is used as a noun (as *malo* is here), it is called



pollicitique fidem tangendo singula temptat.

- 520 Vixque sibi credens, non alta fronde virentem  
 ilice detraxit virgam: virga aurea facta est;  
 tollit humo saxum: saxum quoque palluit auro;  
 contigit et glebam: contactu gleba potenti  
 massa fit; arentes Cereris decerpit aristas:  
 525 aurea messis erat.

*A fool's harvest is reaped.*

Vix spes ipse suas animo capit, aurea fingens  
 omnia. Gaudenti mensas posuere ministri  
 exstructas dapibus, nec tostae frugis egentes:  
 tum vero, sive ille sua Cerealia dextra

a substantive. **Berecynthius heros**: refers to Midas, whose mother was Cybele, to whom Mount Berecynthus in Phrygia was sacred. This is an example of "mythological allusion"; see *Introduction*, I, 2.

519 polliciti fidem: 'the reliability of the promise'; *polliciti* is a substantive (see note on *malo*, I. 473). *singula*: 'single objects, one after another'; object of the gerund *tangendo*. 520 sibi credens: 'believing in his own power'.

520-1 non alta . . . virgam: = *non alta* ('rather low') *ilice* (abl. of sep., without the prep. *de*) *detraxit virgam virentem fronde* (lit., 'green with leaves', more freely, 'a green leafy branch').

521 virgam: virga: an emphatic juxtaposition . . . See also *saxum*: *saxum* in the following line. For juxtaposition, see *Introduction*, I, 4, d.

522 humo: abl. of sep., with the prep. *ab* understood.

523 et: adv. = *etiam* ('also'). contactu potenti: abl. of means, 'at the magic touch'.

524 massa: sc. *auri*. arentes Cereris aristas: 'ripened ears of corn'. Instead of referring directly to corn

or grain, Ovid uses the name of the goddess of agriculture in place of the name of the produce she represents. See *Introduction*, I, 2.

526 ipse suas: Ovid likes to put these two words in emphatic juxtaposition. He has obtained the juxtaposition here by separating *suas* and *spes*. animo capit: lit., 'takes (in the sense of 'contains', 'holds') with his mind'; more freely, 'his very (*ipse*) mind can scarcely contain'. aurea: from its emphatic position in its phrase we can gather the one thought which is uppermost in Midas' mind.

527 Gaudenti: sc. *ei*: dat. of int., 'as he was rejoicing'. mensas posuere: 'set the table'. The plural *mensas* is used because in Ovid's day (if not in Midas') each course came on a separate table, so that 'served the courses' is another possible translation.

528 exstructas dapibus: 'piled with dainties'. tostae frugis: 'roasted grain', i.e. 'bread' made from grain which had been parched before being ground into flour; gen. governed by *egentes*. nec *egentes*: = *habentes*, 'with', 'including'.

529 tum vero: this is the turning-point in the story. Up to this time

- 530 munera contigerat, Cerealia dona rigeabant;  
sive dapes avido convellere dente parabat,  
lamina fulva dapes, admoto dente, premebat.

*'What fools we mortals be!'*

Attonitus novitate mali, divesque miserque,  
effugere optat opes, et quae modo voverat, odit.

- 535 Copia nulla famem relevat; sitis arida guttur  
urit, et invisio meritus torquetur ab auro.  
Ad caelumque manus et splendida brachia tollens,  
'Da veniam, Lenaeae pater! peccavimus,' inquit,  
'sed miserere, precor, speciosoque eripe damno!'  
(*Metamorphoses*, XI, 100 ff)

the elation of Midas has been featured. But now comes the time of reckoning; *vero* emphasizes the importance of *tum*; like *quidem*, it seldom requires actual translation. *sive . . . sive*: 'if . . . or if' (l. 531). 529-30 *sua Cerealia dextra munera*: interlocking order. The scansion will show that *sua* is abl., mod. *dextra*, and that *Cerealia* is acc., mod. *munera*. 'The gifts of Ceres' means 'bread'; see the note on *arentes Cerealis aristas* in l. 524.

530 *rigeabant*: 'became hard'.

531 *convellere*: 'devour'.

532 *lamina . . . premebat*: = *fulva lamina* (poet. pl., 'a layer of metal') *premebat* ('covered') *dapes* (see *dapibus*, l. 528) *admoto dente* (abl. abs., 'when his tooth touched them').

533 *divesque miserque*: -*que* . . . -*que* = *et* . . . *et*; tr. 'rich, but wretched'. When, as here, two words of sharply contrasted meaning are placed together, the figure of speech is called oxymoron. There is a hint of this figure in *nocitura munera*, l. 516.

534 *quae*: = *ea quae*. *modo*: adv., 'a little while ago'.

535 *Copia*: 'material wealth'.

536 *meritus*: see note on *Laetus*, l. 518. *ab auro*: abl. of source instead of the expected abl. of means; *ab* means 'in consequence of'. Notice the effect of the separation of *invisio* from *auro*; the victim seems actually surrounded by the 'hated gold'.

537 *Ad caelumque manus*: in the Roman attitude of prayer, with palms turned upward to the sky. *splendida*: even his arms are now glittering with a layer of gold.

538 *veniam*: from *venia*, 'pardon'. *Lenaeae*: voc. of *Lenaeus*, a word applied to Bacchus, meaning 'God of the Wine Press'. *peccavimus*: 'I have sinned', the use of the plural by a sovereign, but probably here simply a poetic plural.

539 *miserere*: imper. sing. of a dep. verb. *speciosoque eripe damno*: = *et me eripe specioso damno* (abl. of sep., with the prep. *e* understood; 'from this accursed splendour', lit., 'from showy harm'). Notice how the separation of *specioso* and *damno* seems once again, as in l. 536, to picture the victim in the centre of his troubles.



STREETS IN ROME WERE NARROW  
Garbage thrown from upper windows made life hazardous.

## Selections from Juvenal

### The Satires

#### *Brief Encounter—With a Hoodlum.*

540 Me quem Luna solet deducere vel breve lumen  
candelae, cuius dispenso et tempero filum,  
contemnit. Miserae cognosce prooemia rixae,

540 Me : 'as for me', given emphasis by its position; it is accus., dir. obj. of *contemnit*. *deducere* : 'to escort on my way'; *deduco* is the technical word for the clients' attendance on their patrons. *breve lumen* : 'flickering light'; lit., *breve* = 'short-lived'. 541 *dispenso et tempero* : 'trim and part'. A wick had to be nursed along carefully if it was to keep burning at the correct rate. Note that the final -o in *tempero* is short for purposes of scansion.

542 *contemnit* : The subject of this verb must be obtained by referring to the lines occurring immediately before this extract. Juvenal has been describing the sort of man who drinks too heavily and who, unable to sleep, roams through the streets by night. In spite of his condition, such a man has sense enough left to steer clear of the rich man and his followers, and to concentrate his arrogance on the poor man who may not dare to fight back—*Me*, in this

si rixa est ubi tu pulsas, ego vapulo tantum.

Stat contra, me stare iubet. Parere necesse est.

- 545 Nam quid agas, cum te furiosus cogat et idem  
fortior? 'Unde venis?' exclamat: 'cuius aceto,  
cuius conche tumes? Aut dic aut accipe calcem.'  
Dicere si temptes aliquid tacitusve recedas,  
tantundem est; feriunt pariter; vadimonia deinde  
550 irati faciunt. Libertas pauperis haec est:

case. *prooemia rixae*: 'the beginning of the brawl'; *prooemia* is a poetic pl.

543 tantum: adv., 'only', 'merely'; freely, 'when the beating is one-sided'; *vapulo* is used as the pass. of *pulso*.

The lack of law and order on the streets at night, even in the time of Augustus, was disgraceful. According to the Roman historian Tacitus, Nero himself set the example of night brawling.

544 stare: 'to stand' in the sense of 'to halt', as in the ancient highwaymen's formula 'stand and deliver!'

545 agas: delib. subj., 'what can you do?' This is the general use of the second pers. sing. ('you' = 'one'). cum cogat: the subj. is gov. by cum—causal, but 'when' may be used here in its causal sense in tr.; cogat = 'brings pressure on', 'corners', 'bullies'. et idem fortior: 'and when he is (sc. cum sit) likewise (idem, lit., 'he, the same man') stronger (fortior, which usually refers to courage rather than strength).

546 Unde venis?: this and the following insolent questions are asked to provoke a quarrel. Ordinarily, this formula was used in greeting a friend, much like our "How've you been?" or "How are tricks?" aceto: vinegar mixed with water, the ordinary drink of the Roman soldier, sometimes called *posca*.

547 conche: 'beans' boiled in the shell, a common dish among the poorer people and a very filling one; conche is acc. pl., copying a Greek declension. accipe calcem: 'be kicked'; lit., 'get my heel'.

548 Dicere . . . recedas: = sive ('whether') aliquid (quid would be more usual after si) dicere temptes, (sive = 'or') tacitus ('in silence') recedas. The subjunctives temptes and recedas are in a less viv. fut. cond., but the main verb (est) is expressed as an indic. instead of as a subj.

549 feriunt pariter: 'they beat (feriunt, from ferio, NOT from fero) you (sc. te) in either case (pariter, lit., 'equally').

Juvenal has been changing verb-subjects with reckless abandon throughout this passage—'he' (contemnit), 'you' (tu pulsas), 'he' (cogat, exclamat), 'they' (feriunt, and also faciunt in l. 550).

549-50 vadimonia . . . faciunt: 'require bail'; vadimonium is a promise of appearance in court secured by bail. Here, after frightening the victim out of his senses, the drunken bullies pretend to be the injured parties, and declare they will have the law on him.

550 haec est: 'here is', 'the following is', explained by the second part of the sentence; haec is attracted into the gender of its predicate libertas.



pulsatus rogat et pugnīs concisus adorat,  
ut liceat paucis cum dentibus inde reverti.

(Satires, III, 286-301)

### The Teacher of Public Speaking

Declamare docēs? O ferrea pectora Vetti,  
cum perimit saevos classis numerosa tyrannos.

555 Nam quaecumque sedens modo legerat, haec eadem stans

551 *pulsatus* . . . *adorat*: as the beating increases in intensity (from *pulsatus* to *pugnīs concisus*), the unfortunate victim first 'humbly asks' (*rogat*), then 'begs' (*adorat*) for release. *pugnīs*: from *pugnus*, 'a fist'.

552 *liceat*: subj. in an ind. com. Sc. *sibi* with this verb. *paucis*: 'a few at least'.

553 In the earlier times of the Republic, Grammar Schools formed an important part of a Roman's secondary education after his elementary training in the 3 R's. In such schools much stress was placed on oratory and on elocution as being a worthwhile training for leadership. The teacher had his pupils pronounce after him first the words, next the clauses and lastly the complete sentences. In addition to oratory, music and geometry were taught.

In such a curriculum is to be found the origin of the special Schools of Rhetoric which were founded in the first century B.C.

The Schools of Rhetoric represented higher education in Rome and were attended mostly by students from the moneyed classes. In them concentrated work was done on prose authors, philosophy and composition. The final objective of such schools was to produce excellence in the art of public speaking (*declamatio*).

One of the intermediate stages leading to this goal was a special kind of argument (*suasoria*) in which the speaker assumed the role of a famous character from history on the point of making an important decision. The student would then weigh the various courses of action open to him. The exploits of Hannibal were regular themes for declamation (See lines 568-88).

553 *Declamare docēs*: lit., 'Do you teach (in the schools) to be a public speaker'; freely, 'Are you a teacher of public speaking?' The interrog. *-ne* is sometimes omitted in questions, as here, and in *Mercedem appellas?* (l. 559); *declamare* is a comp. infin. with *docēs*. *pectora*: acc. of exclamation, and a poetic pl.; 'what a heart of steel Vettius has!' Vettius is singled out by vivid particularization to represent all long-suffering teachers of public speaking. (See *Introduction* I, 3.)

554 *cum perimit*: *cum* meaning 'whenever' takes the indic.; it might be supposed that the emperor would discourage such topics in the schools as the "Assassination of Tyrants", but the tyrants of the *declamatio* were too unreal to be taken seriously. *numerosa*: 'crowded'.

555 *sedens* . . . *legerat*: 'had read at his seat'; sc. *puer*. Evidently the class read their declamations at



Courtesy, G. Bell and Sons

## A ROMAN SCHOOL OF RHETORIC

perferet atque eadem cantabit versibus isdem;  
occidit miseros crambe repetita magistros.  
Nosse volunt omnes, mercedem solvere nemo.

their seats, then stood up to repeat them over from beginning to end; *canto* means both 'sing' and 'declaim'. This would indicate that the declaiming was done in sing-song style.

556 *perferet*: 'he will go through', 'rehearse'. *versibus isdem*: abl. of means; *isdem* = *eisdem*; 'in the same verses'; *versus* is a line of poetry or of prose.

557 *crambe repetita*: *crambe* is a kind of cabbage; an old Greek proverb says "to be helped twice to cabbage is fatal". Here it is the 'warmed over (*repetita*) cabbage', i.e. the old, oft-repeated, re-hashed story, which is the death of the poor teacher; *crambe* is a Greek nom.; the scansion of the line will show that *repetita* is nom.

"Till, like hash'd cabbage served with each repast,

The repetition kills the wretch at last." Gifford.

The boring repetition is more fatal to the teacher than to the tyrant. Notice how the word order of this well-known line contributes to the humour; it opens with the verb *occidit* and ends with *magistros*, whose modifier *miseros* is separated from it for emphasis.

558 *Nosse*: = *novisse* (= *cognovisse*), 'to know', hence 'knowledge'. Supply as object all those things which should be taught by the teacher of rhetoric, "the rhetorical tricks, the class to which a law case belongs, the main points at issue, the arguments of the opponents". *mercedem solvere*: 'to make payment'; sc. *vult* with *solvere*.

560 'Mercedem appellas? Quid enim scio?' 'Culpa docentis  
 scilicet arguitur, quod laeva in parte mamillae  
 nil salit Arcadico iuveni, cuius mihi sexta  
 quaque die miserum dirus caput Hannibal implet,  
 quidquid id est de quo deliberat, an petat urbem  
 a Cannis, an post nimbos et fulmina cautus

559 Mercedem appellas?: 'Do you demand your pay?'; *appello* is a technical word for demanding payment. Quid enim scio?: *enim* here means 'why', a kind of exclamation; 'why, what have you taught me?' (lit. 'what do I know?'); the -o in *scio* is short for purposes of scansion. Culpa docentis . . . arguitur: the subject of *arguitur* is the noun cl. *quod...nil salit*; the sense is 'the fact that (*quod*) the boy is stupid is proved to be the fault of the teacher'.

560 scilicet: used in sarcasm; 'of course', 'no doubt'. laeva in parte mamillae: i.e. in his heart, which the Romans held to be the seat of understanding, not of feeling.

560-1 quod . . . nil salit Arcadico iuveni: lit., 'the fact that nothing jumps in the heart to the Arcadian youth'; freely, 'the fact that the heart of the Arcadian youth is not inspired'; *iuveni* is dat. of poss. with *mamillae*, a part of the body. Arcadia was famous for the dullness of its inhabitants; 'Arcadian' therefore means 'dull-witted'.

561 cuius mihi . . . implet: 'whose "dread Hannibal" fills my poor head every sixth day'; *dirus* is used humorously in a double sense—Hannibal's name brings terror to the teacher just as it did to the Romans of old, when it is said to have been used by Roman nurses to keep their charges under control; and the Romans always held his name in respect. Some scholars say that once

a week in the school of rhetoric was a formal exhibition, attended by anxious parents, when each pupil delivered a *suasoria*.

561-2 sexta quaque die: abl. of time when; 'every (*quaque*, from the indef. adj. *quisque*) sixth day (*die*, occasionally fem., as here)'. Notice that in this idiom the word-order of the Latin differs from ours.

563-5 an petat . . . an circumagat: = *petatne . . . circumagatne*: 'whether, for example, he should...or whether, for example, he should...', referring to two different occasions five years apart, not to a choice possessed by Hannibal on one and the same occasion. The subjunctives are deliberative.

563 urbem: i.e. Rome. Hannibal, according to Livy, after the battle of Cannae, was advised to push on, and in four days he might dine in the Capitol; but he took time to consider and lost his advantage. The defeat at Cannae was the most crushing the Romans ever suffered.

564 a Cannis: the prep. is often used with names of cities in a military context. post . . . cautus, *madidas* a . . .: '(made wary) after . . .', 'dripping wet from...' Notice that neither the *post*-phrase nor the *a*-phrase belongs with the verb *circumagat*; instead, each belongs with an adj.

The occasion referred to took place when Hannibal, trying to draw off Roman pressure from the besieged city of Capua, feinted toward



- 565 circumagat madidas a tempestate cohortes.  
 Quantum vis stipulare et protinus accipe; quid do  
 ut totiens illum pater audiat?

(Satires, VII, 150, ff)

### **Hannibal's Reward for Ambition.**

- Expende Hannibalem; quot libras in duce summo  
 invenies? Hic est quem non capit Africa Mauro  
 570 percussa Oceano Niloque admota tepenti,  
 rursus ad Aethiopum populos altosque elephantos.

Rome. According to Livy, he offered battle to the Roman consuls, but on two successive days the armies were prevented from engaging by a violent storm which subsided as soon as they had returned to their camps.

566 Quantum . . . accipe : = *stipulare* (imper. sing. of *stipulor*) *tantum quantum* ('as large an amount as', lit. 'so big how big') *vis*, (from *volo*, 'you wish') *et protinus id a me accipe* ('and I'll pay it on the spot', lit. 'get it at once from me').

566-7 quid do ut...audiat : *quid do* with an *ut*-clause of purp. is a colloquial idiom; lit., 'what do I give (= 'name your amount', 'I'd give anything') in order that his father may hear him as often (= 'to have his father hear his declamations as often as I do.'): *totiens* : = *totiens quotiens ego*.

This teacher seems prepared to pay any sum to anyone who will get the dunce's father to hear him recite his lessons as often as his teacher has done.

'For him no psychiatric plan  
 To justify God's ways to man.'

(Dr. J. T. Jenkins, retired principal of Jarvis Collegiate, Toronto.)

568 While most of Juvenal's satires bear upon the particular character of the times, the satire from which

this excerpt is taken is on a general theme—the vanity of human wishes. True, it still mocks the ambitious, but its sentiments can be applied to any age and any country. Compare Johnson's famous imitation of this satire, "On the Vanity of Human Wishes".

568 Expende : Juvenal is thinking of Hannibal's ashes, for cremation was usual for friends of the defendant from *libra*, not *liber* or *liber*.

569 Hic est quem : 'This is (he) whom'. The dir. antecedent of *quem* must be supplied (is). *capit* : 'can contain'. The graphic hist. pres. may be retained throughout even in the translation.

569-71 Mauro . . . Oceano, Niloque . . . tepenti, rursus . . . elephantos : In these three phrases Juvenal gives the western, eastern and southern boundaries of Africa as he knew them. Mauro . . . Oceano : abl. of means; this name for the Atlantic Ocean is derived from the district of Mauretania on the coast of Africa at the W. end of the Mediterranean. 570 admota : 'stretching'; here, the notion of 'to' is conveyed by (1) a dat. (*Nilo*), because *admoveo* is a compound verb (2) *ad* plus acc. (*populos*), repeating the prefix *ad*-. 571 rursus : refers here to position, 'backwards', i.e. 'southward': usually



Additur imperiis Hispania: Pyrenaeum  
transilit: opposuit natura Alpemque nivemque;  
diducit scopulos et montem rumpit aceto.

- 575 Iam tenet Italiam; tamen ultra pergere tendit:  
'Actum' inquit, 'nihil est, nisi Poeno milite portas  
frangimus et media vexillum pono Subura.'  
O qualis facies et quali digna tabella,

it refers to time ('again'). ad Aethiopum populos: The African district of Ethiopia opposite the S. end of Arabia. Sc. *admota* from the previous line.

572-3 In 221 B.C. Hannibal commanded the Carthaginian troops in Spain. In 218 he crossed the Pyrenees and Alps to invade Italy and thus began the Second Punic War.

573 transilit: Juvenal's mock-heroic treatment has Hannibal 'jump over' the Pyrenees! opposuit: pres. perf., 'has placed in his path'.

573 Alpemque nivemque: 'the snowy Alps', an example of the figure of speech known as hendiadys, (one idea expressed through two units) where in two Latin nouns are given, but can often be best translated into English using one noun and a modifying adj. The combination *-que... -que = et... et*.

574 aceto: in his famous struggle to cross the Alps, Hannibal is said to have broken passages through the rocks by heating them and pouring vinegar on them. Vinegar would be available because a mixture of vinegar and water was a common beverage. Most historians are sceptical about this operation, although it has been said that certain types of rocks can be dissolved by vinegar even when not heated.

575 Iam tenet Italiam: For many years Hannibal won victory after victory in Italy, but never was able

to capture Rome. tendit: = *contendit*, 'strives'. In poetry the simple verb often replaces the compound which would be used in prose.

576 Actum... nihil est: = *Nihil actum est*.

576-7 nisi... frangimus: 'if we don't batter down'; this vivid use of the pres. to refer to the fut. is much rarer in Lat. than it is in Eng; *pono*, in l. 577, is another example. Poeno milite: abl. of means, with the 'soldiery' (*milite*, used as a collective sing.) regarded as mere instruments (not agents) in the hands of the general. portas: i.e. of Rome.

577 media Subura: = *in media Subura*; the abl. without the prep. *in* is often used in poetry to denote place where. Subura is chosen as the most populous district in Rome, just as a modern conqueror like Hitler might have specified London's Soho. Notice how the separation of *media* from *Subura* allows the placing of the standard (*vexillum*) in the centre. *vexillum pono*: 'I plant my standard'; *vexillum* was the standard used by the *imperator* to mark G.H.Q. (General Headquarters). The final *-o* of *pono* is short here for purposes of scansion.

578 facies: a noun; sc. *fuit*. The 'sight' is explained in the next line. et quali digna tabella: = *et (facies) digna* (nom., mod. *facies*) *quali tabella* (abl. gov. by *digna*); 'what a subject for a painting!', lit., 'worthy

cum Gaetula ducem portaret belua luscum!

- 580 Exitus ergo quis est? O gloria! Vincitur idem  
nempe et in exsilium praeceps fugit atque ibi magnus  
mirandusque cliens sedet ad praetoria regis,  
donec Bithyno libeat vigilare tyranno.  
Finem animae quae res humanas miscuit olim  
585 non gladii, non saxa dabunt, nec tela; sed ille  
Cannarum vindex et tanti sanguinis ultor  
anulus. I, demens, et saevas curre per Alpes,

of what a painting'. Juvenal thinks the sight would make an excellent cartoon or caricature.

579 cum . . . luscum : = cum Gaetula belua (a 'vivid particularization' for elephantus) luscum ducem portaret (subj. gov. by cum—temporal referring to past time).

In 217 B.C. Hannibal crossed the Apennines on the back of his sole surviving elephant; he lost his eye from disease while executing his unexpected march over a route flooded by the Arno River. This march enabled him to set the trap for the Roman army at Lake Trasimene.

580 quis : interrog. adj. mod. exitus; qui would be the more usual form. O gloria! : this is the answer to the preceding question. Omit the O in tr. Vincitur : In 202 B.C. Hannibal was defeated at Zama near Carthage by Scipio. idem : 'the same man', 'even he'. The word stresses that one and the same man suffered such a surprising reversal of fortune.

581 nempe : 'indeed he was'.

581-2 magnus mirandusque cliens sedet : 'humbly sits (sedet, used of a worshipper at a shrine), a mighty and marvellous client (cliens, in app. to the subject of sedet)'.

In Rome, an important man (a patron) would have clients call on him early in the morning to pay their respects. Juvenal transfers this custom to Bithynia, casting King Pru-

sias as patron and Hannibal as client, a far cry from his powerful position before his exile.

This contrast is heightened by the seeming contradiction between cliens and its modifiers magnus and mirandus, and by the alliteration of the last two words.

582 ad praetoria regis : 'at (ad) the king's (i.e. Prusias') court (praetoria, poetic pl.)' When Hannibal fled from Carthage a few years after his defeat at Zama, he finally took refuge with Prusias, king of Bithynia. (See p. 89).

583 donec . . . libeat : subj. because there is an underlying idea of purp.; Hannibal is waiting for the king to awake. Bithyno . . . tyranno : dat. gov. by libeat. Juvenal's scorn for the eastern monarch is expressed in the separation (for emphasis) of Bithyno and tyranno.

584 Finem . . . anulus : = non gladii, non saxa, nec tela, sed ille ('that well-known') . . . anulus dabunt finem animae quae . . . Notice how Juvenal's inversion of the usual sentence order creates suspense until the last word (anulus) which is carried over into the next line to emphasize the irony of Hannibal's fate.

586 Cannarum vindex : Hannibal's greatest victory over the Romans, implied in l. 575, was at Cannae in 216 B.C.

587 anulus : when King Prusias of

ut pueris placeas et declamatio fias.

(Satires, X, 147-167)

## Selections from Catullus

### The Grinner

- Egnatius, quod candidos habet dentes,  
 590 renidet usque quaque: si ad rei ventum est  
 subsellium, cum orator excitat fletum,  
 renidet ille: si ad pii rogi filii  
 lugetur, orba cum flet unicum mater,  
 renidet ille: quicquid est, ubicumque est,  
 595 quodcumque agit, renidet: hunc habet morbum,  
 neque elegantem, ut arbitror, neque urbanum.  
 Quare monendum te est mihi, bone Egnati.  
 Si urbanus esses aut Sabinus aut Tiburs,

Bithynia was asked to surrender Hannibal, the latter drank the poison which he carried in his finger ring. I, demens: 'Go (I, imper. of eo), madman'. per: 'over', 'across'. 588 ut placeas, fias: purp. clauses. declamatio: 'subject of a speech'. As a part of their education Roman boys used to compose and give speeches based on famous men and events. Juvenal satirically suggests that Hannibal strove to achieve such wonderful exploits as crossing the Alps only to become a part of the course of study for school-boys.

590 usque quaque: sometimes written as one word, 'in every place', 'at every step', 'everlastingly'.

590-1 si . . . subsellium: 'if people have come (ventum est, imper. pass.) to the defendant's (rei, from reus, not from res) bench (subsellium, inside a law-court)'. It was usual among the Romans. libras:

to gather here to lend their support, usually with a countenance in keeping with the pathetic nature of his counsel's (orator) appeal. But not so Egnatius—renidet ille!

592-3 si . . . lugetur: 'if there is a scene of mourning (lugetur, imper. pass.; lit., 'it is being mourned') at (ad) the funeral pile of a dutiful son (fili = filii)'.

593 unicum: sc. filium.

596 neque elegantem: i.e. and it isn't a 'nice' habit at all.

597 monendum te est mihi: the usual Latin for this is tu (emphatic) mihi (dat. of agent with the gerundive) monendus est; 'I must have a word with you'; te is a rare acc. retained as dir. obj. in the pass. voice.

598 Sabinus . . . Tiburs . . . Umber . . . Etruscus: 'Sabine . . . Tibur-tine . . . Umbrian . . . Etruscan', vivid particularizations suggesting Italians from far and near.

- aut parcus Umber aut obesus Etruscus,  
 600 aut quilibet, qui puriter lavit dentes,  
 tamen renidere usque quaque te nollem.  
 Nam risu inepto res ineptior nulla est.

(Poem 39)

### Stop, Thief!

- Marrucine Asini, manu sinistra  
 non belle uteris in ioco atque vino:  
 605 tollis lintea neglegentiorum.  
 Hoc salsum esse putas? Fugit te, inepte.  
 Quamvis sordida res et invenusta est.  
 Non credis mihi? Crede Pollioni  
 fratri, qui tua furta vel talento  
 610 mutari velit: est enim leporum  
 disertus puer ac facetiarum.  
 Quare aut hendecasyllabos trecentos  
 exspecta, aut mihi lintheum remitte,

600 qui . . . dentes : lit., 'who has cleaned his teeth brightly (*puriter* = *purē*).'

601 nollem : potential subj.; 'I shouldn't like'.

602 risu : abl. of comp.

603 Marrucine Asini : voc. sinistra : as the right hand was given in friendship, the left was proverbially the one devoted to theft.

604 belle : adv., 'prettily', 'for a pretty purpose'. in ioco atque vino : 'while we are deep in frolic and in wine'; in = 'in the midst of', 'during'.

605 neglegentiorum : 'of the rather careless', abs. comp.

606 Hoc . . . putas? : -ne is sometimes omitted in questions, particularly if the speaker is indignant. Fugit te, inepte : *Fugit* = *Fallit*; tr., 'You are wrong, you idiot!'

607 Quamvis sordida res : 'an extremely (*quamvis*, lit., however much

you like) ill-bred thing to do'.

608 Non credis? : 'You don't believe me?' Pollioni fratri : C. Asinius Pollio, an intimate friend of Vergil and Horace, who gained lasting fame as an orator, poet, soldier and historian. 609-10 qui . . . velit : lit., 'who (*qui*) would like (*velit*, pot. subj.) the facts about your pilfering (*tua furta*) to be removed (*mutari*) even at the cost of a talent (*vel talento*, abl. of price)'; i.e. 'who would pay a whole talent to have your pilfering removed'.

610-11 leporum . . . facetiarum : 'a young man of fluent wit and humour'.

612 hendecasyllabos : the Gk. "hen-deca" means 'eleven', i.e. the eleven syllables comprising a line of iambs (as used in this poem), the metre traditionally used as the weapon of satire; *trecentos* stands for any large number, 'a flood'.





From an ancient fresco

### A MODEST DINNER-PARTY IN ANCIENT TIMES

quod me non movet aestimatione,  
615 verum est mnemosynum mei sodalis.

(Poem 12)

## Selections from Martial

### *He Truly Sorrows Who Sorrows Unseen*

Amissum non flet cum sola est Gellia patrem;

614 quod . . . aestimatione : 'the loss of it (*quod*, rel. pron., referring to *linteum*) doesn't affect me because of its intrinsic worth (*aestimatione*, abl. of cause, = *propter* plus acc.)'.  
615 mnemosynum : borrowed direct-

ly from the Gk., 'a reminder', 'a keepsake'. mei sodalis : Catullus goes on to say that the napkin had been sent to him as a gift from Spain by two friends, Fabullus and Veranius.  
616 non flet : perhaps because he

si quis adest, iussae prosiliunt lacrimae.  
Non luget quisquis laudari, Gellia, quaerit:  
ille dolet vere qui sine teste dolet.

(I-33)

### Don't Compliment Yourself, Fabulla

620 Bella es, novimus, et puella, verum est,  
et dives, quis enim potest negare?  
Sed cum te nimium, Fabulla, laudas,  
nec dives neque bella nec puella es.

(I-64)

### The Good Old Days

Miraris veteres, Vacerra, solos  
625 nec laudas nisi mortuos poetas.  
Ignoscas petimus, Vacerra: tanti  
non est, ut placeam tibi, perire.

(VIII-69)

### Ill Luck to an Ill-Wisher

Rumpitur invidia quidam, carissime Iuli,  
quod me Roma legit; rumpitur invidia.  
630 Rumpitur invidia quod turba semper in omni  
monstramur digito; rumpitur invidia.  
Rumpitur invidia tribuit quod Caesar uterque

had left her a sizeable legacy. Notice the emphatic position given the *amissum* and to *patrem*, by way of contrast with *non flet. cum . . . est*: *cum* meaning 'whenever' takes the indic. mood.

617 iussae: 'at her bidding'.

618 quisquis: subj. of *quaerit*; 'whoever seeks praise (*laudari*, 'to be praised') for his grief does not (really) grieve'.

620 Bella: adj. (not from the noun *bellum*). novimus: = *cognovimus*, 'we have learned', 'we know'.

621 dives: i.e. rich in attributes both physical and mental.

624 Miraris: = *Admiraris*, 'admire'. veteres: mod. *poetas*, 'of the good old days'.

626 Ignoscas: sc. *ut*; subj. in a cl. of ind. com. Tr. 'we beg your pardon'. tanti: gen. of indef. price. 'Dying (*perire*) to please you (*ut placeam tibi*) is not worth while (*tanti non est*, lit., is not of so much value).'

628 Rumpitur . . . quidam: 'a certain person is bursting of envy (*invidia*, abl.)'. Jealousy and petty spite seem to have been common in Martial's time too. Iuli: probably a relative, *Iulius Martialis*.

630 turba: abl., mod. by *omni*.

631 digito: 'by (people's) finger(s).'

632-3 tribuit . . . natorum: = *quod* (displaced to emphasize *tribuit*) *uterque Caesar mihi tribuit ius na-*

ius mihi natorum; rumpitur invidia.

635 Rumpitur invidia quod rus mihi dulce sub urbe est  
parvaeque in urbe domus; rumpitur invidia.

Rumpitur invidia quod sum iucundus amicis,  
quod conviva frequens; rumpitur invidia.

Rumpitur invidia quod amatur quodque probamur.

Rumpatur quisquis rumpitur invidia.

(IX-97)

*torum* ('the rank of a man with a family'). Although a bachelor, Martial was given the *ius trium natorum*, i.e. the privileges and immunities that were awarded to the father of three children. In *uterque Caesar*, the emperors Titus and Domitian must be meant. Domitian

seems to have conferred what Titus had promised.

634 *rus . . . sub urbe* : Martial had a farm just outside Rome which afforded him a refuge from the distractions of town (hence, *dulce*).

637 *conviva frequens* : sc. *sum*.

639 *Rumpatur* : juss. subj.; a curse.



Scene from M.G.M.'s 'Quo Vadis'

RUS MIHI DULCE SUB URBE EST

# SECTION FOUR

SELECTIONS FROM  
CICERO

---



# INTRODUCTION

Cicero: 106 - 43 B.C.

## 1. His Career

Marcus Tullius Cicero was a contemporary of Julius Caesar. He entered politics with the disadvantage of being a "new man", a *novus homo*; that is, he was not a member of an old patrician family, but a member of the new financial class, the *equites*. Yet his ability as a public speaker, his integrity, and his patriotic urging of a *concordia ordinum omnium* (co-operation among all classes of citizens) to save the traditional republican way of life won for him the respect of most Romans. As consul in 63 B.C. he thwarted the conspiracy of the revolutionary young aristocrat Catiline to overthrow the government, and won for himself the title *pater patriae* (father, or saviour, of his country), a title of which he was extremely proud. Even when one-man government by Julius Caesar was replacing his beloved Republic, Cicero, as a senior statesman of Rome, still had the respect, probably even the affection, of Caesar himself. Cicero, however, with a lawyer's belief in the constitution, maintained a deep-rooted distrust of Caesar as a man who seemed to have designs upon the crumbling republican form of government. And crumbling it was, inasmuch as it had never been developed with a view to ruling the mighty empire over which Rome had come to preside.

## 2. His Contributions

Cicero is most famous as Rome's best-known orator.<sup>1</sup> The influence of his eloquence may be seen on many later orators in many different lands, even on men who studied his speeches only in translation, and not in the original dynamic Latin. In the

---

<sup>1</sup> The name "cicerone" is still used in Europe for the guide who does the talking on guided tours.

field of philosophy, too, he made an important contribution, not as an original philosopher, but as a translator of many Greek philosophical writings into Latin. He was an "eclectic" philosopher, that is, he chose features from various schools of thought, not restricting himself only to one system of philosophy.

Yet Cicero's greatest contribution to our knowledge of his generation is one which perhaps he least suspected he was making. This contribution comes to us in the form of the many letters which he wrote to his family and to his friends. We have over 900 of these letters, including some written to Cicero by such friends as Caesar, Pompey, Brutus, Cassius, and many others. Because of his letters, we have a more detailed knowledge of this period of Roman history than we have for almost any other period of ancient history.

The letters give us, also, vivid glimpses of Cicero the man. They show us a Cicero who is the proud father of a daughter and of a son, a Cicero who is excessively (yet, to some, lovably) boastful about his consulship, and a Cicero who has the fatal weakness of indecision, an indecision, nevertheless, that is the result of his penetrating ability to see both sides of a question.

### 3. His Death

After the assassination of Julius Caesar, the dead man's heir Octavian (who later was called Augustus) and his friend Mark Antony opposed the conspirators. Cicero saw in Antony a more sinister figure than Julius Caesar, and made violent attacks upon him. These attacks he called "Philippics", naming them after the violent speeches made by the Greek orator Demosthenes against King Philip of Macedon. Mark Antony finally obtained Octavian's consent to have Cicero's name placed on a proscription list, and Cicero met his death with a dignity that was surprising in view of his previous tendency to be indecisive. A heart-warming story tells us that many years later the Emperor Augustus "once found one of his grandsons with a work of Cicero in his hands. The boy was frightened and hid the book under his gown; but Caesar took it from him, and standing there motionless he read through a great part of the book; then he gave it back to the boy and said, *This was a great orator, my child, a great orator and a*

man who loved his country well."<sup>2</sup> This "calm retrospective judgment of Caesar Augustus, recorded for us by Plutarch (*Life of Cicero*, Chapter 49), sums up not unfairly the story of Cicero's life."<sup>3</sup>

### Some Dates and Events in the Life of Cicero

(Those marked with \* are referred to in the Latin of this text)

Age of Cicero	Date	
	106 B.C.	Cicero is born, January 3, near Arpinum.
27-28	79-78 B.C.	He travels in Greece and Asia.
29	77 B.C.	In Athens, he begins his life-long friendship with the Roman, Titus Pomponius Atticus.
29	77 B.C.	Cicero returns to Rome, and marries Terentia.
31-32	75-74 B.C.	He serves as quaestor in Sicily.
36	70 B.C.	*He prosecutes Verres for extortion in Sicily.
40	66 B.C.	Cicero is elected praetor. He delivers his speech <i>Pro Lege Manilia</i> in support of unprecedented military powers for Pompey as supreme commander in the war in the East.
41	65 B.C.	Cicero's son, Marcus, is born, a brother for Tullia. These two are his only children.
42	64 B.C.	Cicero is elected consul.
43	63 B.C.	*As consul he detects and thwarts the Catilinarian Conspiracy, and executes five conspirators.
45	61 B.C.	Clodius is brought to trial for sacrilege and plans revenge on Cicero for testifying against him.

<sup>2</sup> Translation by Professor Strachan-Davidson of Balliol College, Oxford University.

<sup>3</sup> Quoted from Strachan-Davidson by Professor R. Y. Tyrrell of Dublin University.

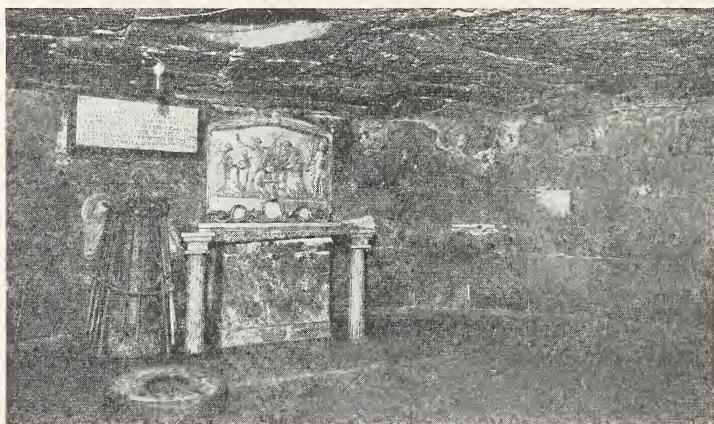
Age of Cicero	Date	
47	59 B.C.	The First Triumvirate is formed; Cicero probably could have been a fourth member of this unconstitutional coalition, had he chosen.
48	58 B.C.	*Clodius has his revenge on Cicero, by forcing him into exile to avoid a charge of unconstitutional execution of the Catilinarian ring-leaders. He does this during Caesar's absence in Gaul.
49	57 B.C.	Cicero is recalled from exile and returns to Rome.
52	54 B.C.	His brother Quintus is with Caesar in Britain and in Gaul.
55	51 B.C.	*Cicero begins a year as governor in the province of Cilicia.
57	49 B.C.	*Civil War breaks out between Caesar and Pompey. Cicero joins Pompey in Greece.
58	48 B.C.	Pompey is routed at Pharsalus, and is murdered in Egypt. Cicero returns to Italy.
59	47 B.C.	Caesar pardons Cicero, after returning from the East.
60	46 B.C.	Cicero divorces Terentia, and marries Publilia.
61	45 B.C.	*Tullia, Cicero's daughter, dies.
62	44 B.C.	*Caesar is assassinated; Cicero could have been one of the conspirators, had he chosen. *Cicero writes his treatise <i>De Senectute</i> ("On Old Age") and his treatise <i>De Officiis</i> ("Moral Obligations"). He delivers his "Philippics" as attacks on Mark Antony.
63	43 B.C.	Cicero is proscribed, and is murdered, December 9.



## Selections from Cicero

### 1. Cicero Lists the Crimes of Verres, Ex-Governor of Sicily

*Gaius Verres had flagrantly abused his powers as governor of the province of Sicily in order to amass a huge personal fortune. Cicero quotes Verres as saying that the profits of his first year in Sicily were ear-marked for himself, those of the second year for his defence, and those of the third year for bribing the judges. At the end of his term of office in 70 B.C., the Sicilians took legal action against him for extortion, demanding the recovery of some \$1,600,000 in cash and family heirlooms. They asked Cicero to act as prosecutor. Cicero had two reasons for accepting. One was*



THE POLITICAL DUNGEON OF ROME

In this prison were confined the apostles Peter and Paul. Here were strangled by order of Cicero the confederates of the conspiracy of Catiline.

his genuine concern for the Sicilians, among whom he had served with distinction as quaestor some years before. The other reason was his desire to match wits with Hortensius, who was Verres' counsel, and who was recognized as Rome's leading lawyer. So overwhelming was the evidence collected by Cicero in Sicily, and so cleverly did he catch the defence off-guard in court by the immediate introduction of evidence and witnesses, that Hortensius, who had relied on delaying tactics, at once abandoned the case, and Verres fled from Rome. From this legal victory onward, Cicero "held the first place among Roman advocates almost until the time of his death."<sup>1</sup> The following extract is part of the preliminary speech made by Cicero before the "surprise" calling of witnesses.

Siciliam iste per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit. Hoc praetore, Siculi neque suas leges neque nostra senatus-consulta neque communia iura tenuerunt. Tantum quisque habet in Sicilia quantum hominis

5 avarissimi et libidinosissimi aut imprudentiam subterfugit aut

1 per triennium: Verres had been city praetor in 74 B.C. After this he went to Sicily for a one-year term as *propraetor*, or governor, in accordance with the law. However, since Italy was in a disturbed condition after the revolt of Spartacus, his term was extended to include two more years. *ea*: nom. sing. *restitui*: pres. infin. pass.

2 antiquum statum: i.e. a condition that had existed only three years before, but which was of great antiquity previous to that. *possit*: subj. in a result cl. Notice that, in spite of the past tense of the main verb, logic requires this present tense, to express a result still existing in the present. *Hoc praetore*: abl. abs.

3 leges: 'enactments' formally adopted by the people in the assem-

bly, as contrasted with the *institutum*, which was a 'decree' passed arbitrarily by the praetor (see l.10), and the *iura*, a general term for 'legal rights'. Cicero makes it clear that Verres is entirely without regard for the law, whether imposed by Sicilian or by Roman authorities. 4 *Tantum . . . quantum*: '(only) so much as', *tantum* is accus., but *quantum* is nom.

5 *avarissimi et libidinosissimi*: note the devastating effect of these polysyllabic superlatives. Cicero is making every word of his speech count, for he intends to say as little as possible, and to get on to his witnesses, in his effort to push the trial through by the end of this year, 70 B.C. He wants to thwart the efforts of the defence to have the trial drag

<sup>1</sup> Quoted from Stuart Ryan's paper, *Cicero, Learned in the Law?*

satietati superfuit.

- Nulla res per triennium, nisi ad nutum istius, iudicata est; nulla res cuiusquam tam patria atque avita fuit quae non ab eo, imperio istius, abiudicaretur. Innumerabiles pecuniae ex aratorum  
 10 bonis novo nefarioque instituto coactae; socii fidelissimi in hostium numero existimati; cives Romani servilem in modum cruciati et necati; homines nocentissimi propter pecunias iudicio liberati; honestissimi atque integerrimi, absentes rei facti, indicta causa damnati et eiecti; portus munitissimi, maximae tutissimae-  
 15 que urbes piratis praedonibusque patefactae; nautae militesque Siculorum, socii nostri atque amici, fame necati; classes optimae atque opportunissimae, cum magna ignominia populi Romani, amissae et perditae.
- Idem iste praetor monumenta antiquissima, partim regum lo  
 20 cupletissimorum, quae illi ornamento urbibus esse voluerunt, partim etiam nostrorum imperatorum, quae victores civitatibus

on into 69 B.C., when Verres can hope for acquittal, since his counsel Hortensius is an in-coming consul, and another friend is an in-coming praetor, who will be presiding over the trial.

6 *satietati*: dat. gov. by the compound verb *superfuit*.

7 *res*: A blank cheque which must be filled in to suit the context. Here it means 'lawsuit', or 'case'. In line 8 it means 'property'. *istius*: 'of the defendant'; in a court of law *iste* = 'that client of yours', often with an uncomplimentary implication, as in 'that scoundrel'.

7-8 *nulla res . . . fuit*: 'no property belonging to anyone was secured by so firm a title from his father and grandfather'. *ab eo*: 'from him', i.e. 'from its proper owner'.

9 *aratorum*: 'landholders' who cultivated the public lands, paying tithes for the privilege.

10 *instituto*: (see note, l. 3.) *socii*: 'allies', i.e. citizens of communities which, although within the bound-

aries of Roman provinces, had, for special reasons, been allowed to retain a nominal independence, with their own laws and magistrates.

10-11 in . . . *existimati (sunt)*: 'were reckoned as enemies'.

11 *servilem in modum*: 'like slaves'.

12 *pecunias*: 'bribes', (literally 'sums of money', as in l.9).

13 *absentes rei facti (sunt)*: 'were brought to trial in their absence'; *rei* is from *reus*, not from *res*.

13-14 *indicta causa*: abl. abs., lit., 'their case being unheard', i.e. 'without a hearing'.

15 *piratis praedonibusque*: dat. of interest.

16 *fame necati (sunt)*: 'were starved to death'.

19 *partim regum . . . partim imperatorum*: 'some (the gifts) of their very wealthy kings . . . others (the gifts) of our commanders.'

20 *illi*: i.e. 'the kings'. *ornamento urbibus*: double dat., 'a decoration for their cities'.

21 *victores*: 'as victors'.

- 25 Siculis aut dederunt aut reddiderunt, spoliavit nudavitque omnia. Neque hoc solum in statu is ornamentisque publicis fecit, sed etiam delubra omnia, sanctissimis religionibus consecrata, depulatus est. Deum denique nullum Siculis, qui ei paulo magis adfabre atque antiquo artificio factus videretur, reliquit.  
(*Verres* I-4, 12 on)

## 2. Cicero Demands the Execution of the Catilinarian Prisoners

*The highlight of Cicero's political career was his consulship of 63 B.C. In that year Cicero detected and suppressed the plot of the renegade aristocrat Catiline to overthrow the government. The speech quoted below was delivered to the senate in support of a proposal to execute five henchmen of Catiline's who had been captured in Rome. A counter-proposal, made by Julius Caesar, favoured life-imprisonment outside Rome. After a keen debate, the proposal in favour of the death penalty received a majority vote, and that night the prisoners were executed by strangulation.*

Videor enim mihi videre hanc urbem, lucem orbis terrarum atque arcem omnium gentium, subito uno incendio concidentem.

22 omnia: 'all of them', emphatically placed, and referring to *monumenta*, l. 9.

23 in statu is: 'in (connection with) statues'.

24 consecrata: perf. part. pass. with concessive value. 'Hallowed though they were with the most sacred observances.'

25 Deum . . . nullum: i.e. no god's statue. denique: lit., 'at last', i.e. 'in short'. paulo: abl. of measure of difference.

26 factus: sc. esse. videretur: subj. in a rel. cl. of characteristic; 'of such a kind that it seemed'.

1 Videor . . . mihi videre: 'I imagine I see'.

2 uno incendio concidentem: 'col-

lapsing in a single conflagration'. Catiline, who was an intimate friend of the scoundrel Verres, tried to gain control in Rome by legal means. To this end he ran for the consulship, being thwarted by Cicero. Now he resorted to an illegal conspiracy. His confederates in the city were incompetent, and Cicero was able to keep himself informed of the conspirators' intentions. They were ill-advised enough to commit themselves in writing (see note on ll. 20-21), and Cicero at once arrested them and secured the documents. The Senate was convened on Dec. 5 to determine what was to be done with the prisoners. It was a fundamental principle of the Roman constitution that no citizen should be put to death without



- Cerno animo sepulta in patria miseros atque insepultos acervos civium. Versatur mihi ante oculos aspectus et furor Cethegi in  
 5 vestra caede bacchantis. Cum vero mihi proposui regnantem Lentulum, sicut ipse ex fati se sperasse confessus est, purpuratum esse huic Gabinium, cum exercitu venisse Catilinam, tum lamentationem matrum familias, tum fugam virginum atque puerorum perhorresco; et quia mihi vehementer haec videntur misera atque  
 10 miseranda, idcirco in eos qui ea perficere voluerunt me severum vehementemque praebeo.  
 Etenim quaero, si quis pater familias, liberis suis a servo interfectis, uxore occisa, incensa domo, supplicium de servo non quam acerbissimum sumpserit, utrum is clemens ac misericors an in-  
 15 humanissimus et crudelissimus esse videatur? Mihi vero impor-

the right of appeal to the people. Cicero argued that by taking up arms against the Republic the conspirators had forfeited their rights as citizens and were therefore not protected by the law. Five of them were strangled by the public executioner, and Cicero thereby left himself open to criticism which resulted in his exile from Rome in 58 B.C.

3 animo: abl. of means, 'in my mind's eye'. patria: 'their native city'.

4 mihi: dat. of possession, often used instead of a gen. with parts of the body. Cethegi: The conspirators who were later strangled were Cethegus, Lentulus, Statilius, Gabinius and Caeparius. aspectus et furor: hendiadys. 'The frenzied mien of Cethegus appears before my eyes'. (For hendiadys, see note, p. 166, l. 10.)

5 Cum vero: as usual, *vero* reinforces the word it follows; '(the other conspirators are bad enough,) but when . . .' *Cum* here means 'whenever', and takes the indic. mihi: dat. gov. by the compound verb *proposui*.

6 ipse . . . confessus est: 'a hope which he himself has acknowledged he has formed as a result of oracular predictions' (*ex fati*). *sperasse*:= *speravisse*.

6-7 purpuratum . . . Gabinium: supply *proposui*. ' . . . and when I imagine Gabinium as this man's prime minister'.

8 familias: an early form of the gen. sing.; so also in l. 12.

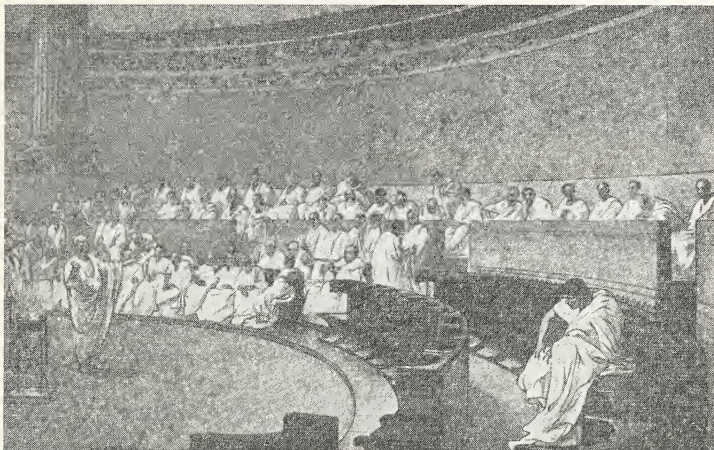
9 vehementer: mod. *misera* and *miseranda*.

10 in eos qui: 'against those who', with *severum* and *vehementem*.

12 quis: used in the sense of 'some', 'any', 'someone', 'anyone', after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num*. Usually, the form *quis* is used as a pronoun and becomes *qui* as an adjective.

14 sumpserit: perf. subj. in a sub. cl. in ind. disc.

14-15 utrum . . . an . . . videatur: a double ind. quest. gov. by *quaero*. In translating, try this order: *quaero utrum, si . . . sumpserit, is . . . esse videatur*. Cicero, as a great orator, was sensitive to the rhythms produced by certain combinations of words. He frequently used combinations like *esse videatur* to produce a



Courtesy, G. Bell and Sons

#### CICERO DENOUNCES CATILINE IN THE SENATE

tunus ac ferreus, qui non dolore et cruciatu nocentis suum dolorem cruciatumque lenierit. Sic nos in his hominibus,—qui nos, qui coniuges, qui liberos nostros trucidare voluerunt, qui singulas unius cuiusque nostrum domos et hoc universum rei publicae

rhythmical flourish at the end of a sentence.

16-17 qui . . . lenierit: freely, 'for not easing'; it is a relative cl. of cause, equivalent to *cum*-causal + subj. nocentis: 'of the guilty person', an example of a participle used as a noun; obj. gen.

17 Sic nos in his hominibus: this is a typical Latin periodic sentence (see note on p. 45, ll. 146-151). It introduces early a series of subordinate clauses (repeating *qui* like a series of relentless hammer-blows), and saves the main verb to the end as a smashing climax. English depends upon shorter sentences for its

effectiveness. Therefore in translating, try breaking the Latin into several shorter English sentences: 'So it is with us in the case of (*in*) these men. They resolved . . . They tried . . . They made this their aim . . . If we . . .'

18-19 singulas unius cuiusque nostrum domos: note the rhetorical juxtaposition of three words of similar meaning; 'the homes of each and every (*cuiusque*, gen. of *quisque*) one (*unius*) of us, one by one (*singulas*).'

19 rei publicae: gen. of equivalence. Tr. 'this, our common dwelling-place, (that is to say,) our country'.

- 20 *domicilium delere conati sunt, qui id egerunt, ut gentem Allobrogum in vestigiis huius urbis atque in cinere deflagrati imperii collocarent,—si vehementissimi fuerimus, misericordes habebimur; sin remissiores esse voluerimus, summae nobis crudelitatis in patriae civiumque pernicie fama subeunda est.*

(*Fourth Catiline-11, 12*)

- 25 *Quae cum ita sint, patres conscripti, vobis praesidia populi Romani non desunt; vos providete ne populo Romano deesse videamini. Habetis consulem ex plurimis periculis et insidiis atque ex media morte, non ad vitam suam, sed ad salutem vestram reservatum. Omnes ordines ad conservandam rem publicam mente, voluntate, voce consentiunt. Obsessa facibus et telis impiae coniurationis vobis supplex manus tendit patria communis; vobis se, vobis*

20 ff. *qui id egerunt, ut . . . collocarent: ut + subj. in noun cl. which is in apposition with id.* Tr. 'They made this their aim, (namely) to set up . . .'

20-21 *Allobrogum*: since their subjugation by Q. Fabius Maximus in 121 B.C., the Allobroges, who lived between the Rhone and the Alps, were always disposed to rebellion. At this time they had a deputation in Rome to protest against misrule by provincial officials. It seemed therefore a logical step for the conspirators to take when they approached these long-standing enemies of Rome for support. But the Allobrogian deputation, instead, helped Cicero obtain written evidence of treason.

22-23 *fuerimus, voluerimus*: fut. perfect in fut. more vivid conditions.

23 *remissiores*: absolute comp., 'too indulgent'.

23-24 *summae . . . subeunda est*: literally, 'a reputation for extreme cruelty (*fama summae crudelitatis*, gen. of equivalence) must be borne by us (*subeunda est nobis*, dat. of agent with a gerundive) in the

matter of (*in*) the ruin of our native city and of our fellow-citizens' (*pernicie patriae civiumque*). English prefers the active voice: 'We must endure . . .'

25 *Quae cum ita sint*: in the previous sections, Cicero has argued that severe punishment will be supported even by Rome's humblest citizens.

26-27 *ne . . . videamini*: cl. of purp. 27-28 *atque ex media morte*: 'yes, and from the jaws of death'; at least one attempt had been made upon Cicero's life.

28 *ad vitam suam*: 'to save his life'. 30 *facibus*: note that conspiracies are generally associated with the dead of night. *impiae*: used in its strict sense of 'lacking a sense of duty'. Tr. 'impious', 'unholy'.

31 *vobis*: used seven times for emphasis in this sentence in a rhetorical repetition for effect, and usually placed in rhetorical juxtaposition with key words like *se, arcem, aras*; 'it is to you that . . .'

31 *supplex*: 'as a suppliant', 'humbly'. *sup-(sub) + -plex* suggests a 'bending under', i.e. 'a kneeling down'.



- 35 vitam omnium civium, vobis arcem et Capitolium, vobis aras Penatium, vobis illum ignem Vestae sempiternum, vobis omnium deorum templa atque delubra, vobis muros atque urbis tecta commendat. Praeterea de vestra vita, de coniugum vestrarum atque liberorum anima, de fortunis omnium, de sedibus, de focis vestris, hodierno die vobis iudicandum est.
- 40 Habetis ducem memorem vestri, oblitum sui, quae non semper facultas datur; habetis omnes ordines, omnes homines, universum populum Romanum (id quod in civili causa hodierno die primum videmus) unum atque idem sentientem. Cogitate quantis labori-

**32 arcem et Capitolium:** The Capitoline, one of Rome's seven hills, was saddle-shaped, having the old citadel (*arx*) on one hump and the temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus* (the *Capitolium*) on the other. Since *Jupiter Capitolinus* was the protector of Rome, this temple was the most sacred spot in the whole Roman empire.

**33 Penatium:** The Penates were the gods of the household and of the larder, worshipped by every *paterfamilias* in his own home. The state, being developed from the family, likewise had its *Penates*, fabled to have been brought by Aeneas from Troy. Thus was a connection established between the religions of Rome and Troy.

**34 Vestae:** The temple of Vesta, the goddess of the hearth, located in the Roman Forum. It contained the undying fire from which any citizen could re-kindle his own fire. The important task of keeping this fire burning was entrusted to six Vestal virgins, high-born young women who were dedicated to chastity and to the service of Vesta. Violation of her vow of chastity was usually punished by burying the offender alive, with just enough food and

drink supplied to prolong the agony. **35-36 de:** used five times for emphasis in this sentence in a rhetorical repetition for effect; 'it is about (or, for) your . . . that you must . . .'

**36 focis:** the *focus*, the symbol of household life, was a brazier for burning charcoal. It originally was placed in the *atrium*, or living room of the house, where it served as a heater in the absence of a central heating unit.

**37 vobis iudicandum est:** 'you must make your decision'. *Vobis* is dat. of agent used with the gerundive + *sum* construction.

**38 vestri, sui:** objective genitive.

**38-39 quae facultas:** *facultas* is really the antecedent of *quae*, but has been incorporated within the rel. cl.

**40 id quod:** i.e. 'something which', 'a sight which'. *in civili causa:* 'on a political question'. *hodierno die:* used here, and in ll. 45-6, as a more impressive form than the usual *hodie*; 'this very day'. *primum:* adv., 'for the first time'.

**41 unum atque idem sentientem:** 'holding one and the same view', 'in complete unanimity'; *unum, idem* are neuter accusatives, and *sentientem* is masc., mod. *populum Romanum*.



bus fundatum sit imperium, quanta virtute stabilitata sit libertas, quanta deorum benignitate auctae sint fortunae, quomodo una nox omnia paene dele-  
 45 confici, sed ne cogitari quidem possit a civibus, hodierno die providendum est.

(Fourth Catiline—18, 19)

### 3. Cicero Finds his Country Neighbours a Distraction

*Like many other wealthy Romans, Cicero owned several villas in the country, and he enjoyed the respite they afforded from the hustle and bustle of life in Rome. Yet even in the country the attention paid by friendly townspeople and neighbours often made scholarly pursuits impossible, as Cicero complains in these extracts from letters written to his good friend Atticus in 59 B.C.*

De pangendo fieri nihil potest. Basilicam habeo, non villam, frequentia Formianorum. Sed omitto vulgus; post horam quartam molesti ceteri non sunt. C. Arrius proximus est vicinus, immo

42-44 fundatum sit . . . dele-  
 44-46 Id ne . . . providendum est:

this forceful sentence opens emphatically with *id* ('this calamity'), and closes even more emphatically with *providendum est* (the gerundive used with *sum* to express necessity). Tr. 'Care must be taken this very day not only (*non modo*) that (*ne*, introducing a cl. of purp.) never hereafter (*non umquam post-hac*) can this calamity be accomplished (*id confici possit*), but also (*sed=sed etiam*) that (*ne*) it cannot even be contemplated (*ne cogitari quidem possit*) by citizens (*a civibus*)', i.e. by citizens like Catiline.

1-2 frequentia: abl. of cause.

2 Formianorum: Cicero had a villa near Formiae, an ancient town in Latium situated on the Appian way,

where there were numerous villas of Roman nobles. It was in the neighbourhood of this villa that Cicero was killed.

3 *ceteri*: 'the others', referring to the *vulgus*, the rank and file of morning callers, as opposed to his two constant callers, Arrius and Sebosus, each of whom was a 'next-door neighbour' (*proximus vicinus*). If Arrius was the same Arrius ridiculed in one of the poems of Catullus (Poem LXXXIV), he was likely to drive Cicero to distraction with his distressing overuse of the letter 'h' in his pronunciation.

4 *Ecce tibi Sebosus*: 'Lo and behold (*tibi*, dat. of reference), (my neighbour) on the other side (of my villa) is Sebosus.' *Ecce tibi* is an expression frequently used by Cicero with almost the same meaning as *ecce*. Sebosus is a Roman surname meaning 'greasy'—an interestingly

- ille quidem iam contubernalis. Ecce tibi ex altera parte Sebosus!  
 5 Quo me vertam? . . . Cum haec maxime scriberem ecce tibi Sebosus! Nondum plane ingemueram, 'Salve', inquit Arrius. Hoc est Roma decedere!

(Att. II-14 and Att. II-15)

#### 4. Cicero Dictates a Letter During his "Exercise Period"

*This is part of a letter written by Cicero to his friend Atticus in 59 B.C. Like many other letters written in Rome, it reveals a "tired-business-man" attitude. Yet one senses that Cicero, in spite of the surface complaint, really enjoys being busy.*

Numquam ante arbitror te epistulam meam legisse nisi mea manu scriptam. Ex eo colligere poteris quanta occupatione distinear. Nam cum vacui temporis nihil haberem, et cum recreandae vocalae causa necesse esset mihi ambulare, haec dictavi ambulans.

(Att. II- 23)

#### 5. Cicero Writes from Exile to his Wife Terentia

*Cicero's enemy Clodius in 58 B.C. succeeded in forcing him to flee from Rome in order to avoid prosecution on a charge of unconstitutional execution of five of the Catilinarian conspirators.*

appropriate name for this second neighbourly intruder who has slipped into his villa.

5 vertam: deliberative subj. maxime: very often used by Cicero in combination with cum. Tr. 'just when'.

6 Nondum plane ingemueram: 'I hadn't yet quite uttered a groan,' i.e. 'I had hardly yet had time to sigh.'

6-7 Hoc est: 'This is what it means.'

7 Roma: abl., without the prep. ab, as usual with the name of a city.

slave and later his freedman. Tiro is thought by many scholars to have been the man who later edited the correspondence of Cicero for the world; others believe that Cicero's friend Atticus did so.

1 numquam ante: both are adverbs, mod. legisse. epistulam meam: 'a letter of mine', 'a letter from me'.

2 Ex eo: 'From this observation.' distinear: subj. in ind. quest.

3 temporis: partitive gen. with nihil; freely, 'no free time'. haberem: subj. in cum-causal cl. All three verbs in this sentence (haberem, esset, dictavi) are more naturally translated by the English present tense (=habeam, sit, dicto).

The secretary to whom Cicero dictated this letter may well have been his beloved Tiro, who was first his

*Like other letters written by Cicero in exile, this letter to his wife Terentia reveals the utter despair which he felt at the sudden collapse of his world. In the next year, however, Cicero was able to return to Rome.*

Ego minus saepe do ad vos litteras quam possum, propterea quod cum omnia tempora sunt mihi misera, tum vero, cum aut scribo ad vos aut vestras lego, conficior lacrimis sic ut ferre non possim. Utinam minus cupidi vitae fuissetus! Certe nihil aut non multum in vita mali vidissetus. Quod si nos ad aliquam alicuius incommodi aliquando recuperandi spem fortuna reservavit, minus est erratum a nobis; si haec mala fixa sunt, ego vero te quam primum, mea vita, cupio videre et in tuo complexu mori, quoniam neque di, quos tu castissime coluisti, neque homines, quibus ego semper servivi, nobis gratiam rettulerunt.

Nos Brundisii apud M. Laenium Flaccum dies XIII fuimus, virum

They are examples of the 'epistolary' (letter-writing) past tense often used by Roman letter-writers in order to anticipate the lapse of time required for the letter to reach its destination. Here, for instance, Cicero is anticipating that his friend Atticus will say 'Cicero dictated this, since he had no free time'.

1 **Ego**: the use of the personal pronoun is a common formula in letters to indicate that the statement is an answer to a question. Terentia must have complained of the fact that he wrote so seldom, and here we have the answer. 'Yes, I am sending . . .'  
2 **cum . . . tum**: = an emphatic *et . . . et*, with *vero* adding further emphasis; tr. 'because not only are . . . but also, whenever . . .'.  
**scribo**: indic. mood gov. by *cum* meaning 'whenever'.

3 conficior: 'I am overcome'.

4 *utinam* *fuissemus*: optative subj.  
*vitae*: obj. gen. with *cupidi*.

4-5 nihil aut non multum mali: 'no

sorrow (*mali*, part. gen. with *nihil*),  
or at least but little'.

**5 vidissemus:** plup. subj. in a past untrue condition, with an if-clause left unexpressed. **Quod si:** 'But if'. **Quod** is used as a connective.

5-6 'Fate (*fortuna*) has spared me (*nos reservavit*) with some prospects (*ad aliquam spem*) of recovering some loss (*alicuius incommodi recuperandi*) some day (*aliquando*).'

6-7 minus est erratum a nobis: 'my mistake is less serious'. It is an impers. pass. construction; lit., 'it has been erred less by me'.

7 si haec mala fixa sunt: 'if my present (*haec*) bitter fate (*mala*, neut. pl.) is unalterably fixed'.

9 di: see vocab. under *deus*.

9-10 Cicero is apparently little concerned with religious beliefs. His business is with *homines*, his wife's with *di*.

**10 nobis gratiam rettulerunt:** 'have shown us (any) gratitude'.

**11 Brundisii:** locative. dies **XIII:** in writing a numeral the Roman re-

- optimum, qui periculum fortunarum et capitis sui prae mea salute neglexit. Huic utinam aliquando gratiam referre possimus! Habebimus quidem semper. Brundisio profecti sumus a. d. II  
 15 Kal. Mai.; per Macedoniam Cyzicum petebamus.  
 O me perditum, o adflictum! Quid enim? Rogem te ut venias? Mulierem aegram et corpore et animo confectam? Non rogem? Sine te igitur sim? Opinor, sic agam: si est spes nostri reditus, eam confirmes et rem adiuves; sin, ut ego metuo, transactum est,  
 20 quoquo modo potes, fac ad me venias. Unum hoc scito: si te habeo, non mihi videbor plane periisse. Sed quid Tulliola mea fiet? Iam id vos videte; mihi deest consilium. Quid? Cicero meus quid aget? Iste vero sit in sinu semper et complexu meo. Non possum plura iam scribere; impedit maeror.

sorted to his Roman symbols, but in pronouncing the numeral, he used its full form, as *dies tredecim*.

12 *periculum fortunarum et capitis sui*: 'the danger to his fortunes and to his own life'; *fortunarum* and *capitis* are obj. genitives. *prae*: 'as compared with'.

13 *utinam possimus*: optative subj.

14 *Habebimus*: supply *gratiam*, from the preceding sentence. Notice how this short sentence is given emphasis by the use of *quidem*, and by the unusual position of *semper*. *Brundisio*: prep. omitted, as usual, with the name of a city; so too with *Cyzicum* (l. 15). *profecti sumus*: = *proficiscor*. This is an example of the use of a past tense in letter-writing, and looks forward to the time when Terentia will read this letter. Similarly, *petebamus* = *petiturus sum*.

14-15 a.d. II Kal. Mai.: = *ante diem II Kalendas Maias*. 'The day before the First of May', i.e. 'April 30' (usually expressed *pridie Kalendas Maias*).

16 *O me perditum, O adflictum*: accusatives of exclamation. 'alas for my ruination and my affliction!'

*Quid enim*: 'For what (am I to do)?' *Rogem*: delib. subj.; so also *sim*, l. 18.

17 *corpore et animo*: abl. of respect; 'physically and emotionally'. *confectam*: see note, l. 3.

18 *Opinor, sic agam*: 'This, I think, is what I shall do'. *reditus*: obj. gen. 19 *confirmes*: opt. subj. '(may you) promote it and (may you) help the plan on'. The subj. has almost the force of a command. *transactum est*: 'it has been settled', 'it is a dead issue'.

20 *quoquo modo*: 'in whatever way', 'however'. *fac ad me venias*: *fac*, with *ut* understood, = 'see to it that'. *scito*: an old fut. imperative. 'Be assured of this one thing'.

21-22 *quid Tulliola mea fiet*: 'what will become of my dear Tullia?'

22 *Iam id vos videte*: 'You see to it now'. *consilium*: 'plan of action'.

22-23 *Quid? Cicero meus quid aget?*: 'Again, what will my (son) Cicero do?' *Quid* (*dicis* understood) is a regular formula for introducing a new point; lit., 'what do you say to this new point?'

23 *sit*: optative subj.



- 25 Quod reliquum est, sustenta te, mea Terentia, ut potes honestissime. Viximus, floruimus; non vitium nostrum, sed virtus nostra, nos adflixit. Peccatum est nullum, nisi quod non animum una cum ornamentis amisimus. Cura, quod potes, ut valeas, et sic existimes, me vehementius tua miseria quam mea moveri. Mea  
30 Terentia, fidissima atque optima uxor, et mea carissima filiola et spes reliqua nostra, Cicero, valete. Prid. Kal. Mai. Brundisio.

(Fam. XIV-4)

## 6. Cicero Complains of the Decline of Roman Politics

*This is part of a letter written to Cicero's brother Quintus, who at this time (54 B.C.) was serving under Caesar in Gaul. In it Cicero complains that the influence of the "Big Three", the First Triumvirate, is undermining the entire Roman political scene.*

Nihil enim est perditius his hominibus, his temporibus. Itaque, ex republica quoniam nihil iam voluptatis capi potest, cur stomacher, nescio. Litterae me, et studia nostra et otium villaeque delectant, maximeque pueri nostri.

(Q. Fr. III-9)

25 Quod reliquum est: 'As for what is left'. sustenta te: 'sustain yourself', 'bear up'.

25-26 ut potes honestissime: a more emphatic way of saying *quam honestissime*; *ut potes* means 'in accordance with your ability', i.e. 'to the best of your ability'.

26 Viximus: 'We have lived our lives.'

27 nos adflixit: 'was our undoing'. nisi quod: 'except the fact that', 'except that'.

28 Cura ut valeas: like *fac venias*, l. 20. quod potes: like *ut potes*, l. 25.

28-29 sic existimes: also with *cura*; 'that you keep this in mind'.

31 Prid. Kal. Mai: = *Pridie Kalendas Martias*. See note, ll. 14-15.

Roman politicians and politics under Caesar, Pompey and Crassus, who had formed the First Triumvirate.

2 ex republica: here used in its primary sense of 'public life', or 'politics'. voluptatis: part. gen. with *nihil*.

3 studia nostra: 'my (favourite) pursuits', i.e. his writing and his study of philosophy. This interest, developed during his exile, is in some measure responsible for his later philosophical treatises such as *De Senectute* ('On Old Age') and *De Officiis* ('On Moral Obligations'). See Selections 15 and 16 of this section. otium villaeque: hendiadys; see note to l. 10 on p. 166. Tr. 'the leisure (afforded by) my country homes'.

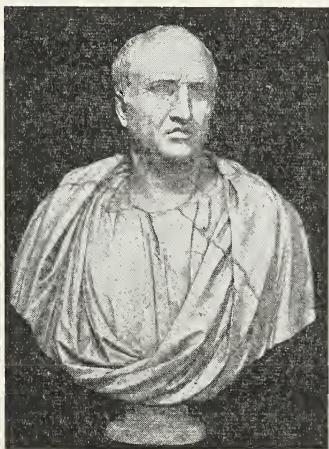
4 pueri nostri: Cicero refers to his son, young Marcus, and to the son of his brother Quintus,

1 his hominibus, his temporibus: abl. of comp. The reference is to

## 7. Cicero's Brother has Domestic Difficulties

*Cicero's brother Quintus was married to Pomponia, who was the sister of Cicero's best friend, Atticus. Atticus, suspecting that his sister was unhappy, had written Cicero to speak to his brother Quintus about it. Cicero visited the couple when he was on his way from Rome to begin his governorship of the province of Cilicia in 51 B.C. In the letter from which this extract is quoted, Cicero reports to Atticus that it is Pomponia, not Quintus, who is at fault, and suggests that perhaps it is Atticus who should speak to Pomponia about the situation.*

- Nihil tam mite vidi, nihil tam placatum quam tum meus frater erat in sororem tuam. Illo sic die. Postridie Arpino profecti sumus. Prandimus in Arcano. Nosti hunc fundum. Quo ut venimus, humanissime Quintus, 'Pomponia', inquit, 'tu invita mulieres, ego viros accepero.' Nihil potuit, ut mihi quidem visum est, dulcius. At illa audientibus nobis, 'Ego ipsa sum', inquit, 'hic hospita.' Id autem ex eo, ut opinor, quod antecesserat Staius ut prandium nobis videret. Tum Quintus, 'En', inquit mihi, 'haec ego patior cotidie.' Dices, 'Quid, quaeso, istuc erat?' Magnum;



MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

1 tam . . . quam: 'as . . . as'. frater: i.e. Quintus Tullius Cicero.

2 in: 'regarding'. Illo sic die: 'Thus it was that day'.

3 Nosti: = *novisti* = *cognovisti*. Quo: co-ordinating use, = *eo*.

5 accepero: = *accipiam*. Tr. 'I shall welcome'. potuit: supply *esse*. Tr. 'could have been'. ut: 'as', 'so'.

6 illa: change of subject. Audientibus nobis: abl. abs. Ego ipsa: 'I'm the one who . . .'

7 Id: 'This outburst (*Id*) stemmed (sc. *erat*) from the fact that (*ex eo quod*)'. Staius: a Roman *praenomen* adopted by this slave of Quintus.

8 videret: = *provideret* (subj. in a cl. of purp.)

9 Quid . . . istuc erat: lit., 'What was there to that subject?' Tr. 'What importance had that?' or 'What of that?'

- 10 itaque me ipsum commoverat; tam absurde et aspere verbis  
vultuque responderat. Dissimulavi dolens. Discubuimus omnes  
praeter illam, cui tamen Quintus de mensa misit. Illa reiecit.  
Quid multa? Nihil meo fratre lenius, nihil asperius tua sorore  
15 mihi visum est, et multa praetereo quae tum mihi maiori sto-  
macho quam ipsi Quinto fuerunt. Haec ad te scripsi fortasse pluri-  
bus quam necesse fuit, ut videres te quoque debere instituere et  
monere.

(Att. V-1)

### 8. Cicero Recognizes Caesar's Initial Advantages over Pompey

*The Civil War had begun when Cicero wrote this letter from Formiae to his friend Atticus in 49 B.C. Pompey, proving disappointingly inept in the face of Caesar's sudden advance through Italy, had fled to the port of Brundisium on his way to Greece. In the letter Cicero, though a supporter of the Pompeians' cause, expresses dismay over their bad "public relations" with citizens throughout Italy, and assesses the mounting popularity of Caesar.*

Lippitudinis meae signum tibi sit librarii manus et eadem causa brevitatis; etsi nunc quidem quod scriberem nihil erat. Omnis

10 tam absurde et aspere: 'with such uncalled-for (*absurde*) acrimony'.

11 Dissimulavi dolens: 'I hid my feelings, grieved though I was.' *Dolens* has concessive force.

12 de mensa misit: i.e. 'sent (some food) from the table'.

13 Quid multa?: 'why make a long story of it?' fratre . . . sorore: ablatives of comp.

13-14 nihil . . . mihi visum est: freely, 'I think I have never seen any-one'.

14-15 mihi maiori stomacho: double dat. Tr. 'a greater source of irritation to me'.

15 ipsi Quinto: 'even to Quintus'.

15-16 pluribus: supply *verbis*.

16 videres: subj. in a cl. of purp.

15-17 This letter gives us an intimate glimpse of Cicero the man, beset by family problems which seem modern indeed. It is interesting to notice that Cicero's brother Quintus, who served with distinction under Caesar in Britain and in Gaul, and who was congratulated by Caesar for his gallantry in holding off an enemy surprise attack, seems much less able to cope with this present situation!

1 Lippitudinis: Cicero is apologizing for not writing the letter himself, and also for its brevity. Because of an attack of inflammation of the eyes, he has dictated the letter to

- expectatio nostra erat in nuntiis Brundisinis. Sed videsne in quem hominem ceciderit res publica, quam acutum, quam vigilantem, quam paratum? Si mehercule neminem occiderit nec cuiquam quicquam ademerit, ab eis qui eum maxime timuerant maxime diligeretur. Multum mecum municipales homines loquuntur, multum rusticani; nihil prorsus aliud curant nisi agros, nisi villulas, nisi nummulos suos. Et vide quam conversa res sit; illum cui antea confidebant metuunt, hunc amant quem timebant. Id quantis nostris peccatis vitiisque evenerit non possum sine molestia cogitare.

(Att. VIII-13)

his secretary. sit: juss. subj., with subject *manus*. Freely, 'Regard my (use of a) secretary's handwriting as evidence of my sore eyes.' *eadem causa*: i.e. *eadem lippitudo sit causa*. Both *Lippitudinis* and *brevitatis* are obj. gen.

2 quod scriberem nihil erat: i.e. *erat* ('there is') *nihil quod scriberem* ('nothing to write', subj. in a rel. cl. of characteristic). The imperfect tense used here is an example of the so-called 'epistolary' or 'letter-writing' past tense, often used by Roman letter-writers to anticipate the interval of time required for the letter to reach its destination. Here, for instance, Cicero is anticipating that Atticus will say 'At the time Cicero was sending this, there was nothing to write.'

3 erat: another epistolary past tense. in: 'fixed on', 'focused on'. Brundisinis: 'from Brundisium', an example of the tendency in Latin to manufacture adjectives out of names.

3-4 in quem hominem: refers to Caesar; 'what manner of (*quem*, almost=*qualem*) man he is into whose hands'.

4 ceciderit: subj. in ind. quest. So too *conversa sit* (l. 9), *evenerit* (l. 11).

5 occiderit: fut. perf. indic. in a more vivid fut. cond. So too *ademerit* (l. 6).

6 cuiquam: 'from anyone'; a dative of disadvantage (a variety of dat. of interest) is often gov. by verbs like *adimo* meaning 'rob', 'take away'.

8 nihil prorsus aliud: 'absolutely nothing else'. nisi: 'except' (lit., 'unless').

9 villulas, nummulos: Cicero's use of the diminutive ending *-ulus* ('paltry') expresses his disgust for these men's complete preoccupation with their own, and not their country's, interests. res: 'the situation'.

9-10 illum . . . hunc: = Pompey, Caesar. Caesar's policy of clemency was already inviting favourable comparison with the policy of proscriptions and confiscations threatened by the Pompeians.

10-11 Id . . . evenerit: construe; *quantis peccatis* (abl. of cause) *vitiisque nostris* ('on our side', i.e. on the Pompeian side) *id* ('this change') *evenerit*. Cicero feels that the Pompeians have lost the people's confidence by their unwillingness to negotiate with Caesar, by their flight from Rome and by their talk of proscription and confiscation.



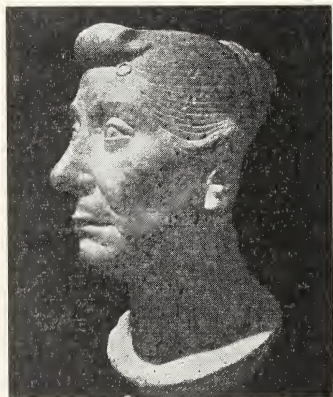
## 9. Cicero Tells his Wife to Prepare a Villa for Company

Wealthy Romans like Cicero found their country villas useful, not only for relaxation, but also for business purposes. A villa, for example, sometimes was useful for entertaining friends or business acquaintances. This letter, written by Cicero to his wife Terentia in 47 B.C., warns her to have the villa at Tusculum ready for company. It is the last letter we possess written to her by Cicero before their divorce in the following year. The letter seems very brusque, although a note written in haste might, of course, sound unintentionally so. There is some evidence that their domestic difficulties stemmed partly from Terentia's tendency to make unwise financial investments without Cicero's knowledge.

### TVLLIVS S. D. TERENTIAE SVAE

In Tusculanum nos venturos putamus aut Nonis aut postridie. Ibi ut sint omnia parata (plures enim fortasse nobiscum erunt et, ut arbitror, diutius ibi commorabimur); labrum si in balineo non  
 5 est, ut sit, item cetera quae sunt ad victum et ad valetudinem necessaria. Vale. Kal. Oct.

(Fam. XIV-20)



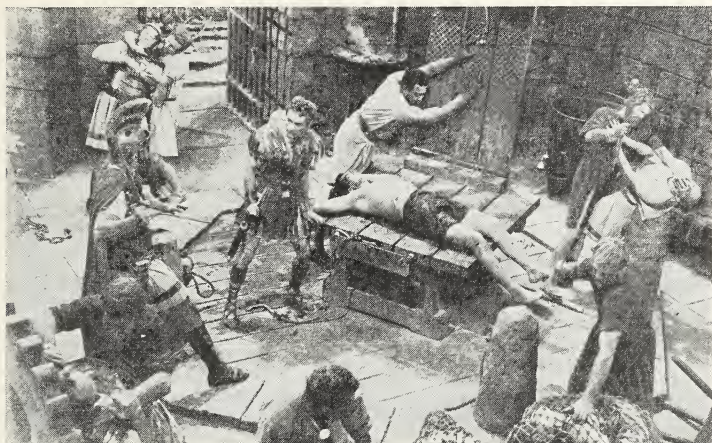
WOMAN OF AUGUSTAN PERIOD

Terentia's coiffure could have looked like this.

1 S.D.: = *salutem* ('a wish for health') *dat*, a regular formula used by a Roman in beginning a letter, much like our modern 'Dear . . .'

3 ut sint: supply *vide*, 'see to it'. So also *ut sit* in l. 5.

4 ut arbitror: *ut* = 'as', 'so'. *diutius*: abs. comparative. Tr. a 'fairly long time', 'some time'.



#### RUN-AWAY SLAVES WERE HARSHLY PUNISHED

In extreme cases they were crucified as an object lesson to other slaves.

### 10. Cicero Requests the Arrest of his Run-away Librarian

*Cicero remained a scholar all his busy life, and was justly proud of his valuable personal library. His indignation knew no bounds, therefore, when Dionysius, the Greek slave in charge of these books, secretly disposed of some of them and then fled to escape the consequences. The following is a part of a letter written to the Roman commander in Illyricum in 46 B.C., to request his co-operation in the capture of the culprit.*

Dionysius, servus meus, qui meam bibliothecam multorum nummorum tractavit, cum multos libros surripuisset aufugit. Is est in provincia tua. Eum et M. Bolanus, meus familiaris, et multi alii

1 Dionysius: the name suggests a Greek slave who had taken his name from the Greek god Dionysus, the god of wine.

1-2 multorum nummorum: gen. of description; lit., 'worth many coins', freely, 'very valuable'.

2 surripuisset: subj. gov. by *cum*—temporal referring to past time. So too *diceret* (l. 4).

3 Bolanus: Roman names are often descriptive; *Bolanus* means 'an insolent talker'.

- 5 Naronae viderunt, sed, cum se a me manumissum diceret, crediderunt. Res ipsa parva, sed animi mei dolor magnus est. Ubi sit et quid fieri possit, Bolanus te docebit. Ego si hominem per te recuperaro, summo me a te beneficio adfectum arbitror.

(Fam. XIII-77)

## 11. Cicero Outlines a Typical Daily Routine

*This is part of a letter written to his friend Paetus in 46 B.C. By now Caesar's personal administration of the government had left men like Cicero little scope for participation in politics, but Cicero still found himself the centre of much attention from Caesarians and Pompeians alike.*

- 5 Haec igitur est nunc vita nostra: mane salutamus domi et bonos viros multos, sed tristes, et hos laetos victores, qui me quidem perofficiose et peramanter observant. Ubi salutatio defluxit, litteris me involvo: aut scribo aut lego. Veniunt etiam qui me audiunt quasi doctum hominem, quia paulo sum quam ipsi doctior.

4 Naronae: loc. case. manumissum: manumission was the act whereby a master legally freed his slave from bondage as a reward for long and faithful service. Such a slave became a *libertus*, a freedman, and enjoyed the privileges of a citizen.

5 Res ipsa parva: 'It's a small matter in itself (*ipsa*)'.

5-6 sit, possit: subj. in ind. quest.

6 Ego: emphatically placed, 'for my part'.

6-7 recuperaro: = *recuperavero*, fut. perf. in a fut. more vivid cond.

7 me: accus., subject of infin. *adfectum* (*esse*); the separation of *summo* and *beneficio* pictures Cicero (*me*) as surrounded by the very great kindness.

1 vita nostra: 'my way of life'. Cicero is fond of the 'editorial we'.

So also in salutamus: 'I receive', 'I receive visits from'.

1-2 bonos . . . tristes: 'the loyalists (*bonos viros*, i.e. the Pompeians), in large numbers, but gloomy (*multos, sed tristes*)'.

2 victores: i.e. the Caesarians.

3 perofficiose et peramanter: 'with extreme devotion and love'. Cicero the egotist cannot resist using such prefixes as *per* = very.

3 Ubi salutatio defluxit: 'When the stream of morning callers has ebbed'.

3-4 litteris: abl. of means; 'with my books', 'with my literary pursuits'.

4 Veniunt etiam: 'There are also those visitors'; supply *ei* as antecedent of *qui*. These visitors apparently interview Cicero on scholarly subjects, and listen to his opinions like students attending lectures.

5 paulo: abl. of meas. of diff.





Scene from M.G.M.'s 'Ben Hur'

#### A ROMAN RECEIVES MORNING CALLERS IN HIS COUNTRY VILLA

Inde corpori omne tempus datur. Patriam eluxi iam et gravius et diutius quam ulla mater unicum filium.

(Fam. IX-20)

### 12. Cicero Answers a Letter of Condolence on the Death of his Daughter Tullia

*The cruelest blow suffered by Cicero was the death, in 45 B.C., of his beloved daughter Tullia. It left him utterly disconsolate, in spite of his own efforts and those of his friends to overcome his grief. One friend, the statesman and jurist Servius Sulpicius Rufus, wrote Cicero a "noble message of condolence which can*

6 corpori: 'to my bodily comfort'. Patriam eluxi iam: 'I have now done my mourning over my country', or else 'I have already been in mourn-

ing over my country'. et . . . et: Do NOT translate by 'both . . . and'; the first et introduces a second clause (supply *eluxi*).



hardly be passed over in any history of Latin literature."<sup>1</sup> It was in reply to this message that Cicero wrote the letter from which the following extracts are taken.

- Utinam, Servi, ut scribis, in meo gravissimo casu adfuisses. Me autem non oratio tua solum et societas paene aegritudinis, sed etiam auctoritas consolatur; turpe enim existimo me non ita ferre casum meum ut tu, tali sapientia praeditus, ferendum putas. Sed  
 5 opprimor interdum et vix resisto dolori, quod ea solacia me deficiunt, quae ceteris, quorum mihi exempla propono, simili in fortuna non defuerunt. Nam et Q. Maximus, qui filium consularem, clarum virum et magnis rebus gestis, amisit, et L. Paulus, qui duo septem diebus, et vester Gallus et M. Cato, qui summo

1 Utinam . . . adfuisses: opt. subj. Servi: voc. case. ut: 'as'. in . . . casu: 'in my most grievous calamity'. Me: emphatically placed, 'As for me, however (*autem*)'.

2 oratio tua: i.e. 'your arguments' with which you consoled me in your letter. societas paene aegritudinis: 'your fellowship, as I might almost say (*paene*), in my affliction'. (*aegritudinis*, obj. gen.)

3 auctoritas: 'your authority', i.e. 'your weighty judgment', 'the weight of your advice'. turpe: neut. sing., modifying the neut. idea implicit in the phrase *me non ita ferre casum meum*, which is the real subject of the infin. *esse*, understood. Tr. 'I think it is disgraceful that I do not bear . . .'

4 ut: 'as', 'in the way that'. tali sapientia praeditus: '(a man) endowed with such wisdom'. ferendum (*esse*): mod. *casum*.

5 opprimor: 'I am overcome', 'I break down'. dolori: dat. gov. by

*resisto*, 'I resist, struggle against'.

6 ceteris: 'the others', 'those other men', dat. gov. by *defuerunt*. See note, l. 7.

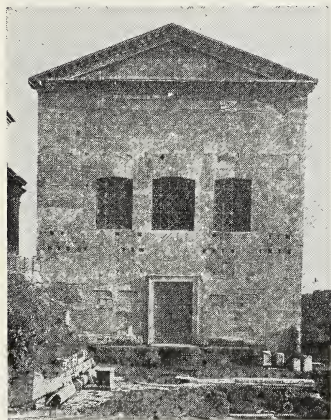
6-7 simili in fortuna: 'in similar (mis)fortune'.

7 Q.: = *Quintus*. Among those referred to as having sustained a loss similar to his own, but at a time when their important position in Rome afforded much to console them, are: *Quintus Fabius Maximus Cunctator*, whose delaying tactics caused Hannibal so much trouble in the Second Punic War; *Lucius Aemilius Paulus* (l. 8), who defeated Perseus at Pydna in 168 B.C.; *Gaius Sulpicius Gallus* (l. 9), consul in 166 B.C.; *Marcus Cato* (l. 9), the Censor.

7-9 et . . . et . . . et . . . et: Do not translate this word. Latin prefers a long, periodic sentence that subordinates all verbal ideas leading to the principal verb, which comes last in a strict chronological order. In

<sup>1</sup>Quoted from J. W. Mackail, *Latin Literature*.

- 10 ingenio, summa virtute filium perdidit, eis temporibus fuerunt ut eorum luctum ipsorum dignitas consolaretur ea quam ex re publica consequabantur. Mihi autem, amissis ornamentis eis quae ipse commemoras quaeque maximis laboribus adeptus eram, unum illud solacium manebat quod ereptum est. Non ami-
- 15 corum negotiis, non rei publicae procuratore impediabantur cogitationes meae, nihil in foro agere libebat, aspicere curiam



THE SENATE-HOUSE

Since the days of Tullus Hostilius in 670 B.C., the Curia was always located on this very spot.

translating a long Latin periodic sentence into English, it is usually better to render some of its subordinate clauses as principal verbs. For example, tr. 'Q. Maximus, qui . . . amisit' as 'Quintus Maximus lost . . .' So also 'L. Paulus, qui perdidit' as 'Lucius Paulus lost'. eis temporibus fuerunt (l. 10): must now be treated as a new sentence. 'But then, they lived in times when', 'But then, they lived when times were such that'.

8 magnis rebus gestis: abl. of desc. '(a man) of rare accomplishments'; so also *ingenio* and *virtute* (l. 10).

9 duo: supply *filios*. septem diebus: abl. of time within which.

vester: C. Sulpicius Gallus had the same family *nomen* as Servius Sulpicius Rufus, to whom this letter is written. Tr. 'your kinsman'.

10 ingenio . . . virtute: see note, l. 8. fuerunt: = *vixerunt*. See note, ll. 7-9. eis temporibus ut: 'in such times that'. (eis almost = *talibus*)

11-12 Construe: 'that position of honour (*ea dignitas*) which they were achieving (*quam consequabantur*) in the service of the state (*ex re publica*) comforted (*consolaretur*, subj. in a result cl.) their personal grief (*luctum eorum ipsorum*).'

12 Mihi autem: dat. of interest. 'But in my case', 'For me, however'.

13 laboribus: abl. of means.

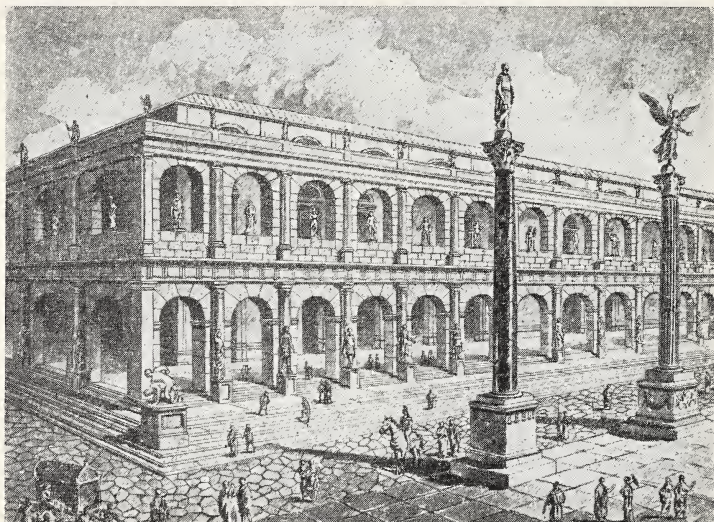
14 quod ereptum est: 'which has been snatched away'.

14-15 amicorum negotiis: 'by (attention to) my friends' interests'.

15 rei publicae: obj. gen. non . . . impediabantur: 'were not diverted'.

16 nihil in foro agere libebat: lit., 'it was pleasing to do nothing in the forum'; i.e. 'I did not care to practise in the courts', 'I found no pleasure as an advocate'.

16-17 aspicere non poteram: 'I could not bear to look at'.



THE BASILICA JULIA

Here were the law-courts of Rome in which Cicero and his fellow-lawyers must have practised.

non poteram. Existimabam, id quod erat, me omnes fructus et  
 20 industriae meae et fortunae perdisse. Sed habebam quo con-  
 fugerem, ubi conquiescerem, cuius in sermone et suavitate omnes  
 curas doloresque deponerem. Nunc autem hoc tam gravi vulnere

17 Existimabam: inceptive imperf. 'I began to think'. *id quod erat*: 'as was indeed the case', lit., 'a situation which (actually) existed'. *Id* refers to the acc. and infin. construction in *me . . . perdisse*, ll. 17-18.

18-19 Sed habebam quo confugerem, ubi conquiescerem: 'I (always) had a place of refuge (lit., a place to which I could flee) where I might find peace'; *confugerem* and *conquiescerem* are subj. in a rel. cl. of

purpose, with an antecedent like *locum* or *aliquem* understood. So too *deponerem*, l. 20.

19-20 cuius . . . deponerem: subj. in a rel. cl. of purp. 'I had someone in whose sweet conversation (or, society) (*cuius in sermone et suavitate*; hendiadys. See note, p. 166, l. 10) I could lay aside . . .'

20 hoc tam gravi vulnere: abl. of cause. 'Because of this grievous wound', 'under this terrible blow'.



etiam illa, quae consanuisse videbantur, recrudescunt. Itaque et domo absum et foro. Quo magis te exspecto teque videre quam primum cupio.

(*Fam. IV-6*)

### 13. Cicero Pauses to Appreciate the Setting of one of his Villas

*This is part of a letter written to Cicero's friend Atticus in 45 B.C. from the villa at Astura. It gives a delightful glimpse of the beautiful setting of this home that overlooked the sea.*

Nihil hac solitudine iucundius. Cetera noli putare amabiliora fieri posse villa, litore, prospectu maris, tumulis, his rebus omnibus. Sed neque haec digna longioribus litteris nec erat quod scriberem, et somnus urgebat.

(*Att. XII-9*)

21 illa: i.e. *illa vulnera*.

21-22 et domo absum et foro: 'I stay away from my home (*domo*, abl. of sep. without a prep.) and from the courts'. (*foro* omits the prep. *ab*, probably by analogy with *domo*). The law-courts were situated in the *Basilica Iulia*, near the Rostra (speaker's platform) in the *Forum Romanum*.

22 Quo magis: *Quo* is partly abl. of cause ('Because of this', 'Therefore') and partly abl. of meas. of diff. with *magis* ('all the more'). *te exspecto*: 'I am looking forward to your arrival'.

1 Nihil: supply a verb like *est* (freely 'could be'). *hac solitudine*: abl. of comparison. In a passage that has been omitted here, Cicero wryly adds that this solitude is broken by occasional visits from a talkative neighbour. *Cetera*: accus., subject of

*infin. posse*; freely, 'anything else'.

2-3 villa . . . his rebus omnibus: abl. of comparison. *tumulis*: 'the hillocks', 'the undulating country'. *his omnibus rebus*: 'this whole scene'.

3 neque . . . nec: 'not . . . and . . . not'. *haec*: supply *sunt*. *litteris*: abl. gov. by *digna*.

3-4 erat . . . scriberem . . . urgebat: translate as if *est* . . . *scribam* . . . *urget*. They are epistolary past tenses, often used in letter-writing because of the Roman habit of regarding time, not from the writer's point of view, but from his correspondent's. *quod scriberem*: a rel. cl. of characteristic; 'anything to write'.

4 urgebat: supply *me* (freely, 'my eyes'). As Edith Hamilton comments, 'Something more exciting than nature and meditation was necessary to keep Cicero awake.'



### 14. Cicero the Landlord Has a Repair Bill

*Wealthy Romans often owned many buildings in the city and even rented out the street-frontages of their own homes as shops. The following extract is from a letter written to his friend Atticus in 44 B.C. In it Cicero reports a large repair bill, proudly claims a philosophical indifference to it, and then slyly admits that he has a plan to turn the whole transaction into a profit.*

Tabernae mihi duae corruerunt reliquaeque rimas agunt. Itaque non solum inquilini sed mures etiam migraverunt. Hanc ceteri calamitatem vocant, ego ne incommodum quidem. O Socrate et Socratici viri, numquam vobis gratiam referam! Di immortales, 5 quam mihi ista pro nihilo! Sed tamen ea ratio aedificandi initur, ut hoc damnum quaestuosum sit.

(Att. XIV-9)

### 15. Cicero Argues that Old Age Need Not Fear Death

*The year 45-44 B.C. has been called the "astonishing year"<sup>1</sup> (annus mirabilis) of Cicero's life because of its great literary productivity. With republican politics a thing of the past, and with his beloved daughter Tullia dead, Cicero "fell back more completely than ever upon philosophy",<sup>1</sup> and by his writings made available to a later Latin-reading world ideas which have now "in great measure been absorbed into the fabric of civilized society".<sup>1</sup> The extract*

1 mihi: dat. of disadvantage (a type of dat. of interest); freely, 'of mine'. rimas agunt: 'are developing cracks', 'are cracking'.

2 mures: pl. of *mus* (NOT from *murus*!). ceteri: i.e. 'other people'.

3 Socrate: a Greek vocative form.

4 Socratici viri: 'followers of Socrates', i.e. philosophers in general. gratiam referam: supply *satis* (adv.).

5 quam . . . pro nihilo: 'how (quam, adv.) insignificant (*pro nihilo*, lit.,

'as nothing') that is (*ista*, supply *sunt*) in my eyes (*mihi*, dat. of reference)'. ea ratio: almost = *talis ratio*; 'such a plan'.

6 sit: subj. in a cl. of result; freely, 'is proving'. Edith Hamilton pictures the effect which this letter would have on Atticus: 'One can see Atticus first dismayed at the news, next a bit irritated by Socrates, and finally relieved by the profitable plan. Cicero had a way of drawing upon Atticus' resources as if they were his own.'

<sup>1</sup>Quoted from J. W. Mackail, *Latin Literature*.

given below is taken from the essay "On Old Age" (De Senectute), dedicated to Cicero's friend Atticus. It is a dialogue in which the central speaker is Cato the Elder, the "grand old man" of republican times, and also the author of the well-known dictum "Delenda est Carthago". Cato explains to two younger admirers that old age is not to be dreaded. He lists four reasons that might seem to make it dreaded, and then disproves them one by one.

- Quarta restat causa, quae maxime angere atque sollicitam habere nostram aetatem videtur, appropinquatio mortis, quae certe a senectute non potest esse longe. O miserum senem, qui mortem contemnendam esse in tam longa aetate non viderit! Quae aut  
 5 plane neglegenda est, si omnino exstinguit animum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum deducit ubi sit futurus aeternus. Atqui tertium certe nihil inveniri potest. Quid igitur timeam, si aut non miser post mortem aut beatus etiam futurus sum?  
 Iam sensus moriendi aliquis esse potest, isque ad exiguum tempus,

1 Quarta restat causa: 'there remains the fourth charge', i.e. the fourth reason why death might be dreaded. The three earlier charges against old age, as listed by Cicero, are: 1. Old age withdraws men from active pursuits; 2. Old age lacks the strength of youth; 3. Old age is devoid of pleasures. Each of these charges he has already refuted. Now he introduces the fourth charge, that old age is not far from death, and proceeds to argue that death is not an evil.

1-2 sollicitam habere nostram aetatem: 'to keep our time of life (i.e. men of my age) in a state of unrest'; aetatem is direct object of both *angere* and *habere*. The speaker is Cato the Elder.

3 esse: = *abesse*. O miserum senem: acc. of exclamation.

3-4 qui . . . non viderit: *qui*-causal cl., a special type of rel. cl. of characteristic; lit., 'because he has

not seen'. Tr., 'if he has not observed'.

4 contemnendam esse: 'must be regarded with indifference'. in tam longa aetate: this phrase mod. *viderit* (not *contemnendam*), and *aetate*=*vita*. Quae: i.e. *Mors*.

5 animum: 'the soul', 'the spirit'.

6 aliquo ubi sit futurus: 'to some place (*aliquo*, adv.) where he is destined to be'; *sit* is subj. in a rel. cl. of *purp.*

7 tertium nihil: 'no third (possibility)', i.e. either death is to be disregarded as being the end of life, or else it is an object of desire as leading to immortality. Quid igitur timeam: 'why (*Quid*=*Propter quid* = *Cur*) therefore am I to be afraid?' (*timeam*, delib. subj.).

8 beatus etiam: 'even happy', i.e. 'downright fortunate', in contrast with *non miser* ('not unhappy').

9 Iam: 'now . . .' used in the resumptive sense of continuing the

- 10 praesertim seni; post mortem quidem sensus aut optandus aut nullus est. Sed hoc meditatam ab adolescentia debet esse, mortem ut neglegamus, sine qua meditatione tranquillo animo esse nemo potest. Moriendum enim certe est, et incertum an hoc ipso die. Mortem igitur omnibus horis impendentem timens quomodo
- 15 poterit animo consistere? De qua non ita longa disputatione opus esse videtur, cum recorder non L. Brutum, qui in patria liberanda est interfectus, non M. Atilium, qui ad supplicium est pro-

argument. *sensus* . . . *potest*: 'there may possibly be some sensation of dying'. *isque*: lit., 'and that (sensation)'; freely, 'but only'.

10-11 aut optandus aut nullus est: 'is either a desirable one or else non-existent'.

11 hoc: 'this lesson'. ab adolescentia: 'from the time of youth (henceforward)'.

11-12 mortem ut neglegamus: noun cl. in apposition with *hoc* (l. 11). Tr. 'namely, that we disregard death', 'to disregard death'.

12 sine qua meditatione: The antecedent of the rel. pron. is incorporated into the rel. cl. It would be normal to find *meditatio sine qua* . . . , 'a practice without which'. *tranquillo animo*: abl. of desc. 'of undisturbed mind'.

13 incertum an hoc ipso die: lit., '(it is) uncertain whether on this very day', freely, 'and possibly on this very day'. *an*: here = *-ne*, but usually introduces the second part of a double question. *moriendum est*: gerundive with *sum*, expressing necessity; here impersonal pass., because *mori* is intrans.

14-15 Translate: 'How, then, will the man who fears (*timens*, pres. part. used as a noun) death be able to be steadfast (*consistere*, lit., to remain steady) of heart (*animo*, abl. of respect, lit., with respect to the

heart), since death is imminent, (*imminentem*, mod. *mortem*) every hour (*omnibus horis*)'?

15 De qua: i.e. 'about death'. non ita disputatione: abl. (of the thing needed) with *opus esse*, l. 16; freely, 'of no very long discussion'.

16 cum: *cum*-causal, but more naturally translated by 'when'. L. Brutum: This and the following accusatives *M. Atilium*, *duos Decios*, and *legiones nostras* are all to be taken as the acc. subjects of *profectus esse* (l. 20) which agrees with *legiones*, its nearest subj. Well-known, older heroes are mentioned first, before the young country boys of the legions, in order to make the argument all the more compelling; 'when I remember that it wasn't (our great national heroes) but (mere lads) who . . . '.

16-17 in patria liberanda: The Tarquins tried to regain the throne after their expulsion. Brutus, while resisting their attempts, was killed in single combat with *Arruns Tarquinius*.

17 M. Atilium: *Marcus Atilius Regulus*, the famous general of the First Punic War who, after his capture by the Carthaginians, is said to have been despatched to Rome on the promise that he would return to Carthage if he was unable to secure favourable peace terms with the Ro-

- fectus, ut fidem hosti datam conservaret, non duos Decios, qui ad voluntariam mortem cursum equorum incitaverunt, sed legiones nostras in eum locum saepe profectas esse alacri animo et erecto, unde se redituras esse numquam arbitrarentur. Quod igitur adulescentes—et ei quidem non solum indocti sed etiam rustici—contemnunt, id docti senes extimescent? Omnino, ut mihi quidem videtur, studiorum omnium satietas vitae facit satietatem. Sunt extrema quaedam studia senectutis. Ergo, ut superiorum aetatum studia occidunt, sic occidunt etiam senectutis. Quod cum evenit, satietas vitae tempus maturum mortis adfert.

(*De Senectute* 66, 74)

mans. In Rome, he deliberately dissuaded the senate from assenting to a peace, or even to an exchange of prisoners. After this he returned to a martyr's death in Carthage. ad supplicium: 'to his punishment', i.e. 'to his death'.

18 ut . . . conservaret: purp. cl. duos Decios: *Publius Decius Mus* was consul in B.C. 340. During the war with the Latins he was told in a vision on the night before a battle that the general of one side and the army of the other were destined to be sacrificed. The next day Decius commanded the left wing. When it began to give way, he rushed into the midst of the enemy and was slain. In B.C. 295 his son, of the same name, imitated the example of his father.

20 profectas esse: infin. in the acc. and infin. construction introduced by *recorder* (l. 16), agreeing with its acc. subject *legiones*. alacri animo et erecto: abl. of manner, which omits the prep. *cum* when the noun is modified. Tr. 'with eager and lofty courage'.

21 unde . . . arbitrarentur: rel. cl. of characteristic, with its antecedent *eum locum* (l. 20). Construe: *unde arbitrarentur se numquam*

*redituras esse*. igitur: 'well, then . . .' Quod: acc. case, dir. obj. of *contemnunt*. Its antecedent *id*, l. 23, is delayed for emphasis.

22 indocti: 'unschooled (in philosophy)'.

24 studiorum . . . satietatem: 'it is boredom with (lit. of) all pursuits that produces boredom with (lit. of) life'.

24-25 Sunt . . . senectutis: lit., 'there are certain final interests belonging to old age'; freely, 'old age has certain final interests'.

25 Ergo: this word is used in logical reasoning in preference to *itaque* or *igitur*. In *The Merchant of Venice* (Act II, Scene II), Shakespeare has Shylock's servant, the clown Launcelot Gobbo, make considerable use (and misuse) of *ergo*. ut: 'just as', balanced by *sic*.

26 occidunt: 'fall away'. senectutis: i.e. (*studia*) *senectutis*. Quod cum evenit: *Quod* ('This', 'This falling away') is the co-ordinating rel. pron.; the conj. *cum* ('whenever') governs the indic. mood.

27 tempus maturum mortis adfert: lit., 'brings the ripe time of death', i.e. 'brings the time ripe for death', or 'brings duly (i.e. in season) the time to die'.



## 16. Cicero Cites an Example of "Criminal Fraud"

To his son, young Marcus, Cicero dedicated the treatise "On Moral Obligations (*De Officiis*). This was one of the many works that he completed in 44 B.C., works that have proved of great importance to the world, because for centuries Cicero was the main channel by which Greek standards reached mankind. The treatise, which is partly Cicero's own original work, deals in part with the concepts of moral rectitude (*honestas*) and of expediency (*utilitas*), and discusses instances in which men have been motivated by one or other of these. The argument is advanced that the only true expediency or self-interest is to be found in moral rectitude, and that "honesty is the best policy". In the extract given below, Cicero gives an example of downright fraud practised by one man upon another.

- 5 C. Canius, eques Romanus, cum se Syracusas otiandi, ut ipse dicere solebat, non negotiandi causa contulisset, dictitabat se hortulos aliquos emere velle, quo invitare amicos et ubi se oblectare sine interpellatoribus posset. Quod cum percrebuisse, ei Pythius quidam, qui argentariam faceret Syracusis, non venales quidem se hortos habere, sed licere Canio uti, si vellet, ut suis, et simul

1 eques: 'business-man', i.e. a member, like Cicero, of the equestrian or financial class. cum se Syracusas: with *contulisset* (l. 2), which is subj. mood gov. by *cum*-temporal in sec. sequ. So too *percrebuisse* (l. 4) and *promisisset* (l. 8). Syracusas: *ad* is omitted, as usual, with the name of a city.

1-2 otiandi, . . . non negotiandi causa: gerunds, gen. gov. by *causa*, expressing purpose. Notice the pun involved in the contrast between the affirmative (*otiandi*) and the negative (*negotiandi*=*nec* + *otiandi*). Tr. 'for monkey business, not business'.

2-3 hortulos aliquos: 'some (or, a)

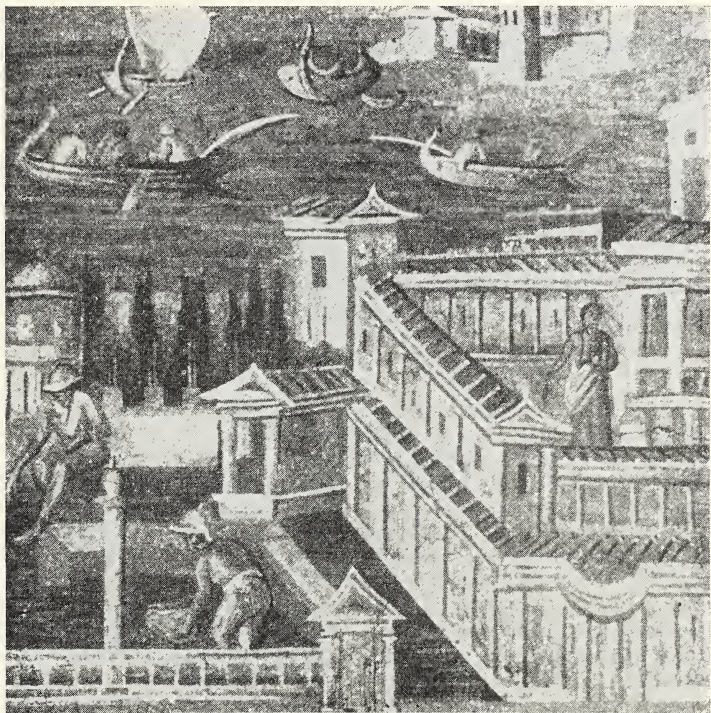
small estate'; the plural resembles our plural 'grounds'.

3-4 quo . . . ubi . . . posset: each adverb introduces a rel. cl. of purpose, with *hortulos* as antecedent.

4 Quod cum percrebuisse: *Quod* is a co-ordinating rel. pron. ('this news'); the presence of the conj. *cum* makes it impossible for *Quod* also to be a conj. *ei*: supply *dixit*, which introduces the indirect statements *se* . . . *habere* and *licere* (l. 6.)

5 argentariam faciebat: supply *artem*; 'carried on the business of a banker'. Syracusis: loc. case.

6 sed licere Canio uti, si vellet, ut suis: 'but that permission was grant-



A ROMAN SEA-SIDE VILLA

ad cenam in hortos hominem invitavit in posterum diem. Cum ille promississet, tum Pythius, qui erat ut argentarius apud omnes ordines gratus, piscatores ad se convocavit et ab eis petivit ut

ed (*licere*, impersonal infin. in an ind. statement; lit., 'it to be permitted') to Canius (*Canio*, dat.), to make use of them (*uti*, supply abl. *hortis*) as his own (*ut suis*), if he wanted (*si vellet*, subj. in a sub. cl. in ind. disc.).

7 ad cenam in hortos: an example of Latin emphasis on 'double destina-

tion'; see note on ll. 67-68, p. 38. in posterum diem: *in* (with accus.) often expresses purpose; 'for'. ille: indicates a change of subject; = *Canius*.

8-9 apud omnes ordines: i.e. plebeians, patricians and *equites* (business-men).

- 10 ante suos hortulos postridie piscarentur, dixitque quid eos facere vellet. Ad cenam tempori venit Canius. Opipare convivium a Pythio apparatus est; cumbarum ante oculos erat multitudo; pro se quisque quod ceperat adferebat; ante pedes Pythii pisces abiciebantur.
- 15 Tum Canius 'Quaeso', inquit, 'quid est hoc, Pythi? Tantumne piscium? Tantumne cumbarum?' Et ille 'Quid mirum?', inquit. 'Hoc loco est Syracusis quidquid est piscium, hic aquatio; hac villa isti carere non possunt.' Incensus Canius cupiditate contendit a Pythio ut venderet. Gravate ille primo. Quid multa? Impetrat.
- 20 Emit homo cupidus et locuples tanti quanti Pythius voluit, et

10 piscarentur: subj. in ind. com.

11 vellet: subj. in ind. quest. tempori: 'at the right time', 'on the occasion', an unusual dat., perhaps a kind of dat. of purpose.

12 cumbarum: part. gen. with *multitudo*, but placed early as if to show what first caught Canius' eye.

12-13 pro se quisque: 'each, in proportion to (*pro*) his ability'.

13 quod: 'whatever'; for *id* (*piscium*) *quod*. Apparently Pythius wants to suggest, without actually saying so, that all fish caught in his waters, so to speak, are the property of the owner of the estate. Canius is taken in by the trick; his cupidity blinds him to any lack of logic in the situation.

15 quid est hoc: exactly like our own modern idiom; 'what is this (all about)?' Pythi: voc.

15-16 Tantumne piscium?: 'Such a lot of fish?'; lit., 'Is there (sc. *est*) so large a quantity (*tantum*, neut. adj. used as a noun) of fishes?'

16 ille: a change of subject; = *Pythius*. Quid mirum?: sc. *est*; 'What's surprising (about that)?'

17 Hoc loco . . . aquatio: construe; *quidquid piscium* (see *Tantumne piscium?*, l. 15) *est Syracusis* (loc. case) *est hoc loco* (prep. *in* omitted when *locus* has a modifier), *hic* (supply *est*) *aquatio* ('the fishing grounds'). *hac villa*: abl. gov. by *carere*, the verb from which is derived the expression 'caret-mark' (Λ). Tr. 'The fishermen (*isti*) cannot do without this villa, (*hac villa carere non possunt*)'.

18 Incensus . . . contendit: vividness is gained by the alliteration, by the picturesque position of *Canius* and by the forceful expression *contendit ab* ('argued with', 'begged').

19 venderet: subj. in an ind. com. Gravate ille primo: construe; *primo* (adv.) *ille* (a change of subject, = *Pythius*) *gravate* (supply *egit*, or *agit*, 'acted reluctantly'). *Quid multa?*: supply *dicam*; 'Why make a long story of it?' *Impetrat*: supply *Canius*; *ille* might have been used here.

20 tanti quanti: 'at the price which'; gen. of price, lit., 'at as great a price as . . .'



emit instructos. Invitat postridie familiares suos, venit ipse matre, scalmum nullum videt. Quaerit ex proximo vicino num feriae quaedam piscatorum essent, quod eos nullos videret. 'Nullae, quod sciam', inquit, 'sed hic piscari nulli solent; itaque  
25 heri mirabar quid accidisset.'

Stomachari Canius, sed quid faceret? Nondum enim C. Aquilius, collega et familiaris meus, protulerat de dolo malo formulas. In quibus ipsis cum ex eo quaereretur quid esset dolus malus, respondebat, cum aliud esset simulatum, aliud actum. Hoc quidem  
30 sane luculente, ut ab homine perito definiendi. Ergo et Pythius et omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulantes perfidi, improbi, mali-tiosi.

(*De Officiis, Book III, XIV-58-60*)

21 instructos: supply *hortos*; 'the estate, fully furnished'.

22 scalmum nullum: 'nary an oar-lock', i.e. 'no sign of a boat'.

23 essent: subj. in ind. quest. nullos: more emphatic than *non*; freely, 'not . . . at all'. So too *nulli* (l. 24). videret: subj. in sub. cl. in ind. disc.

24 nullae: supply *feriae sunt*. quod sciam: 'so far as I know', a rel. cl. of characteristic expressing a restriction.

25 accidisset: subj. in ind. quest.

26 Stomachari: historical infin., used vividly for *Stomachabatur*. faceret: deliber. subj.

27 collega . . . meus: Cicero and C. Aquilius were praetors together in 66 B.C. de dolo malo formulas: 'his established forms regarding criminal fraud'. *Formulae* were 'orders of reference', to be followed by the judge or the jurymen in reaching a decision. 'Actual decisions did not become binding precedents. There was no doctrine of judicial precedent, as we understand it today'. (Quoted from Stuart Ryan's paper, *Cicero, Learned in the Law?*).

27-28 In quibus ipsis: 'In connection with these very forms'.

28 ex eo quaereretur: lit., 'it was being asked of him', i.e. 'he was being asked'; impersonal pass., and subj. gov. by *cum*-temporal in sec. sequ.

28-29 respondebat: supply *esse* ('that it constituted') *dolum malum*.

29 esset simulatum: subj. in sub. cl. in ind. disc. The original statement was; '*Est dolus malus cum* (when-ever) *aliud* (one thing) *est simulatum*, *aliud* (another thing) *actum*'. Hoc: supply *dictum est*.

30 sane luculente: 'very neatly', 'very much to the point'. ut: 'as might be expected'. definiendi: gerund, obj. gen. gov. by *perito*. Ergo: this word is used in preference to *itaque* or *igitur* in logical reasoning. In Shakespeare's *The Merchant of Venice*, Shylock's servant Launcelot Gobbo makes much use (and misuse) of the word *ergo* in Act II, Scene II.

31 omnes . . . simulantes: 'all (others) who . . .'; *omnes* is subject of *sunt* understood.



## 17. Cicero Comments upon a Variety of Persons and Subjects

*The following quotations are taken from Cicero's writings. Most of them are from letters to his good friend Atticus, letters in which "Cicero unlocked his heart, and the contents lie open for inspection".<sup>1</sup>*

### 1. About Atticus, his old friend and correspondent:

Ego tecum tamquam mecum loquor.

### 2. About his suppression of the Catilinarian Conspiracy in his consulship:

O fortunatam natam me consule Romam!

### 3. About his own oratory:

Nosti iam in hac materia sonitus nostros.

1 *tamquam*: 'as if', 'as frankly as'. It is this frankness that makes Cicero's four hundred letters to Atticus so valuable. Titus Pomponius Atticus was a Roman whose business interests kept him in Athens a large part of his life. His book business and his ability as a literary critic gave Cicero and him much in common. Moreover, he was a man 'whose standards were the expedient and the profitable, and who made it comfortable for people to dispense with all pretensions to any other standards in his company. With Atticus, Cicero is completely at ease. He can talk as he wants about everything, and make jokes of matters he would feel bound in writing anyone else to take with decorous sol-

emnity'. (Edith Hamilton, in *The Roman Way*.)

2 *Romam*: accus. of exclamation. *me consule natam*: explaining *fortunatam*; 're-born (*natam*) in my consulship (*me consule*, abl. abs.)'. This dactylic hexameter line is part of a poem composed by Cicero in commemoration of his own consulship. See the next quotation for a pleasanter aspect of his character!

3 *Nosti*: = *novisti* = *cognovisti*. *in hac materia*: 'on this subject'. *sonitus nostros*: lit., 'my sounds' (editorial 'we'); freely, 'how I thunder'. Cicero's oratorical effects, usually dealt with solemnly in his public speeches, in this letter to Atticus become delightfully something to poke fun at.

<sup>1</sup> Quoted from Edith Hamilton, *The Roman Way*.



## CONTEST WITH WILD BEASTS IN THE COLOSSEUM

Such lavish displays were frequently provided as a means of gaining popularity by those seeking public office.

4. *About shows featuring fights between men and wild beasts:*

Quae potest homini esse polito delectatio, cum aut homo imbecillus a valentissima bestia laniatur aut praeclara bestia venabulo transverberatur?

5. *About Cleopatra:*

Reginam odi.

6. *About the rivalry between Caesar and Pompey:*

Dominatio quaesita ab utroque est.

7. *About the assassination of Caesar:*

Acta enim illa res est animo virili, consilio puerili.

4 polito: 'cultured'; mod. *homini*, but placed for contrast in juxtaposition with *delectatio*.

5 imbecillus: 'puny' (NOT 'imbecile').

7 Reginam odi: in the same letter we find that Cleopatra had lived across the Tiber from Cicero for

some months, and that Cicero had found her and her entourage arrogant.

9 Acta . . . est: the separation adds emphasis. animo, consilio: abl. of manner. Cicero was appalled by the conspirators' failure to plan ahead beyond the actual assassination.

8. *About Caesar's attitude to Cicero:*

10 Ille enim nescio quo pacto ferebat me quidem mirabiliter.

9. *About Mark Antony:*

Vellem Idibus Martiis me ad cenam invitasses; reliquiarum nihil fuisset.

10. *About Octavian, later Augustus—three changing estimates:*

Est plane puer . . . . Egregius puer Caesar. . . .

. . . . laudandum adolescentem, ornandum, tollendum.

11. *About a man who made the Senate laugh not by his jokes but by his odd appearance:*

15 Facie magis quam facetiis ridiculus.

10 *nescio quo pacto*: 'somehow', equivalent to an indefinite adverb; lit., 'I don't know in what way'. *ferebat me quidem mirabiliter*: the word order adds emphasis. Tr. 'was wonderfully patient with me'; lit., 'bore (with) me wonderfully'. Usually, Cicero is highly critical of Julius Caesar, and this one 'touch of regret and wonder stands quite alone . . . The truth is that Cicero did not try to see Caesar clearly and was always shifting his point of view. But not his feelings; they remained the same: he never liked him. That is as plain to see as is Caesar's liking for him'. (Edith Hamilton, in *The Roman Way*.) Several letters from Caesar to Cicero indicate his friendly feelings: He invited Cicero to go to Gaul with him, probably to keep him beyond the reach of Clodius, and during the Civil War he kept urging Cicero to stay neutral.

11 *Vellem . . . invitasses*: 'I could have wished (=How I wish; *vellem*=potential subj.) that you had invited (*invitasses*=*invitavisses*, opt. subj.)' *cenam*: referring to the assassination of Julius Caesar. *reliquiarum*: part. gen. with *nihil*. Tr. 'no left-overs'. Cicero means Mark

Antony, whom he attacked in his 'Philippics', and by whom he was finally proscribed. This letter is addressed to the conspirator Cassius.

12 *fuisset*: subj. in a past untrue cond., with the 'if'-clause left unexpressed.

13 *Est plane puer*: freely, 'He is such a boy'.

14 *adolecentem*: accus. case because it happens to occur, in the original letter, in an indirect statement. The three gerundives express necessity, as usual: 'to be praised, to be rewarded . . . and to be removed'. There is a deliberate ambiguity in *tollendum*, which can mean both 'to be exalted (to the heavens)', and 'to be removed (from earth)'. Professor Harold Bennett of Victoria University has paraphrased it by 'That praiseworthy young man must be welcomed by a parade and taken for a ride'. The remark was repeated to Octavian, and, three months later he agreed to Cicero's assassination.

15 *Facie, facetiis*: an example of Cicero's great fondness for puns. Professor Harold Bennett has reproduced it as 'more by his phizz than by his sparkle'.

# SECTION FIVE

SELECTIONS FROM  
HORACE

---



# INTRODUCTION

Horace: 65-8 B.C.

## 1. His Life

Quintus Horatius Flaccus is generally regarded as Rome's greatest lyric poet. His rise to fame was all the more spectacular in view of the humbleness of his origin. His father, a freedman of the town of Venusia in Apulia, a district of southern Italy, was a tax-collector and the owner of a small estate. It is characteristic of Horace that he makes no attempt to conceal these humble beginnings. Instead, he sings the praises of a father who contrived to give him the finest education available, not only at school in Rome, but also at the University of Athens.

At Athens, however, Horace formed a connection that almost proved disastrous. He became an officer in the ill-starred army of Marcus Brutus the Liberator who had gone to Greece after the assassination of Julius Caesar. When the army was defeated at Philippi in 42 B.C. by Mark Antony and Octavian, Horace returned to Italy under the amnesty, only to find that his father was dead and that the land around Venusia, including his own, had been confiscated for distribution to the victorious soldiers.

After some years as a clerk in the civil service, Horace was introduced by the poet Vergil to Maecenas, the leading advisor to Augustus and a patron of the fine arts. About five years later he received from Maecenas the gift of his Sabine Farm, which became his beloved refuge from the frantic social whirl in Rome. Here he did some of his finest work, and his writings abound in references to the Sabine countryside. Official recognition of Horace's stature as a poet came with his appointment in 17 B.C. to write the *Carmen Saeculare*, the official hymn for the *ludi saeculares*, in celebration of ten years of peace under Augustus.

While it was his poetic promise that had won for him the support of Vergil, Maecenas, and Augustus, it was undoubtedly his personal charm that won him their affection. Maecenas on his death-bed commended his old friend to Augustus with the words

'*Horati(i) Flacci ut mei esto memor*'. ('Be as mindful of Horatius Flaccus as of myself.') Horace too died a few weeks later. And through the centuries to his many admirers he has continued to seem the most likeable of all Romans, a genial man whose presence would grace any occasion.

## 2. His Poetry

Horace's literary career may be divided into an earlier period and a later, separated by the acquisition of his Sabine Farm. In the earlier period were written the Epodes, after the style of the lampoons of the iambic Greek poets of the seventh century B.C. These give the poet's personal reactions to various persons and events of his day, and are often abusive in tone. To the earlier period belong also the Satires. They are hexameters, written in an informal conversational style, and while they are primarily moral discourses, they often contain amusing vignettes of life in and around Rome.

To the later period belong the Odes, in which Horace with incomparable skill adapted such Greek lyric metres as the Sapphic and the Alcaic to the more ponderous Latin tongue. The Odes have been taken to the heart of the world; they have had a universal appeal in every age for young and old alike.

The poetry of Horace is characterized by wide variation of mood and by superb technical mastery of language. He was one of the most skilled technicians that ever put pen to paper, known for his exquisite turn of phrase, in which every word was consummately perfect. He himself tells us that it was by toiling hard that he produced his songs. A Roman<sup>1</sup> who lived a little later than Horace expressed the result well in the expression *curiosa felicitas Horatii*, which means 'Horace's painstaking felicity', i.e. 'Horace's seeming felicity of expression that is really the result of painstaking effort'. Few have tried to improve on Horace's phrasing of a thought; instead, we usually quote Horace!

On the question of poetic inspiration it is easy to be unfair to Horace. His lyrics do not usually seem to bubble forth spontaneously from the well of inspiration, and if he had been less meticulous and more untidy no doubt he would have been acclaimed a greater genius.

<sup>1</sup> Petronius, a writer and *bon-vivant* of the reign of Nero.



*An ancient Mosaic in Tunis*

#### VERGIL IN MEDITATION

Vergil, like Horace, derives inspiration from the Muses.

### 3. His Philosophy of Life

In his poetry Horace often reveals his philosophy of life, and we can see that he is an eclectic, that is, he does not adhere to the rigid dogma of any one school of philosophy, but selects features from each. For example, he recognizes the concept of the golden mean from Aristotle, that of moral fortitude from the Stoics, and that of aversion to worry from the Epicureans. Generally speaking, he is an Epicurean, and believes that happiness should be





Scene from M.G.M.'s 'Ben Hur'

#### SHIPWRECK, THE SCOURGE OF THE ANCIENT MARINER

Horace in his writings refers frequently to the risks of sailing.

one's aim in the pursuit of the good life. His advice is *carpe diem*, 'extract the most happiness from each day.' This precept should not be confused with the shallow 'eat, drink, and be merry' philosophy of the hedonist, who believes in a short-range pursuit of the pleasure of the moment, even if it results in later unhappiness. Horace's advice is to get the most *true* happiness out of each day, though he certainly endorses 'eat, drink, and be merry' as *part* of his prescription! As a means of attaining to the greatest happiness, Horace recommends the *aurea mediocritas*, the 'golden middle path' that avoids extremes.



## Selections from Horace

### 1. Trials on My Trip to Brundisium

*This excerpt is from one of Horace's "Satires", earlier narrative poems whose hexameter lines give amusing vignettes of life in and around Rome. This satire describes a trip made by Horace from Rome to Brundisium (the modern Brindisi). The journey (about 350 miles) took a little over two weeks, and was made in 38 B.C. or 37 B.C. to accompany Maecenas, who was representing Octavian in some negotiations with Mark Antony.*

*As our excerpt begins, Horace and his Greek friend Heliodorus have just reached the town of Forum Appi on the Appian Way. Here they book passage on a canal boat, intending to save time by sleeping on board while the mule-drawn boat keeps them mobile during the night. Later, they are to meet Maecenas, and, still later, Vergil.*

Hic ego propter aquam, quod erat deterrima, ventri  
indico bellum, cenantes haud animo aequo  
expectans comites. Iam nox inducere terris

1 Hic: 'Here', at the town of Forum Appi, on the Appian Way and about forty miles southeast of Rome. quod erat deterrima: a frequent complaint made by travellers in Italy; apparently Horace considered the water too bad even to mix with wine, and decided not to dine at all. Although quod is really a conjunction, we may translate freely by 'which'.

2-3 cenantes . . . comites: construe: animo haud aequo ('with no calm mind', i.e. 'impatiently') expectans

comites ('my fellow-travellers') cenantes.

3-4 Iam nox . . . parabat: an example of the mock-heroic diction which Horace sometimes humorously affects so as to apply to trivialities the solemn language of a mighty epic; we have already had a touch of this in the pretentious phrase ventri indico bellum (ll. 2-3).

3 teris: dat. of ind. obj., dep. on the compound verb inducere. Tr. 'upon the earth'.



Courtesy, G. Bell and Sons

## ANCIENT TRAVEL BY LAND WAS SLOW AND TEDIOUS

umbras et caelo diffundere signa parabat.

- 5 Tum pueri nautis, pueris convicia nautae ingerere. 'Huc appelle!' 'Trecentos inseris; ohe iam satis est!' 'Dum aes exigitur, dum mula ligatur, tota abit hora. Mali culices ranaeque palustres avertunt somnos, absentem cantat amicam

4 caelo: abl., = *in caelo*; tr. 'throughout the sky'. signa: = stars.

5-6 pueri . . . ingerere: construe: *pueri* ('the slaves', i.e., of the travellers) *convicia ingerere* (historical infin., used vividly as a principal verb) *nautis* (dat., 'on the boatmen', i.e., of the canal boats), *nautae pueris* (dat., 'on the slaves', supply *convicia ingerere*). The travellers' slaves are on the canal bank, waiting to put their masters' luggage on board. Horace's sketch of the argument has been called 'a little masterpiece' (Fraenkel).

6 Huc appelle: supply *navem* (or *lintrem*, l. 14); 'Put in here!' 'Dock here!' These words come from slaves on the bank. *Trecentos inseris*: 'You are loading on a million passengers!'

*Trecentos* (300) stands by exaggeration for any huge number, and shows the boatman's concern as the slaves rush aboard with the luggage.

7 aes: lit. 'the bronze money'; tr. 'the fare'. *exigitur*: 'was being collected'. *mula*: the mule, when hitched to the canal boat, supplied the motive power by walking along the tow-path.

8 mali: 'vicious'. Horace pretends that there is a deliberate plot on the part of nature's choristers to prevent his slumbers. In this whole passage, 'Horace's gift for conveying the atmosphere of a particular region shines superbly' (Fraenkel).

9-11 *absentem* . . . *certatim*: cons-

- 10 multa prolutus vappa nauta atque viator  
certatim. Tandem fessus dormire viator  
incipit, ac missae pastum retinacula mulae  
nauta piger saxo religat stertitque supinus.  
Iamque dies aderat, nil cum procedere lintrem  
15 sentimus; donec cerebrosus prosilit unus  
ac mulae nautaeque caput lumbosque saligno  
fuste dolat; quarta vix demum exponimur hora.  
(Satires I, 5, 7-23)

## 2. Happy Shipwreck, Mevius!

*Out goes the ship, with that stinker Mevius on board! Sink it,  
you winds! To the storm-deities that destroy it I'll sacrifice a lamb  
—and a wicked old goat!*

Mala soluta navis exit alite,  
ferens olentem Mevium.

true: *nauta* ('the boatman') *pro-lutus* ('drunk') *multa vappa* (abl. of means) *cantat absentem amicam* ('the girl he left behind him') *atque* ('and so does') *viator* ('a passenger') *certatim*.

12-13 *missae* . . . *religat*: construe: *nauta piger religat saxo* (abl. of means, but tr. 'to a rock') *retinacula mulae* (gen.) *missae* ('unhitched') *pastum* (acc. supine of *pasco*, expressing purpose). The boatman unhitches the mule from the canal boat, which he is supposed to be towing during the night, and goes to sleep. This unexpected change in schedule no doubt pleases the mule, but comes as a rude shock to the passengers, who awake to discover themselves exactly where they were the previous night!

14-15 *nil cum* . . . *sentimus*: construe: *cum sentimus* (vivid pres. tense for *sensimus*; *cum*-temporal may gov. the indic., if its clause is really the principal clause by sense)

*lintrem nil procedere* ('was making no progress'; *nil* is cognate acc.).

15 *unus*: 'one passenger'.

17 *quarta* . . . *hora*; lit., = 'only (*demum*) just (*vix*) in the fourth hour (of daylight) did we land'; freely, 'it was ten o'clock by the time we finally landed'. At Anxur (Tarracina), three miles away, they meet Maecenas, as planned.

This is one of Horace's 'Epodes', written early in his career in the iambic metre which was the traditional metre for such lampoons. In this one, Horace has produced a polished poetic invective reminiscent of the Greek lampoonist Archilochus. Mevius, and another poet, Bavius, were offensively and persistently critical of the literary circle of Maecenas, to which Horace and Virgil belonged. (See Life of Horace, p. 295). Ironically, the names of the two critics survive

- Ut horridis utrumque verberes latus,  
 Auster, memento fluctibus!  
 5 Niger rudentes Euris inverso mari  
 fractosque remos differat!  
 Insurgat Aquilo, quantus altis montibus  
 frangit trementes ilices!  
 Nec sidus atra nocte amicum appareat,  
 10 qua tristis Orion cadit!  
 Quietiore nec feratur aequore

only because unfavourable mention of them by Horace and by Vergil has 'damned them to everlasting fame' (Shorey).

1 Mala . . . alite: emphatically placed, to frame the line. Tr. 'Out goes the ship, sailing (*soluta*, lit. 'untied', in the idiom *navem solvo*) with evil omen'. We picture Horace on the wharf, watching the ship sail away.

2 ferens: 'carrying, as it does'; merely to have Mevius on board is in itself a bad omen!

3 Ut: = *Utinam*, introducing *verberes*, which is the first of five verbs in the opt. subj; *differat* (l. 6), *Insurgat* (l. 7), *appareat* (l. 9), *feratur* (l. 11).

3-4 Construe: *memento* (an old imperative form, parenthetical, not affecting the grammatical structure of the sentence; 'remember, now,') *horridis fluctibus* (emphatically placed, to frame the entire wish) *ut verberes* (lit., 'may you blast', i.e. 'blast') *utrumque latus* (i.e. of the ship).

4 Auster: Mevius is sailing eastward to Greece. Therefore Horace calls upon the fury of all winds unfavourable to the voyage, from the south, (*Auster*), from the east

(*Eurus*, l. 5) and from the north (*Aquilo*, l. 7). In l. 20, the south wind is called by its Greek name (*Notus*). Thus *Auster* and *Notus* form a kind of frame for the central portion of the poem.

5 Niger Euris: separated so as to frame part of the wreckage (*rudentes*). The quality of 'blackness' is attributed to the wind, although it is the sky, or perhaps the water, which is darkened. *inverso mari*: *abl. abs.* Tr. 'over the churning sea' The howling of the winds is imitated by the frequent *r*'s; it begins in lines 3 and 4, and reaches a crescendo in lines 5 and 6 where every word has its *r*.

7 quantus: = (*tantus*) *quantus*; freely, 'as powerful as when', 'with the power it has when'. *altis montibus*: = *in altis montibus*.

9-10 Construe: *nec sidus amicum appareat* ('may no friendly star appear') *atra nocte* (*abl.* of time; 'on the murky night') *qua* ('when', 'on which'; its antecedent is *nocte*). Horace wants Mevius to face a terrifying combination; it is to be both a gloomy, starless night, and a stormy night, typical of Orion's setting.

11 Quietiore aequore: = *in quietiore aequore*; emphatically placed, to frame the picture.



- quam Graia victorum manus,  
 cum Pallas usto vertit iram ab Illo  
 in impiam Aiakis ratem!  
 15 O quantus instat navitis sudor tuis  
 tibi que pallor luteus  
 et illa non virilis eiulatio  
 preces et aversum ad Iovem,  
 Ionius udo cum remugiens sinus  
 20 Noto carinam ruperit!  
 Opima quodsi praeda curvo litore

12 quam . . . manus: 'than was (sup-  
 ply *lata est*) the band of Greek  
 conquerors', i.e. on their voyage  
 home from Troy. *Graia*, of course,  
 is really in agreement with *manus*,  
 but colours the nearer word *vic-*  
*torum*.

13 cum Pallas vertit: '(on the oc-  
 casion) when Athena turned'; in  
 this sense, *cum* governs the indic.,  
 even in sec. sequ. In the Trojan  
 War, Pallas Athena had favoured  
 the Greeks, but on the night Troy  
 was captured Ajax turned her fav-  
 our into enmity; the Trojan princess  
 Cassandra, who was also Athena's  
 priestess, was dragged by Ajax from  
 her altar. This Ajax is the lesser  
 of the two Greek warriors of that  
 name. He was shipwrecked and  
 killed by Athena during his voyage  
 home to Locris.

14 in: 'against'. *impiam Aiakis*  
*ratem*: *impiam*, like *Graia* (l. 12),  
 is in agreement with the farther  
 word, but colours the nearer one.

15 O quantus . . . tuis: 'Ah! how  
 much sweat is in store for your  
 sailors!' The interlocking word order  
 seems to involve the sailors with  
 sweat (*sudor*). In *tuis* (and *tibi*, l.  
 16) Horace turns gloatingly to ad-  
 dress Mevius.

16 tibi que pallor luteus: = *tibi que*

(*quantus*) *pallor luteus* (*instat*). Tr.  
 'and what ghastly pallor awaits  
 you': *instat* must be supplied for  
 several subjects; *pallor* (l. 16),  
*eiulatio* (l. 17), *preces* (l. 18). Terr-  
 or will cause Mevius' face to turn  
 the greenish yellow tint that the  
 dark skins of Italians and Greeks  
 take on when pale.

17 illa: 'your well-known'.

18 preces . . . Iovem: = *et preces* (*et*  
 has been displaced by the more im-  
 portant *preces*) *ad* ('directed to-  
 ward') *aversum* ('estranged', 'hos-  
 tile') *Iovem*.

19-20 Ionius . . . ruperit: construe:  
*cum* (displaced by the adjectives  
*Ionius*, *udo*) *Ionius sinus remugiens*  
*udo Noto* (abl. of means) *ruperit*  
 (fut. perf., because the main verb  
*instat* implies a reference to the  
 future) *carinam*. The noise is im-  
 itated by the frequent use of the  
 vowel *u*.

21 Opima praeda: 'a fat prize', 'a  
 rich treat', probably a vicious per-  
 sonal reference to Mevius. The con-  
 ventions demanded that neither  
 death nor death's intended victim  
 be specifically mentioned. Horace  
 pretends to be scrupulous in observ-  
 ing the conventions, but actually

porrecta mergos iuverit,  
libidinosus immolabitur caper  
et agna Tempestatibus.

(*Epodes*, 10)

### 3. To Pyrrha

*What slender lad courts you now, Pyrrha? To his sorrow, he will learn, as I did, that your love is a treacherous sea of sudden squalls. I lived through the storm, thanks to a protecting deity.*

Quis multa gracilis te puer in rosa  
perfusus liquidis urget odoribus  
grato, Pyrrha, sub antro?  
Cui flavam religas comam,

uses the much more devastating words *praeda* and *porrecta*. *curvo litore*: = *in curvo litore*, with *porrecta* (perf. part. pass. of *porrigo*). 22 *iuverit*: fut. perf. in a fut. more vivid condit.; 'delights'.

23 *libidinosus caper*: the separation of these two words gives them an almost malicious prominence! Ordinarily, the vowing of a lamb (*agna*, l. 24) would be for a friend's safety; here, it is for an enemy's destruction. Then, adding insult to injury, Horace offers the storm-deities a second bribe, an 'uninhibited goat' as a fitting symbol of the departed Mevius!

This ode is typical of Horace's so-called love poems. They are garnished with the pretty names of lady loves — Pyrrha, Chloe, Lalage — but there is little indication that he was ever really in love. If Pyrrha does exist, Horace is less fascinated by the pretty lady herself than by her expressive Greek name

with its implication of bright blonde hair; she is 'Fiery' or 'Torchy' or 'Red'. Horace is thoroughly enjoying his poetic labours. And here, as often in his poems, he includes in his fun-making a sly allusion to the fact that he is now fortyish and plump and balding.

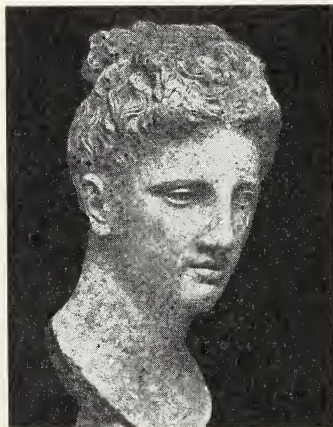
1 *Quis gracilis puer*: the sly implication is that Pyrrha has traded Horace in on a newer, slimmer model. *multa in rosa*: 'amid many a rose'. The ingenious word order invites us to picture: 1. the girl and boy together (*te puer*, in juxtaposition); 2. the boy's arm around the girl (*gracilis te puer*); 3. roses around the two of them (*multa . . . in rosa*). 2 *perfusus*: 'drenched'. *urget*: 'courts'.

3 *Pyrrha*: the name is related to the Greek word for 'fire' and suggests the colour of her hair. Blonde hair was unusual, in contrast to the dark, swarthy Italian. *sub antro*: i.e. out of the sun, and out of view.

4 *cui*: 'for whose eyes?'

- 5 simplex munditiis? Heu quotiens fidem  
mutatosque deos flebit, et aspera  
nigris aequora ventis  
emirabitur insolens,

- qui nunc te fruitur credulus aurea,  
10 qui semper vacuum, semper amabilem  
sperat, nescius aurae  
fallacis! Miseri, quibus



GENTLEMEN PREFER BLONDES  
Pyrrha may have looked like this.

5 *simplex munditiis*: 'elegant in your simplicity', 'elegant without extravagance'; a famous compliment to Pyrrha's good grooming.

5-6 *fidem* (*mutatam*) *mutatosque deos*: an example of Horace's 'characteristic economy of language' (J. W. Mackail), for *mutatos* is so placed as to colour both the nouns; lit. 'changed faith and changed gods', i.e. 'your broken faith and the fickle favour of heaven'.

6-7 *aspera nigris aequora ventis*: interlocking word order (see p. 155, 4(b)); lit., 'seas that roughen with the black squalls'. However, it is the water that is made black by the winds; Horace has transferred the adjective, and really implies 'seas that are black with roughening squalls'.

8 *insolens*: lit. 'unaccustomed (to the sight)', i.e. 'quite unprepared'.

9 *te aurea*: abl. gov. by *fruitur*; *aurea* means 'all gold', i.e. 'perfection itself'. The separation of these two words makes possible one of the best known examples of juxtaposition in Horace, *credulus aurea* ('he too trusting, you too perfect').

10 *vacuum*: 'fancy-free'.

11 *sperat*: supply *te fore*.

11-12 *aurae fallacis*: 'of the shifting breeze (= of your fickle favour)'; but *aurae* has also a hint of its other meaning ('radiance'), referring to Pyrrha's bright beauty.

12-13 *Miseri . . . nites*: *Miseri* (*sunt*) ('unhappy are they') *quibus* ('for whom') *nites* ('you glitter') *intemptata* ('untried'); freely, 'whose inexperienced eyes you dazzle'.

intemptata nites. Me tabula sacer  
votiva paries indicat uvida

15 suspendisse potenti  
vestimenta maris deo.

(*Odes*, I, 5)

#### 4. Integrity is a Mighty Weapon

*Fuscus, my friend, a man who has his integrity needs no further armour. Take me, for instance—the other day a monster of a wolf fled from me near my Sabine Farm, unarmed though I was! Faithfulness is a virtue of mine, for wherever I may be, I shall always sing of my Lalage.*

Integer vitae scelerisque purus  
non eget Mauris iaculis neque arcu

13 Me: subject of the infin. *suspendisse*, but emphatically placed for contrast; 'as for me'.

13-14 *tabula sacer votiva paries*: interlocking word order. Construe: *sacer paries* (i.e. the temple wall) *tabula votiva* (abl. of means) *indicat me suspendisse*. Sailors who had survived a shipwreck were accustomed to dedicate to Neptune some sort of tablet or picture commemorating the event, together with the clothes they had worn at the time.

15-16 *potenti maris deo*: 'the god who rules the sea'; *potens* gov. objective gen.

The poem is a series of contrasts. It opens in a seemingly solemn mood, then gives way to mirth when Horace, to delight his friend Fuscus, who loves a joke, singles out himself as a good example of an upright man. It becomes mock-heroic when Horace describes his encounter with the big, bad wolf, then closes with a laugh.

Although the opening lines of the poem have often been regarded as genuinely solemn, it seems unlikely that Horace so intended. He seems to be using the words *integer vitae scelerisque purus* merely as a description of a faithful lover, for in the language of love-poetry *integer* means 'faithful' and *scelus* means 'unfaithfulness'. If this is all he means, he is saying in mock-heroic vein that it was his faithfulness to Lalage that showed him to be *integer vitae* and so protected him from the wolf.

1 *Integer . . . purus*: lit., '(He who is) blameless of life and free of of guilt', i.e. 'He whose life is blameless and free from guilt'; the genitives *vitae* and *sceleris* resemble Greek usages, whereas Latin more often uses ablatives. Horace adds emphasis to his solemn opening by the use of chiasmic word order. (See p. 157, (iv)).

2 *eget*: governs the ablatives *iaculis* (l. 2), *arcu* (l. 2) and *pharetra* (l. 4). *Mauris*: a vivid particularization





Courtesy, G. Bell and Sons

#### MY SABINE FARM

Horace's writings abound in references to his love of country life.

- nec venenatis gravida sagittis,  
 Fusce, pharetra,  
 5 sive per Syrtes iter aestuosas  
 sive facturus per inhospitalem  
 Caucasum vel quae loca fabulosus  
 lambit Hydaspes.

that gives a vividly picturesque touch, and sends the imagination ranging into colourful countries, as if in preparation for the wanderings suggested in the second stanza (*Syrtes, Caucasum, Hydaspes*).

3 sagittis: abl. of means with *gravida*, which mod. *pharetra*.

4 Fusce: Horace's friend Aristius Fuscus, a wit, poet and grammarian. On one occasion Fuscus pretended not to notice the frantic distress signals of Horace who had been trapped by a talkative bore, and left him in the fellow's clutches 'with ill-timed wit', as Horace tells

us in an amusing Satire (I. 9, lines 60 ff.)

5 aestuosas: 'sweltering'. This is the first of three lines that end in a vivid adjective.

6 iter facturus: supply *est*. Tr. 'he purposes to travel'.

7 Caucasum: another vivid particularization. *quae loca* = *per ea loca quae*. *fabulosus*: i.e. rich in stories; India has always been to a westerner a land of mystery and enchantment.

8 Hydaspes: a tributary of the Indus R., in N. India.

- Namque me silva lupus in Sabina,  
 10 dum meam canto Lalagen et ultra  
 terminum curis vagor expeditis,  
       fugit inermem,  
       quale portentum neque militaris  
       Daunias latis alit aesculetis  
 15 nec Iubae tellus generat, leonum  
       arida nutrix.  
 Pone me pigris ubi nulla campis  
 arbor aestiva recreatur aura,

9 Namque: 'for example'. me silva lupus: in this skilful juxtaposition, three consecutive words set the scene and establish the two characters in the little drama to come; then follow in order the poet's light-hearted mood before the encounter, the encounter itself, and the impression left with Horace by the retreating monster. Something of the effect may be reproduced by some such translation as 'For example, take me — a wolf, in the Sabine woods, fled from me. . .'

9 Sabina: Horace's Sabine farm was his favourite retreat from the bustle of Rome.

10 Lalagen: acc. case derived from a Greek word meaning 'Chatterbox'.

10-11 ultra terminum: 'beyond my boundary-stone', i.e. of my farm.

11 curis expeditis: abl. abs.; lit., 'my cares having been thrown off'; i.e. 'free from care'. In framing *vagor*, these two words invite us to picture Horace's light-hearted walk.

12 inermem: emphatic last position; 'unarmed though I was'.

13 quale portentum: = *tale portentum quale*. It is convenient to begin a new English sentence here; '(It was) a monster such as . . .'

14 Daunias: a part of Apulia, Hor-

ace's native province, to which he loves to attribute all the old Italian virtues, just as here he calls it *militaris*, 'home of warriors', perhaps with the implication of 'great warriors like me, Horace', to amuse his friend Fuscus. aesculetis: 'in her oak-forests'.

15 Iubae tellus: the younger Juba, referred to here, had lived in Rome after his father's defeat in the battle of Thapsus by Caesar. He was made king of Mauretania by Augustus in 25 B.C.

16 arida nutrix: an example of oxymoron or paradox; the words at first seem to be contradictory ('dry wet-nurse'), but are not really so ('desert homeland').

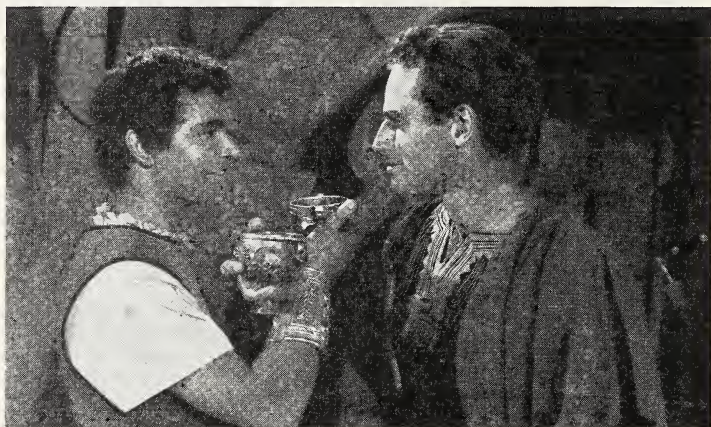
17-18 Construe: (*in*) *pigris* ('lifeless', 'frost-bound') *campis ubi nulla arbor recreatur aestiva aura* (abl. of means); a picturesque description of a frigid zone where there is no summer and so no tree or shrub.

19-20 'in a region of the world over which (*quod latus mundi*, condensed for *in eo latere mundi quod*) brood (*urget*, sing. in agreement with its nearer subject, *Iuppiter*) mists (*nebulae*) and a gloomy sky (*malusque Iuppiter*)'. The Romans thought of the world as a flat surface, which

quod latus mundi nebulae malusque  
 20 Iuppiter urget;  
 pone sub curru nimium propinqui  
 solis in terra domibus negata:  
 dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo,  
 dulce loquentem. (Odes, I, 22)

### 5. Now Must We Give Thanks!

*Cleopatra is dead, and the danger over. Now is the time to drink, and to offer thanksgiving for our deliverance at the hands*



Scene from M.G.M.'s 'Ben Hur'

NUNC EST BIBENDUM

could therefore have a *latus*.

20 Iuppiter: The poets use the name of Jupiter for the sky or the air in which the god exercises his power.  
 21 pone: supply *me*.

21-22 sub curru solis: 'beneath the chariot of the sun', i.e. in the torrid zone. The ancients believed that Apollo, the Sun God, drove his chariot across the sky each day. nimium

propinqui: 'where it (i.e. the sun) is all too near'.

22 domibus negata: 'denied to human habitation', because of the intense heat.

23-4 dulce: 'sweetly'; the neut. acc. sing. of an adj. used with adverbial force. The numerous liquid consonants in these lines help us to hear Lalage's 'prattling'.



*of Octavian. Cleopatra is dead, yet by her death she proved herself a queen.*

Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero  
pulsanda tellus, nunc Saliaribus  
ornare pulvinar deorum  
tempus erat dapibus, sodales.

This ode celebrates the end of the Civil War between Octavian (Augustus) and Mark Antony. It was written in the first excitement at the news of Cleopatra's death a few weeks after the capture of Alexandria. One year earlier (in 31 B.C.), Octavian had at the battle of Actium defeated the fleets of Antony and Cleopatra, but Horace avoids mentioning Antony inasmuch as a triumph could be celebrated only over a foreign foe. In his treatment of Cleopatra in this poem, Horace's 'aversion and abhorrence give place to admiration as he contemplates the last scene, where she resolutely carries out her determination to die rather than be taken captive to Rome'. (C. L. Smith)

1 *Nunc est bibendum*: *impers. pass.* Tr: 'Now must we drink a toast', 'now it is right to drink'. It has often been wrongly said of Horace that his only philosophy was 'Eat, drink and be merry'. For example, an excerpt like this one can easily be misinterpreted if it is removed from its context. Considered in its proper light, this quotation suggests that there is a right time for rejoicing. Also, Horace makes it clear elsewhere in his poems that in all things, including drinking, there should be moderation. (See *Introduction*, p. 298) *pede libero*: 'with unfettered foot', 'in a dance of freedom'; *libero*

suggests both the joyous abandon of the dance and the liberation of Rome from the shackles of fear. On the subject of dancing, Cicero claimed that almost no Roman indulged in it unless he was either inebriated or crazy.

2 *pulsanda tellus*: supply *est*.

2-4 *Saliaribus . . . dapibus*: the separation of the two words gives emphasis to this vivid particularization, in which 'Salian' stands for 'sumptuous'. The *Salii* were a college of twelve priests organized by Numa to guard the sacred shield which he had received from heaven. To prevent it from being stolen, Numa caused eleven others to be made exactly like it. At their annual festival in March, the *Salii* carried these shields and dressed in an odd costume, half military and half priestly. Thus equipped they moved through the streets and around the altars of the gods, singing and dancing. Their name is connected with the word *salio*, 'jump'. Their banquets were known for their sumptuousness.

3 *pulvinar deorum*: in a ceremony called *lectisternium*, the images of the gods were placed in pairs on rich couches, and banquets served to them for several days in succession. As part of the ceremony, the priests staged a banquet for themselves. The word *pulvinar* is a sing. used to represent the plur.



- 5 Antehac nefas depromere Caecubum  
cellis avitis, dum Capitolio  
regina dementes ruinas,  
funus et imperio parabat

- contaminato cum grege turpium  
10 morbo virorum, quidlibet impotens  
sperare fortunaque dulci  
ebria. Sed minuit furorem

4 (*nunc*) *tempus erat*: 'now was the time', (i.e. now, with our victory complete; we were right in waiting till now). This imperfect *erat* is sometimes interpreted as expressing impatience; e.g. 'now it is high time'.

5 *Antehac*: in strong contrast with the three *nunc*'s that precede; '*e*' is disregarded in the scansion of this word. *nefas*: supply *erat*. *depromere*: The prefix *de-* suggests that the wine had to be brought down from the store rooms (*cellis*) which had been stocked in their forefather's time (*avitis*). Here the wine, kept in sealed *amphorae* (jugs), could absorb the flavour of the rising smoke fumes and of the cork of pitch used to seal it. Ancient wine must have tasted like resin, as in the modern Greek wine, *retsina*.

6 *cellis avitis*: abl. of sep. without a prep.

6-8 *dum . . . parabat*: construe: *dum* ('as long as', in this sense requiring the same tense as the tense of the main verb) *regina* (virtually='a mad queen', because of its juxtaposition with *dementes*) *parabat* ('was plotting') *dementes ruinas Capitolio et funus imperio*.

7 *regina*: Cleopatra's strong influ-

ence over both Julius Caesar and Mark Antony had been a source of great concern at Rome. Now Horace emphasizes her sinister aspect by taking the hated word *regina* (doubly odious to Roman ears from its suggestion of hateful tyranny and female ascendancy), and placing it in a double juxtaposition, first with *Capitolio* (sacred symbol of Rome), and then with *dementes*.

9-10 *contaminato . . . virorum*: construe: *cum* ('along with', 'she, and') *contaminato grege* ('her tainted crew') *virorum* ('of creatures'; Horace in savage irony uses a word that could mean 'heroes' to describe eunuchs, a class of persons who often rose to high positions in oriental courts) *turpium morbo* (either 'disfigured with disease' or else 'defiled with immorality', or both).

10 *impotens*: 'wild enough to'; both *impotens* and *ebria* (l. 2) modify *regina*, and are placed prominently to explain her mad behaviour.

10-11 *quidlibet sperare*: lit. 'to hope for anything she pleases'; i.e. 'to nurse the maddest hopes', e.g. her ambition of becoming ruler of Rome as Antony's wife.

11 *fortuna dulci*: i.e. as if with the 'sweet wine of success'.

vix una sospes navis ab ignibus,  
mentemque lymphatam Mareotico  
15 redegit in veros timores  
Caesar, ab Italia volantem

remis adurgens, accipiter velut  
molles columbas aut leporem citus  
venator in campis nivalis  
20 Haemoniae, daret ut catenis

13 vix . . . ignibus: the grammatical subject of *minuit* is *navis*; lit., 'scarcely one ship saved from the flames', i.e. 'the escape of scarcely a single ship from the flames'. Notice how 'the Roman, pre-occupied with the concrete, liked, even with some sacrifice of logic, to pin the responsibility on something tangible (*navis*) rather than on an abstraction' (Gould and Whiteley). As a matter of history, it was Antony's ships that were burned, whereas Cleopatra's fleet fled early in the battle.

14-16 mentemque . . . redegit . . . Caesar: subject (*Caesar*) last, and therefore emphatic, as if to counter-balance *regina* (l. 7).

14 lymphatam: 'unbalanced'; the word seems to be derived from *Lymphae*, 'water-nymphs', at the sight of whom in the water the unlucky beholder was supposed to become bereft of his senses. Mareotico: supply *vino*; a sweet wine produced in Egypt.

15 in veros timores: Cleopatra's genuine fears are contrasted with her false hopes; lit., 'into true fears', i.e. 'to the stern reality of terror', or 'to a terrified realization of the truth'.

16 volantem: supply *Cleopatram* as the dir. obj. of *adurgens*. She is now

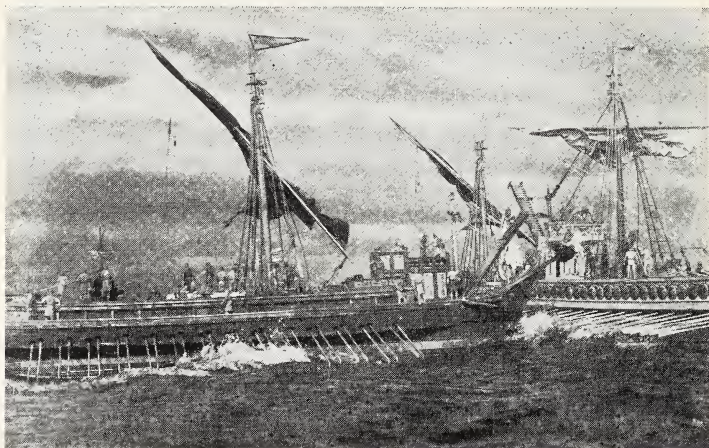
flying 'in the opposite direction from' (*ab*) her alleged goal of Italy.

17 remis: lit. 'with his oars'; i.e., 'with his oared galleys'. Latin poetry often uses a part to express the whole. This figure of speech is called synecdoche. *adurgens*: 'pursuing her closely'; this detail heightens the dramatic effect, but, as a matter of history, Octavian first returned to Italy to quiet a mutiny of the veterans, wintered at Samos, and entered Egypt only in the following spring.

17-19 accipiter . . . columbas aut leporem . . . venator: construe: *velut accipiter* (but Horace allows the more important *accipiter* to precede *velut*) *adurget* (to be supplied from *adurgens*) *molles columbas, aut citus venator (adurget) leporem*. Octavian's pursuit is highlighted by the use of a simile, by the chiasmic arrangement of hunter and hunted, and by the emphatic placing of *accipiter, molles, citus, venator*.

19 nivalis: winter was the hunting season. Horace may have seen the plains of Thessaly (*Haemonia*) white with snow in his travels with Brutus' army.

20 daret ut: = *ut daret*, as if to emphasize Octavian's desire to exhibit a shackled Cleopatra in his triumph-



Scene from M.G.M.'s 'Ben Hur'

#### AN ANCIENT SEA BATTLE

'Everywhere could be heard the noise of ramming, the splintering of oars, and the shouts of sailors.'

fatale monstrum. Quae generosius  
perire quaerens nec muliebriter  
expavit ensem nec latentes  
classe cita reparavit oras;

al procession. Instead, he had to content himself with exhibiting a replica of the dead queen.

21 *fatale monstrum*: to the patriotic Roman, Cleopatra seemed some strange 'monster sent by fate', in the form of a woman. *Quae*: 'But she'; not the neuter *quod* because Horace ignores the grammatical antecedent *monstrum* and thinks rather of the woman who *is* the monster. *generosius*: comp. adv.

23 *expavit*: from *expavesco*. *ensem*: she first attempted suicide with a dagger.

23-24 *nec latentes reparavit oras*: 'nor did she seek hidden shores', thereby seeking safety in flight and concealment: *reparavit* has the sense of 'gain as a recompense' (for loss of her own shores). The separation of *latentes* and *oras* in this stanza sets a pattern that is followed in each of the two succeeding stanzas (*atrum venenum* and *superbo triumpho*). In each of the three stanzas these words are given the prominent last position in the line, and produce a picture of Cleopatra within a frame.

- 25 ausa et iacentem visere regiam  
vultu sereno, fortis et asperas  
tractare serpentes, ut atrum  
corpore combiberet venenum,

deliberata morte ferocior;

- 30 saevis Liburnis scilicet invidens  
privata deduci superbo  
non humilis mulier triumpho.

(*Odes*, I, 37)

## 6. Away with Persian Pomp!

*No oriental ostentation for us, my slave boy! Don't go searching out the expensive or the rare. The wreaths on our brows shall be made of simple myrtle, and it will not disgrace us.*

Persicos odi, puer, apparatus,  
displicent nexae philyra coronae;

25 ausa: supply *est*. et: 'even'. iacentem: 'prostrate', i.e. stripped of its prestige and splendour. visere: 'to gaze upon'.

26-27 fortis et . . . tractare: 'with the courage, too, to handle'. asperas: 'poisonous', i.e. irritable if touched. 27 atrum: black is generally associated with death. Tr. 'deadly'.

28 corpore: lit., 'with her body', i.e. 'into her body'.

29 deliberata morte ferocior: 'becoming bolder when she had resolved on death', i.e. 'her courage rising with her resolution to die'.

30 Liburnis: the Liburnians were famous for their small, low, fast-sailing craft. These had been used with great success at Actium against the large, unwieldy ships of Antony. In Shakespeare's *Antony and Cleopatra*, Act III, Scene 7, Antony is given this warning: 'Their ships are yare, yours, heavy'.

30-32 Construe: *invidens* ('begrudging') *scilicet* ('no doubt') *saevis Liburnis* ('to the implacable Liburnians') *deduci* ('to be escorted'), *privata* (lit. 'as a private person', i.e. 'a queen no longer') *superbo triumpho* (abl. of manner='to grace a proud triumph'), *non humilis mulier* ('no meek-souled woman she!').

This famous little ode is a pleasant bit of propaganda in support of Augustus' 'austerity' programme to discourage exotic Eastern influences and to promote a partial return to ancient Roman frugality. Horace himself was 'that charming contradiction, a man who enjoyed luxury and yet was completely independent of it'. (Edith Hamilton, in *The Roman Way*)

1 Persicos: a vivid particularization = 'Eastern'. puer: a word often used



mitte sectari, rosa quo locorum  
sera moretur.

- 5 Simplici myrto nihil allabores  
sedulus curo; neque te ministrum  
dedecet myrtus neque me sub arta  
vite bibentem.

(*Odes I, 38*)

## 7. In Praise of the Golden Mean

*A wiser life will be yours, Licinius, my friend, if you steer the perfect middle course. Avoid the perils that lie on either extreme. Remember, it is the exalted who fall with the heavier crash, but*

by a Roman in referring to a slave, implying the slave's status and not his age. Compare the French use of *garçon*.

1-4 Notice in the opening lines the explosive salvo of *p*'s which seem to boo *luxury* off the stage, followed by a series of *s*'s which seem to hiss it off.

2 *displacent*: supply *mihi. philyra*: abl. of means with *nexae*: 'sewn on linden-bark', an example of ostentatious luxury.

3 *mitte*: = a poetic variation for *noli*; 'give up', 'cease'. *quo locorum*: = *quo loco*, or *ubi*; *rosa* is allowed to precede these words, to give greater emphasis to 'the rose out of season'.

4 *moretur*: subj. in an ind. quest.

5 *simplici myrto*: ind. obj. of *allabores*; a plain myrtle garland could be made at home by twining the sprigs together.

5-6 *nihil allabores curo*: = *non curo* ('I do not want you') *quidquam allabores* ('to try to add anything', or 'to try to add any extra (*ad*-) elaboration').

6 *sedulus*: 'fussy'; it may be taken as describing either (or both) of: 1. the subject of *allabores*, i.e. the slave-boy: 'I don't want you, in your zeal, to . . .' 2. the subject of *curo*, i.e. Horace: 'I am in earnest in not wanting you to', or perhaps 'I am no fuss-pot, and don't want you to . . .' *neque te ministrum*: balances *neque me bibentem*; tr. 'neither you, as you wait on me, nor me as I drink'.

7 *arta*: 'trellised'; the vine is trained to grow over a trellis, to provide more shade. It is possible, however, that *artus* has its meaning of 'narrow', 'confined', and that Horace means 'my little vine-clad bower'.

This is Horace's best-known statement of his favourite theme of the golden mean (*aurea mediocritas*). For an explanation of his philosophy of life, see the life of Horace, page 298. Notice that 'golden' suggests the idea of 'precious', which also implies the idea of 'perfect', as in the 'Golden Rule'.

*remember, too, that the god who brings sudden death is the same god who enriches life with the gift of lyric poetry.*

Rectius vives, Licini, neque altum  
semper urgendo neque, dum procellas  
cautus horrescis, nimium premendo  
litus iniquum.

5 Auream quisquis mediocritatem  
diligat, tutus caret obsoleti  
sordibus tecti, caret invidenda  
sobrius aula.

Saepius ventis agitur ingens  
10 pinus et celsae graviore casu  
decidunt turres feriuntque summos  
fulgura montes.

1 *Licini*: Licinius Murena may have seemed to Horace an appropriate recipient of advice for the practice of moderation, as he is said to have been very outspoken, and was later executed on a charge of conspiring against Augustus.

1-3 *neque urgendo . . . neque premendo*: the two extremes that must be avoided in the voyage of life, if it is not to end in shipwreck; 'by neither always pressing out to the open sea, nor by hugging too closely (*nimium*). . .'. The 'voyage of life' is a favourite figure with Horace.

2-3 *dum . . . horrescis*: lit., 'while you cautiously dread the blasts'; freely, 'in (overly) careful dread of the blasts'.

4 *iniquum*: 'unfriendly', because of its shoals and rocks.

5 *Auream . . . mediocritatem*: the theme of the ode. Notice the trick of word order by which these words not only occupy the important positions in the line, but actually seem to be keeping the man (*quisquis*) exactly where he should be—on the middle road!

6-8 *tutus caret, caret sobrius*: two more extremes to be avoided, the lazy man's slovenly poverty and the ambitious man's ostentatious wealth; the contrast of these two extremes is sharpened by the omission of any connecting word (a device called *asyndeton*). Tr. 'is safe, and avoids . . .', 'yet is temperate and avoids . . .'. In sense, *tutus* and *sobrius* belong as much with *diligat* as they do with *caret*.

7-8 *invidenda aula*: abl. gov. by *caret*, and balancing *sordibus*, l. 7; 'a palace that invites the evil eye of envy'. The separation of the gerundive *invidenda* from *aula* gives each the emphatic final position in its line, and allows the effective juxtaposition of *sobrius* (the temperate man) and *aula* (the mark of intemperate ostentation).

9-11 *ingens, celsae, summos*: three emphatically placed adjectives to show that, even in nature, 'the bigger they are, the harder they fall'; tr. 'it is the giant pine that . . .'

12 *fulgura montes*: the juxtaposition drives the example home.

- Sperat infestis, metuit secundis  
 alteram sortem bene praeparatum  
 15 pectus. Informes hiemes reducit  
     Iuppiter, idem  
 submovet. Non, si male nunc, et olim  
 sic erit; quondam cithara tacentem  
 suscitāt Musam neque semper arcum  
 20 tendit Apollo.  
 Rebus angustis animosus atque  
 fortis appare; sapienter idem  
 contrahes vento nimium secundo  
     turgida vela.

## (Odes II, 10)

13-15 *Sperat . . . metuit . . . pectus*: verbs first, subject last, for greater emphasis (Introduction, 4(a)). Construe: *pectus bene praeparatum* ('that has been well trained', i.e. in the observance of the Golden Mean) *sperat alteram sortem* ('has hopes for the opposite lot', i.e. 'a reversal of lot') *infestis* (neut. pl. adj. used as a noun in abl. abs.; 'in adversity'), *metuit* (supply *alteram sortem*; 'and has reasonable apprehensions about it') *secundis* (used like *infestis*; 'in prosperity'). The contrast is once more sharpened by the use of asyndeton. (See note, ll. 6-8).

15 *Informes hiemes*: probably 'ugly winters' with their unsightly mud, debris, and 'dirty' skies, though there may be a picturesque reference to 'shape-smothering winter snows'. *reducit*: 'duly (*re-*) brings'; 'brings round'.

16 *idem*: the contrast between winter and spring is sharpened by the asyndeton ('yet', may reproduce it) and by the idiomatic use of *idem* ('he likewise', 'he also').

17-18 *Non . . . sic erit*; = *Non* ('It

does not follow that'), *si male nunc* (supply *est*, 'if things are going badly now') *sic* ('so', 'that way') *erit olim* ('by and by') *et* (= *etiam*, 'also', 'as well').

18-20 *quondam . . . Apollo*: subject last and therefore emphatic; even Apollo observes the Golden Mean in his pleasant and unpleasant roles. *quondam*: with *suscitat* ('sometimes wakens'). *cithara*: abl. of means; '(wakens) with his lyre'.

21 *Rebus angustis*: abl. abs., and close in meaning to our colloquial 'when in a tight spot'; tr. 'in trying times'. Note the juxtaposition of *angustis* and *animosus*.

22 *appare*: 'show yourself', 'prove yourself'. *sapienter idem*: *idem* as in l. 16; 'yet you will likewise in your wisdom (or, if you are wise)'.

23-24 *vento . . . vela*: construe: *vela turgida vento nimium* ('too', 'dangerously') *secundo* ('favourable', from sailors' use of *secundus* to describe a wind that is 'following astern', a 'tail wind'). Horace ends, as he began, with the metaphor of the voyage of life,

## 8. To the Spring of Bandusia

*Spring of crystal clear water, tomorrow I will pay fit sacrifice to your guardian nymph. Your coolness always refreshes the grateful stock, and my verse will bring you fame.*

- O fons Bandusiae, splendidior vitro,  
 dulci digne mero non sine floribus,  
     cras donaberis haedo  
     cui frons turgida cornibus  
 5 primis et venerem et proelia destinat;  
 frustra; nam gelidos inficiet tibi  
     rubro sanguine rivos  
     lascivi suboles gregis.

In this ode Horace has 'arrested and perpetuated the joy of a happy hour spent among the Sabine hills', (W. Y. Sellar, in *Horace and the Elegiac Poets*), spent listening to the babbling waters of Bandusia. Horace's promise to make Bandusia 'one of the famous springs' has been more than kept, for no other spring in all literature is more famous, thanks to the artistry of the poet.

1 fons Bandusiae: It is likely that Horace took the name of the Bandusian Spring near his birthplace at Venusia and gave it to a spring on or near his Sabine Farm. vitro: abl. of comp.

2 dulci digne mero: = *digne* (voc., mod. fons) *dulci mero* (abl. gov. by *digne*). non sine floribus: 'and of flowers too'. Wine and garlands of flowers were thrown into the water as part of the regular sacrifice in honour of the water-nymph.

3 cui: either with *frons* ('whose forehead') or with *destinat* ('for whom his forehead foretokens').

4-5 cornibus primis: abl. of means, with *turgida*: 'budding with the beginnings of horns'.

6 frustra: supply *destinat*; in *frustra* Horace shows a touch of wistful sympathy for the young victim that he has pictured so vividly. tibi: 'in your honour'.

6-7 gelidos rivos, rubro sanguine: notice the twofold contrast between the clear (icy) rivulets and the (warm) red blood. Note also the emphasis resulting from the separation of *gelidos* and *rivos*. To a Roman, the sight of sacrificial blood was commonplace, yet Horace seems to linger a little sadly over the approaching sacrifice.

8 suboles: refers to the kid; the word is either in apposition to the subject of *inficiet*, or else is the actual subject.

9 Te: in the rest of the ode the praises of the spring are highlighted by the emphatic positions of *Te*, *tu* (l. 10), *tu* (l. 13), *tuae* (l. 16). The juxtaposition of *Te flagrantis* gives additional emphasis: the fountain is



- Te flagrantis atrox hora Caniculae  
 10 nescit tangere, tu frigus amabile  
     fessis vomere tauris  
     praebes et pecori vago.  
 Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium,  
 me dicente cavis impositam ilicem  
 15 saxis, unde loquaces  
     lymphae desiliunt tuae.

(Odes III, 13)

### 9. To Faunus

*Faunus, god of our countryside, protect our flocks and herds in your comings and goings. Each December at your festival the Faunalia, we pay our tribute to you, while the trees strew a leafy carpet in your honour, and our livestock have no fear of the passing wolf.*

Faune, nympharum fugientum amator,  
 per meos fines et aprica rura

untouched by the hot July season (*hora*), which brings the 'Dog-days' of Sirius the Dog-star, the brightest of all stars.

10 nescit: almost=*non potest*.

11 vomere: abl. of means (or cause) with *fessis*; 'tired of the plough-share'. The toiling oxen (*tauris*) are distinguished from the freely wandering herd of cattle (*pecori*, l. 12).  
 13 nobilium fontium: part. gen.; '(one) of the famous springs'. Horace is thinking of such famous springs as Arethusa in Syracuse.

14-15 me . . . saxis:=*me dicente* (abl. abs., 'when I sing of') *ilicem* (dir. obj. of *dicente*) *impositam* ('perched upon') *cavis saxis* (separated for emphasis, dat. gov. by the compound verb *impositam*); *cavis impositam ilicem saxis* is an example of Horace's use of chiasmic word order (see p. 157, (iv)) to 'produce

a picture with a frame' (Helen C. Toll).

15-16 loquaces lymphae: besides picturing the scene for us, Horace imitates the sound of the water by the use of the liquid consonant 'l' and by other devices. Note, for instance, the use of the combination 'ili' three times in the last stanza; it is as if 'the rush and gush of the fountain kept echoing in his ears and he sought to convey the sound to his readers' (H. D. Sedgwick). Compare the line 'I hear lake water lapping with low sounds by the shore' (W. B. Yeats, *The Lake Isle of Innisfree*).

1 fugientum:=*fugientium*. There is a playful juxtaposition of this word with *amator*; the nymphs run away from their suitor. The Italian deity

lenis incedas, abeasque parvis  
aequus alumnis,

- 5 si tener pleno cadit haedus anno,  
larga nec desunt Veneris sodali  
vina craterae, vetus ara multo  
fumat odore.

Ludit herboso pecus omne campo,

- 10 cum tibi Nonae redeunt Decembres;

Faunus is here largely identified with the Greek god Pan, and so is pictured as spending much of his time pursuing the lovely but fleet-footed nymphs over the country-side.

3-4 *lenis incedas, abeasque aequus*: the chiasmic word order intensifies the prayer; 'may you approach in mercy . . . and depart with a kindly feeling', i.e. 'may you be merciful and kindly . . . in your comings and your goings'. *parvis alumnis*: 'toward the tender younglings' of the flock and herd; the 'vertical' separation of the two words gives each a prominent place in its line. So too *larga vina* (ll. 6-7) and *multo odore* (ll. 7-8).

5 *si . . . anno*: construe: *si* (the 'if' in such a prayer being purely formal, and really equivalent to 'since') *tener haedus* (one of the *parvis alumnis*, ll. 3-4) *cadit* (supply *tibi*, 'in your honour') *pleno anno* ('when the year is fulfilled', i.e. from one *Faunalia* to the next).

6 *larga nec*: = *nec larga*; supply *si* to introduce this clause and the next. *sodali*: dat. in app. to *craterae*. Wine and love are often associated.

It is to be noted that, after the bowl was filled, and after some preliminary drops were poured on the ground as a libation to the god, 'the

main use of the wine, as of the kid, was to contribute to a spirited celebration of the god's day' (Prof. C. L. Smith).

7 *vetus ara*: it is tempting to picture this as an old altar that Horace has found on his Sabine Farm, but *vetus* may merely suggest the antiquity of the *Faunalia*.

7-8 *multo . . . odore*: i.e. from the sacrifice of the *tener haedus*.

9 *Ludit*: at this point Horace begins a description of the *Faunalia* festival. 'The scene is a grassy meadow—green even in December in the Italian climate — where the whole countryside is gathered about the old altar. The sacrifice is followed, as usual, by feasting, after which the people stroll about the fields and woods, or amuse themselves with dancing and other merrymaking. Cattle and flocks peacefully grazing form the border of the picture' (C. L. Smith). *herboso pecus omni campo*: an example of Horace's use of chiasmic word order 'to produce a picture with a frame' (Helen C. Toll); *herboso . . . campo*: supply *in*.

10 *tibi*: may be taken either with *Nonae Decembres* ('your') or with *redeunt* ('in your honour'), as in l. 14.



Scene from M.G.M.'s 'Quo Vadis'

#### A ROMAN RELIGIOUS FESTIVAL

The Romans displayed a fondness for religious ritual and formality.

festus in pratis vacat otioso  
 cum bove pagus;  
 inter audaces lupus errat agnos;  
 spargit agrestes tibi silva frondes;

11-12 *festus . . . pagus*: another example of a 'picture with a frame'. Construe: *in pratis festus pagus vacat cum bove otioso*. Note the effective juxtaposition of *vacat otioso*; it is a day of rest for both man and beast. 'The three words *festus*, *vacat*, *otioso* emphasize the happiness of leisure in the holiday, quite simply and with great charm.' (Fraenkel)

13 *audaces lupus*: the juxtaposition of these words emphasizes the lambs' lack of fear in the presence of the wolf; they are 'grown bold', for Faunus protects them. Another name of Faunus is *Lupercus* (= *qui*

*lupum arcet*, 'the one who wards off the wolf'), and in his honour Rome celebrated in mid-February the feast of the *Lupercalia* (the setting of Shakespeare's 'Julius Caesar', Act I, Scenes 1 and 2).

14 *spargit*: the prominent position of the verb draws attention to the action; so too *Ludit* (l. 9) and *gaudet* (l. 15). 'At other festivals, boughs and leaves were strewn by the worshippers. At the *Faunalia*, the woods themselves shed their leaves in honour of the god' (James Gow). *agrestes frondes*: 'natural leaves', i.e. 'a natural carpet (or, a woodland carpet) of leaves'.

- 15 gaudet invisam pepulisse fossor  
ter pede terram.

(Odes III, 18)

### 10. I'm Through with the Lists of Love

*Until lately I have served with distinction in Cupid's cause. Now my career is over. I shall mark my retirement by hanging up my weapons in the temple of Venus, but with a final prayer that haughty Chloe may be punished by the Goddess of Love.*

- Vixi puellis nuper idoneus  
et militavi non sine gloria;  
nunc arma defunctumque bello  
barbiton hic paries habebit,  
5 laevum marinae qui Veneris latus  
custodit. Hic, hic ponite lucida

15-16 gaudet . . . terram: construe: *fossor gaudet pedem pepulisse* ('to have stamped', i.e. 'at having stamped') *ter* ('thrice', i.e. with three beats to the bar, in triple measure) *invisam terram* ('the hated earth'). The holiday dance (evidently a kind of polka) is all the more delightful to the farm-hand because it gives him a chance to kick the earth which on work days is the source of all his labour. The juxtaposition in *gaudet invisam* draws attention to his exultation, and the imitative harmony of the *p*'s and *t*'s reproduces his stamping.

This ode, like the ode to Pyrrha (Selection 3), is typical of Horace's so-called love poems, which are continually adorned by the names of imaginary ladies—Leuconoe, Pyrrha, Chloe, Lalage and many others. Certainly Horace is not really suffering, as Catullus did, from an unrequited

love; instead, he is thoroughly enjoying his own reflections. Notice the humorous touch by which he pretends at the beginning of the ode to be retiring as a champion, only to let slip, in the last word of the poem, that he *has* been defeated — by Chloe's arrogance.

1 Construe: *nuper* ('till lately') *vixi* ('I have spent my life') *idoneus* (lit., 'fit', i.e. 'as a congenial companion') *puellis* (dat. with *idoneus*; 'to the ladies').

3-4 nunc . . . habebit: construe: *nunc* (in contrast with *nuper*) *hic paries* (i.e. of the temple of Venus) *habebit arma* ('my weapons', enumerated in l. 7) *et* (from *-que*) *barbiton defunctum bello* ('whose wars are over'; *defungor* gov. abl.). Horace declares that his love-songs are over as well as his loves!

5-6 laevum . . . custodit: construe: *qui* (delayed, to allow more colourful words to come earlier) *custodit*



funalia et vectes et arcus  
oppositis foribus minaces.

O quae beatam diva tenes Cyprum et  
10 Memphin carentem Sithonia nive,  
regina, sublimi flagello  
tange Chloëen semel arrogantem.

(Odes III, 26)

### 11. My Monument

*My verses will be an enduring monument; time and the elements will not destroy them. This part of me will be immortal; and as long as there is a Rome my glory will increase. I shall be spoken of as the first to introduce Greek metres into Latin poetry.*

*laevum latus* ('the left side', which may or may not be significant as the lucky side) *Veneris* (i.e. 'of the statue of Venus') *marinae* (combining both meanings of 'who was born of the sea', and 'the goddess of sailors' on the Sea of Love).

6 *Hic*, *hic* ponite: Horace points out the right place to the slaves who are carrying his weapons into retirement, and the repetition of *hic* marks his haste to see them retired.

7 *funalia et vectes et arcus*: these are Horace's weapons (*arma*, l. 3) that are to be hung up! Horace is making full use of his 'war' metaphor, and presents an exaggerated inventory of his standard equipment for a full-scale night assault, presumably on some lady's house. He has torches to light up the scene of action, crowbars to jimmy the doors, and, finally, his cupid's bow with which to win the lady's heart.

8 *oppositis foribus minaces*: 'that are a threat (*minaces*) to opposing doors'. This description applies generally to the entire list of weapons, not specifically to *arcus*.

9-10 O quae . . . nive: construe: O *diva* (referring to Venus, as Goddess of Love) *quae tenes* ('possess a temple in', 'rule over') *beatam* ('blessed' with Venus' favour, an idea emphasized by the juxtaposition of *beatam* and *diva*) *Cyprum et Memphin* (a Greek acc.) *carentem Sithonia* ('Thracian', a vivid particularization, Intro. I. 3) *nive* (abl. gov. by *carentem*). Perhaps Horace intends the description *carentem* . . . *nive* as a protest to the Goddess of Love against the icy heart of Chloe. 11 *regina*: voc., emphatically repeating the voc. *diva*.

11-12 *sublimi flagello tange semel*: 'with uplifted lash touch just once', i.e. with just one flick. Chloe's disdain, complains Horace, amounts to an offence against Venus herself, and must be punished!

12 *arrogantem*: Horace's artistry allows the last word to reveal the real reason for his retirement!

This poem was written as an Epilogue to mark the publication

*Yet the praise belongs, not to me, but to the Muses who have inspired me; you, Melpomene, place Apollo's laurel wreath upon my head.*

Exegi monumentum aere perennius  
regalique situ pyramidum altius,  
quod non imber edax, non Aquilo impotens  
possit diruere aut innumerabilis

- 5 annorum series et fuga temporum.  
Non omnis moriar, multaque pars mei  
vitabit Libitinam; usque ego postera  
crescam laude recens, dum Capitolium  
scandet cum tacita virgine pontifex.

of Books I to III of the Odes. Elsewhere Horace makes modest references to his poetic labours. 'Never was there a poet of fewer pretensions, and yet with all his gay self-deprecation he knew his powers' (Edith Hamilton, in *The Roman Way*). He was well aware that he had 'raised a monument more lasting than bronze', and "his prophecy that he would be read 'as long as the pontifex and the vestal virgin climb to the Capitol' has turned out to be an enormous understatement" (Fraenkel).

1 aere: abl. of comp.; '(even) than bronze', a vivid particularization for indestructibility in general (Introduction, I. 3).

2 regali situ: abl. of comp.; lit. 'than the royal structure', i.e. 'than the Pharaohs' pile'. altius: the highest pyramid (of Ghizeh) was about 480 feet—higher, that is, than any other monument known to the Romans; altius and perennius are each in the emphatic final position.

3 quod: 'of a kind that', introducing a rel. cl. of characteristic.

3-5 non . . . non . . . aut . . . et: introduce the four subjects of possit,

and may all conveniently be translated by the adjective 'no'. Of these four subjects the first two (*imber* and *Aquilo*) are vivid particularizations, representing the onslaught of weather, while the last two are placed in chiasmic word order.

5 temporum: pl., = 'of ages', 'of eras', (not just 'of time').

6 Non omnis: 'not all of me', 'not completely'. -que: 'but (on the contrary)'.

7 Libitinam: 'the Goddess of the Grave'; deaths were officially recorded in the temple of Libitina.

7-8 usque . . . recens: construe: usque ('on and on') ego (emphatic, and emphatically flanked by usque and recens; almost = 'my fame') crescam (fut.), recens ('ever fresh', 'ever renewed') laude postera ('with the praise of posterity').

8-9 dum Capitolium . . . pontifex: by vivid particularization, the Roman way of life is symbolized by the processional ascent of the Capitoline Hill to the Capitol by the High Priest and the chief Vestal Virgin: Horace's fame shall last 'as long as' (*dum*) Rome herself shall last. The Vestal Virgin is 'silent' (*tacita*) to



AUGUSTUS IN THE GARB OF THE PONTIFEX MAXIMUS

' . . . dum Capitolium scandet cum tacita virgine pontifex.'

- 10 Dicar, qua violens obstrepit Aufidus  
et qua pauper aquae Daunus agrestium  
regnavit populorum, ex humili potens  
princeps Aeolium carmen ad Italos  
deduxisse modos. Sume superbiam  
15 quaesitam meritis et mihi Delphica  
lauro cinge volens, Melpomene, comam.

(Odes III, 30)

make sure that no words of ill omen may by accident be spoken. See note on Vestal Virgins, l. 34, p. 267.

10-14 Dicar . . . modos: the outline is: *qua* (adv., 'where') . . . *et qua* . . . *dicar* ('I shall be spoken of', 'I shall be famous') *ex humili potens* ('though from humble parentage exalted', or 'I, from humble origin grown powerful') *princeps* (adj., 'as the first') *deduxisse* (gov. by *Dicar*, 'to have adapted') *Aeolium carmen* ('Aeolian song', an allusion to the Greek lyric verse-forms of the poetess Sappho and of the poet Alcaeus, who wrote on the Aeolian Isle of Lesbos) *ad Italos modos* ('to Italian strains'). The strains are now Italian, for Horace is sounding them on the Roman lyre, that is, in the Latin language.

10-11 *qua Aufidus, qua Daunus*: i.e. in the district of Apulia, in southern Italy, where Horace's birthplace, Venusia, is situated. Horace, characteristically, does not directly name Apulia, but resorts to allusion (Introduction, I. 2), providing us with two clues, the first geographical, the second mythological; *Aufidus* is a river, *Daunus* a mythical king of Apulia.

11-12 *qua pauper* . . . *populorum*:

construe: *qua, pauper aquae* ('destitute of water', freely, 'in his parched land'; Horace had his lowly beginnings, not merely in the country, but in 'dust-bowl' country!) *regnavit agrestium populorum* ('reigned over his rustic tribes', apparently an extension of the obj. gen., in imitation of a Greek construction with verbs meaning 'rule over').

14-16 *Sume* . . . *et* . . . *cinge* . . . *Melpomene comam*: Melpomene is selected to represent the Muses to whom Horace owes his poetic inspiration. It was only in late antiquity that each Muse was put in charge of a special department; in Horace's day Melpomene was not yet specialized as the Muse of Tragedy. Construe: *Sume* ('Accept'), *Melpomene, superbiam* ('the feeling of pride', 'the proud place') *quaesitam meritis* (supply *tuis*, 'won by your merits', 'well earned') *et volens* (a conditional part., 'if you will', 'graciously') *cinge mihi* (either 'my' with *comam*, or else 'in my honour', with *cinge*) *comam Delphica* ('Apollo's', by mythological allusion; Apollo was god of the oracle at Delphi, and also the patron deity of lyric poetry) *lauro* (the traditional award of merit; we still speak of 'winning one's laurels').



# APPENDIX

## Some Translations and Paraphrases of Horace

Horace has invited (and defied) the efforts of more translators in more languages than has any other ancient author. Some of the following versions reproduce Horace's own metres. Others are humorous paraphrases that aim at nothing more than to recapture some of Horace's charm, and are to be found in such light-hearted little collections as Eugene Field's *Echoes from the Sabine Farm*, Franklin P. Adams' *Tobogganing on Parnassus*, and Gardner Wade Earle's *Moments with (and without) Horace*. None, it need hardly be said, is intended to serve as a classroom translation.

### **Trials on My Trip to Brundisium**

But here the water, being foul,  
Upsets my stomach, and I scowl  
Watching the others gorge their food,  
While I look on in dyspeptic mood.  
Now night prepares to draw its shades  
O'er all the lands, and in the glades  
Of far-off Heaven to strew the stars.  
Now raucous clamour cruelly jars  
Our peace, as bargemen vie with slaves,  
Calling each other spawn of knaves.  
"Tie up herel!" the slave calls out.  
"There's no more room, you crazy lout!"  
The bargeman yells. We're just inside;  
We pay our fare; the mule is tied.  
The time drags by; we're robbed of sleep  
By the curs'd mosquitoes and the deep

Croaking of frogs from hour to hour.  
A bargeman soused in vintage sour  
Tries to outsing in plaintive note  
A passenger in this loony boat  
About the girl-friend far away.  
The passenger at last, near day,  
Yields to the other—there's peace at last.  
The lazy boatman then makes fast  
The donkey's reins to a stone near-by  
To graze, and snores with face to sky.  
Dawn breaks; the barge makes not a stir  
Till one splenetic customer  
Jumps off, and with resounding whack,  
Flails mule and boy on head and back.  
We're safe ashore at last at nine.  
In a fountain 'neath Feronia's shrine  
We plunge our arms and splash our faces,  
Removing last night's filthy traces.

(*C. S. Brubacher*)

### To Pyrrha

What slender youth, bedewed with liquid odours,  
Courts thee on roses in some pleasant cave,  
    Pyrrha? For whom bind'st thou  
        In wreaths thy golden hair,  
Plain in thy neatness? Oh, how oft shall he  
On faith and changed gods complain, and seas  
    Rough with black winds and storms  
        Unwonted shall admire,  
Who now enjoys thee credulous, all gold;  
Who always vacant, always amiable,  
    Hopes thee, of flattering gales  
        Unmindful! Hapless they  
To whom thou untried seem'st fair! Me, in my vowed  
Picture, the sacred wall declare t' have hung  
    My dank and dropping weeds  
        To the stern God of Sea.

(*John Milton*)

What slim elegant youth, drenched in effusive scent,  
 now sits close to your side, Pyrrha, in some recess  
     rich with many a rosebloom?  
 Who loves smoothing your yellow hair,  
 chic yet daintily plain? How many gods profaned,  
 what indelible vows he will lament, and oh,  
     what dark hurricane-lashed seas  
 he will watch with a pallid cheek!  
 Poor fool, golden he thinks you will forever be,  
 heart-free always, he hopes, always adorable—  
     yet knows not the deceitful  
 off-shore squalls. To a novice, you  
 shine too temptingly bright. Here on the temple wall  
 one small tablet of mine, offering up my clothes  
     (all I saved from a shipwreck),  
 says Thank God, that I just escaped.

*(Gilbert Highet)*

#### HORACE THE WISE

What lady-like youth in his wild aberrations  
 Is putting cologne on his brow?  
 For whom are the puffs and the blond transformations?  
 I wonder who's kissing you now?  
 Tee hee! I must laugh when I think of his finish,  
 Not wise to your ways and your rep.  
 Ha! Ha! how his fancy for you will diminish!  
 I know, for I'm Jonathan Hep.

*(Franklin P. Adams)*

#### TO MISTRESS PYRRHA

What perfumed, posie-dizened sirrah,  
     With smiles for diet,  
 Clasps you, O fair but faithless Pyrrha,  
     On the quiet?  
 For whom do you bind up your tresses,  
     As spun-gold yellow,—  
 Meshes that go with your caresses,  
     To snare a fellow?

How will he rail at fate capricious,  
And curse you duly,  
Yet now he deems your wiles delicious,—  
You perfect, truly!  
Pyrrha, your love's a treacherous ocean;  
He'll soon fall in there!  
Then shall I gloat on his commotion,  
For *I* have been there!

*(Eugene Field)*

### **Integrity is a Mighty Weapon**

Fuscus, whoso to good inclines,  
And is a faultless liver,  
Nor Moorish spear nor bow need fear,  
Nor poison-arrowed quiver.  
Ay, though through desert wastes he roam,  
Or scale the rugged mountains,  
Or rest beside the murmuring tide  
Of weird Hydaspan fountains!  
Lo, on a time, I gaily paced  
The Sabine confines shady,  
And sung in glee of Lalage,  
My own and dearest lady;  
And as I sung, a monster wolf  
Slunk through the thicket from me;  
But for that song, as I strolled along,  
He would have overcome me!  
Set me amid those poison mists  
Which no fair gale dispelleth,  
Or in the plains where silence reigns,  
And no thing human dwelleth,—  
Still shall I love my Lalage,  
Still sing her tender graces,  
And while I sing, my theme shall bring  
Heaven to those desert places!

*(Eugene Field)*



## ADVICE

Fuscus, my friend, take it from me—  
I know the world and what it's made of—  
One on the square has naught to be  
Afraid of.

The Moorish bows and javelins? Nope.  
Such deadly things need not alarm him.  
Why, even arrows dipped in dope  
Can't harm him!

He's safe in any clime or land,  
Desert or river, hill or valley;  
Safe in all places on the Rand-  
McNally.

Why, one day in my Sabine grot,  
I sang for Lalage to hear me;  
A wolf came in and he did not  
Come near me!

Ah, set me on the sunless plain,  
In China, Norway, or Matanzas,  
Ay, place me anywhere from Maine  
To Kansas.

Still of my Lalage I'll sing,  
Where'er the Fates may chance to drop me;  
And nobody nor anything  
Shall stop me.

*(Franklin P. Adams)*

**Away With Persian Pomp!**

"Boy, I hate their empty shows,  
Persian garlands I detest,  
Bring me not the late-blown rose  
Ling'ring after all the rest:

Plainer myrtle pleases me  
Thus out-stretch'd beneath my vine,  
Myrtle more becoming thee,  
Waiting with thy master's wine."

*(William Cowper)*

"Dear Lucy, You know what my wish is,  
I hate all your Frenchified fuss,  
Your silly entrées and made dishes  
Were never intended for us.  
Persicos odi, puer, apparatus,  
Bring me a chop and a couple of potatoes!"

*(William Makepeace Thackeray)*

"Boy, I detest the Persian pomp;  
I hate those linden-bark devices;  
And as for roses, holy Moses!  
They can't be got at living prices!

Myrtle is good enough for us,—  
For *you*, as bearer of my flagon;  
For *me*, supine beneath this vine,  
Doing my best to get a jag on!"

*(Eugene Field)*

### In Praise of the Golden Mean

#### A MOMENT WITH HORACE — THE GOLDEN MEAN

Better will you live, My Friend, by not  
Advancing far to sea, nor yet in fear  
Retreating to the shoreline's safer spot.

The Golden Mean will keep you ever near  
A middle course. Your house should not be rude  
Nor should it cause a neighbour's envious jeer.

Tall pines are shaken when strong winds are brewed  
By tempests. Lofty towers sooner fall  
Men of wealth for larger sums are sued.

Be hopeful in the winter; Spring will call  
Again. Be anxious in the summer lest  
The honey make more bitter autumn's gall.

Avoid the swamp; seek not the stormy crest.

*(Gardner Wade Earle)*

## WITHOUT HORACE — ANYHOW-MEAN

You'll lead a softer life, My Boy, but dull  
If never you shove out too far t' sea  
Or hug the shoreline like a seasick gull.  
The easy-weasel way will always be  
More cushy. Keep yer joint not like a dump  
Or fancy past respectability.  
The storm will lay a big tree while a stump  
Still stands. Lightnin' likes t' hit the top.  
A dizzy peak is bad; so is a slump.  
In summer, better figger on the drop  
To winter, an' the worst thing in the fall  
Is worryin' that spring will be a flop.  
Too short? Can't win. Yuh lose if yer too tall.

*(Gardner Wade Earle)*

**To the Spring of Bandusia**

Hail, Bandusian spring, clearer than crystal pure,  
fountain worthy of sweet wine and of wreaths of flowers.  
Take my gift of a young kid  
whose head, swelling with early horns,  
even now promises love, promises battles too—  
vain forecasts: for he shall, after tomorrow's dawn,  
dye your coolness with red blood,  
he, once gayest of all the herd.  
Untouched, even in the fierce hour of the blazing Dog,  
unwarmed, you with your streams offer delightful cold  
to bulls tired with the heavy plough  
and to wandering herds of kine.  
You too shall be among fountains of high renown,  
when my song celebrates this overarching oak,  
this dark hollow of rocks whence  
leaps your chattering waterfall.

*(Gilbert Highet)*

O Fountain of Bandusia!  
Whence crystal waters flow,  
With garlands gay and wine I'll pay  
The sacrifice I owe.  
A sportive kid with budding horns  
I have, whose crimson blood  
Anon shall dye and sanctify  
Thy cool and babbling flood.

O Fountain of Bandusia!  
The Dog-star's hateful spell  
No evil brings into the springs  
That from thy bosom well;  
Here oxen, wearied by the plow,  
The roving cattle here  
Hasten in quest of certain rest,  
And quaff thy gracious cheer.

O Fountain of Bandusia!  
Ennobled shalt thou be,  
For I shall sing the joys that spring  
Beneath yon ilex-tree.  
Yes, Fountain of Bandusia,  
Posterity shall know  
The cooling brooks that from thy nooks  
Singing and dancing go.

*(Eugene Field)*



## To Faunus

### TO PROTECT THE SABINE FARM

Faunus, flying nymphs' unabashed pursuer,  
come with kind intentions across the bounds and  
sunny landscape here and depart with friendly  
will to the weanlings,

if a kid each year, as your feast approaches,  
falls to you, and Venus' mate, the mixer,  
gets unstinted wine, and the ancient altar's  
clouded with incense.

All the flock disports on the grassy pasture  
soon as your own Nones of December reach them;  
country folk make merry beside the resting  
ox in the meadows;

lambs are undismayed at the wolf's emergence;  
woodlands strew their rustic array before you;  
delvers spurn with glee in a triple measure  
Earth the opponent.

*(J. B. Leishman)*

## My Monument

Lofty and enduring is the monument I've reared:  
Come, tempests, with your bitterness assailing;  
And thou, corrosive blasts of time, by all things mortal  
feared,

Thy buffets and thy rage are unavailing!

I shall not altogether die: by far my greater part  
Shall mock man's common fate in realms infernal;  
My works shall live as tributes to my genius and my art,—  
My works shall be my monument eternal!

While this great Roman empire stands and gods protect our  
fanés,

Mankind with grateful hearts shall tell the story  
How one most lowly born upon the parched Apulian plains  
First raised the native lyric muse to glory.

Assume, revered Melpomene, the proud estate I've won,  
And with thine own dear hand the meed supplying,  
Bind thou about the forehead of thy celebrated son  
The Delphic laurel-wreath of fame undying!

*(Eugene Field)*

THE MONUMENT OF Q.H.F.

Look you, the monument I have erected  
High as the pyramids, royal, sublime,  
During as brass—it shall not be affected  
E'en by the elements coupled with Time.

Part of me, most of me, never shall perish;  
I shall be free from Oblivion's curse;  
Mine is a name that the future will cherish—  
I shall be known for my excellent verse.

I shall be famous all over this nation  
Centuries after myself shall have died;  
People will point to my versification—  
I, who was born on the Lower East Side!

Come, then, Melpomene, why not admit me?  
I want a wreath that is Delphic and green;  
Seven, I think, is the size that will fit me—  
Slip me some laurel to wear on my bean.

*(Franklin P. Adams)*

## VOCABULARY

1. Regular Conj. I verbs are indicated thus: porto, I.
2. In the fourth principal part (the perfect participle passive), transitive verbs are indicated by the masculine (-us), and intransitive verbs by the neuter (-um).

## A

**ab**, *prep. with abl. (usually ā before consonants)*, away from, from, at a distance from; by; on the side of, at, on, in

**abdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, I put away, hide, conceal

**abeō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, I go away, depart, leave; from, a, ab, *plus abl.*; go by (*of time*)

**abiciō**, -ere, iēcī, -iectus, I throw away, cast aside

**abiēs**, -etis, *f.*, a fir-tree

**abiudicō**, I adjudge away, take away (*by legal decision*)

**abruptus**, -a, -um, steep; *as a noun*, abruptum, -ī, *n.*, abyss

**abscindō**, -ere, abscidī, abscissus, I tear, rend

**absēns**, -entis, absent

**abstineō**, -ēre, abstinuī, I keep away from; refrain

**absum**, -esse, āfui, I am distant, away

**absurdē**, *adv.*, discordantly, irrationally

**abundō**, I, I abound in, have an abundance of, am well provided with, am strong in

**ac**, *see atque*

**accēdō**, -ere, accessī, accessum, I approach; am in addition

**accidit**, -ere, accidit, it happens, befalls

**accingō**, -ere, accinxī, accinctus, I gird on, gird, arm, equip

**accipiō**, -ere, cēpī, -ceptus, I take to myself, receive, accept, take over, admit; suffer; hear, learn, perceive

**accipiter**, -tris, *m.*, falcon, hawk

**accommodō**, I, I fit, fit on, adjust

**accumbo**, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, I lie, recline at meals

**accūsātor**, -ōris, *m.*, accuser

**accūsō**, I, I blame, censure, call to account, take to task, accuse

**ācer**, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp, fierce  
**acerbus**, -a, -um, bitter: harsh, cruel, violent

**acervus**, -ī, *m.*, heap, pile

**acētum**, -ī, *n.*, vinegar, sour wine

**Achātēs**, -ae, *m.*, Achaetes, one of Aeneas' Trojan band of refugees

**Achillās**, -ae, *m.*, the murderer of Pompey

**Achillēs**, -is and ī, *m.*, Achilles, the greatest warrior of the Greeks at Troy

**Achivī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Greeks

**aciēs**, -ēī, *f.*, battle-line

**acquirō**, -ere, acquisivī, acquisitus, I gain, get in addition

**acūtus**, -a, -um, sharp: keen, discerning, penetrating

**ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward; with a view to, for; according to; near by

**addō** -ere, -didī, -ditus, I add

**addūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, I lead to; influence

**adeō**, *adv.*, so, to such a degree

**adeō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, I go to, approach

**adfabrē**, *adv.*, skilfully

**adferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, or **afferō**, -ferre, attuli, allātus, I bring, carry; bring word

**adficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, I treat someone (*accus.*) with a kind of treatment (*abl of means*); *e.g.* clā-dibus adficiō, I inflict disasters on; *perf. part. pass.*, adfectus, weakened, impaired, affected

adfligō, -ere, -flicī, -flictus, I strike, throw down  
 adfor, adfārī, adfātus sum, I speak to, address  
 adhūc, *adv.*, so far, up to this point, still  
 adiciō, -ere, adiēcī, adiectus, I add, increase  
 adimō, -ere, adēmī, adēptus, I take away  
 adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum, I obtain, acquire, win  
 aditus, -ūs, *m.*, entrance, access  
 adiungo, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, I join to or on, unite, attach, add, combine  
 adiuvo, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, I aid, support  
 adloquor, -ī, adlocutus sum, I address  
 administrō, I, I attend to, manage  
 admirābilis, -is, -e, admirable, remarkable  
 admirātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, wonder, awe, admiration  
 admiror, I, I wonder at, marvel at, am surprised at, admire, express surprise  
 admittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus, I admit, allow; incur; let go; *equis admissis*, at a full gallop  
 admoveō, ēre, -mōvī, mōtus, I move or bring to; apply; touch; *admōtus*, stretching to  
 adnitor, -ī, adnīxus (or adnīsus) sum, I strive, make a great effort  
 adnuō, -ere, uī, -ūtus, I nod to, nod assent to  
 adoperiō, -īre, -ui, -tus, I cover, wrap  
 adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum, I attack  
 adsentior, -īrī, adsēnsus sum, I agree with, *plus dat*  
 adsum, -esse, -fui, I am present, near  
 adulēscens, -entis, *m.*, young man, youth  
 adulēscētia, -ae, *f.*, the time of youth  
 adurgeō, -ēre, I pursue closely, follow up  
 adūrō, -ere, adussī, adūstus, I scorch, singe, burn  
 adventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival, approach  
 adversus, *prep.* with *acc.*, against

adversus, -a, -um, turned towards; in front, opposite, facing one; adverse, unfavourable, opposing; in *adversum* ōs, full in the face  
 aedificium, -ī, *n.*, building, dwelling  
 aedificō, I, I build  
 aeger, -gra, -grum, ill, sick, suffering  
 aegrē, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty  
 aegritūdō, -dinis, *f.*, grief, affliction  
 Aegyptus, -ī, *m.*, Egypt  
 Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aemilius Paulus, *consul* in 216 B.C.  
 Aenēas, -ae, *m.*, Aeneas, the prince of Troy who led the Trojan refugees to Italy  
 aēneus, -a, -um, bronze, copper  
 Aeōlia, -ae, *f.*, Aeolia, mythical island north of Sicily  
 Aeolius, -a, -um, Aeolian, Greek, with special reference to the Isle of Lesbos which was colonized by Aeolian Greeks and became famous for the Greek lyric poetry of Alcaeus and of Sappho  
 Aeolus, -ī, *m.*, Aeolus, king of the winds  
 aequō, I, I equalize, adjust, divide equally; bring level, match exactly  
 aequor, -oris, *n.*, a flat surface; the sea, water  
 aequus, -a, -um, level, even; fair, right, just; favourable, advantageous  
 āēr, āēris (Greek *accus.* āēra), *m.*, air, mist, cloud  
 acrarium, -ī, *n.*, treasury  
 aes, aeris, *n.*, bronze  
 aesculētum, -ī, *n.*, forest of Italian oaks; oak-forest  
 aestās, aestātis, *f.*, summer  
 aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, evaluation, appraisal  
 aestivus, -a, -um, of summer  
 aestuō, I, I boil, seethe, rage  
 aestuōsus, -a, -um, glowing, sultry, sweltering; stormy, tempest-tossed  
 aestus, -ūs, *m.*, tide  
 aetās, aetātis, *f.*, age, time of life  
 aeternus, -a, -um, eternal, immortal  
 aethēr, -eris, *n.*, (*acc.* aethera), upper air; the heavens, the sky



**Aethiops, -opis, m.,** "burnt-face"; hence, Ethiopian, black man, negro; as an *adj.*, Ethiopian  
**aevum, -i, n.,** age  
**Afrānius, -i, m.,** Lucius Afranius, an officer of Pompey  
**Africa, -ae, f.,** Africa  
**Africus, -i, m.,** Africus, the southwest wind, "sou-wester"  
**ager, agrī, m.,** field; farm; territory; land  
**agger, aggeris, m.,** what is brought to a place; hence, earth, timber, materials for a mound or wall; wall, mound, rampart  
**aggredior, -i, -gressus sum, I** attack  
**agitō, I, I** put in motion; shake, toss  
**āgmen, -minis, n.,** army on the march, line of march, column; **novissimum āgmen,** rearguard, rear; **primum āgmen,** vanguard, van  
**agna, -ae, f.,** lamb  
**āgnōscō, -ere, āgnōvī, āgnitus, I** recognize something or someone already known  
**agnus, -i, m.,** lamb  
**agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, tr., I** drive; do, transact; *intr. act.* confer (with, *cum* with *abl.*); *in pass.*, am at stake  
**agrestis, -is, -e, rustic;** natural  
**agricola, -ae, m.,** farmer  
**Aiāx, -cis, m.,** Ajax, the name of two Greek warriors at Troy  
**aīt, defective,** he says, he said  
**āla, -ae, f.,** wing  
**alacer, -cris, -cre, quick, eager, active**  
**alacritās, -tātis, f.,** keenness, ardour, impetuosity, eagerness  
**albus, -a, -um, white**  
**ālea, -ae, f.,** a die; *pl.*, dice  
**āles, ālitis, m., f.,** bird; omen  
**Alexander, -drī, m.,** Alexander, the Macedonian king who conquered Greece, the Persian empire, and other lands as far as India  
**Alexandriā, -ae, f.,** Alexandria, a city on the north coast of Egypt, founded by Alexander the Great  
**aliēnus, -a, -um, someone else's, other people's; of another**  
**aliquandō, adv.,** at last, some day, one day

**aliquis, aliquis, aliquid, indef. pron.,** someone, something, someone or other; **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, indef. adj.,** some, any  
**aliquō, adv.,** to some place, somewhere  
**aliquot, indecl. adj.,** several, some  
**alius, -a, -ud, other, another; different; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; alii . . . alii, some . . . others**  
**allabōrō, I, I** add to by labour, try to add  
**Alliēnsis, -is, -e, of or at the Allia, the river at which the Gauls defeated the Romans in 390 B.C.**  
**Allobrogēs, -um, m.,** the Allobroges, a tribe of Gauls living to the S.W. of Lake Geneva. They were conquered in B.C. 121 by Q. Fabius Maximus and made subjects of Rome  
**alloquor, -i, allocūtus sum, I** address  
**almus, -a, -um, nourishing, kindly**  
**alō, -ere, -uī, -itus, I** feed, nourish  
**Alpēs, Alpium, f. plur.,** the Alps  
**altē, adv.,** on high, aloft  
**alter, -era, -erum, the other; the second; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other**  
**alternus, -a, -um, alternating, in turn**  
**altitūdō, altitudinis, f.,** height, depth  
**altor, ōris, m.,** foster-father, tutor, teacher  
**altum, -i, n.,** the deep, the sea  
**altus, -a, -um, high, lofty; deep**  
**alumnus, -i, m.,** nursling, tender youngling  
**amābilis, -is, -e, lovely, attractive, lovable, delicious**  
**amātor, -ōris, m.,** lover  
**Ambiorix, -igis, m.,** Ambiorix, a Gallic chieftain  
**ambō, -ae, -ō, both**  
**ambulō, I, I** walk  
**amīcitia, -ae, f.,** friendship  
**amictus, -ūs, m.,** any outer garment, cloak, robe, mantle  
**amīcus, -a, -um, friendly**  
**amīcus, -i, m.,** friend  
**āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus, I** lose  
**amnis, -is, m.,** stream  
**amō, I, I** love, like, am fond of  
**amor, amōris, m.,** love

amphitheatrum, -ī, *n.*, amphitheatre  
amphora, -ae, *f.*, a two-handled jar,  
jar

amplius, *adv.*, more, more than  
amplus, -a, -um, large, great, spacious;  
distinguished, eminent, important  
an, *conj.*, 1. *introducing the second  
part of a double question, or, or  
rather; 2. = -ne, introducing a  
single question, whether*

Anchisēs, -ae, *m.*, Anchises, *the father  
of Aeneas*

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor; in ancoris, at  
anchor

angō, -ere, anxī, anctus, I trouble,  
vex, distress

angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner, angle

angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, narrow place,  
pass; defile

angustus, -a, -um, narrow, confined;  
steep; rēs angustiae, straitened cir-  
cumstances

anhēlitus, -ūs, *m.*, a panting, panting  
breath

Aniēnsis, -is, -e, of the Anio river;  
Aniēnsis fluvius, the Anio river

anillis, -is, -e, of an old woman

anima, -ae, *f.*, spirit, soul; life; breath

animadvertō, -ere, animadvertī, anim-  
adversus, I notice

animōsus, -a, -um, spirited, courage-  
ous

animus, -ī, *m.*, morale, spirit, inclina-  
tion, mind, soul; spirits; fun; af-  
fection, loyalty

annōna, -ae, *f.*, the year's produce;  
the price of grain

annus, -ī, *m.*, year

annuus, -a, -um, yearly, holding of-  
fice for one year

anser, -eris, *m.*, *f.*, goose, gander

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before; *adv.*,  
before, previously, formerly

anteā, *adv.*, beforehand, before

antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, I go in  
front, come before, march ahead

antehāc, *adv.*, formerly, hitherto

antequam, *conj.*, before, *with perf.  
ind.*

Antiochus, -ī, *m.*, Antiochus, *King of  
Syria, defeated by the Romans at  
the battle of Magnesia in 190 B.C.*

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient; former

antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave, cavern, grotto

ānulus, -ī, *m.*, a ring, finger-ring

anus, ūs, *f.*, old woman

aperiō, -ire, uī, -tus, I open, disclose

apertus, -a, -um, open, exposed

Apollō, Apollinis, *m.*, Apollo, *god of  
the sun, of learning, of music,  
poetry, prophecy, medicine, archery*

apparātus, -ūs, *m.*, preparation, os-  
tentation, pomp, luxury

appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, I appear,  
show myself, prove myself

apparō, I, I prepare, make ready

appellō, I, I name, call; mercēdem  
appellō, I claim, pay, demand pay-  
ment

appellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, I bring  
to, put in at (*nautical*), come to  
land, land

Appennīnus, -ī, *m.*, the Apennine  
mountain range

appetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petitus, I seek  
after, strive after; draw near; at-  
tack

appropinquātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nearness,  
approach

appropinquō, I, I approach, *with  
dat.*

apricus, -a, -um, sunny

aptō, I, I fit, adjust; prepare, make  
ready

aptus, -a, -um, fit, suited; to, for, ad  
*with acc.*

apud, *prep. with acc.*, near, at; at the  
home of, with, among

Apulia, -ae, *f.*, Apulia, *a district of  
south-eastern Italy*

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water

aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, watering-place, the  
fishing grounds

aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle

aquilifer, -ferī, *m.*, *an officer who  
carried the chief standard of the  
Roman legion (aquila)*

Aquilō, -ōnis, *m.*, the North wind,  
northern gale

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar

arānea, -ae, *f.*, spider; cobweb

arātor, -tōris, *m.*, ploughman; land-  
holder (*one who cultivated the  
public lands, paying tithes for the  
privilege*)

- arbitrium, -i, *n.*, judgment, opinion; discretion, will, pleasure, power  
 arbitrator, -ārī, -ātus sum, I think, consider  
 arbor, arboris, *f.*, tree  
 arboreus, -a, -um, of a tree  
 Arcadicus, -a, -um, Arcadian, *from Arcadia, a district in the central portion of the Peloponnesus in Southern Greece*  
 arcānus, -a, -um, secret, private; Arcānum, -i, *n.*, Arcanum, *the name of an estate*  
 Archimēdēs, -is, *m.*, Archimedes, *the famous scientist of Syracuse*  
 arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow  
 ārdēns, -ēns, -ēns (-ntis), burning; at fever heat, in hot haste  
 ārdēō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, I burn, am inflamed, am ablaze; burn with love, am very much in love  
 arduus, -a, -um, steep; high, towering, gigantic; difficult, hard  
 arēna, -ae, *f.*, sand; ground  
 ārēns, -ēns, -ēns (-ntis), dry, parched, ripened, ripe  
 argentārius, -a, -um, of money; argentārius, -i, *m.*, a banker; ārs or rēs argentāria, the business of a banker  
 argentum, -i, *n.*, silver, a sum of silver; silverware  
 Argivus, -a, -um, Argive, Greek  
 argūō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, I make known, show, prove, declare  
 āridus, -a, -um, dry, parched; āridum, -i, *n.*, dry land  
 Ariovistus, -i, *m.*, Ariovistus, *a king of the Germans*  
 arista, -ae, *f.*, head of wheat, ear of corn  
 arma, ōrum, *n. plur.*, arms, weapons  
 armātūra, -ae, *f.*, a mode of arming; armour, equipment; armed men, troops, *as in levis armātūra, light infantry*  
 armātus, -i, *m.*, an armed man  
 armō, 1. I arm, equip  
 arō, 1. I plough  
 Arpī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Arpi, *a town in Apulia*  
 Arpinum, -i, *n.*, Arpinum, *a town of Latium*  
 arrēctus, -a, -um, eager, keen  
 arrogāns, (*gen. -antis*), proud, disdainful  
 arrogantia, -ae, *f.*, haughtiness; arrogance; presumption, conceit  
 ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art  
 artificium, -i, *n.*, workmanship, skill  
 artus, -a, -um, closely fitting; trelised; narrow, confined  
 artus, -ūs, *m.*, joint; *plur.*, limbs, body  
 arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel  
 ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus, I climb, mount; nāvem ascendō, I embark, go aboard ship  
 ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent, climb  
 aspectus, -ūs, *m.*, look, sight, appearance  
 asper, -era, -erum, without hope, terrible; rough, fierce, dangerous, angry, enraged; poisonous (of snakes)  
 asperē, *adv.*, harshly; coarsely  
 aspiciō, -ere, aspēxī, aspectus, I look at, behold  
 astrum, -i, *n.*, star; *pl.*, fame, success at, *conj.*, but, yet  
 Atalanta, -ae, *f.*, Atalanta, *daughter of King Schoeneus in Boeotia*  
 āter, ātra, ātrum, dark-coloured, dark, black  
 Atlantiadēs, -ae, *m.*, descendant of Atlas, *especially Mercury*  
 atque (*often ac before a consonant*), *conj.*, and, and also  
 atquī, *conj.*, but anyway, and yet  
 atrōx, atrōx, atrōx, (atrōcis), savage, fierce  
 attenuō, 1. I make small. lessen; deplete  
 attollō, -ere, I lift up, raise up  
 attonitus, -a, -um, thunderstruck, amazed, spellbound  
 auctor, ōris, *m.*, originator; author, sponsor  
 auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, authority, influence, prestige; authorization, sanction, recommendation  
 audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring  
 audācter, *adv.*, boldly, fearlessly  
 audāx, (*gen. audācis*), bold, reckless; fearless  
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, I dare, venture

- audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, I hear, listen to, hear of  
 auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātus, I take away, remove  
 Aufidus, -ī, *m.*, the Aufidus, a river in Apulia  
 aufugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, I run away, escape  
 augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *act.*, I increase (*trans.*); *pass.*, I increase (*intrans.*)  
 aula, -ae, *f.*, palace  
 aura, -ae, *f.*, air; breeze, wind; sky  
 aureus, -a, -um, golden; gilt, gilded  
 auriga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer  
 auris, -is, *f.*, ear  
 Aurōra, -ae, *f.*, Dawn, Aurora, *personified as the goddess of the dawn*  
 aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold; golden object, golden apple  
 Auster, -trī, *m.*, the South wind  
 aut, *conj.*, or, or else (*where the choice is inevitable and not voluntary*); aut . . . aut, either . . . or  
 autem, *postpositive adv.*, however, moreover  
 autumnus, -ī, *m.*, autumn, fall  
 auxilium, -ī, *n.*, help, aid, support; *in plur.*, reinforcements, auxiliaries  
 avāritia, -ae, *f.*, greed, avarice  
 avārus, -a, -um, covetous, greedy  
 avē, avēte, greetings! hail!  
 āvehō, -ere, āvexī, āvectus, I carry away; *in pass.* (*sc. nāvī, or nāvibus*) sail away, depart  
 āversus, -a, -um, turned away; alienated, estranged, hostile  
 āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, I turn away, turn aside; divert, appropriate, embezzle; prevent, keep away  
 avidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, desirous, covetous (*with gen.*)  
 avis, avis, *f.*, bird  
 avītus, -a, -um, of one's grandfather, ancestral  
 avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather; ancestor
- B**
- Babylōnius, -a, -um, Babylonian, of Babylon  
 bacchor, I, I rave, run riot, revel  
 balineum, -ī, *n.*, bath-room  
 Bandusia, -ae, *f.*, Bandusia  
 barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, uncivilized, savage, barbarous  
 barbarus, -ī, *m.*, barbarian, native  
 barbitos, -ī, *m.*, (*acc. -on, a Greek decln.*) lyre, lute  
 basilica, -ae, *f.*, court-house  
 Baucis, -idis, *f.*, Baucis, wife of Philemon  
 beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate  
 Belgium, -ī, *n.*, Belgium  
 bellum, -ī, *n.*, war, hostilities, campaign; bellum gerō, I wage war  
 bellus, -a, -um, pretty, charming  
 bēlua, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, monster;  
 bēlua Gaetula, elephant  
 bene, *adv.*, (melius, optimē,) well  
 beneficium, -ī, *n.*, kindness, favour, service, privilege  
 benignē, *adv.*, kindly, courteously  
 benignitās, -tātis, *f.*, kindness, favour  
 benignus, -a, -um, kind  
 Berecynthius, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Berecynthus, a mountain in Phrygia, sacred to Cybele, the mother of Midas; hērōs, *i.e.* Midas, a Phrygian king  
 bestia, -ae, *f.*, wild beast  
 bibliothēca, -ae, *f.*, library  
 bibō, -ere, -ī, I drink  
 Bibulus, -ī, *m.*, Bibulus, a Roman consul in 59 B.C.  
 biduum, -ī, *n.*, a two day period, two days  
 binī, -ae, -a, two at a time  
 Bithynia, -ae, *f.*, Bithynia, also called Pontus and Pontus-Bithynia, a kingdom, later a Roman province, on the south shore of the Black Sea (Pontus)  
 Bithynus, -a, -um, of Bithynia  
 blanditia, -ae, *f.*, flattery, compliment  
 bona, -ōrum, *n.*, goods, property, estate  
 bonus, -a, -um, good; *n. plur.*, goods, possessions  
 Boōtēs, -ae (*a Greek decln.*), *m.*, Boōtes, the Herdsman, also called the Ploughman, a constellation in the northern sky  
 bōs, bovis, *m.*, *f.*, ox, cow  
 brachium, I, *n.*, arm



**brevis**, *adv.*, soon  
**brevis**, -is, -e, short, short-lived  
**brevitās**, -tātis, *f.*, briefness, brevity  
**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain  
**Britannus**, -i, *m.*, Briton  
**brūma**, -ae, *f.*, winter solstice; winter  
**Brundisinus**, -a, -um, of Brundisium  
**Brundisium**, -i, *n.*, Brundisium, *a city in south-east Italy, now known as Brindisi*  
**Brūtus**, -i, *m.*, Brutus, *a Roman name*  
**bustum**, -i, *n.*, mound, tomb

## C

**C.**, *abbrev. for Gaius*  
**cachinnus**, -i, *m.*, laugh, laughter  
**cacūmen**, -inis, *n.*, peak  
**cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, I fall, fall in battle; set (*of stars*)  
**cādūcifer**, -i, *m.*, bearing a herald's staff; *an epithet of Mercury*  
**Caecubus**, -a, -um, of Caecubum, *a district of southern Latium, famous for wine; Caecuban*  
**caecus**, -a, -um, blind; hidden, secret, dark  
**caedēs**, -is, *f.*, slaughter  
**caedō**, -ere, cecidī, caesus, I cut, cut down, slay  
**caelicola**, -ae, *m. or f.*, dweller in heaven, deity, god  
**caelum** -i *n.*, sky, heaven, the heavens  
**caeruleus**, -a, -um, sea-green, bluish  
**Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, Gaius Julius Caesar, *conqueror of Gaul, greatest Roman general*  
**calamitās**, -tātis, *f.*, disaster, misfortune, loss, defeat; calamitātem accipere, suffer disaster  
**calceus**, -i, *m.*, a shoe, half-boot; (*formal foot-gear worn with the toga*)  
**caleo**, -ēre, -uī, be warm, become warm, grow warm  
**callidus**, -a, -um, shrewd, crafty  
**Calpurnia**, -ae, *f.*, Calpurnia, *Julius Caesar's third wife*  
**calx**, calcis, *f.*, heel, foot  
**campus**, -i, *m.*, field, plain

**candēla**, -ae, *f.*, light made of wax, candle  
**candēō**, -ēre, -uī, I am white; *pres. part.*, candēns, white  
**candidus**, -a, -um, gleaming, white  
**Canicula**, -ae, *f.*, Sirius, the Dog-star  
**cānitīēs**, *acc. em. abl. -e, f.*, grey hair, grizzled hair  
**canna**, -ae, *f.*, reed  
**Cannae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Cannae, *a town in Apulia, at which the Romans suffered their worst defeat at the hands of Hannibal*  
**Cannensis**, -is, -e, of Cannae  
**canō**, -ere, cecinī, cantus, I sing, sing of (*with acc.*)  
**Cantium**, -i, *n.*, Kent  
**cantō**, I, I sing, play; recite, declaim (*in a sing-song style*); sing of, sing about  
**caper**, -prī, *m.*, goat  
**capiō**, -ere, cēpī, captus, I take, capture, seize, occupy; arma capiō, I take up arms; cōnsilium capiō, I take advice, adopt a plan  
**Capitōlium**, -i, *n.*, the Capitol, *temple of Jupiter in Rome; the Capitoline Hill, on which the Capitol stood*  
**captīvus**, -i, *m.*, prisoner, captive  
**Capua**, -ae, *f.*, Capua, *the chief city of Campania*  
**caput**, capitis, *n.*, head; capital  
**carcer**, -eris, *m.*, prison; the starting line of a race (*really the barrier in chariot-racing*)  
**cardō**, -inis, *m.*, hinge  
**careō**, -ēre, -uī, I lack, am without; avoid, am safe from (*with abl.*)  
**carīna**, -ae, *f.*, keel; hull; ship, vessel  
**carō**, carnis, *f.*, flesh  
**carpō**, -ere, carpsī, carptus, I pluck, pick; viam carpō, I steer my course  
**Carthāginiēnsis** -is *m.*, a Carthaginian  
**Carthāgō**, -ginis, *f.*, Carthage  
**Carthalō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Carthalo, *a Carthaginian name*  
**cārus**, -a, -um, dear, beloved  
**casa**, -ae, *f.*, hut, cottage  
**Cassius**, -i, *m.*, Gaius Cassius, *one of the conspirators who assassinated Julius Caesar*

castellum, -i, *n.*, stronghold, fort, post  
(*for guards*); a fortified dwelling  
castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, camp, en-  
campment

castus, -a, -um, spotless, guiltless;  
virtuous; pious

casū, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally  
casus, -ūs, *m.*, fall; chance, mischance

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, fetter

caterva, -ae, *f.*, throng, band

Caucasus, -i, *m.*, Caucasus, *mountain  
range between the Black Sea and  
the Caspian Sea*

caulis, -is, *m.*, cabbage

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, motive;  
charge, argument; multis *dē* causis,  
for many reasons; quā *dē* causā?,  
for what reason?

causā, *abl. sing. of causa, with pre-  
ceding gen.*, for the sake of, for the  
purpose of

causidicus, -i, *m.*, lawyer

cautēs, -is, *f.*, crag, rock

cautus, -a, -um, careful, circumspect,  
wary, cautious

cavea, -ae, *f.*, enclosure, "bowl"; spec-  
tators' benches

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, I beware of,  
am on guard against

cavus, -a, -um, hollow; sheltering

cecidī, *from cādō*

cecidī, *from caedō*

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, I move back,  
give in; yield; withdraw

celer, -is, -e, swift, quick, speedy

celeritās, celeritātis, *f.*, speed

celeriter, *adv.*, (celerius, celerrimē),  
swiftly, rapidly

cella, -ae, *f.*, store-room

celsus, -a, -um, high, lofty, tall, tower-  
ing

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner

cēnō, I, I dine

centum, *indecl. adj.*, one hundred

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion, *com-  
mander of a centuria, roughly  
equivalent in rank to a modern  
lieutenant*

cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax

cerebrōsus, -a, -um, hot-headed, hot-  
tempered

Cerēs, -eris, *f.*, Ceres, *the goddess of  
agriculture; grain, corn*

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, I perceive,  
discern

certāmen, -minis, *n.*, struggle, con-  
test

certātīm, *adv.*, in rivalry, in compe-  
tition

certē, *adv.*, certainly; at least

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure, definite;  
certiōrem faciō, I inform

cessō, I, I delay; lose (*time*)

cēteri, -ae, -a, the others, the rest of

cēterum, *conj.*, but

Charōn, -ontis, *m.*, Charon, *the ferry-  
man of Hades*

Charybdis, -is, *f.*, Charybdis, *the spir-  
it of a whirlpool on the Sicilian  
side of the straits between Italy  
and Sicily*

Chimaera, -ae, *f.*, the Chimaera, *one  
of Aeneas' ships*

Chloē, -ēs (*acc. -ēn, a Greek decln.*),  
Chloe, *a girl's name*

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero

Ciliciēnsis, -is, -e, Cilician, of Cilicia.  
*a district in southern Asia Minor*

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cinctus, I surround,  
gird; encircle

cinis, -eris, *m.*, ashes

circā, *adv.*, about, round about, ap-  
proximately

circiter, *adv.*, about, approximately  
circuitus, -ūs, *m.*, a going round,  
circumference

circum, *prep. with acc.*, round, about  
circumagō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, I turn  
around, wheel about

circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus, I sur-  
round

circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, I  
lead around

circumeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, I go around,  
go around to, make the rounds of,  
pass around, surround

circumveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus, I  
surround

citerior, -ior, -ius, nearer, hither;  
Citerior Gallia, Hither Gaul

cithara, -ae, *f.*, lyre, lute

citius, *comp. adv.*, from cito, more  
quickly

cito, *adv.*, quickly

citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of;  
less than

- citus, -a, -um, quick, swift  
 civilis, -is, -e, of the citizens, civil  
 cīvis, -is, *m.*, citizen  
 civitās, -tātis, *f.*, state; citizenship  
 (*gen. pl. cīvitātum or cīvitātium*)  
 clādēs, -is, *f.*, (cladium), defeat, disaster  
 clam, *adv.*, secretly, stealthily  
 clāmō, *l*, I shout  
 clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, shouting  
 clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright, famous, splendid, clārē, *adv.*, loudly  
 classis, -is, *f.*, class (*in school*); fleet  
 Clastidium, *i*, *n.*, Clastidium, a town in Cisalpine Gaul  
 Claudius, *i*, *m.*, Claudius, a Roman name  
 claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus, I close, shut; enclose, shut in, block  
 claustra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, barriers; bars  
 clāvus, -i, *m.*, rudder; tiller, helm  
 clēmēns, (*gen. clēmētis*), gentle, kind, merciful  
 clēmēntia, -ae, *f.*, clemency, mercy  
 cliēns, -entis, *m.*, a personal dependent, client (*protected by his patron before the courts and against violence; received from him an allotment of food or sometimes of land, and accompanied him in war*); a retainer, follower; a companion, favourite  
 clipeus, -i, *m.*, shield  
 Cloanthus, -i, *m.*, Cloanthus, one of Aeneas' Trojan refugees  
 Cn., abbreviation for Gnaeus  
 coctilis, -is, -e, burned; with muri, walls of baked brick  
 coēō, coire, coī, coitum, I come together, am united  
 coepi, coepisse, I began  
 coeptum, -i, *n.*, undertaking, enterprise  
 cōgitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, thought, reflection  
 cōgitō, *l*, I consider, reflect upon, think, plan, give thought  
 cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, I find out, learn, discover; investigate; cōgnōvī, I have found out, I know  
 cōgō, -ere, cōēgī, cōactus, I force, compel; collect, gather  
 cohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, I enclose, confine, imprison  
 cohors, -ortis, *f.*, cohort, one-tenth of a legion; mass, host  
 cohortor, *l*, I encourage, cheer, harangue  
 collēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague, partner in office  
 colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, I collect, assemble, rally  
 collis, -is, *m.*, hill  
 collocō, *l*, I place together, place, set, set up, station, post; give in marriage  
 colloquium, -i, *n.*, interview, meeting, council, conference  
 colloquor, -i, -locūtus sum, I speak, say  
 colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, I till (*the soil*); inhabit; protect, watch over; worship  
 colōnia, -ae, *f.*, settlement, colony  
 colonus, -i, *m.*, settler  
 color, -ōris, *m.*, colour, tint  
 columba, -ae, *f.*, dove, pigeon  
 columna, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar  
 coma, -ae, *f.*, hair, locks, tresses; foliage, leaves  
 combibō, -ere, -bibī, I drink in, swallow  
 comes, -itis, *m.*, companion, associate  
 comitō, *l*, I accompany, follow  
 comitor, ārī, comitātus sum, I accompany, follow  
 commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies  
 commemorō, *l*, I recall; recount, specify  
 commendō, *l*, I entrust, command  
 committō, -ere, misi, -missus, I bring together; proelium committō, I join or begin battle, engage  
 commoveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtus, I disturb, unsettle, upset  
 communis, -is, -e, common, joint; public  
 commutātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change; commutātiō rerum, change or complete reversal of fortune  
 comparō, *l*, I prepare, provide, procure  
 compellō, *l*, I address

- compescō, -ere, -uī, I curb, restrain; appease, quench, slake  
 compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, I fill  
 complexus, -ūs, *m.*, embrace  
 complūrēs, -ēs, -a, several  
 computō, I, I sum up, reckon, compute  
 concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, I grant, yield, give in; make allowance  
 conchis, -is, *f.*, a coarse kind of bean  
 concidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus, I cut up, cut to pieces  
 concidō, -ere, -cidī, I fall down, stumble  
 concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting, council  
 concinō, -ere, -cinuī, I sound in concert; signa concinere, to sound the advance all along the line  
 concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, I take up, conceive; have recourse to  
 concitō, I, I spur (*a horse*); stam-pede; rouse, stir up, incite; spur on, urge on; inspire  
 conclāmō, I, I shout out together *or* to a man; shout  
 conclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, I enclose  
 concors, -cordis, *adj.*, of the same mind, united, in harmony  
 concrētus, -a, -um, matted, clotted  
 concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, I run together, charge together, charge to meet  
 concursus, -ūs, *m.*, a thronging together; attack, charge; encounter, clash  
 condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, term, condition  
 condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, I build, found, establish; store; bury; hide  
 conferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus (*or* collātus), I bring together, collect; compare; complete; mē conferō, I betake myself, turn  
 conficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, I complete, finish  
 confidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, I trust, rely upon, believe in, *with dat.*  
 confirmō, I, I strengthen; encourage; assert, affirm, declare; establish  
 cōnfligō, -ere, -flixi, -flictum, I clash, fight  
 confugiō, -ere, -fūgī, I flee for refuge to, have recourse, resort to (*with ad*)  
 congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum, I come together, clash, fight  
 coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I hurl, throw, discharge; throw upon; drive, thrust; in fugam conicere, to put to flight  
 coniugium, -ī, *n.*, marriage  
 coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, I join, join together, combine together, unite; mē coniungō cum *with abl.*, I unite with, join  
 coniūnx, -iugis, *m.*, *f.*, husband, wife, mate  
 coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, plot, conspiracy  
 coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*, conspirator  
 cōnor, -āri, cōnātus sum, I try, attempt  
 conquiescō, -ere, -quievi, -quietum, I rest, find rest  
 cōsānescō, -ere, -sānuī, I recover, am healed (*rare*)  
 cōsanguineus, -ī, *m.*, kinsman, relative  
 cōscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsus, I ascend, mount; embark  
 cōscius, -a, -um, sharing knowledge with, confederate; aware, conscious; *as a noun*, a go-between, a confederate  
 cōscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, I enroll, enlist; patrēs conscriptī, senators  
 cōsecrō, I, I hallow, consecrate  
 cōsenescō, -ere, -senui, I grow old together, grow old, grow weak  
 cōsensūs, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent  
 cōsentiō, -ire, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, I agree, make common cause  
 cōsequor, -ī, -secutus sum, I overtake; obtain; accomplish, attain  
 cōservō, I, I save, keep  
 cōsessus, -ūs, *m.*, assembly  
 cōsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, I sit down, take my place; encamp, halt  
 cōsīlium, -ī, *n.*, plan, advice; authority; cōsīlium capiō, I adopt a plan, take advice  
 cōsistō, -ere, cōstitī, I halt, take up position; remain steadfast  
 cōsōlor, I, I cheer, comfort



- cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight, view  
 cōspiciō -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, I catch sight of  
 cōnspicor, I, I observe, catch sight of, espy  
 cōstantia, -ae, *f.*, steadfastness, steadiness  
 cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, I decide, decide on, fix, set; draw up, arrange; place, put; place for sacrifice, sacrifice  
 cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -statum, I depend on; consist of; am consistent, am fixed, remain unchanged  
 cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, I become accustomed  
 cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*, custom, habit; ex cōnsuētūdine, according to custom  
 cōnsul, -is, *m.*, consul  
 cōsulāris, -is, -e, of consular rank; as a noun, an ex-consul  
 cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus, I consult, ask for advice; take thought  
 cōnsultum, -ī, *n.*, resolution, decree; senatūs cōnsultum, decree of the Senate  
 cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, I use up, expend, take the life of; spend  
 cōntāctus, -ūs, *m.*, touch, contact  
 cōntāminātus, -a, -um, polluted, defiled, impure, vile  
 cōntemnō, -ere, cōntempsī, cōntemptus, I scorn, despise  
 cōntemptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, contempt  
 cōntendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, I strive, strain; push forward, hasten, march speedily; contend, struggle, engage (*in battle*); with ab, I argue with  
 cōntentus, -a, -um, stretched; satisfied (*with, with abl.*)  
 cōtexō, -ere, -xui, -xtus, I patch up  
 cōtiguus, -a, -um, neighbouring, adjoining  
 cōtinēns, -entis, continuous, unbroken; as noun (*sc. terra*), the continent (*of Europe*), the mainland  
 cōtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, I hold, hem in; bound  
 contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, I touch, reach, extend to  
 continuō, *adv.*, immediately, at once  
 continuus, -a, -um, continuous, successive  
 contrā, *prep. with accus.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing, across from  
 contrahō, -ere, trāxī, -trāctus, I contract; (*of sails*), shorten, reef, take in  
 contrārius, -a, -um, arrayed against, hostile (*to*)  
 contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute, quarrel, difference  
 contubernālis, -is, *m.*, mess-mate, boon companion  
 contus, -ī, *m.*, pole (*for pushing a punt*)  
 convellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsus, I rend, tear up, tear apart; signa convellō, I pull the standards out of the ground  
 conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, I assemble, gather, muster, mass  
 convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, I turn round, turn, reverse; change, direct; *in pass.*, I wheel about, turn around; conversus, -a, -um, having wheeled about, facing  
 conviciū, -ī, *n.*, insult, abuse  
 conviva, -ae, *m.*, *f.*, a table companion, guest  
 convivium, -ī, *n.*, feast, banquet  
 convocō, I, I call together, assemble, summon.  
 cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance; material wealth; cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*, *pl.*, troops, forces, army  
 cor, cordis, *n.*, heart  
 Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*, Cornelius, a Roman name  
 cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (*of an army*); ā cornū, from, on the wing  
 corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown; garland, wreath of leaves or flowers; prize  
 corpus, -oris, *n.*, body, person  
 corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, I make right, improve, correct, make up (*time*)  
 corripio, -ere, -uī, -reptus, I snatch, snatch up; bound out upon, dart out upon, speed along

corruō, -ere, -uī, I fall down, collapse  
 cortex, -icis, *m.*, bark (of a tree)  
 cōtidīanus, -a, -um, daily  
 cōtidīē, *adv.*, daily, every day  
 crambē, -ēs, *f.*, cabbage; crambē re-  
 petita, warmed-over cabbage, *i.e.*,  
 an old story  
 crās, *adv.*, to-morrow  
 Crassus, -i, *m.*, Crassus, a wealthy  
 Roman  
 crātēr, -ēris, *m.*, (Greek *acc.*, crātēra),  
 bowl (for mixing wine with water)  
 crātēra, -ae, *f.*, bowl (for mixing wine  
 with water)  
 crātēs, -is, *f.*, wicker-work; hurdle;  
 framework  
 crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent, re-  
 peated, close together; crēbrō, *adv.*,  
 again and again  
 crēdo, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, I be-  
 lieve, *with dat.*  
 crēdulus, -a, -um, ready to believe,  
 trusting, too trusting  
 creō, I, I elect, appoint, create  
 crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētum, I grow,  
 increase  
 Crētē, -ēs (a Greek decln.), *f.*, Crete,  
 an island south of Greece  
 Crētēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, Cretans, the  
 inhabitants of Crete  
 Creūsa, -ae, *f.*, Creūsa, the wife of  
 Aeneas  
 crīnis, -is, *m.*, hair  
 crīnītus, -a, -um, long-haired; stella  
 crīnīta, comet  
 cristātus, -a, -um, crested  
 cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*, torture, suffering  
 cruciō, I, I crucify; torture  
 crūdēlis, -is, -e, cruel, heartless  
 crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.*, cruelty  
 crūdus, -a, -um, vigorous, hale, ro-  
 bust  
 cruentātus, -a, -um, blood-stained  
 cruentus, -a, -um, blood-stained,  
 bloody, gory  
 cruor, ōris, *m.*, blood; death, tra-  
 gedy  
 culex, -icis, *m.*, gnat  
 culmen, -minis, *n.*, top, peak, pin-  
 nacle  
 culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, sin  
 culpō, I, I blame, censure, criticize

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, in com-  
 pany with  
 cum, *conj.*, when; since, as; although  
 Cūmae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Cumae  
 cumba, -ae, *f.*, skiff, bark, craft  
 cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*, zeal, desire, eager-  
 ness; for, *with gen.*  
 cupidō, -inis, *f.*, desire, yearning;  
 Cupidō, the god of Love; Cupid,  
 son of Venus  
 cupidus, -a, -um, desirous of, fond  
 of, eager for, *with gen.*  
 cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, I long for, de-  
 sire, wish; am anxious  
 cūr, *interrog. adv.*, why  
 cūra, ae, *f.*, anxiety, care, attention;  
 curiosity  
 cūria, -ae, *f.*, senate-house  
 cūrō, I, I look after; care for, take  
 care of, *with acc.*  
 currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum, I run,  
 speed; speed over  
 currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot, car  
 cursus, -ūs, *m.*, running, race; course;  
 voyage, crossing; charge (of horses)  
 curvus, -a, -um, curved, curving  
 cuspis, -idis, *f.*, spear  
 custōdia, -ae, *f.*, a watching, care;  
 sentinel, guard  
 custōdiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, I guard  
 Cyclōps, Cyclōpis, *m.*, a Cyclops, one  
 of the Cyclopes, giants with one  
 eye, and that in the middle of the  
 forehead  
 Cyprus, -i, *f.*, Cyprus, an island in  
 the eastern Mediterranean Sea,  
 sacred to the goddess Venus  
 Cyzicum, -i, *n.*, Cyzicum

## D

Daedalus, -i, *m.*, Daedalus, the myth-  
 ical Athenian craftsman and father  
 of Icarus  
 damnō, I, I condemn  
 damnōsus, -a, -um, costly, ruinous  
 damnum, -i, *n.*, harm, loss, injury;  
 curse  
 Danaī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Danaans,  
 Greeks  
 (daps), dapis, *f.*, regularly used in  
*pl.*, a sacrificial feast; banquet;  
 food, viands; dainties

- Dardania, -ae, *f.*, Dardania, the Trojan land, Troy, *which was founded by Dardanus*
- Dardanius, -a, -um, Dardanian, *descended from Dardanus, the founder of Troy; Trojan*
- Daunias, (a Greek adj. form), *f.*, Daunia, *part of Apulia, named from Daunus, a mythical king of that country*
- Daunus, -ī, *m.*, Daunus, *a mythical king of Apulia*
- dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from, about, concerning; *multis dē causis*, for many reasons; *quā dē causā*, for what reason? why?
- dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess
- dēbellō, *l*, I war down, tame in war
- dēbeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus, I owe, ought, must, should
- dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, I retire, withdraw
- decem, *indecl. adj.*, ten
- December, -bris, *adj.*, of December
- dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, I decree, decide; *fight it out*
- dēcerpō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, I pluck off, pluck away, pull down
- dēcirtō, *l*, I fight to a finish, fight a decisive battle, fight it out; *struggle; proeliō dēcirtāre*, to fight a pitched battle
- dēcidō, -ere, -cidī, I fall down, fall
- decimus, -a, -um, tenth
- Decimus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus
- dēclāmātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, practice in public speaking, oratorical exercise, declamation; *a theme for declamation*
- dēclāmō, *l*, I practise public speaking, exercise in oratory, declaim
- dēclīnō, *l*, I turn aside
- dēcrēvī, *from dēcernō*
- dēcurrō, -ere, dēcucurrī, dēcursum, I run down, run; *have recourse to decus, -oris, n.*, ornament, adornment; *glory, honour; dignity*
- dēdeceō, -ēre, -uī, I disgrace
- dēdecus, -oris, *n.*, disgrace, infamy
- dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender; *dē dēditiōne*, to discuss surrender; *in dēditiōnem venīre*, to surrender
- dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, I surrender, give up; *sē dēdere*, to surrender, *intrans.*
- dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, I lead away, withdraw, remove; *escort; adapt*
- dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, revolt, desertion
- dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, I protect, defend
- dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, I disclose; bestow; carry down; deliver
- dēfessus, -a, -um, wearied, worn out, exhausted
- dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *intr.*, I give out, fail; revolt
- dēfiniō, īre, īvī, ītus, I explain, define, set limits to
- dēflagrō, *l*, I burn up, am consumed
- dēfleō, -ēre, -flēvī, -flētus, I weep over
- dēfluō, -ere, -flūxī, fluxus, I flow down, flow by
- dēfungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, I finish, have done with (*with abl.*)
- dehiscō, -ere, I open up, yawn
- deinde, *also dein, adv.*, next, then
- dēlectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, delight, pleasure
- dēlectō, *l*, I delight, charm, please
- dēlēctus, -ūs, *m.*, a choosing; levy, recruiting
- dēleō, -ēre, ēvī, -ētus, I destroy
- dēliberō, *l*, I weigh well, ponder, deliberate
- dēligō, *l*, tie, fasten; moor
- dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, I pick out, choose, select, appoint
- Dēlius, -a, -um, Delian, of Delos, *the birthplace of Apollo*
- Dēlphicus, -a, -um, Delphic, of Delphi, of Apollo, *the god of the oracle at Delphi*
- dēlubrum, -ī, *n.*, shrine, temple
- dēmānō, *l*, I flow down, trickle down, filter through
- dēmēns, (-entis), insane, mad, raving
- dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, I lessen, diminish, reduce
- dēmīssus, -a, -um, (*p.p.p. of dēmittō used as an adj.*), low
- dēmittō, -ere, dēmīsi, dēmīssus, I send down, let down; plunge; let fall (*tears*), weep; *mē dēmīttō*, I let myself down, descend

- dēmōnstrō, *l*, I show, demonstrate  
 dēmum, *adv.*, only; tum dēmum, only then, then and not till then, then at last  
 dēnārius, *-ī, m.*, a silver coin, containing originally 10 asses, afterwards 16  
 dēnique, *adv.*, finally, at last  
 dēns, *dentis, m.*, tooth  
 dēnsus, *-a, -um*, crowded, dense; dēnsissima lectica, a closely-packed crowd of litters  
 dēpēculor, *l*, I embezzle, plunder, rifle  
 dēpendeo, *-ēre*, I hang from, hang down, hang  
 dēpōnō, *-ere, -posuī, -positus*, I put down, put aside; memōriam dēpōnō, I forget, *with gen.*  
 dēprehendō, *-ere, -hendi, -hēnsus*, I catch, arrest  
 dēprōmō, *-ere, prōmpsī, -prōmptus*, I bring out, draw forth; fetch  
 dēscēsus, *-ūs, m.*, descent  
 dēscribō, *-ere, -scripsī, -scriptus*, I write down, trace  
 dēsērō, *-ere, -uī, -tus*, I desert  
 dēsiliō, *-ire, -siluī, -sultum*, I leap down, jump down  
 dēsistō, *-ere, dēstitī*, I cease, stop; from, *with infin.*  
 dēsperātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, despair, desperation  
 dēsperō, *l*, I despair, give up hope, (of, *dē with abl.*)  
 dēspiciō, *-ere, -spēxī, -spectus*, I look down; look down upon, despise, disparage  
 dēstinō, *l*, I set apart; foretold, foretell  
 dēsūm, *-esse, -fui*, I am lacking, fail, *with dat.*  
 dēsuper, *adv.*, from above, from its towering height  
 dēterreō, *-ēre, -uī, -itus*, I frighten off; deter, hinder, prevent  
 dētērrimus, *-a, -um, superl. adj.*, very bad  
 dētorqueō, *-ēre, dētorsi, dētortus*, I twist, turn aside  
 dētrahō, *-ere, -trāxī, -tractus*, I take away, remove, take off, withdraw; pull down, pluck  
 dētrimentum, *-ī, n.*, loss; harm, disaster  
 dēturbō, *l*, I hurl down  
 Deucaliōn, *-ōnis, m.*, Deucalion, son of Prometheus  
 deus, *-ī, m.*, god; *nom. pl.*, dī  
 dēvincō, *-ere, -vici, -victus*, I defeat utterly, beat down, conquer  
 dēvoveō, *-ēre, -vōvī, vōtus*, I curse  
 dexter, *-tra, -trum*, right (*hand*); dextra (*sc. manus*), right hand, hand  
 Diāna, *-ae, f.*, Diana, the goddess of hunting  
 dicō, *-ere, dixī, dictus*, I say, speak; appoint, name; sententiam dicō, I express an opinion  
 dictātor, *-ōris, m.*, dictator  
 dictitō, *l*, I say often, maintain  
 dictō, *l*, I dictate  
 dictum, *-ī, n.*, word, saying, utterance  
 didici, *from discō*  
 Dido, *-ōnis, f.*, Dido  
 diducō, *-ere, -dūxī, ductus*, I draw apart, split, sever, cleave, sunder  
 diēs, *diēi, m.*, day; in diēs, day by day, daily  
 differō, *ferre, distulī, dilātus*, I defer, postpone; differ, am different; scatter  
 difficilis, *-is, -e*, hard, difficult  
 difficultās, *-tātis, f.*, difficulty  
 diffidō, *-ere, diffisus sum*, I distrust; lack confidence  
 diffundō, *-ere, -fūdī, -fūsus*, I scatter, spread out  
 digitus, *-ī, m.*, a finger  
 dignitās, *-tātis, f.*, worth, honour, prestige, merit, dignity, authority  
 dignus, *-a, -um*, worthy, deserving (of, *with abl.*)  
 dilēctus, *-ūs, m.*, levy, recruiting drive  
 diligēns, (*gen. diligentis*), careful, cautious  
 diligentia, *-ae, f.*, diligence, care, caution  
 diligō, *-ere, -lēxī, -lēctus*, I love, cherish, esteem  
 dimidium, *-ī, n.*, a half  
 dimittō, *-ere, -misi, -missus*, I send away, let go, dismiss  
 dimoveō, *-ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus*, I move aside; divide; break up; rake aside



- dirigō, -ere, dirēxī, dirēctus**, I steer, direct, guide  
**diruō, -ere, -ruī, -rūtus**, I tear asunder, demolish  
**dirus -a, -um**, fearful, awful, dread; dreadful, relentless  
**discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**, I move from, go away, leave; forsake, desert, *with ā, ab, with abl.*  
**discessus, -ūs, m.**, departure  
**discipulus, -ī, m.**, pupil  
**discō, -ere, didicī**, I learn  
**discordia, -ae, f.**, discord, strife  
**discrimen, -minis, n.**, decisive moment, crisis, danger, risk  
**discumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum**, I lie down, recline at table  
**discursus, -ūs, m.**, a running about; distractions (*of a busy life*)  
**disertus, -a, -um**, eloquent; discerning  
**disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus**, I tear apart; raze, scatter far and wide, strew  
**dispensō, l**, I dispense, share; manage, eke out  
**dispergō, -ere, -si, -sum**, I scatter, break (*the enemy's ranks*); distribute  
**displiceō, ēre, -ui, -itum**, I displease, am displeasing  
**dispōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus**, I place at intervals, post at intervals, post, station here and there; distribute  
**disputātiō, -ōnis, f.**, argument, discussion, debate  
**dissensiō, -ōnis, f.**, disagreement, civil war  
**dissimilis, -is, -e**, unlike, dissimilar; to, *with dat.*  
**dissimulō, l**, I disguise, hide (*my feelings*)  
**dissolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus**, I pay, reimburse, destroy  
**distineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentus**, I keep apart, distract  
**distinguo, -ere, -nxi, -nctus**, I separate, divide; mark out, distinguish, adorn; portion out  
**distō, l**, I am distant, stand apart  
**distrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus**, I draw apart, separate, divide; disorganize; *pass.*, to become disordered  
**distribuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus**, I divide, distribute, assign  
**diū, adv.**, for a long time, long  
**dīva, -ae, f.**, goddess  
**divellō, -ere, divelli, divulsus**, I tear apart, tear asunder  
**diversus, -a, -um**, scattered, in disarray; different, opposite, facing in two different directions; to one side  
**dives, -itis, adj.**, rich, wealthy  
**Divicō, -ōnis, m.**, Divico, a *Helvetian chieftain*  
**dividō, -ere, divisi, divisus**, I divide  
**divinus, -a, -um**, sacred; godlike  
**divus, -ī, m.**, a god  
**dō, dare, dedi, datus**, I give, grant  
**doceō, -ere, docui, doctus**, I explain; teach  
**doctus, -a, -um**, taught, learned  
**doleō, -ēre**, I feel pain, suffer  
**dolō, l**, I cudgel, belabour  
**dolor, -ōris, m.**, grief, vexation, pain  
**dolus, -ī, m.**, wrong, fraud; **dolus malus**, criminal fraud  
**domicilium, -ī, n.**, house, residence, dwelling-place  
**dominātiō, -ōnis, f.**, absolute power, despotism  
**dominus, -ī, m.**, master, owner, lord; host  
**domus, -ūs, f.**, house, home; **domum**, homewards, home; **domi**, at home; **domō**, from home  
**dōnec, conj.**, until  
**dōnō, l**, I present (someone, *acc.*) with (something, *abl.*)  
**dōnum, -ī, n.**, gift  
**dormiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum**, I sleep  
**dubiē, adv.**, doubtfully; **haud dubiē**, undoubtedly, unquestionably  
**dubitō, l**, I hesitate, doubt, have doubts  
**dubius, -a, -um**, doubtful; uncertain  
**ducentī, -ae, -a**, two hundred  
**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus**, I lead, draw, bring, take; construct  
**dūdum, adv.**, but now, a little while ago, just now  
**dulcis, -is, -e**, sweet; tender  
**dum, conj.**, while, *with pres. indic.*  
**duo, duae, duo**, two  
**dux, ducis, m.**, leader, guide

**Dyrrachinus, -a, -um**, of Dyrrachium,  
a sea-coast town of Illyria, now  
Durazzo

## E

**ē**, *see* ex

**ēbrius, -a, -um**, drunk

**ebur, eboris, n.**, ivory; a scabbard  
(of ivory)

**ecce, interjection**, look! behold!

**edāx, (gen. edācis)**, devouring, cor-  
roding

**ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditus**, I give out;  
produce; cause; disclose

**ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus**, I lead  
out or forth

**efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus**, I carry  
forth, bring forth; hold up or out;  
display; raise up, extol; ēlātus,  
carried away, puffed up

**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**, I make,  
do; accomplish; render, produce;  
form; cause, bring about

**effodiō, -ere, effōdī, effusus**, I dig  
out, dig

**effugiō, -ere, -fūgī**, I flee from or  
away, escape; escape from, avoid

**effundō, -ere, effūdī, effusus**, I pour  
forth; shed (*tears*); let go, let fall;  
*pass.*, stream forth

**ēgēo, -ēre, ēguī**, I lack, am without,  
*with abl.*

**ego, mei**, I

**egomet**, an emphatic form of ego

**ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum**, I depart  
from, leave (*with ē, ex plus abl.*);  
disembark

**ēgregius, -a, -um**, outstanding, re-  
markable, peerless

**ēiciō, -ere, ēieci, ēiectus**, I throw out;  
**mē ēiciō**, I rush out

**ēiulatiō, -ōnis, f.**, a wailing; high-  
pitched voice

**ēlātus, -a, -um, p.p.p. of efferō**, lifted  
up, borne on high; elated

**ēlegāns, (gen. ēlegantis)**, tasteful,  
nice, delicate

**elephantus, -ī, m.**, elephant

**ēlūdō, -ere, -lūsi, -lūsus**, I escape;  
make fun of; cheat

**ēlūgeō, -ēre, -lūxī**, I have done  
mourning; I am in mourning for  
**ēmicō, -āre, -ui, -ātum**, I dart for-  
ward or forth, bound forth

**ēmīror, I**, I marvel at in surprise, I  
gaze at in wonder

**ēmittō, -ere, ēmisi, ēmissus**, I send  
out; let go, let slip

**emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus**, I buy

**ēmptor, -ōris, m.**, buyer, purchaser

**ēn, interjection**, lol see! there!

**enim, postpositive adv.**, for

**ēnītor, -ī, ēnisus or ēnixus sum**, I  
force a way out, struggle upwards,  
climb, ascend; exert myself

**ēnsis, -is, m.**, sword

**ēnumerō, I**, I enumerate, count up

**ēnūntiō, I**, I report, disclose

**eō, adv.**, there, to that place

**eō, ire, ii, itum**, I go

**Ephesus, -ī, m.**, Ephesus, a city in  
Asia Minor

**epulor, āri, -ātus sum**, I feast

**eques, equitis, m.**, cavalryman, troop-  
er; **equitēs, -um, m. pl.**, cavalry

**equester, -tris, -tre**, of cavalry, cav-  
alry

**equidem, adv.**, indeed, truly

**equitātus, -ūs, m.**, cavalry

**equis, -ī, m.**, horse

**ērectus, -a, -um**, high, elevated; noble

**ergā, prep. with acc.**, towards

**ergō, adv.**, therefore

**ērigō, -ere, ērēxī, ērēctus** I raise; cast  
up; spout up; **oculōs ērigō**, open  
my eyes

**ēripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus**, I snatch  
away, wrest, take away; rescue  
(*from danger*)

**ērogō, I**, I vote (*money*); pay from  
the public treasury

**errō, I**, I go the wrong way, lose my  
way, wander; make a mistake, err,  
am wrong

**error, -ōris, m.**, mistake; trickery,  
mischief

**ērudīō, -ire, -ivī, -itus**, I teach, in-  
struct in

**ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum**, I break  
out; charge out

**ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.**, sortie, attack

**essedārius, -ī m.**, war-charioteer

**essedum, -ī, n.**, war chariot

esto, *old sec. pers. sing. imper. of sum*  
et, *conj.*, and; et . . . et, both . . .

and; *adv.*, (= *etiam*) also, even  
etenim, or et + enim, for . . . you see,  
for naturally, for you know  
*etiam, adv.*, also further; even, still  
Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, Etruria

etsi, *conj.*, although  
Euboicus, -a, -um, Euboean, *con-*  
*nected with the island of Euboea*

Eurus, -i, *m.*, Eurus, the East wind  
ēvādō, -ere, ēvādī, ēvāsus, I escape  
ēveniō, -ire, ēvenī, ēventum, I come  
out, go out; turn out, result  
ēventus, -ūs, *m.*, event, issue, fate,  
result, outcome

ēvocātus, -i, *m.*, a re-enlisted veteran,  
reservist, recalled to join the col-  
ours

ēvocō, I, I call out, summon

ex (*usually ē before consonants*),  
*prep. with abl.*, from, out of; in  
accordance with, in consequence  
of; of direction, on

exāminō, I, I weigh in the balance,  
examine

exārdescō, -ere, exārsī, I blaze up

exaudiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, I hear clear-  
ly, hear distinctly, hear from a  
distance, listen to

excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessum, I move  
out of, leave, with *ē*, ex, with *abl.*

excellēs, (*gen. -entis*), excellent,  
striking, outstanding

excidō, -ere, excidī, excīsus, I hew  
out, quarry

excidō, -ere, -cidī, I fall out of

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, I take  
up; receive; await

excitō, I, I arouse; startle

exclāmō, I, I cry aloud, exclaim

excūdō, -ere, -cūdī, -cūsus, I beat out,  
mould

exemplum, -i *n.*, example

exeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, I go out, with-  
draw, leave (from, *ē*, ex with *abl.*)

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, I exercise,  
train; pursue, hound

exercitō, I, I train thoroughly; exer-  
citātus, experienced

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, I drive out  
or forth; finish, complete, perform;  
collect

exiguus, -a, -um, small, scanty

existimō, I, I think

exitus, -ūs, *m.*, way out, exit; end;  
outcome

exorior, -irī, exortus sum, I rise, arise  
exōsus, -a, -um, hating thoroughly;  
exōsus sum, I thoroughly hate, I  
abhor

expallēscō, -ere, expallui, I grow pale,  
turn pale

expavēscō, -ere, -pāvī, I am terrified;  
dread

expediō, -ire, -ivī -itus, I release,  
free

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, I drive  
out

expendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus, I  
weigh out, weigh; weigh (*the re-*  
*mains of*)

experior, -irī, -pertus sum, I experi-  
ence; test, try

expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, I fill  
out, fill up; fill; make up

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, scout, patrol  
explōrō, I, I reconnoitre, spy

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, I place  
on shore; *pass.*, I land, disembark

exprōmō, -ere, -prōmpsi, -prōmptus, I  
bring forth with effort; utter

expūgnō, I, I take by storm, capture  
exsertō, I, I thrust forth, dart forth

exsilium, -i *n.*, exile, banishment

existō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, I arise,  
emerge, come forth

expectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, expectation,  
longing, desire

expectō, I, I await, wait for

extinguō, -ere, -stinxi, -stinctus, I  
blot out; *pass.*, I perish

extruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctus, I load,  
heap up; build up

exsul, exsulis, *m.*, an exile

exsultō, I, I leap up; rejoice, run  
riot, indulge in (*with abl. of*  
*cause*); pound (*of the heart*)

exta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, entrails, inner  
organs

extemplō, *adv.*, at once

extimēscō, -ere, -timuī, I am greatly  
afraid of

extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside; beyond  
 extrēmus, -a, -um (*superl. of exterus*) outermost, uttermost, extreme  
 exuviae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, that which is stripped off, equipment, armour; spoils

## F

faber, -brī, *m.*, workman  
 Fabius, -ī, *m.*, Fabius, *the famous Roman Quintus Fabius Maximus Cunctator, who was dictator during part of the Second Punic War*  
 fabricō, *l*, *I* build, fashion  
 fabulōsus, -a, -um, fabulous, storied  
 facētia, -ārum, *f.*, pleasantry, wit, humour  
 faciēs, -ēī *f.*, figure, shape; face; appearance; sight  
 facile, *adv.*, easily, readily  
 facilis, -is, -e, easy  
 faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *I* do; make; build; finem faciō, *I* put an end to, finish, *with gen.*; proelium faciō, *I* fight a battle; *pass.*, fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done, take place, come to pass, happen result  
 factum, -ī, *n.*, deed, action  
 facultās, -tātis, *f.*, opportunity, ease  
 fāgus, -ī, *f.*, a beech-tree  
 fallāx, (*gen. fallācis*), deceitful, deceptive  
 fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, *I* deceive; elude; escape the notice of, am unseen by  
 falsus, -a, -um (*p.p.p. of fallō*), feigned, false, ill-founded, incorrect; counterfeit  
 fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, rumour, story; reputation, renown  
 famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation; fame  
 necātus, starved to death  
 familia, -ae, *f.*, family, household  
 familiāris, -is, -e, belonging to the family, private; *as a noun*, a personal friend  
 farrāgō, -inis, *f.*, mixed fodder, mash; medley, mixture, hodgepodge

fās, *indecl. n.*, right, divine law  
 fastigium, -ī, *n.*, roof-top  
 fātālis, -is, -e, destined, fated, fateful  
 fateor, -ērī, fassus sum, *I* admit, acknowledge, confess  
 fatigō, *l*, *I* tire, weary  
 fātum, -ī, *n.*, fate, destiny, *pl.*, the fates  
 Faunus, -ī, *m.*, Faunus, *an Italian rustic god, the Italian counterpart of the Greek god Pan*  
 faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *I* am well-disposed  
 favor, -ōris, *m.*, good-will, favour  
 fax, facis, *f.*, torch, firebrand  
 fefellī, *from* fallō  
 fēlix, (*gen., fēlicis*), fortunate  
 fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman, female  
 fera, -ae, *f.*, beast  
 ferē, *adv.*, almost; approximately, in general, generally speaking  
 fēriac, -ārum, *f. pl.*, holidays, festivals  
 feriō, -ire, *I* strike  
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *I* bear, carry, bring; endure; say; *pass.*, travel, hurry, speed; auxilium ferō, *I* bring, give, send help; *to, with dat.*  
 ferōciter, *adv.*, spiritedly  
 Ferōnia, -ae, *f.*, Feronia, *early Italian goddess of groves and fountains; patron goddess of freedmen*  
 ferōx (*gen. ferōcis*), spirited, hot-tempered, fierce  
 ferre, *from* ferō  
 ferreus, -a, -um, made of iron; hard, unfeeling; much-enduring  
 ferrūgineus, -a, -um, rust-coloured, murky, dusky  
 ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron; sword  
 fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired  
 festinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, haste  
 fēstus, -a, -um, festive, gay; in festal garb, in festive mood  
 fētus, -us, *m.*, birth; brood; fruit  
 fidēlis, -is, -e, loyal, faithful  
 fidēs, -ei, *f.*, loyalty, faith, good faith; vow, pledge; honour; reliability, credence, trustworthiness  
 fidus, -a, -um, trusty, sure  
 figō, -ere, fixī, fixus, *I* fix, fasten, attach



figūra, -ae, *f.*, shape, build  
 filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter  
 filiōla, -ae, *f.*, little daughter  
 filius, -i, *m.*, son  
 filum, -i, *n.*, thread; wick  
 findō, -ere, fidī, fissus, I split, divide  
 fingō, -ere, finxī, fictus, I form;  
   imagine, picture, suppose  
 finīō, -īre, -ivī -itus, I end, terminate  
 finis, -is, *m.*, end, limit; *in plur.*,  
   finēs, finium, *m.*, frontiers, terri-  
   tories, district; finem faciō, I put  
   an end to, *with gen.*  
 finitimus, -a, um, neighbouring, ad-  
   jacent, bordering; *masc. plur. as*  
   *noun*, neighbours  
 fiō, fierī, factus sum, I am made;  
   become; happen  
 firmō, I, I strengthen, steady  
 firmus, -a, -um, dependable, strong  
 fixus, -a, -um, fixed, settled  
 flagellum, -i, *n.*, lash, whip  
 flāgitium, -i, *n.*, disgrace, shame  
 flāgitō, I, I demand  
 flagrāns, (*gen. flagrantis*), blazing  
 Flaminīus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Quinctius  
   Flamininus, *consul in 198 B.C.*  
 Flāminius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Flaminius,  
   *consul in 217 B.C.*  
 flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame  
 flāvus, -a, -um, flame-coloured, gold-  
   en, yellow, auburn, blond; fair-  
   haired, flaxen-haired  
 flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexum, I turn,  
   bend, curve; guide, direct  
 fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus, I weep, weep  
   for, bewEEP  
 flētus, -ūs, *m.*, weeping, wailing; tears  
 flōreō, -ēre, -uī, I blossom, flourish,  
   am prosperous  
 flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower  
 fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave, billow  
 flūmen, -minis, *n.*, river  
 focus, -i, *m.*, hearth  
 foederātus, -a, -um, allied  
 foedus, -eris, *n.*, agreement, treaty  
 foedus, -a, -um, disgraceful, ghastly  
 folium, -i, *n.*, leaf  
 fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring, pure water  
 fore, fārī, fātus sum, I speak  
 fore, *fut. infin. of sum*  
 forēs, -um, *f. pl.*, doorway, gateway

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, shape, figure, physique;  
   beauty; appearance; sketch, dia-  
   gram  
 Formiānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants  
   of Formiae, *an ancient city of*  
   *Latium on the borders of Cam-*  
   *pania*  
 fōrmōsus, -a, -um, lovely, fair, hand-  
   some  
 formula, -ae, *f.*, form, rule; estab-  
   lished form, order of reference  
 fors, *adv.*, perhaps, perchance  
 fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps, perchance  
 forte, *adv.*, by chance  
 fortis, -is, -e, brave  
 fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, chance, good  
   fortune, success; situation, plight  
 fortunātus, -a, -um, fortunate, happy,  
   blessed  
 fossa, -ae, *f.*, trench, ditch  
 fossor, -ōris, *m.*, digger, delver, la-  
   bourer, peasant  
 frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, I smash,  
   break, wreck  
 frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother  
 fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, a loud noise; fre-  
   mitus secundus, a loud cheer  
 fremō, -ere, -uī, -itum, I roar, rage,  
   shriek  
 frendēns, *pres. part. only* (frendō,  
   -ere), gnashing one's teeth  
 frēnō, I, I bridle, check, control  
 frequēns, (*gen. -entis*), repeated, fre-  
   quent  
 frequentia, -ae, *f.*, a large gathering  
 fretum, -i, *n.*, strait; *pl.*, waters, sea  
 frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold  
 frivolus, -a, -um, trifling, worthless;  
   frivola, *n. pl.*, chattels, odds and  
   ends  
 frondeō, -ēre, I put forth leaves  
 frōns, frondis, *f.*, leaf, branches, gar-  
   land  
 frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead, front  
 fructus, -ūs, *m.*, produce, harvest; in-  
   come, yield  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um, of or pertain-  
   ing to grain; nāvis frūmentāria,  
   grain-ship, merchantman; rēs frū-  
   mentāria, supply of grain, provi-  
   sions  
 frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *in plur.*,  
   grain crops

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *with abl.*, I enjoy, find pleasure in  
 frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, vainly  
 frutex, -icis, *m.*, shrub, bush  
 fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, escape  
 fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, I flee, escape; fugientēs, -ium, *m. plur. of pres. part.*, those who flee, fugitives; *as trans. verb.*, I flee from, avoid  
 fugō, I, I put to flight, rout  
 fulciō, -īre, fulsī, fultus, I prop up, support; sustain, bolster  
 fulgur, -uris, *n.*, lightning, lightning-flash  
 fulmen, -inis, *n.*, lightning, flash of lightning, thunder-bolt  
 fulvus, -a, -um, yellow, tawny, gold-coloured  
 fūmō, I, I smoke; steam  
 fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke, steam; firing, fire  
 fūnāle, -is, *n.*, torch, *made of rope dipped in wax or resin*  
 funda, -ae, *f.*, sling  
 fundāmentum, -ī, *n.*, foundation  
 funditor, -ōris, *m.*, a slinger, soldier *armed with a sling* (funda)  
 fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, I pour forth; rout, defeat  
 fundō, I, I found, lay foundations of  
 fundus, -ī, *m.*, farm, estate  
 fūnestus, -a, -um, deadly; dismal  
 funis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable, moorings  
 fūnus, -eris, *n.*, death, *esp. violent death*  
 furiōsus, -a, -um, mad, raging  
 furō, -ere, -uī, I rage, am mad  
 furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy  
 fūrtim, *adv.*, stealthily  
 fūrtum, -ī, *n.*, stealth; guilt; theft  
 fustis, -is, *m.*, stick, cudgel

## G

Gaetulus, -a, -um, Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli, *a people of north-western Africa*  
 Gāius, Gāīi, *m.*, Gaius, *a Roman name*  
 Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic, of the Gauls  
 gallina, -ae, *f.*, hen  
 gallus, -ī, *m.*, rooster, cock  
 Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul  
 garrulus, -a, -um, talkative, prattling  
 gaudeō, -ēre, gāvisus sum, I rejoice  
 gaudium, -ī, *n.*, joy, gladness, delight  
 gelidus, -a, -um, icy, very cold, frosty; cool  
 geminus, -a, -um, twin, double  
 gemitus, -ūs, *m.*, sigh, groan  
 genae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the cheeks  
 generō, I, I beget, breed  
 generōsus, -a, -um, noble, well-born  
 genitor, -ōris, *m.*, sire, father  
 gēns, -tis, *f.*, tribe, clan, nation  
 genus, -eris, *n.*, race, family; kind, sort, class  
 Germania, -ae, *f.*, Germany  
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, I conduct, manage, achieve; wear, carry, have; arma gerō, I bear arms; bellum gerō, I wage, conduct a war; rem gerō, I take action, act, engage (*the enemy*)  
 gestiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, I am joyful, delighted; wish passionately, thirst; am eager, long  
 gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword  
 glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod of earth; land, soil  
 glomerō, I, I muster, mass  
 glōria, -ae, *f.*, fame, glory, renown  
 Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, Gnaeus  
 gracilis, -is, -e, delicate, slender  
 gradior, -ī, gressus sum, I walk, step  
 gradus, -ūs, *m.*, step, grade, degree; step, stair  
 Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece  
 Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; *as a noun*, Graecus, -ī, *m.*, a Greek  
 Grāius, -a, -um, Greek; *as a noun*, Grāius, -ī, *m.*, a Greek  
 grātia, -ae, *f.*, favour, influence; gratitude; good-will; grātiam referō, I repay a favour, show gratitude;  
 grātiās agō, I thank; grātiā, *with preceding gen.*, for the sake of  
 grātiōsus, -a, -um, in favour, beloved  
 grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, rejoicing, thanksgiving; congratulations  
 grātulor, I, I congratulate (*with dat.*)

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing; welcome  
 gravātē, *adv.*, reluctantly, grudgingly  
 gravidus, -a, -um, loaded, full of, stuffed  
 gravis, -is, -e, heavy, serious, severe  
 gravitās, -tātis, *f.*, weight, seriousness  
 gravō, *l*, I weigh down, overburden;  
*p.p.p.*, gravātus, heavy  
 gressus, -ūs, *m.*, step, course, way  
 grex, gregis, *m.*, flock, swarm; crowd, throng  
 gubernāculum, -ī, *n.*, helm; rudder  
 gurgēs, -itis, *m.*, eddy  
 gustō, *l*, I taste, eat  
 guttur, -uris, *n.*, throat, neck  
 Gyās, -ae, *m.*, Gyas, *one of Aeneas' band of Trojan refugees*

## H

habēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, I have, possess; keep; hold; regard, consider  
 habitō *l*, I live, dwell; *pass.*, be inhabited, be lived in  
 haedus, -ī, *m.*, young goat, kid  
 Haemonia, -ae, *f.*, *poetic name for Thessaly*  
 haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesum, I stick, cling, lodge  
 Hamilcar, -aris, *m.*, Hamilcar, *father of Hannibal*  
 Hannibal, -balis, *m.*, Hannibal  
 harēna, -ae, *f.*, sand; soil, ground  
 harūspex, -icis, *m.*, soothsayer, diviner  
 Hasdrubal, -balis, *m.*, Hasdrubal,  
 (1) *the son-in-law of Hamilcar;*  
 (2) *a son of Hamilcar, and Hannibal's brother*  
 hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear  
 haud, *adv.* (*usually modifying only adverbs or adjs.*), not at all, not  
 haudquāquam, *adv.*, by no means, not at all  
 hauriō, -ire, hausī, haustus, I drain, draw out; empty, exhaust; swallow up, devour  
 haustus, -ūs, *m.*, a drink, draught;  
 haustūs accipiō, I drink deep  
 Hector, -oris, *m.*, Hector  
 hei, *interjection*, ah! alas! woe! hei mihi, ah me! woe is me!

Helicē, -ēs (*a Greek decln.*), *f.*, Helice, the Great Bear, a constellation in the northern sky  
 herbōsus, -a, -um, grassy  
 Herculēs, -is, *m.*, Hercules  
 herī, *adv.*, yesterday  
 hērōs, -ōis, *m.*, hero, really meaning someone who has a deity as one of his parents; god-like man, brave or illustrious man  
 hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday, yesterday's  
 heu, *interjection*, alas! ah me!  
 hiātus, -ūs, *m.*, an opening, cleft; gaping hole  
 Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland  
 Hibērus, -ī, *m.*, the Ebro, a Spanish river  
 hīc, haec, hōc, this; he; the following  
 hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; at this point, at this moment  
 hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter  
 hinc, *adv.*, from here, from this place  
 Hippomenēs, -is, *m.*, Hippomenes  
 Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain  
 Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish; *as a noun*, Hispānus, -ī, *m.*, a Spaniard  
 hodiē, *adv.*, today  
 hodiernus, -a, -um, to-day's  
 homō, -inis, *m.*, man, person; *in pl.*, people, population, inhabitants  
 honestus, -a, -um, esteemed, honoured, respected, respectable; ut potes honestissimē, as creditably as you can  
 honor, -ōris, *m.*, honour; political office; prize, award; summus honor, the consul  
 hora, -ae, *f.*, hour; season  
 horrendus, -a, -um, dreadful, frightful  
 horrēscō, -ere, horruī, I shudder at, dread  
 horridus, -a, -um, rough, uncouth, savage  
 (hortātus), -ūs, *m.*, encouragement, exhortation, urging  
 hortor, *l*, I encourage, urge  
 hortulus, -ī, *m.*, a little garden; hortulī, -ōrum, garden-grounds, a small estate

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden; grounds (*in plur.*)  
 hospes, -itis, *m.*, stranger; guest; host  
 hospita, -ae, *f.*, hostess  
 hostia, -ae, *f.*, an animal offered in sacrifice, an animal offering  
 hostilis, -is, -e, of an enemy, hostile, warlike  
 hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy  
 hūc, *adv.*, here, to this place  
 hūmānus, -a, -um, human, civilized, man's; polite  
 humerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder  
 humilis, -is, -e, low; lowly, humble  
 humus, -ī, *f.*, the ground, earth;  
 humi, *loc.*, on the ground  
 Hyaspēs, -is, *m.*, Hydaspes, a river of India

## I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, I lie, lie prostrate, am prostrate  
 iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, I throw, hurl  
 iactō, I, I toss, buffet  
 iactus, -ūs, *m.*, throwing, casting  
 iaculum, -ī, *n.*, javelin, dart  
 iam, *adv.*, now, already; *with negatives*, any more, longer  
 iānuā, -ae, *f.*, door; puer ab iānuā, the porter  
 ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place; at that point, at that moment  
 Icarus, -ī, *m.*, Icarus, son of Dædalus  
 icō, -ere, icī, ictus, I strike; foedus  
 icō, I make a treaty  
 idcirco, *adv.*, therefore, for that reason  
 idem, eadem, idem, the same; also; idem . . . qui, the same . . . as  
 identidem, *adv.*, again and again  
 idōneus, -a, -um, fit, capable, appropriate  
 Idūs, Iduum, *f.*, *pl.*, the Ides, the middle of the month (one of the three days to which dates were reckoned in the Roman calendar; it was the fifteenth day of March, May, July, October, but the thirteenth day of every other month)  
 igitur, *postpositive adv.*, therefore, accordingly  
 ignis, -is, *m.*, fire  
 ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace  
 ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, I forgive, pardon, *with dat.*  
 ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, unfamiliar  
 ilex, -icis, *f.*, holm-oak  
 ilia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, bowels  
 Ilium, -ī, *n.*, Ilium, Troy  
 illāc, *adv.*, by that way, that way  
 ille, illa, illud, that; he, she, it  
 illic, *adv.*, in that place, there  
 imbēcillus, -a, -um, weak, feeble  
 imber, -bris, *m.*, rain, storm  
 immānis, -is, -e, huge, vast, enormous  
 immemor, (*gen. -oris*), unthinking, unmindful, heedless  
 immēsus, -a, -um, endless, tremendous  
 immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, I send against (*the foe*); mē immittō, I hurl myself  
 immō, *adv.*, on the contrary, no, instead  
 immolō, I, I sacrifice  
 immortalis, -is, -e, undying, immortal; dī immortalēs, the immortal gods  
 immūnis, -is, -e, free from obligation; *with gen. or abl.*, free from, exempt from  
 impār (*gen., imparis*), of uneven length, uneven, unequal  
 impediō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, I hinder, hamper, prevent; encumber; impedītus, hindered by baggage, heavily loaded; inconvenient; hard to climb, steep (*of river-banks, valleys, etc.*)  
 impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, I strike, smite, hit; push, shove  
 imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander  
 imperītus, -a, -um, inexperienced, unskilled; in, *with gen.*  
 imperium, -ī, *n.*, control, authority, rule; empire  
 imperō, I, I give orders, rule, command, govern. *with dat.*; demand something (*acc.*) from someone (*dat.*)  
 impetrō, I, I bring to pass, achieve, gain my request



- impetus, -ūs, *m.*, rush, attack, charge;  
 impetum faciō *in with acc.*, I  
 make an attack on, charge  
 impius, -a, -um, impious, wicked  
 implacātus, -a, -um, unsatisfied, never  
 satisfied; remorseless  
 impleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, I fill  
 implicō, -āre, -ui, -itus, I hold fast,  
 entwine; *mē* implicō, I cling to  
*with dat.*  
 impōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, I place  
 on, impose; put *or* give to *with*  
*dat.*  
 importō, I, I convey, import  
 importūnus, -a, -um, (*lit.*, without a  
 harbour) unsuitable; unrelenting,  
 unfeeling  
 impotēns, (*gen.* impotentis), wild, un-  
 disciplined  
 imprecor, I, I pray for, invoke  
 improbus, -a, -um, base, shameless,  
 wicked  
 imprōvidus, -a, -um, unforeseeing,  
 without foresight  
 imprōvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly, un-  
 awares  
 imprūdentia, -ae, *f.*, want of fore-  
 sight, want of vigilance, inadvert-  
 ence; inattention  
 impulī, *from* impellō  
 impūnē, *adv.*, without punishment,  
 with impunity  
 imus, -a, -um, lowest  
 in, *prep.* (1) *with abl.* (*involving no*  
*motion*), in, on, upon, at; among,  
 in the country of; (2) *with acc.*  
 (*involving motion*), into, to,  
 against, upon  
 incēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, I move  
 onward, approach  
 incendium, -i, *n.*, fire  
 incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, I burn,  
 set on fire  
 incertus, -a, -um, uncertain, indefinite  
 incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, I begin  
 incitō, I, I spur on; *rēmīs* incitō, I  
 row quickly  
 inclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, I shut,  
 imprison, enclose  
 incōgnitus, -a, -um, unknown  
 incolā, -ae, *m.*, inhabitant  
 incolō, -ere, -ui, I live, dwell  
 incolumis, -is, -e, unharmed, in safety,  
 without loss  
 incommodum, -i, *n.*, injury, loss; mis-  
 hap, distress; penalty; inconveni-  
 ence, misfortune  
 incredibilis, -is, -e, incredible, un-  
 believable, beyond belief; extra-  
 ordinary  
 increpō, -āre, -ui, -itum, I bluster,  
 shout as a taunt; upbraid, re-  
 proach  
 incubō, -āre, -cubui, -cubitus, I lie  
 upon, brood over  
 incultus, -a, -um, unkempt, un-  
 trimmed  
 incumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, I  
 press against, fall on, *with dat.*;  
 swoop down on; exert myself, make  
 a spurt  
 incūs, -ūdis, *f.*, anvil  
 incutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussus, I strike  
*or* dash against; strike into; rouse  
*or* produce (*in, dat.*)  
 inde, *adv.*, from there, from that  
 place *or* country; *of time*, next,  
 then (*see* deinde)  
 indicō, I, I show  
 indicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictus, I proclaim;  
 bellum, indicō, I declare war on,  
*with dat.*  
 indictus, -a, -um, unspoken, untried,  
 unheard; *indictā causā*, without a  
 trial, without a hearing  
 indigena, -ae, *m.*, native, one born  
 in the district  
 indignor, I, I complain, am wrath-  
 ful, chafe  
 indignus, -a, -um, unworthy; shame-  
 ful  
 indoctus, -a, -um, untaught, unin-  
 formed  
 indolēscō, -ere, -ui, I feel pain, am  
 grieved, regret  
 indūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, I lead  
 on *or* into  
 induō, -ere, -dui, -dūtus, I put on,  
 don; wreath  
 industria, -ae, *f.*, industry, zeal  
 Indutiomarus, -i, *m.*, Indutiomarus,  
 a Gallic chief  
 ineō, -ire, -ii, -itus, I go into, enter  
 ineptus, -a, -um, absurd, silly

inermis, -is, -e, unarmed; out of ammunition

iners, (*gen.* inertis), without skill, awkward; worthless

inexsuperābilis, -is, -e, insurmountable, unconquerable

infectus, -a, -um, not made, unaccomplished

infēlix (*gen.* -fēlicis), unfortunate

inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (*or* illātus), I bring in, against; inflict; bellum inferō, I make war upon, *with dat.*

inferus, -a, -um, below, low

infēstus, -a, -um, hostile, threatening; levelled, at the ready

inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, I dye, stain

infimus, -a, -um, lowest

infindō, -ere, -fidī, -fissus, I cut, cleave

infinitus, -a, -um, endless, unlimited, countless

infōrmis, -is, -e, unshapely, unlovely, hideous

ingemō, -ere, -uī, I groan

ingenium, -ī, *n.*, nature, natural disposition; ability

ingēns, (*gen.* -gentis), huge

ingerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestus, I heap upon, shower upon

ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum, I enter, enter upon

ingruō, -ere, I assault in force, break upon

inhospitālis, -is, -e, inhospitable, cheerless

inhūmānus, -a, -um, inhuman, cruel

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I cast *or* hurl at *or* against; throw into, instil in; *with dat.*

inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile; *as a noun*, inimicus, -ī, *m.*, an enemy (*usually a personal enemy as opposed to a national enemy*, hostis)

iniquus, -a, -um, uneven; unfavourable; unfair; dishonest; unfriendly, unkind; dangerous

initium, -ī, *n.*, beginning, start

iniūria, -ae, *f.*, wrong, wrong-doing, outrage, insult

iniūssū (*in*, not, and iūssū,) *only abl. in use*, without orders, without authority

innascor, -ī, -nātus sum, I am born, implanted in

innumerābilis, -is, -e, countless, numberless; innumerābilēs, pecūniae, countless sums of money

innūptus, -a, -um, unwedded, unmarried

inopia, -ae, *f.*, scarcity, want

inopportūnus, -a, -um, unsuitable, inopportune

inquilinus, -ī, *m.*, tenant, lodger

inquit, *defective verb*, he, she says; inquit, they say

insānia, -ae, *f.*, madness, frenzy, folly

insciēns, (*gen.* -entis), not knowing, unaware

insepultus, -a, -um, unburied

insequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, I follow, follow up, follow immediately, pursue

inserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus, I put in, put on (*board*)

insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, ambush, stratagem

insignis, -is, -e, notable; insigne, -is, *n.*, badge, symbol, insignia of office, distinguishing mark

insiliō, -ire, -siluī, -sultum, I leap into *or* onto

insinuō, I, I wind, thrust in; mē insinuō, I work my way in

insistō, -ere, -stitī, I stand on; firmē insistō, I get a firm footing

insolēns (*gen.* insolentis), unaccustomed to, unfamiliar with; excessive, overweening

inspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, I look into, spy into, scan, inspect

inspirō, I, I breathe in, inspire in

instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, I establish, organize; instruct; institūtum, -ī, *n.*, something established, habit, practice, policy, plan, custom; ordinance, decree (*of a praetor*)

instō, -āre, -stitī, I am at hand, I am near; threaten; press on, press forward; press an advantage; press upon, *with dat.*

instrūmentum, -ī, *n.*, tool, equipment

- instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, I draw up, arrange; fit out, equip; prepare, furnish
- insuēfactus, -a, -um, trained to it, accustomed to it
- insula, -ae, f., island
- insum, -esse, -fuī, be in, be inherent in
- insurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus, I rise up
- integer, -gra, grum, untouched, entire, whole; upright, honest, honourable, innocent; fresh, unwearied
- intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, I understand, realize; am aware
- intemptātus, -a, -um, untried
- intentō, I, I aim (*threateningly*); threaten
- intentus, -a, -um, outstretched (to); intent (on), preoccupied (with), *with dat.*
- inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among; inter sē, one another, to or with one another
- interclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, I cut off, intercept
- interdum, *adv.*, sometimes
- intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime
- intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, I die, perish, am killed
- interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, I kill, slay, put to death
- intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I place or put between, scatter among, place at intervals; interiectus, intermingled
- interim, *adv.*, meanwhile
- interior, -ior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, inner, on the inside; interiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*, inland peoples
- intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, I leave off for a time. interrupt, suspend, leave an interval; spatiō parvō temporis intermissō, after a short interval of time
- internecīnus, -a, -um, destructive; internecīnum bellum, a war of extermination
- interpellātor, -ōris, *m.*, interrupter, disturber
- interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, I interrupt, break down, separate, break apart
- intersum, -esse, -fuī, I am between, intervene; am present at, participate in
- intervāllum, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance
- intonō, -āre, -uī, -ātum, I thunder
- intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside
- intrō, I, I go into, enter
- intus, *adv.*, inside, within
- inūsītātus, -a, -um, unfamiliar, strange
- inūtilis, -is, -e, useless, pointless; not expedient; harmful
- invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, I attack; upbraid, chide
- inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, I come upon, find, discover
- invenustus, -a, -um, without charm, unattractive
- invertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, I turn upside down, upturn
- invictus, -a, -um, unconquered, invincible
- invidēō, -ere, -vidī, -visum, I envy, am jealous of, begrudge, *with dat.*
- invidia, -ae, f., envy, jealousy; unpopularity
- invisus, -a, -um, hated, detested, odious, hateful
- invītō, I, I invite, entertain
- invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, reluctant
- invius, -a, -um, without a path, impassable, insuperable
- involvō, -ere, -vī, -volūtus, I wrap, surround; involve
- iocus, -ī, *m.*, jest, joke
- Ionius, -a, -um, Ionian; Ionius sinus, the Ionian Gulf, a name for the lower part of the Adriatic Sea
- ipse, -a, -um, himself, he himself, itself, *etc.*; very, even
- ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath
- irātus, -a, -um, angry; at, *with dat.*
- is, ea, id, that; he, she, it, they; *with rel.*, the; such; is quī, he who; ei quī, those who; id quod, that which, what

*iste*, -a, -ud, *pron.* associated with second person and with opponents, that, these, those of which you speak; the defendant, the accused; your client

*istic*, *adv.*, in that place

*istūc*, in that direction, to that subject  
*ita*, *adv.*, thus, so; yes (*in answers*)

*Italia*, -ae, *f.*, Italy

*Italus*, -a, -um, Italian; Latin

*itaque*, *adv.*, therefore, so, accordingly

*item*, *adv.*, likewise, also

*iter*, *itineris*, *n.*, march, route, journey; *iter facere*, to march; in *itinere*, on the march; *māgnis itineribus*, by forced marches

*iterum*, *adv.*, a second time, again

*Ithaca*, -ae, *f.*, Ithaca, the island of which Ulysses was king

*Ithacus*, -i, *m.*, Ithacan, an inhabitant of Ithaca, *esp.*, Ulysses

*iubeō*, -ere, *iussi*, *iūssus*, I order, bid, command, direct

*iūcundus*, -a, -um, pleasant, agreeable

*iūdex*, -icis, *m.*, judge, juror

*iūdicium*, -i, *m.*, trial, decision, judgment, opinion

*iūdicō*, I, I judge, adjudge; declare

*iugum*, -i, *n.*, yoke; mountain ridge, mountain range; summit, crest

*Iūlius*, -a, -um, Julian, of the Julians; *pl. noun*, the Julians

*Iūlius*, -i, *m.*, Julius, a Roman family name

*Iūlus* (*trisyllabic*), -i, *m.*, Iulus, son of Aeneas

*iūmentum*, I, *n.*, baggage - animal, beast of burden

*iungō*, -ere, *iūnxī*, *iūctus*, I join, unite

*Iūnō*, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno

*Iuppiter*, *Iovis*, *m.*, Jupiter; air, sky

*iūrō*, I, I swear, take an oath

*iūs*, *iūris*, *n.*, legal right, law; privilege; authority; *iūs gentium*, law of nations, international law; in *iūs*

*īre*, to go to law, have a case tried; *iūra commūnia*, the legal rights which are common to all mankind

*iūsiūrandum*, *iūrisiūrandī*, *n.*, oath

*iūstitia*, -ae, *f.*, justice, fairness

*iūssū*, *abl.* of defective noun *iūssus*, -ūs, by order

*iūstus*, -a, -um, lawful, regular, in accordance with (international) law

*iūvenālis*, -is, -e, youthful

*iūvenāliter*, *adv.*, in a youthful manner, with all the strength of youth

*iūvencus*, -i, *m.*, a bullock, young ox

*iūvenis*, -is, *m.*, young man

*iuvō*, -āre, *iūvī*, *iūtus*, I help, assist

## L

*L.*, abbreviation for *Lūcius*

*Labiēnus*, -i, *m.*, a Roman cognomen, *esp.*, Titus Atius Labienus, Caesar's chief general in Gaul

*lābor*, -i, *lāpsus sum*, I slip, fall, fall down; glide

*labor*, *labōris*, *m.*, toil, work; hardship

*labōrō*, I, I am in distress, toil

*lābrum*, -i, *n.*, basin, bath-tub

*lac*, *lactis*, *n.*, milk

*lacerna*, -ae, *f.*, cloak, worn over the toga

*lacertus*, -i, *m.*, the arm

*laccessō*, -ere, *laccessivī*, *laccessitus*, I harry, worry, harass, provoke

*lacrima*, -ae, *f.*, tear

*lacus*, -ūs, *m.*, lake

*laetitia*, -ae, *f.*, joy

*laetus*, -a, -um, glad, happy, joyful

*laevus*, -a, -um, left, on the left side

*lambō*, -ere, lick; flow by, wash

*lāmentātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, lamentation

*lāmīna*, -ae, *f.*, thin layer, leaf

*languidus*, -a, -um, faint, weak; dull, sluggish

*laniō*, I, I tear, rend

*Lāocoōn*, -ontis, *m.*, Laocoön, priest of Neptune and son of Priam

*lāpsus*, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *lābor*, having fallen or stumbled

*largus*, -a, -um, copious, abundant

*Laris(s)a*, -ae, *f.*, a town in Thessaly, on the Peneus river

*lascīvus*, -a, -um, wanton, playful

*lassus*, -a, -um, tired, wearied, exhausted

*latebra*, -ae, *f.*, hiding-place, recess



lateō, -ēre, -uī, I lie hidden, am hidden, lurk  
 Latinus, -a, -um, Latin  
 Latium, -ī, *n.*, Latium  
 lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide, extensive  
 latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank; ā latere, on the flank; latus apertum, exposed flank  
 laudō, I, I praise  
 laurus, -ūs, *f.*, laurel, laurel tree, laurel wreath  
 laus, laudis, *f.*, praise; glory, honour, credit, renown, fame; merit  
 Lavinus, -a, -um, Lavinian  
 lavō, -āre, lāvī, lavātus, I wash, bathe  
 laxō, I, I undo, free  
 lea, -ae, *f.*, lioness  
 leaena, -ae, *f.*, lioness  
 lectica, -ae, *f.*, litter  
 lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, envoy, ambassador; officer next in rank to the imperātor  
 legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion  
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, I gather; choose; read  
 Lēnaeus, -a, -um, Lenaeus, Bacchic, epithet of Bacchus, god of wine  
 lēniō, -ire, -ivī (or—ī), -itus, I soothe, mitigate  
 lēnis, -is, -e, gentle, mild, kindly; merciful; soft, easy, calm  
 Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, Lentulus, a Roman name  
 leō, leōnis, *m.*, lion  
 lepōs, -ōris, *m.*, wit, humour  
 lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare  
 lētum, -ī, *n.*, death, destruction  
 levis, -is, -e, light, slight, trifling; shadowy, unsubstantial; levis armātūra, light infantry  
 levō, I, I lift up, raise aloft; lighten, relieve  
 lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law  
 libellus, -ī, *m.*, notebook, note, memorandum; little book, a volume (of satires)  
 libenter, *adv.*, gladly, with pleasure  
 liber, -era, -erum, free; as a noun, liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children  
 Liber, -erī, *m.*, Bacchus, the god of wine (for Liberator, the Emancipator)

liber, -brī, *m.*, book  
 liberāliter, *adv.*, as befits a free man, courteously  
 liberō, I, I set free, free, release  
 libertās, -tātis, *f.*, freedom  
 libet, -ēre, libuit and libitum est, it is pleasing  
 libidinōsus, -a, -um, passionate, wilful, licentious, lustful, wanton  
 Libitina, -ae, *f.*, Libitina, goddess of funeral rites  
 libō, I, I skim over  
 libra, -ae, *f.*, pound; *plur.*, scales  
 librārius, -ī, *m.*, scribe, secretary  
 libro, I, I poise, balance  
 Liburnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Liburnians, a maritime Illyrian people on the Adriatic  
 Libycus, -a, -um, of Libya, Libyan  
 licet, -ēre, licuit, it is allowed or permitted; one may  
 Licinius, -ī, *m.*, Licinius, Lucius Licinius Murena, brother-in-law of Maecenas, Horace's literary patron. He was later executed for conspiring against Augustus  
 lictor, -ōris, *m.*, a lictor, an official bodyguard who walked before a magistrate  
 lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood; a wooden thing  
 ligō, I, I harness, hitch; tie  
 Ligurēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Ligurians, a people living on the west coast of north Italy  
 limen, -minis, *n.*, threshold; barrier; starting-point of a race.  
 limes, -itis, *m.*, path, road, course  
 lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language  
 linquō, -ere, liqui, I leave behind, leave, abandon  
 linter, -tris, *f.*, boat  
 linteum, -ī, *n.*, a linen cloth; napkin  
 lippitūdō, -inis, *f.*, inflammation of the eyes  
 liquēns, *pres. part.* of liquēo, clear  
 liquidus, -a, -um, liquid; clear; smoothly flowing  
 littera, -ae, *f.*, letter (of the alphabet); in *plur.*, letter, letters, despatch  
 litus, -oris, *n.*, shore  
 locō, I, I place, set; lay (foundations)

locuplēs, -plētis, rich, wealthy  
 locus, -ī, *m.*, place, spot, position,  
 ground, situation; *in plur.*, loca,  
 ōrum, *n.*, region, district  
 longē, *adv.*, far; **by far**  
 longinquus, -a, -um, long, long-con-  
 tinued, protracted, prolonged; dis-  
 tant, remote  
 longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, length  
 longus, -a, -um, long; nāvis longa,  
 a warship  
 Longus, -ī, *m.*, Tiberius Sempronius  
 Longus, *consul in 218 B.C.*  
 loquāx, (*gen.* loquācis), babbling,  
 prattling  
 loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, I speak, say  
 lūbricus, -a, -um, slippery  
 lūcidus, -a, -um, bright, blazing  
 Lūcius, ī, *m.*, Lucius  
 lūctor, I, I struggle, wrestle  
 lūctus, -ūs, *m.*, grief  
 lūculentē, *adv.*, splendidly, well,  
 neatly  
 lūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, I play, sport,  
 amuse myself  
 lūdus, -ī, *m.*, school; sport, game  
 lūgeo, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, I mourn,  
 lament  
 lumbus, -ī, *m.*, loin; *pl.*, hind-quarters  
 lūmen, -minis, *n.*, light; eye  
 lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon  
 luō, -ere, luī, I wash away; atone for,  
 pay  
 lupus, -ī, *m.*, wolf  
 luscus, -a, -um, one-eyed  
 lūteus, -a, -um, yellow, greenish-yel-  
 low  
 lux, lūcis, *f.*, light, dawn; primā  
 lūce, at daybreak, at dawn  
 lymp̄ha, -ae, *f.*, water  
 lymphātus, -a, -um, crazed, frantic,  
 unbalanced

## M

*M.*, abbreviation for Marcus  
 Macedonēs, -um, *m.*, *pl.*, the Mace-  
 donians  
 Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, Macedonia  
 māchina -ae, *f.*, machine, engine of  
 war

mactō, I, I magnify; sacrifice  
 madefiō, -fierī, -factus sum, become  
 wet  
 madescō, -ere, maduī, I become wet  
 or moist  
 madidus, -a, -um, soaked, drenched  
 maeror, -ōris, *m.*, grief, sorrow  
 maestus, -a, -um, sad, mournful;  
*superl.*, in deepest grief  
 māgālia, -ium, *n. pl.*, huts  
 magis, *comp. adv.* (*see* māgnopere),  
 more greatly, more  
 magister, -trī, *m.*, teacher; magister  
 equitum, master of the horse, com-  
 mander of cavalry, *title of dic-  
 tator's second in command*  
 magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate,  
 magistracy, office  
 māgnanimus, -a, -um, great-souled,  
 stout-hearted  
 māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, greatness, ex-  
 tent, size  
 māgnopere, *adv.*, (*magis*, māximē),  
 greatly, very, strongly, earnestly  
 māgnus, -a, -um, (māior, māximus),  
 great, large; loud; serious, exten-  
 sive  
 māior, -or, -us, *comp. of māgnus*,  
 larger, older; *as a noun*, māiōrēs,  
 -um, *m. pl.*, ancestors, forefathers  
 male, *adv.*, (pēius, pessimē), badly,  
 ill  
 malitiōsus, -a, -um, wicked, crafty,  
 malicious  
 mālō, mälle, mālui, I wish rather,  
 prefer  
 malus, -a, -um, bad, evil; *as a noun*,  
 malum, -ī, *n.*, evil, misfortune  
 mālus, -ī, *f.*, apple tree, apple  
 mamilla, -ae, *f.*, breast  
 mandātum, -ī, *n.*, order, instruction  
 mandō, I, I put in hand, entrust,  
 commit; enjoin, order, command,  
 authorize  
 māne, *adv.*, early in the morning  
 maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, I re-  
 main, stay  
 Manlius, -ī, *m.*, Manlius, a Roman  
 name  
 manūmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, I re-  
 lease, set at liberty (*of slaves*)  
 manus, -ūs, *f.*, band, force; hand;  
 handwriting

- Marcellus, *i, m.*, Marcellus, a Roman name  
 Marcus, *-i, m.*, Marcus, a Roman name  
 mare, maris, *n.*, sea  
 Mareōticus, *-a, -um*, of Mareota, a lake in lower Egypt; Egyptian  
 marinus, *-a, -um*, of the sea, born of the sea, sea-born  
 maritimus, *-a, -um*, on the coast, maritime  
 maritus, *-i, m.*, a married man, husband  
 Marius, *-i, m.*, Marius, a Roman general who converted the old citizen army into a professional army, and who championed the "People's Party"  
 marmor, *-oris, n.*, marble  
 Marrūcinus, *-a, -um*, of the Marrucini, a people of Latium, on the coast  
 Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, the god of war  
 Mārtius, *-a, -um*, of Mars; warlike; of March  
 mās, mās, *mās*, (*gen. maris*), male, masculine  
 massa, *-ae, f.*, lump  
 Massilia, *-ae, f.*, Massilia, a seaport of Southern Gaul, now Marseilles  
 māter, matris, *f.*, mother  
 māteria, *-ae, f.*, timber; material; subject  
 mātṛōna, *-ae, f.*, lady, married woman  
 mātūrē, *adv.*, early  
 mātūrus, *-a, -um*, early; ripe  
 Maurētānia, *-ae, f.*, Mauretania, a country of northern Africa, Morocco  
 Maurus, *-a, -um*, of the Moors, Moorish, Mauretanian  
 māximē, *superl. adv.* (see *māgnopere*), very greatly, very much, chiefly, most, especially  
 māximus, *-a, -um, superl. of māgnus*, greatest  
 meatūs, *-ūs, m.*, course  
 mediocris, *-is, -e*, moderate  
 mediocritās, *-tātis, f.*, mean, moderation  
 meditātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, meditation; practice, habit  
 meditātus, *-a, -um*, practised, rehearsed; weighed, considered  
 medius, *-a, -um*, mid-, middle of;  
 media nox, midnight  
 Megarēus *adj. used as a noun*, son of Megareus  
 Megareus, *-i, m.*, Megareus, father of Hippomenes, and King of Onchestus, a city in Boeotia  
 mēhercule, *interjection*, by Hercules, indeed  
 Melpomenē, *ēs* (a Greek decln.), *f.*, Melpomene, one of the nine Muses who provided inspiration in the various departments of literature and learning. Melpomene was later "specialized" as the Muse of Tragedy  
 membrum, *-i, n.*, a limb  
 mementō, *see memini*  
 memini, *-isse, perf. tense with pres. meaning*, I remember; imperative, mementō  
 memor, memor, memor (*memoris*), mindful, unforgetting, with *gen.*  
 memorābilis, *-is, -e*, memorable, noteworthy  
 memōria, *-ae, f.*, memory; memōriam retineō, I remember, with *gen.*; memōriam dēpōnō, I forget, with *gen.*  
 Memphis, *-idis, f.*, Memphis, famous city of Egypt, where there was a temple of the goddess Aphrodite (*Venus*), as well as temples of the Egyptian deities  
 Menoetēs, *Gk. acc. Menoetēn, voc. Menoetē, m.*, Menoetes, one of Aeneas' Trojan refugees  
 mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind; delusion  
 mēnsa, *-ae, f.*, table  
 mēnsis, *-is, m.*, month  
 mēnsūra, *-ae, f.*, measurement  
 mentiō, *-ōnis, f.*, mention  
 mentum, *-i, n.*, chin  
 mercātor, *-ōris, m.*, merchant  
 mercēs, *-ēdis, f.*, price, pay, wages, salary, fee; mercēdem solvere, to make payment  
 Mercurius, *-i, m.*, Mercury, the messenger of the gods

- mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *also as a deponent*, mereor, -erī, -itus sum, I deserve, merit
- mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, I plunge, sink; overwhelm
- mergus, -i, *m.*, coot; sea-gull
- meridiēs, meridiēi, *m.*, noon; south
- meritum, -i, *n.*, merit
- meritus, -a, -um, deserved, just, proper; meritō, *adv.*, justly, deservedly
- merum, -i, *n.*, undiluted wine, wine
- merus, -a, -um, unmixed, pure
- messis, -is, *f.*, harvest
- mēta, -ae, *f.*, goal, finish; turning post; lap of a race
- metuō, -ere, -uī, I fear
- metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread, alarm
- meus, -a, -um, my, mine, my own
- Mevius, -i, *m.*, Mevius, a Roman poet disliked by Horace and Vergil
- mīcō, -āre, -uī, I quiver; flash, gleam
- migrō, I, I move, depart, migrate
- miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier
- mīlia, *see mille*
- militāris, -is, -e, of a soldier, warlike, military; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, science of warfare, 'the service'
- militia, -ae, *f.*, military service, campaigning
- militō, I, I serve as a soldier, campaign
- mille, *indecl. adj.*, thousand; *noun in plur.*, mīlia, mīlium, *n.*, thousands
- mināx, (*gen. minācis*), threatening, menacing
- minimē, *adv.*, *superl. of parum*, by no means, least
- minimus, -a, -um, *superl. of parvus*, least, smallest
- minister, -trī, *m.*, servant, attendant
- ministrō, I, I tend to, look after
- minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, I threaten
- Mīnōs, ōis, *m.*, Minos, a famous king of Crete
- Minucius, -i, *m.*, Minucius, a Roman name
- minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, I lessen, diminish
- minus, *adv. comp. of parum*, less; not very, not so well; not
- mirābilis, -is, -e, wonderful, marvelous
- mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, I wonder, marvel at, admire
- mīrus, -a, -um, strange, wonderful, extraordinary
- misceō, -ēre, -uī, mīxtus, I mix, intermingle; throw into confusion, embroil; upturn, disturb, confound
- miser, -era, erum, wretched, unhappy
- miserābilis, -is, -e, pitiable, hapless
- miseror, -ērī, -itus sum, I take pity on, *with gen.*
- miseret, ēre, miseruit, *impers. verb with acc. and gen.*, I pity, feel sorry for; *e.g.* mātrem puerī miseret, the mother pities (feels sorry for) the boy
- miseria, -ae, *f.*, misfortune, misery
- misericors, (*gen. misericordis*), merciful, compassionate
- miseror, ārī, -ātus sum, I lament, bewail, pity
- Mithridātēs, -is, *m.*, Mithridates, a king of Pontus, subdued by Pompey
- mītis, -is, -e, mild, gentle
- mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, I send, despatch, let go
- mnemosynum, -i, *n.*, reminder, keepsake, souvenir
- Mnēstheus, Mnēsthei, *m.*, Mnestheus, one of Aeneas' band of Trojan refugees
- mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*, activity, nimbleness, mobility
- moderātiō, -onis, *f.*, self-control, moderation
- modius, -i, *m.*, peck ( $\frac{1}{4}$  bushel)
- modo, *adv.*, only; just now, a little while ago, recently; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
- modus, -i, *m.*, measure, manner, method, means; ad hunc modum, in the following way; hōc modō, in this way
- moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, fortifications, walls
- mōlēs, mōlis, *f.*, huge mass, bulk, mass of buildings, massive buildings
- molestia, -ae, *f.*, trouble, uneasiness
- molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, irksome



mōlior, -irī, -itus sum, I build, rear, labour at  
 molliō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, I soften; calm, tame  
 mollis, -is, -e, soft; tender, gentle; softening, becoming soft  
 Mona, -ae, *f.*, Mona, *probably* the Isle of Man  
 moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, I warn, advise  
 monitus, -ūs, *m.*, advice, warning  
 mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain  
 mōnstrō, I, I point out  
 mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, monster, strange creature  
 monumentum, -ī, *n.*, monument, memorial  
 mora, -ae, *f.*, delay  
 morbus, I, *m.*, illness, disease; unnatural lust  
 morior, -ī, mortuus sum, *fut. part.*, moritūrus, I die  
 moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, I delay, wait; nōn moror *with accus.*, pay no attention to, disregard  
 mors, mortis, *f.*, death  
 mortālis, -is, -e, mortal, perishable, destined to die; human, of men; *as a noun*, mortālis, -is, *m.*, mortal  
 mortuus, -a, -um, dead; *as a noun*, mortuus, -ī, *m.*, a dead man  
 mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, habit; settled custom, rule; *in plur.*, mōrēs, mōrum, *m.*, customs, character  
 mōtus, -ūs, *m.*, movement, motion  
 moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, I move, *trans.*; influence; frighten, alarm  
 mox, *adv.*, next, later, in due course; soon  
 mūcrō, -ōnis, *m.*, sharp point; sword point, sword  
 mūla, ae, *f.*, mule  
 mulceō, -ēre, -mulsī, mulsus, I calm, soothe, lull  
 muliebriter, *adv.*, like a woman  
 mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman  
 multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, great number, large body; herd  
 multus, -a, -um, (plūs, plūrimus), much; *in plur.*, many; multō, *with comparatives*, much, far  
 munditiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, neatness, elegance

mundus, -ī, *m.*, world, universe  
 mūnicipālis, -is, -e, of a municipality; provincial  
 mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, I fortify; protect, defend; construct  
 mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification; siege works, entrenchment  
 mūnitus, -a, -um, well fortified, strongly defended  
 munus, -eris, *n.*, function, duty; gift; show; spectacle (*of gladiators*); reward; duty, services, function  
 murmur, -uris, *n.*, murmuring; moaning, rumbling, scolding, growling  
 mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall  
 mūs, mūris, *m. and f.*, mouse  
 Musa, -ae, *f.*, a Muse, *one of the nine Muses who gave inspiration in the various departments of literature and learning*  
 mūtō, I, I move away; change; replace; (*of business*) exchange, barter, sell  
 mūtūus, -a, -um, interchanged, mutual, on both sides, the same; borrowed; pecūniam mūtūam sūmō, I borrow money  
 mŷrtus, I and -ūs, *f.*, myrtle, myrtle-tree

## N

nam, *conj.*, for  
 namque, *conj.*, for, for example; in fact  
 nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, I get, obtain  
 Nārōna, -ae, *f.*, Naron, a town in Illyricum, the land east of the Adriatic Sea  
 nārrō, I, I tell, relate  
 nascor, -ī, nātus sum, I am born; arise  
 nāsus, -ī, *m.*, nose  
 natālis, -is, -e, of his birth, birth-  
 nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, race  
 nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature  
 nātūrāliter, *adv.*, naturally, by nature  
 nātus, -a, -um, born; (*so many years*) old; *as noun*, nātus, -ī, *m.*, child, son

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor  
 nauticus, -a, -um, of sailors, of ships  
 nāvicula, -ae, *f.*, small vessel (*diminutive of nāvis*)

nāvigō, *l*, I sail, sail over

nāvigium, -ī, *n.*, boat, ship

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship; nāvem solvō, I set sail; nāvem ascendō, I embark, go aboard ship; nāvē ēgredior, I disembark, go ashore; nāvis longa, a warship; nāvis onerāria, a transport

nāvita, -ae, *m.*, sailor

-ne, *enclitic interrogative particle, suffixes to the first important word in a question inviting the answer Yes or No*

nē, *adv.*, and *conj.*; *adv.*, not; *conj.*, lest, that . . . not

nebula, -ae, *f.*, mist, fog, cloud

nec, *see* neque

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, inevitable, unavoidable; intimate

neceſse, *indecl. adj.*, unavoidable, inevitable, necessary

necō, *l*, I kill, destroy

nectō, -ere, nexuī, nexus, I weave, sew

nefārius, -a, -um, wicked, abominable

nefās, *n. indecl.*, something contrary to divine law, impious deed, sin, crime

neglegēns, (*gen. -entis*), careless, neglectful

neglegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctus, I disregard, neglect

negō, *l*, I deny, say . . . not

negōtiōr, *l*, I carry on business

negōtium, -ī, *n.*, business, matter, trouble

nēmō, (*nēminis*), *m.*, *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. supplied by nullus*, no one, nobody

nempe, *adv.*, indeed, without doubt, assuredly

nepōs, -pōtis, *m.*, grandson, descendant

Neptūnius, -a, -um, of Neptune, the god of the sea

Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*, Neptune, god of sea

neque, (*or sometimes nec before consonants*) *adv. and conj.*, and not, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor

nēququam, *adv.*, in vain, vainly

nēsciō, -ire, -ivī, I do not know

nēscius, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant of, unacquainted with  
 neuter, -tra, -trum, neither  
 nēve (= et . . . nē), and that . . . not, nor, and . . . not

nex, necis, *f.*, death, violent death

nexus, *from* nectō

nī, *see* nisi

nīdus, -ī, *m.*, nest

niger, -gra, -grum, black, dark, darkening

nihil (*or nil*), *indecl.*, nothing

nihilum, -ī, *n.*, nothing; pro nihilo, as nothing

Nilus, -ī, *m.*, the Nile river

nimbus, -ī, *m.*, a rain-storm; a storm-cloud, cloud

nimum, *adv.*, too much

nīmius, -a, -um, excessive, head-strong

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except

niteō, -ēre, -uī, I shine, am dazzling

nitidus, -a, -um, bright, shining, glittering

nītor, -ī, nīxus *or* nīsus sum, I struggle, exert myself

nivālis, -is, -e, snowy, snow-clad

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow

nōbilis, -is, -e, noble, high-born, famous

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*, fame, distinction; nobility

nōbilitō, *l*, I make famous

nocēns, (*gen. nocentis*), harmful, guilty

nocentissimus, -a, -um, (*cf. noceō, I harm*) very guilty, of undoubted guilt, absolutely guilty

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, I injure, damage, harm, hurt, *with dat.*

noctū, *adv.*, by night

nocturnus, -a, -um, in the night, at night, nocturnal

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, I am unwilling, do not wish, refuse

nōmen, -minis, *n.*, name, reputation; nōmine, by name, named

nōminō, *l*, I call by name, name  
 nōn, *adv.*, not, no  
 Nōnae, ārum, *f. pl.*, the Nones, the fifth day in every month except "March, July, October, May", when "the Nones are on the seventh day". (Literally, Nones = "Nines", because occurring, by Roman inclusive reckoning, on the ninth day before the Ides)  
 nōndum, *adv.*, not yet  
 nōnne, *interrog. adv.*, introducing a question expecting the answer Yes  
 nōnnūlli, -ae, -a, *indef. adj. or pro.*, some few, few  
 nōnus, -a, -um, ninth  
 nōscō, -ere, nōvī (2nd pers. nōstī), I know, understand well  
 noster, -tra, -trum, our, our own; in plur. as noun, nostrī, -ōrum, *m.*, our men, people, troops or forces  
 nōtitia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge, acquaintance  
 notō, *l*, I mark, notice, note, take note of; mark down; ad caedem  
 nōto, I proscribe  
 nōtus, -a, -um, known; well-known  
 Notus, -ī, *m.*, Notus, the South wind  
 Nova Carthāgō, Novae Carthāginis, *f.*, New Carthage, the Carthaginian base in Spain  
 novem, *indecl. adj.*, nine  
 novitās, -tātis, *f.*, newness, strangeness  
 novus, -a, -um, new, fresh, strange  
 nox, noctis, *f.*, (noctium), night  
 nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud  
 nūdō, *l*, I lay bare, strip, expose  
 nūdus, -a, -um, bare, nude  
 nullus, -a, -um, no, none; in *gen. dat.* and *abl.* supplies cases of nēmō, no one  
 num, *interrog. adv.*, introducing a direct question expecting the answer No or in indirect question expecting the answer Yes or No  
 nūmen, -minis, *n.*, (derived from nuō, I nod consent), divine will; divine power, majesty; deity, god  
 numerōsus, -a, -um, numerous, manifold; crowded  
 numerus, -ī, *m.*, number

nummulus, *ī, m.*, a paltry piece of money, filthy lucre  
 nummus, -ī, *m.*, a piece of money, coin; a silver coin  
 numquam, *adv.*, never  
 nunc, *adv.*, now  
 nūntiō, *l*, I announce, report; nūntiātum est, the announcement was made  
 nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger; message, news  
 nuper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago  
 nūtriō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, I nourish, feed  
 nūtrix, -icis, *f.*, nurse  
 nūtus, *abl.* nutū, *m.*, nodding, nod; assent, compliance  
 Nymphae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the Nymphs, minor deities presiding over the streams, trees and groves

## O

ō, *interjection*, O! oh!  
 ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of  
 obesus, -a, -um, fat  
 obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I throw in the way, place in front, post in front (of, *dat.*)  
 oblectō, *l*, I entertain, amuse  
 obligō, *l*, bind, oblige  
 oblinō, -ere, oblēvī, oblitus, I besmear, bedaub  
 obliquus, -a, -um, sideways, slanting; ab obliquō, sideways  
 oblitus, -a, -um, *p.p.p. of* oblinō, smeared, stained  
 oblitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* obliviscor, forgetful of, with *gen.*  
 obruō, -ere, obruī, obrutus, I overwhelm  
 obscurus, -a, -um, dark, dim; mysterious, hidden, secret, unknown  
 obsecrō, *l*, I implore, beseech, beg  
 observō, *l*, I esteem, respect  
 obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, I besiege, blockade  
 obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*, siege, blockade  
 obsolētus, -a, -um, worn out; tumble-down  
 obstipescō, -ere, -stipui, I am dumb-founded, amazed

- obstō, -āre, -stiti, I stand before; hinder, oppose; keep from falling  
obstrepo, -ere, -ui, I roar, thunder, brawl  
obstruo, -ere, -struxi, -structus, I block up, close up; stop  
obtineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, I hold, possess, occupy, maintain  
obtrectatio, -ōnis, *f.*, criticism, disparagement, jealousy  
obviam, *adv.*, in the way of, to meet, with *dat.*  
occasio, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity, chance  
occasus, -ūs, *m.*, falling, setting  
occido, -ere, occidi, occisum, I fall, fall in battle; set (*of sun*)  
occido, -ere, occidi, occisus, I cut, cut down, slay  
occulto, I, I hide, conceal  
occultus, -a, -um, hidden, concealed, secret  
occupatio, -ōnis, *f.*, business  
occupatus, -a, -um, engaged, busy; in, in with *abl.*  
occupō, I, I seize, occupy, win, gain  
occurro, -ere, occurri, occursum, I meet with *dat.*  
oceanus, -i, *m.*, ocean  
ocius, *comp. adv.*, more quickly  
octavus, -a, -um, eighth  
octingenti, -ae, -a, eight hundred  
octo, *indecl. adj.*, eight  
octoginta, *indecl. adj.*, eighty  
oculus, -i, *m.*, eye  
odī, odisse, ośurus (*defective*), I hate  
odium, -i, *n.*, hate, hatred  
odor, -ōris, *m.*, smell, savour (*of a sacrifice*)  
odoratus, -a, -um, fragrant, smelling  
officium, -i, *n.*, duty  
ohē, *interj.*, ho there! hi there!  
oleo, -ēre, -ui, smell; (*trans.*); *pres. part.* olens, smelly, rank  
olfacio, -ere, -feci, -factus, I smell  
olim, *adv.*, once, long ago  
Olympus, -i, *m.*, Olympus, a mountain in Thessaly, the home of the gods  
omen, ominis, *n.*, omen, portent  
omitto, -ere, -misi, -missus, I let go, lose contact with; leave out  
omnino, *adv.*, altogether; on the whole, to sum up; with a negative, at all  
omnipotens, -tentis, all-powerful; as a noun, Omnipotens, the All-powerful, the Almighty, a title of Jupiter  
omnis, -is, -e, all, every  
Onchestus, -a, -um, of Onchestus, a city in Boeotia  
onerarius, -a, -um, carrying a cargo; navis oneraria, a transport  
onerosus, -a, -um, heavy, ponderous  
onus, oneris, *n.*, weight, burden  
opacus, -a, -um, shaded, shadowy, dark  
opera, -ae, *f.*, work; instigation; services; trouble; operam dare, to pay heed, take pains, render service  
operio, -ire, -ui, opertus, I cover, cover up, hide  
opēs, *see ops*  
opifex, -ficus, *m.*, craftsman, artisan  
opimus, -a, -um, rich, fat  
opinio, -ōnis, *f.*, expectation, estimation, notion, idea, guess; belief  
opinor, I, I imagine, believe  
opipare, *adv.*, richly, splendidly  
oppidum, -i, *n.*, town  
opplētus, -a, -um, covered, filled  
oppōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, I place in the way of, throw in front of; place as a barrier  
opportunitas, -tatis, *f.*, opportunity, advantage; convenience, favourableness, timeliness; timely coincidence  
opportūnus, -a, -um, (*lit.*, coming to harbour), opportune, serviceable, valuable  
opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus, I overwhelm, overpower  
oppugnō, I, I attack  
(ops), opis, *f.*, help, power, generally in *plur.*, opēs, opum, riches; power; forces  
optimus, -a, -um, *superl. of bonus*, best  
optō, I, I wish for, desire  
opulentus, -a, -um, wealthy, rich  
opus, operis, *n.*, work, task; need, necessity; opus est, it is needful for, there is need for, with *dat. of the person who needs anything and the abl. of the thing needed*  
ora, -ae, *f.*, shore, coast



orāculum, -ī, *n.*, oracle  
 orātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech; orātiōnem  
 habeo, I make a speech  
 orātor, -ōris, *m.*, orator  
 orbis, -is, *m.*, circle; orbis terrarum,  
 the world  
 orbus, -a, -um, deprived, bereaved  
 ordō, -dinis, *m.*, rank, order  
 Oriēns, -entis, *m.*, the East  
 Oriōn, -onis, *m.*, Orion, the Hunter,  
 a constellation in the Southern sky  
 orior, -iri, ortus sum, (*fut. part.*, ori-  
 tūrus), I rise, arise, break out  
 ornāmentum, -ī, *n.*, adornment, de-  
 coration, work of art; dignity, hon-  
 our; distinction  
 ornō, I, I furnish; adorn, deck  
 orō, I, I pray, entreat, beg  
 ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face  
 os, ossis, *n.*, bone; in *plur.*, freely,  
 marrow; heart, ashes  
 osculum, -ī, *n.*, kiss  
 ostendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, I show,  
 point out; declare  
 ostentō, I, I show, display  
 ostium, -ī, *n.*, mouth, entrance  
 ōtior, I, I enjoy leisure, am at leisure  
 ōtiōsus, -a, -um, freed from toil, at  
 leisure, resting  
 ōtium, -ī, *n.*, ease, peace and quiet,  
 leisure; *plur.*, idle hours  
 ovum, -ī, *n.*, egg

## P

*P.*, abbreviation for Pūblius  
 pabulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, procuring of fod-  
 der, foraging  
 pābulātor, -ōris, *m.*, forager  
 pacō, I, I pacify  
 pactum, -ī, *n.*, agreement, bargain;  
 means, way  
 pactus, -a, -um, agreed, stipulated  
 Padus, -ī, *m.*, the Po river in north-  
 ern Italy  
 paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly  
 pāgus, -ī, *m.*, village, countryside;  
 country folk  
 palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly; pa-  
 lam faciō, I make public, disclose

Pallas, -adis, *f.*, Pallas Athena, the  
 Greek goddess of wisdom and of  
 war, identified with the Roman  
 goddess Minerva  
 pallēscō, -ere, palluī, I grow pale,  
 grow yellow  
 pallor, -ōris, *m.*, paleness, pallor  
 palma, -ae, *f.*, palm-leaf, prize, vic-  
 tory; by *metonymy*, prize-winner;  
 palm (*of the hand*)  
 palmula, -ae, *f.*, oar-blade  
 palūdamentum, -ī, *n.*, military cloak  
 palūs, ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh  
 palūster, -tris, -tre, of a swamp,  
 swampy  
 pangō, -ere, panxī, panctus, I com-  
 pose, write  
 pānis, -is, *m.*, bread  
 pār, (*gen. paris*), equal, pār sum  
*plus dat.*, I am a match for  
 parātus, -a, -um, prepared, ready; for,  
*ad with acc.*  
 parātus, -ūs, *m.*, preparation  
 parcō, -ere, pepercī, (*or parsī*), par-  
 sum, I spare, with *dat.*  
 parcus, -a, -um, frugal, thrifty  
 parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*, parent,  
 mother, father  
 pārēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, with *dat.*, I am  
 obedient, obey, give obedience  
 pariēs, -etis, *m.*, wall (*of a house*)  
 parilis, -is, -e, equal, like  
 pariter, *adv.*, equally, alike; at the  
 same time; side by side, abreast  
 parma, -ae, *f.*, a small round shield  
 (*carried by one class of gladiators*  
*in the arena*)  
 parō, I, I prepare, make ready; pro-  
 cure, acquire; bellum parō, I pre-  
 pare for war  
 pars, partis, *f.*, part, portion; direc-  
 tion; side; ūnā ex parte, from, in  
 one direction; in omnēs partēs, in  
 all directions  
 partim, *adv.*, partly, in part; partim  
 . . . partim, some . . . others  
 parum, *adv.*, (minus, minimē), little,  
 too little, not enough  
 parvulus, -a, -um, small, trifling, (*di-*  
*minutive of parvus*)  
 parvus, -a, -um, little, small

pāscō, -ere, pāvi, pāstus, I feed, nourish; *intr.*, graze, browse (of animals)  
 passus, -us, *m.*, pace, step  
 patefaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factus, I open, throw open  
 pateō, -ēre, -uī, I lie open, be open; patēns, -entis, *part. as adj.*, open, exposed  
 pater, -tris, *m.*, father; patrēs, patrum, *m. plur.*, city fathers, senators  
 paternus, -a, -um, of a father, a father's; inherited from one's father  
 patior, -i, passus sum, I allow, let; endure  
 patria, -ae, *f.*, native land, native city  
 patrius, -a, -um, of one's father, father's; of one's ancestors, ancestral; of one's country  
 patrōnus, -i, *m.*, patron, advocate  
 pauci, -ae, -a, a few  
 paulātim, *adv.*, little by little, gradually  
 paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time, a little while  
 paulō, *adv.*, a little, slightly, somewhat  
 paulum, *adv.*, a little, slightly  
 Paulus, -i, *m.*, Lucius Aemilius Paulus, *consul in 216 B.C.*  
 pauper, (*gen. pauperis*), poor, destitute  
 paupertās, -tātis, *f.*, poverty  
 pavor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, apprehension  
 paveō, -ēre, pāvī, I tremble, quake, am afraid  
 pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace  
 peccātum, -i, *n.*, fault, mistake, vice, sin  
 peccō, I, I commit a fault, sin  
 pectus, -oris, *n.*, chest, breast; heart  
 pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money; *in plur.*, sums of money  
 pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd of cattle  
 pecus, pecudis, *f.*, a single head of cattle or sheep; *plur.*, cattle  
 pedes, peditis, *m.*, infantryman, foot-soldier; peditēs, -um, *m., plur.*, the infantry  
 pedester, -tris, -tre, on foot, of the infantry  
 peditātus, -ūs, *m.*, infantry  
 pelagus, -i, *n.*, (*a Greek decln.*), the open sea, the ocean

pellis, -is, *f.*, skin, hide  
 pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, I drive, defeat; strike, beat  
 Penātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, Penates, household gods; home  
 pendeō, -ēre, pependī, I hang, am suspended; linger, tarry  
 pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, I weigh, weigh out; pay; estimate  
 pene, *prep. with acc.*, in the power of, in the possession of  
 penna, -ae, *f.*, feather, wing, pinion  
 per, *prep. with acc.*, through; by way of, over, along; by reason of  
 peramanter, *adv.*, very lovingly  
 percipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, I receive, catch, take hold of  
 percontātiō, -ōnis *f.*, questioning, investigation  
 percrebrēscō, -ere, -bruī, be spread abroad  
 percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, I strike through; strike hard, beat, lash  
 perditus, -a, -um, desperate, hopeless  
 perdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, I destroy  
 perennis, -is, -e, lasting, lasting through the years  
 pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, I die, perish, am killed  
 perequitō, I, I ride up and down  
 perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, I carry through, report; 'spout'  
 perfidia, -ae, *f.*, treachery, lack of faith  
 perfidus, -a, -um, faithless, false, dishonest, treacherous  
 perflō, I, I blow across, sweep  
 perfrēgi, *see* perfringō  
 perfringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractus, I break through, smash  
 perfuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter  
 perfugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, I flee for refuge; go over, desert  
 perfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fusus, I drench, steep, bathe, bedew  
 pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus, I go on, proceed, continue, go forward  
 perhorrēscō, -ere, -horruī, I shudder at  
 periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous  
 periculum, -i, *n.*, danger, peril  
 perimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus, I slay, kill, destroy

peritus, -a, -um, experienced, skilled; in, with *gen.*

permaneo, -ere, -mansī, -mansum, I last, remain, endure

permātūrēscō, -ere, -matūruī, I ripen fully

permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, I entrust, allow, permit

permoveō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtus, I move deeply, influence, induce, rouse, sway, inspire

permūtō, I, I exchange

permūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, exchange, change

perniciēs, -ei, *f.*, ruin, destruction

perofficiōsē, *adv.*, with devotion

perōsus, -a, -um (*perf. part. act. from defective verb*, perōdī, perōdisse), hating thoroughly

perpetuus, -a, -um, endless, perpetual

perscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, I write; recount

persequor, -ī, -secutus sum, I pursue, follow up

Persicus, -a, -um, Persian; Eastern

perspicio, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum, I examine, inspect

persuādeo, -ere, -suāsi, -suāsum, I persuade, induce, with *dat.*

perterreo, -ere, -ui, -itus, I frighten thoroughly, terrify, alarm, demoralize

pertineō, -ere, -ui, -tentus, I stretch out, reach, extend

perturbō, I, I disturb greatly, throw into confusion; alarm, terrify, demoralize

pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, I come to, arrive at, reach, with *ad* and *acc.*; ad castra perventum est, the camp was reached

pervigilo, I, I stay awake all night

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot

pestilentia, -ae, *f.*, plague; sickness, fever

pestis, -is, *f.*, bane, scourge, plague, destruction

petō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, I seek, make for; ask (*a favour*)

Petrēius, -i, *m.*, Marcus Petreius, an officer of Pompey

phalanx, -langis, *f.*, phalanx, host

pharetra, -ae, *f.*, quiver

Pharnacēs, -is, *m.*, Pharnaces, a king of Pontus, and son of Mithridates  
Pharsālicus, -a, -um, of Pharsalus, a town in Thessaly

Philemōn, -onis, *m.*, Philemon, a pious Phrygian rustic, husband of Baucis

philyra, -ae, *f.*, linden-bark, the inner bark of the lime-tree

pietās, -tātis, *f.*, sense of responsibility, dutifulness, goodness

piger, -gra, -grum, dull, lifeless, sluggish, lazy

pilum -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin of the Roman infantry

pīneus, -a, -um, of pine

pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather, wing

pinus, -ūs and -ī, *f.*, pine tree, pine

pirāta, -ae, *m.*, pirate

piscātor, -ōris, *m.*, fisherman

piscis, -is, *m.*, fish (*gen. pl. piscium*)

piscor, I, I fish

pīus, -a, -um, dutiful to the gods, one's relatives and native land, conscientious, good, devout, righteous

plācātus, -a, -um, quiet, gentle, calm

placeō, -ere, -ui, -itus, I please, am agreeable, afford pleasure

placidus, -a, -um, calm, kindly, compassionate

plānē, *adv.*, clearly, distinctly, completely

plānus, -a, -um, level, flat, even

plausus, -ūs, *m.*, clapping, applause

plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, the common people, the masses

plēnus, -a, -um, full, filled with; plēniōra, exaggerated accounts

plērique, plēraque, plēraque, very many, almost all, for the most part

plērumque, *adv.*, generally, very often, again and again

plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead

plūs, plūris, (*comp. of multus*), more; in *plur.*, several, more

pluvia, -ae, *f.*, rain; a shower

poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment;

poenam or poenās dō, I am punished

Poenus, -a, -um, Carthaginian; *m.*, as noun, a Carthaginian

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet

politus, -a, -um, polished, cultured  
polliceor, ēri, -licitus sum, I promise  
polus, -ī, *m.*, the pole; the heavens,  
sky, firmament

Pompēianus, -a, -um, of Pompey  
Pompēius, -ī, *m.*, Gnaeus Pompeius  
Magnus, *the triumvir*

pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit, apple  
pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight, burden  
pōne, *adv.*, behind, in the rear  
pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, I put, place,  
set; set the table; castra pōnō, I  
pitch camp

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge  
pontifex, -icis, *m.*, high priest  
pontus, -ī, *m.*, sea, waters

Pontus, -ī, *m.*, Pontus, *also called*  
Bithynia and Pontus-Bithynia, *a*  
kingdom later a Roman province,  
*on the south shore of the Black*  
*Sea (Pontus), from which it re-*  
*ceived its name*

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, devastation  
populus, I, ravage, devastate  
populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation  
porriciō, -ere, I cast, throw  
porrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, I stretch  
out

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate  
portentum, -ī, *n.*, monster  
portitor, -ōris, *m.*, ferryman  
portō, I, I carry, bring  
Portūnus, -ī, *m.*, Portunus, *god of*  
*harbours*

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbour, port  
poscō, -ere, poposci, I ask for, demand  
possideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessus, I possess,  
am master of

possum, posse, potui, I am able, can  
post, *prep. with acc.*, after; behind  
post, *adv.*, afterward

postea, *adv.*, thereafter, later  
posterus, -a, -um, next, following;  
posterī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, descend-  
ants

posthāc, *adv.*, hereafter  
postis, -is, *m.*, post, door, doorway  
postquam, *conj.*, after, when (*some-*  
*times posteaquam*) *with perf. ind.*

postrēmō, *adv.*, lastly, finally  
postridiē, *adv.*, on the next day  
postulō, I, I demand

potēns, -ēns, -ēns (-entis) powerful,  
strong

potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power, opportunity  
prae, *prep. with abl.*, in front of; as  
compared with

praebeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, I supply, fur-  
nish; mē praebeō, I show myself  
praeceđō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, I go  
in advance, go on ahead

praeceps, (*gen. -cipitis*), steep, pre-  
cipitous; headlong, headforemost  
praeceptum, -ī, *n.*, instruction, teach-  
ing

praecripiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, I in-  
struct, order (*with acc. of thing*  
*and dat. of person*)

praeclārus, -a, -um, splendid, noble  
praeocō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald, crier  
praecurrō, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum, I  
hasten on before, run on ahead

praeda, -ae, *f.*, plunder, loot  
praedicō, I, I publish, proclaim  
praeditus, -a, -um, provided, pos-  
sessed, furnished (*with, with abl.*)

praedō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, pirate,  
freebooter

praefectus, -ī, *m.*, officer, commander  
(*esp. of cavalry*); *with rēgius*, a com-  
mander in the king's army

praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, I place  
before, prefer

praefficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, I put in  
charge; of, *with dat.*

praelātus, -a, -um, *p.p.p. of praeferō*,  
preferred to, lovelier than (*with*  
*dat.*)

praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, I send  
forward, send on ahead, send in  
advance

praemium, -ī, *n.*, prize, reward  
Praeneste, -is, *n.*, Praeneste, *a city of*  
*Latium, 23 miles east of Rome*

praeparātus, -a, -um, prepared be-  
forehand, trained beforehand

praesēns, (*gen. -sentis*) present; close  
at hand, immediate; existing

praesertim, *adv.*, especially  
praesidiō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *with*  
*dat.*, I preside over

praesidium, -ī, *n.*, protection; garri-  
son

praestāns, -stāns, -stāns (-stantis), dis-  
tinguished, outstanding



- praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, I surpass; show; discharge, make good; praestat, it is preferable, better, *with infin.*  
 praesum, -esse, -fui, I am in charge; of, *with dat.*  
 praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, past; except  
 praeterea, *adv.*, moreover, besides, furthermore, in addition  
 praetereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, I go by or past, pass; be over  
 praeteritus, -a, -um, *perf. part.*, bygone, past; praeterita, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, *perf. part. used as a noun*, the past, what is done, bygone  
 praetervehor, -i, -vectus sum, I ride by, ride past  
 praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor  
 praetōrium, -i, *n.*, governor's residence; general's headquarters; *in plur.*, a palace  
 praetōrius, -a, -um, of a praetor or general; nāvis praetōria, the flag ship  
 prandeō, ēre, -di, -sus, I eat luncheon, breakfast  
 prandium, -i, *n.*, luncheon  
 prātum, -i, *n.*, meadow  
 precēs, -um, *f. (plur. only)*, prayers, entreaties  
 precor, I, I pray, entreat, beg  
 premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, I press, distress; control, check, restrain; hug, keep close to (*shore*)  
 prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsus, I catch, grasp  
 pretium, -i, *n.*, price, value  
 pridīe, *adv.*, on the day before, (*abbr.*, prid.)  
 primō, *adv.*, at first  
 primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; cum or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible  
 primus, -a, -um, *superl.* of prior, first, foremost; primō vere, at the beginning of spring  
 princeps, (*gen.*, -cipis) first, foremost; as a noun, princeps, -cipis, *m.*, leading man, chieftain, civil leader; spokesman  
 prior, prior, prius, *comp.*, former, earlier  
 pristinus, -a, -um, ancient, former  
 Pristis, -is, *f.*, the Pristis (Sea Serpent), one of Aeneas' ships  
 prius, *adv.*, before, sooner; first  
 priusquam, *conj.*, before, *with perf. ind.*  
 privātim, *adv.*, privately, in one's private capacity, unofficially  
 privātus, -a, -um, private, belonging to an individual; as a noun, privātus, -i, *m.*, private citizen  
 prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on behalf of, in defence of, for; instead of, in place of, in return for  
 probō, I, I approve; prove  
 procēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, I move forward, advance  
 procella, -ae, *f.*, gale, squall, blast  
 procōsul, -is, *m.*, proconsul, an ex-consul who went out to a province as its military governor  
 procul, *adv.*, from a distance, from afar; at a distance, far away  
 procūratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, administration, management  
 prōcurrō, -ere, -cucurri and -curri, -cursum, I run forth, charge  
 prōdeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, I go or come forth  
 prōdigium, -i, *n.*, prophetic sign, omen, prodigy  
 prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, I lead forth; bring forth, produce  
 proelior, I, I fight, engage  
 proelium, -i, *n.*, battle, engagement, fighting, fight; proelium committō, I join or begin battle; proelium faciō, I fight a battle  
 prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, I put forth, stretch forth  
 proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, I set out, depart  
 profugus, -a, -um, in flight, exiled  
 profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, I pour out, spread over; with sē, pour forth, rush forth  
 prōgredior, -i, -gressus sum, I advance, proceed  
 prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, I prevent, hinder; from *with infin.*

prōiciō -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I throw in front, throw down, cast; *mē prōiciō*, I rush, storm, leap  
 proinde, *adv.*, therefore, accordingly  
 prōlēs, -is, *f.*, offspring, child; descendant  
 prōlūdō, -ere, -lulī, -lūtus, I drink deep  
 prōmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, I promise, set before, assure  
 prōmō, -ere, prōmpti, prōmptus, I bring forward; *mē prōmō*, I issue forth, come forth  
 prōmontōrium, -i, *n.*, a projecting height, elevation  
 pronepōs, -ōtis, *m.*, great-grandson  
 prōnūntiō, I, I announce, proclaim; give orders; relate, narrate; predict  
 prōnus, -a, -um, bending forward; headlong  
 prooemium, -i, *n.*, preface, introduction  
 prōpatulum, -i, *n.*, courtyard, back yard  
 prope, *prep. with acc.*, near, at  
 prope, *adv.*, (propius, proximē), nearly, almost, about  
 prōpellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, I drive before me, drive back  
 properē, *adv.*, hastily, quickly  
 properō, I, I hasten, am in a hurry  
 propinquō, I, I approach, draw near, *with dat.*  
 propinquus, -a, -um, adjacent to, near, *with dat.*; as a noun, proprinquus, -i, *m.*, a relative, kinsman  
 propior, -ior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, nearer  
 prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, I place before, post; display; reveal; set forth, set before as a model, imagine, conceive  
 propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of, for  
 propterea, *adv.*, on that (or this) account; *with quod*, for the reason that, because  
 prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow  
 prōrsus, *adv.*, forwards; utterly, absolutely  
 prōsequor, -i, -secūtus sum, I pursue, follow  
 prōsiliō, -ire, -uī, I leap ahead, dart forward

prōspectus, -ūs, *m.*, distant view  
 prōspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, I look out, view  
 prōtegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus, I cover, protect  
 prōtinus, *adv.*, onward; immediately, instantly  
 prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus, I foresee; guard against, take care  
 prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province  
 proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next  
 prūdēs, (*gen. -entis*), wise, shrewd  
 prūdētia, -ae, *f.*, foresight, wisdom  
 Prūsias, -ae, *m.*, Prusias, a king of Pontus (Bithynia) who gave sanctuary to Hannibal  
 Ptolemaeus, -i, *m.*, Ptolemy, the name of the Kings of Egypt after Alexander the Great  
 publicē *adv.*, publicly, officially  
 publicō, I, I confiscate, make public property  
 publicus, -a, -um, public, official, belonging to the state  
 Pūblius, -i, *m.*, Publius, a Roman name  
 pudor, -ōris, *m.*, shame, sense of honour  
 puella, -ae, *f.*, girl  
 puer, -i, *m.*, boy  
 puerilis, -is, -e, childish, trivial  
 puerulus, -i, *m.*, young boy  
 pūgna, -ae, *f.*, fight, fighting, battle  
 pūgnō, I fight, *completed by cum with abl.*; *in pass.*, pūgnātur, *im-personally*, the battle goes on, *freely*, they fight; *acriter pūgnātum est*, there was fierce fighting  
 pūgnus, -i, *m.*, fist  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fine, splendid  
 pullus, -a, -um, dark-coloured  
 pulsō, I, I strike, knock; throb; tap, tread (*in the dance*)  
 pulvīnar, -āris, *n.*, a couch of the gods, cushioned seat *spread at a feast of the gods*  
 pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust  
 Pūnicus, -a, -um, Carthaginian  
 pūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, I punish  
 puppis, -is, *f.*, stern, poop; ship. vessel

purpurātus, -a, -um, clad in purple, *i.e.*, a prime minister  
 pūrus, -a, -um, clean, pure, unstained  
 putō, I, I judge, think, consider; deem, suppose, fancy  
 Pyramus, -i, m., Pyramus, a boy of Babylon, in love with Thisbe  
 P̄yrenaeus, -a, -um, of the Pyrenees, the mountain range between Spain and Gaul  
 Pyrrha, -ae, f., Pyrrha (a girl's name)

## Q

Q., abbreviation for Quintus  
 quā, adv., (=quā viā), where  
 quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., forty  
 quadrāns, -antis, m., a fourth part, quarter; fourth part of an as; the smallest practical unit of Roman currency, corresponding roughly to a 'nickel'  
 quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, I ask (a question), with a, ab and abl.; I seek, look for, with acc.; win  
 quaesō, -ere, I beg, pray  
 quaestor, -ōris, m., quaestor, a Roman political office, (1) a civil treasury official; (2) an army paymaster  
 quaestuōsus, -a, -um, profitable  
 quālis, -is, -e, what kind, what kind of  
 quam, adv., how, how much  
 quam, conj. with comparatives, than; with superlatives, as . . . as possible  
 quamdiū, adv., how long; conj., as long as  
 quamquam, conj., although  
 quandō, interrog. adv. and conj., when  
 quantum, adv., how much, how greatly, how  
 quantus, -a, -um, how great, how large  
 quārē, adv., wherefore, therefore  
 quārtus, -a, -um, fourth  
 quatō, -ere, - - -, quassus, I shake, brandish, beat, flap; strike, stamp  
 quattuor, indecl. adj., four

quattuordecim, indecl. adj., fourteen  
 -que, enclitic conj., and  
 queror, -i, questus sum, I complain, express regret, bewail  
 quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who which, what, that; as co-ordinating relative, he, this; after idem, as  
 quī, quae, quod, interr. adj., which, what  
 quia, conj., because, since  
 quicquid, neuter of quisquis  
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. relative pron. and adj., whoever, whatever  
 quidam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron. and adj., a certain  
 quidem, adv., certainly, in fact, indeed; nē . . . quidem, not even  
 quidquid, neuter of quisquis  
 quies, -ētis, f., rest, quiet, repose  
 quiescō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, I am inactive, quiet; rest  
 quiētus, -a, -um, tranquil, quiet, peaceful; inactive  
 quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, any one whom you will, no matter who  
 Quinctius, -i, m., Quinctius, a Roman name  
 quīndecim, fifteen  
 quīngenti, -ae, -a, five hundred  
 quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um, fiftieth  
 quīnquāgintā, indecl. adj., fifty  
 quīnque, indecl. adj., five  
 quīnquies, adv., five times  
 quīntus, -a, -um, fifth  
 Quīntus, -i, m., Quintus  
 Quiritēs, -ium, m. plur., citizens  
 quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., who; what  
 quis, quis, quid, indef. pron., anyone, somebody, anything; quī, quae, quod, indef. adj., some, any  
 quisquam, quisquam, quidquam (or quicquam), indef. pron., anyone, somebody; anything, something  
 quisque, quaeque, quidque, indef. pron., every one, each one, each  
 quisquis, quisquis, quidquid, indef. pron., whoever, whatever  
 quivis, quaevis, quidvis, any one whatever, whom you please

quo, *adv.*, whither, to what place;  
*conj.* with a comparative, in order  
that; quo with *comp.* . . eo with  
*comp.*, the . . the; as an *adv.*, by  
reason of which, wherefore, there-  
fore

quoad, *conj.*, as long as, while, until  
quod, *conj.*, because, that, in that; on  
the ground that; the fact that

quodsi, *conj.*, but if

quōmodo, or quō modo, in what way,  
how, as

quondam, *adv.*, once, formerly, in  
days gone by; sometimes (*rare*)

quoniam, *conj.*, since, because

quoque, *adv.*, also, too, as well

quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many; tot . .  
quot, as many . . . as

quotannis, *adv.*, yearly, each year,  
annually

quotiens, *adv.*, how often; as often as

## R

radius, -ī, *m.*, rod, pointer, ray of  
light

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus, I shave, scrape,  
scrape past

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, bough, branch, twig

rāna, -ae, *f.*, frog; rāna palūstris,  
marsh-frog

rapidus, -a, -um, fierce; swift, rapid  
rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus, I seize and  
carry off, snatch, grab

ratio, ōnis, *f.*, manner, way; account,  
calculation, reckoning; judgment;  
reason, motive; idea

ratis, -is, *f.*, boat, bark

recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, I with-  
draw, give ground, retire

recēns, (*gen.* -entis), recent, late;  
fresh, new

receptus, -ūs, *m.*, means of retreat,  
retreat

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, I take  
back, get back, recover; mē re-  
cipiō, I retire, retreat

recondō, -ere, -condidī, -conditus, I  
store away, hide; oculōs recondō,  
I close my eyes again.

recordor, I, I call to mind, recollect

recreō, I, I revive, refresh, restore

recrūdēscō, -ere, -duī, I break open  
afresh, bleed afresh

rectius, (*comp.* of rectē), more wisely  
rector, -ōris, *m.*, steersman, helmsman  
recuperō, I, I recover, regain

recūsō, I, I refuse, object, protest

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, I give back,  
restore, return

redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, I go back, return  
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, I reduce,  
form

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmtus, I buy  
back, ransom; win, gain

reditus, -us, *m.*, return

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, I lead  
back

referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, I carry  
back; restore; bring back word; mē  
referō, I go back, return; pedem

referō, I retire, retreat; relātum est,  
word was brought back

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, I restore,  
repair, refit; recruit

refugio, -ere, -fugī, I shrink from; es-  
cape, flee back, flee for safety

rēgālis, -is, -e, kingly, royal

rēgia, -ae, *f.*, royal palace

rēgina, -ae, *f.*, queen

regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, district

rēgius, -a, -um, befitting a king, royal  
rēgnātor, -ōris, *m.*, sovereign, mighty  
ruler

rēgnō, I, I rule, am king (*sometimes*  
*with gen.*)

rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, reign, rule; kingdom

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, I guide, direct;  
rule

reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I throw  
back, reject

relātus, *from* referō

relevō, I, I free from a burden, re-  
lieve, ease, console

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religious scruple,  
superstitious awe; something with  
religious significance, an omen

religō, I, I bind back (*of hair*); tie,  
tether

relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus, I  
leave, leave behind; abandon, give  
up

reliquiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, leavings, left-  
overs.



- reliquus, -a, -um, the other, the remaining, the rest of  
 rēmīgium, -ī, *n.*, oars; wings  
 remissus, *p.p.p.* of remittō; remissior, slack, less severe  
 remittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus, I send back  
 remoror, I, I delay, tarry  
 removeō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, I move back, remove, move  
 remūgiō, -īre, resound, re-echo  
 rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar  
 renīdeō, -ēre, I glitter, am bright; beam with joy, smile, grin  
 renovō, I, I renew, begin again  
 renūntiō, I, I report back, bring back word; renūntiātum est, word was brought back  
 reor, -ēri, ratus sum, I think  
 reparō, I, I recover, renew; I provide as a substitute, gain in exchange  
 repellō, -ere, reppuli, repulsus, I drive back, repel, repulse  
 repentē, *adv.*, suddenly, at once  
 repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected  
 reperiō, -īre, repperi, repertus, I find, discover  
 repetō, -ere, īvi, -itus, I seek again, go back to; repeat; crambē repetita, warmed over cabbage, *i.e.* an old story  
 repleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, I fill, fill up  
 rēpō, -ere, rēpsi, rēptus, I crawl, creep  
 repōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, I place back; restore, replace  
 reprehendō, -ere, -prehendi, -prehensus, I blame, find fault with, criticize  
 reprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus, I press back, check, repress, curb, chasten; hold back, restrain  
 requiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest, respite  
 requiescō, -ere, -quievi, I rest, am at peace; rest in peace; am dead  
 requirō, -ere, -quisivi, -quisitus, I seek, look for; seek in vain  
 rēs, rei, *f.*, thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, action, property; rēs gesta, exploit, deed, achievement; rēs pública, the state, constitution, government politics  
 reservō, I, I keep back, reserve, set aside  
 resideō, -ēre, sēdi, I sit down, sit  
 resistō, -ere, restiti, I resist, *with dat.*  
 resonō, I, I resound  
 respiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, I look back, look back at; see behind me, pay heed to, pay attention to  
 respondeō, -ēre, -spondi, -spōnsum, I reply, answer; respōnsum est, a reply was made  
 respōnsum, -ī, *n.*, answer  
 restinguō, -ere, -stīnxi, -stīnctus, I quench, extinguish, put out  
 restituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, I restore, renew  
 restō, -āre, -stiti, I remain, am left  
 resultō, I, I spring back, rebound; resound, re-echo  
 resupinus, -a, -um, lying back, outstretched  
 retinācula, -orum, *n. pl.*, a halter, tether  
 retineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, I hold back, detain; memoriā retineō, I remember, *with gen.*  
 retrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctus, I drag back; hold back  
 rettuli, *from referō*  
 reus, -ī, *m.*, a defendant, an accused person, the accused, *often to be rendered by a phrase*, under accusation; reum facere, bring to trial  
 revertor, -i, reversus sum, I return, turn back  
 revocō, I, I call back, recall  
 revolvō, -ere, -volvi, -volūtum, I roll over  
 rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king  
 Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the river Rhine  
 Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the river Rhone  
 rictus, -ūs, *m.*, maw, gaping jaws  
 rideō, -ēre, risi, risus, I laugh, laugh at  
 ridiculus, -a, -um, funny, droll, amusing  
 rigeō, -ēre, I stiffen, become hard  
 rīma, -ae, *f.*, crack, chink, fissure  
 rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank of a stream  
 risus, -ūs, *m.*, laughter  
 rivus, -ī, *m.*, river, stream  
 rixa, -ae, *f.*, quarrel, brawl, dispute

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak tree, oak; timber  
 rogō, *I*, *I* ask, invite, ask for  
 rogos, -i *m.*, pyre, funeral pile  
 Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman, *as a noun*,  
 Rōmānus, -i, *m.*, Roman  
 rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose  
 rōstrum, -i, *n.*, beak, prow  
 rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel  
 ruber, -bra, -brum, red; mare rubrum,  
 the Red Sea, *including the Persian Gulf*  
 rubescō, -ere, rubuī, *I* grow red, grow  
 pink  
 Rubicō, -ōnis, *m.*, the river Rubicon,  
 the boundary between Italy proper  
 and Cisalpine Gaul  
 rudēns, -entis, *m.*, rope; *pl.*, rigging,  
 cordage  
 rudis, -is, -e, unformed, rough, coarse,  
 coarsely woven  
 Rūfus, -i, *m.*, Rufus, *a Roman name*  
 ruīna, -ae, *f.*, destruction, ruin; fall,  
 tumbling down  
 rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, common talk, gos-  
 sip, rumour, hearsay; reputation,  
 fame  
 rupō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, *I* break,  
 smash  
 ruō, -ere, ruī, rūtum, *I* rush, rush  
 forth, stream forth; fall, fall down,  
 tumble down, topple, crash down;  
*trans.*, *I* upturn, heave  
 rupēs, -is, *f.*, cliff, rock, crag  
 rūsus, *adv.*, again (*for more than a*  
*second time*)  
 rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; lands, *a*  
 country-estate, farm  
 rūsticānus, -a, -um, of the country  
 rūsticus, -a, -um, rural, rustic, coun-  
 trified

## S

Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine, of the Sa-  
 bines  
 sacculus, -i, *m.*, small sack, purse  
 sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred, holy; *as*  
*a noun*, sacra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, holy  
 things, sacred rites  
 sacerdos, -dōtis, *m. and f.*, priest,  
 priestess  
 saeculum, -i, *n.*, generation, age,  
 epoch  
 saepe, *adv.*, (saepius, saepissimē),  
 often  
 saepiō, -ire, saepsi, saeptus, *I* sur-  
 round, enclose  
 saevus, -a, -um, savage, cruel  
 sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow  
 sagittārius, -a, -um, of an archer; *as*  
*a m. noun*, sagittārius, -i, archer  
 Saguntum, -i, *n.*, Saguntum, *a town*  
*in Spain, south of the Ebro River*  
 sāl, salis, *m.*, sea; brine; salt; wit  
 Saliāris, -is, -e, of the Salii (*a college*  
*of priests*) Salian; splendid, sumpt-  
 uous (*of banquets*)  
 salignus, -a, -um, of willow, willow  
 saliō, -ire, -uī, saltum, *I* leap, spring;  
 occur  
 salsus, -a, -um, witty, facetious; salty  
 saltūs, -ūs, *m.*, mountain-pass  
 salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety, welfare, salva-  
 tion  
 salūtāris, -is, -e, safe  
 salūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, salutation; formal  
 morning reception of clients by a  
 patron  
 salūtō, *I*, *I* greet, salute  
 sānctus, -a, -um, sacred; august  
 sānē, *adv.*, truly, certainly, indeed  
 sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood; carnage,  
 slaughter  
 saniēs, -ēi, *f.*, blood, gore  
 sapiēns, (*gen. -entis*), wise; able to  
 reason  
 sapienter, *adv.*, wisely  
 sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom  
 sarmentum, -i, *n.*, twig, brushwood  
 sat, *see* satis  
 satietās, -ātis, *f.*, a being sated, appe-  
 tite (*as satisfied*), satiety; weariness,  
 boredom  
 satis, *adv. and neut. pron. with gen.*,  
 enough, sufficient  
 Sāturnius, -a, -um, of Saturn; *as a*  
*noun*, Sāturnius, -i, *m.*, son of  
 Saturn, *an epithet of Jupiter*  
 saucius, -a, -um, wounded  
 saxum, -i, *n.*, rock, stone; cliff  
 scaena, -ae, *f.*, stage  
 scalmus, -i, *m.*, oar-pin, oar-lock  
 scandō, -ere, *I* climb  
 scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat

- scelerātus, -a, -um, wicked, accursed  
 scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, sin, guilt  
 scēptrum, -ī, *n.*, sceptre  
 Schoenēia, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Schoeneus, *i.e.* Atalanta  
 sciēns, (*gen.*, scientis), knowing, skillful  
 scientia, *ae, f.*, knowledge, science  
 scilicet, *adv.*, you may be sure; of course, no doubt; doubtless, (*in irony*)  
 sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, I know  
 Scipiō, -ōnis, *m.*, (1) Publius Cornelius Scipio, *consul in 218 B.C.* (2) his son, Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, *conqueror of Hannibal at Zama in 202 B.C.*  
 scopulus, -ī, *m.*, rock, cliff, crag  
 scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, I write  
 scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield  
 secō, -āre, -uī, sectus, I cut, cut through  
 sēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, secret place  
 sector, I, I search for, try to find  
 secundus, -a, -um, second; favourable, successful  
 sēcūrus, -a, -um, unconcerned, untroubled, free from care  
 sed, *conj.*, but  
 sēdecim, *indecl. adj.*, sixteen  
 sedeō, -ere, sēdī, sessum, I sit; sit idle; am encamped  
 sēdēs, -is, *f.*, seat; abode; scene, theatre (of war); *plur.*, depths (l. 24, p. 168)  
 sedīle, -is, *n.*, seat, bench  
 sēditio, -ōnis, *f.*, mutiny, revolt, sedition  
 sēdulus, -a, -um, fussy, zealous, busy, attentive  
 sēgnis, -is, -e, slow, slow-moving  
 sēgregō, I, I separate, divide  
 sella, -ae, *f.*, seat; sella clausa, a closed sedan-chair  
 semel, *adv.*, once; once for all  
 Semiramis, -idis, *f.*, Semiramis, a queen of Assyria, the wife of King Ninus, the legendary founder of Babylon  
 semper, *adv.*, always  
 sempiternus, -a, -um, eternal, undying  
 sēmustus, -a, -um, half-burnt  
 senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate; an audience with the senate  
 senatūs-consultum, -ī, *n.*, decree of the senate  
 senectūs, -tūtis, *f.*, old age  
 senex, senis, *m.*, old man  
 senilis, -is, -e, of an old man, aged  
 senior, -ōris, *m.*, old man (*compar. of senex*)  
 sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, sense, feeling of sensation  
 sententia, -ae, *f.*, opinion; sententiam dicō, I express an opinion  
 sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, I feel, perceive  
 sepeliō, -īre, -ivī, sepultus, I bury  
 septem, *indecl. adj.*, seven  
 septentrionēs, -um, *m., pl.*, the north (*lit.*, the seven plough-oxen, *i.e.*, the Great Bear)  
 septimus, -a, -um, seventh  
 septingentī, -ae, -a, seven hundred  
 septuāgēsīmus, -a, -um, seventieth  
 sepulcrum, -ī, *n.*, burial; grave  
 sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial, funeral  
 sepultus, -a, -um, *p.p.p. of sepeliō*, buried; as a noun, sepultus, -ī, *m.*, the buried lad  
 sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, I follow, pursue  
 sera, -ae, *f.*, bar, bolt  
 serēnus, -a, -um, cheerful, tranquil, serene  
 Sergestus, -ī, *m.*, Sergestus, one of Aeneas' band of Trojan refugees  
 seriēs, -ēī, *f.*, succession  
 sērius, *comp. adv.*, later, too late  
 sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, talk, speech; story  
 serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, I sow  
 serpēs, -entis, *m. and f.*, serpent, snake, dragon  
 serpō, -ere, serpsī, serptum, I creep, crawl; creep over, steal over  
 sērus, -a, -um, late; too late  
 servilis, -is, -e, of a slave, servile; in servilem modum, after the manner of slaves, like slaves  
 serviō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, I serve, with *dat.*  
 servō, I, I save; guard; keep, observe  
 servus, -ī, *m.*, slave  
 seu (or sive), *conj.*, or if; seu . . . seu, if . . . or if, whether . . . or

sevērus, -a, -um, stern, harsh  
 sex, *indecl. adj.*, six  
 sextus, -a, -um, sixth  
 si, *conj.*, if, even if  
 Sibylla, -ae, *f.*, the Sibyl of Cumae, prophetess and priestess of Apollo  
 sic, *adv.*, thus, in this way; as follows  
 siccus, -a, -um, dry; siccum, -i, *n.*, dry ground  
 Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily  
 Sicoris, -is, *m.*, Sicoris (river), a tributary of the Ebro, now known as the Segre  
 Siculus, -a, -um, of Sicily, Sicilian  
 sicut, *conj.*, just as, as  
 sidus, -eris, *n.*, star, constellation  
 signifer, -i, *m.*, standard-bearer, ensign  
 signō, *l*, I mark, mark out  
 signum, -i, *n.*, signal; military standard  
 silentium, -i, *n.*, silence  
 silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, wood  
 similis, -is, -e, like, similar; to, with *dat.*  
 simplex, (*gen. simplicis*), simple, plain; artless  
 simul, *adv.*, at the same time  
 simul atque, *conj.*, sometimes written simul ac before a consonant, as soon as  
 simulō, *l*, I pretend, feign  
 sin, *conj.*, if on the contrary, but if  
 sine, *prep. with abl.*, without  
 singulāris, -is, -e, singular, remarkable, extraordinary, unparalleled  
 singuli, -ae, -a, one by one, one each, one per man, one at a time; single  
 sinister, -tra, -trum, left (*hand*)  
 sinō, -ere, sivi, situs, I allow, let  
 sinus, ūs, *m.*, hollow, fold; gulf, bay; breast  
 Sithonius, -a, -um, Sithonian, Thracian, Sithonia being the central peninsula of three in the Thracian Chersonese  
 sitis, -is, *f.*, thirst, drought  
 situs, -ūs, *m.*, site; pile, structure  
 sive, (*or seu*), *conj.*, or if; sive . . . sive, if . . . or if, whether . . . or  
 sobrius, -a, -um, temperate, moderate  
 societās, -ātis, *f.*, fellowship, association; partnership

socius, -i, *m.*, ally; friend, comrade  
 Sōcratēs, -is, *m.*, Socrates, a Greek philosopher  
 Sōcraticī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, followers of Socrates  
 sodālis, -is, *m.*, or *f.*, intimate friend, comrade  
 sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun  
 solacium, -i, *n.*, comfort, consolation  
 sōleō, -ēre, sōlitus sum, I am accustomed  
 sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.*, loneliness, solitude  
 solium, -i, *n.*, seat, throne  
 sollicitō, *l*, I tamper with  
 sollicitus, a, -um, distracted by cares, in a state of unrest  
 solum, -i, *n.*, soil, ground  
 solum, *adv.*, only  
 sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole, only  
 solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus, I loosen, untie; set free; pay money, pay; discharge; nāvem solvō, I set sail, weigh anchor; mercēdem solvō, I make payment; iusiurandum solvō, I carry out my oath, discharge my oath  
 somnus, -i, *m.*, sleep  
 sonitus, -ūs, *m.*, sound, note  
 sonō, -āre, -uī, -itum, I roar, resound, echo  
 sonōrus, -a, -um, roaring  
 sonus, -i, *m.*, sound; noise  
 sordēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, squalor  
 sordidus, -a, -um, shabby, mean; soiled, squalid; disgraceful  
 soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister  
 sors, sortis, *f.*, a lot; fate; portion, due; oracle; response (*of an oracle*)  
 sōspes, (*gen. sospitis*), saved, safe, unharmed  
 spargō, -ere, -si, -sus, I scatter, strew  
 spatium, -i, *n.*, interval, space, distance; course, track  
 speciēs, -ēi, *f.*, appearance  
 speciōsus, -a, -um, showy, handsome, brilliant, glittering, spectacular  
 spectāculum, -i, *n.*, a show, sight; *plur.*, the seats of the spectators  
 spectātor, -ōris, *m.*, spectator, watcher  
 spectō, *l*, I face, look at, regard  
 speculātōrius, -a, -um, for reconnaissance  
 spēro, *l*, I hope, hope for



spēs, speī, *f.*, hope  
 spīrō, *l.*, I breathe, breathe on, blow  
 splendidus, -a, -um, bright, clear, glittering; magnificent  
 splendor, -ōris, *m.*, brilliance, glory  
 spoliō, *l.*, I rob, deprive  
 (spōns, spontis), *f.*, found only in *abl.*,  
 sponte, of one's own accord, freely,  
 willingly  
 sportula, -ae, *f.*, a little basket; hence  
 (since a patrōnus distributed in  
 such baskets his presents of food  
 or money to his clientēs), dole, gift,  
 'handout'  
 spūmō, *l.*, I foam, froth  
 Spūrinna, -ae, *m.*, Spurrinna, the  
 soothsayer who warned Julius  
 Caesar to "beware the Ides of  
 March"  
 squāleō, -ēre, -uī, I am unkempt,  
 ragged  
 squālor, -ōris, *m.*, slovenliness, filth,  
 squalor  
 stabiliō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, I secure, firmly  
 establish  
 stabilitās, -ātis, *f.*, steadiness, stability  
 statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately  
 statio, -ōnis, *f.*, station, post; guard,  
 picket; in statione, on guard  
 statua, -ae, *f.*, statue  
 statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, I decide, fix,  
 set  
 stella, -ae, *f.*, star; stella crīnīta, comet  
 sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus, I lay low;  
 scatter, spread  
 stertō, -ere, -uī, I snore  
 stipendium, -ī, *n.*, tax, tribute; pay,  
 salary, wages (*esp. of soldiers*);  
 military service, campaign  
 stipō, *l.*, I throng about, attend  
 stipula, -ae, *f.*, straw; dried stalks,  
 thatch  
 stipulor, *l.*, I bargain, stipulate  
 stirps, stirpis, *f.*, stock, offspring  
 stō, -āre, steti, statum, I stand  
 stomachor, *l.*, I am irritated, angry  
 stomachus, -ī, *m.*, temper; irritation,  
 displeasure  
 strātum, -ī, *n.*, pavement (*of street  
 or road*); strāta viārum, paved  
 streets  
 strāvī, from sternō  
 strepitus, -ūs, *m.*, noise, din, tumult

strīdor, -ōris, *m.*, whistling, creaking  
 stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, I draw  
 (*of a sword*); graze, touch  
 struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, I plan,  
 contrive, devise  
 studium, -ī, *n.*, enthusiasm; study;  
 pursuit  
 suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, I per-  
 suade, induce, with *dat.*  
 suāvis, -is, -e, sweet, pleasing  
 suāvitās, -ātis, *f.*, sweetness, attrac-  
 tiveness  
 sub, *prep.* (1) with *abl.* (*involving  
 no motion*), under, beneath; at the  
 foot of; close by, near to (2) with  
*acc.* (*involving motion*), under,  
 close to; (*of time*) just before, close  
 to, at, about  
 subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, I come up,  
 come on; move up to; undergo, en-  
 counter  
 subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I place  
 under; subiectus, -a, -um (*p.p.p.*),  
 adjacent; as a noun, subiectī,  
 -ōrum, *m.*, the conquered, the van-  
 quished  
 subigō, -ere, -ēgi, -actus, I subdue;  
 drive on, push on  
 subitō, *adv.*, suddenly  
 subitus, -a, -um, sudden  
 sublātus, from tollō  
 sublevō, *l.*, I help, relieve, support,  
 assist  
 sublimē, *adv.*, on high, aloft, in the  
 air  
 sublimis, -is, -e, lofty, uplifted  
 submergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus, I sink  
 submitō, -ere, -misi, -missus, I put  
 down, lower; bow to; aid  
 submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, I  
 move on, disperse, drive off; re-  
 move  
 subnixus, -a, -um, resting on, sup-  
 ported by, seated on  
 subolēs, -is, *f.*, offspring  
 subsellium, -ī, *n.*, a low bench, seat;  
 with rei (reus), a defendant's  
 bench  
 subsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, I follow  
 closely, follow hard, follow  
 subsidium, -ī, *n.*, troops in reserve,  
 relief, support, succour

- subterfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, I escape, avoid
- subtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, I withdraw, take away
- Subūra, -ae, f., the Subura, a densely-populated quarter in the heart of Rome, with booths and vegetable markets
- subvectō, I, I convoy, transport
- subvolvō, -ere, I roll up
- succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, I come under, move up to, advance; succeed, replace, relieve, *with dat.*; stoop to, take up (a load, *with dat.*)
- succingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus, I gird up, tuck up
- succrēscō, -ere, -crēvī, I grow from below; be freshly supplied
- sūdor, -ōris, m., sweat, perspiration
- suī, sibi, sē, sē, (or sēsē), *reflex. pron.*, himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them; inter sē (to, with, from, etc.) one another
- sulcus, -ī, m., furrow
- Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, born about 138 B.C., died about 78 B.C.; dictator 82 B.C.; 2. Publius Sulla, nephew of the dictator
- sum, esse, fui, I am, exist; *with gen.*, belong to
- summa, -ae, f., sum-total; control; summa imperii, supreme command
- summus, -a, -um, *superl. of superus*, highest, topmost; supreme, greatest
- sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, I take; take up, assume, receive
- suntō, an old third pers. pl. imperative of sum, let there be
- suōpte, abl. of suus, strengthened by the suffix -pte
- super, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, over
- superbia, -ae, f., pride, proud honour
- superbus, -a, -um, haughty, proud
- superinicio, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I throw on, throw over
- superior, -ior, -ius, *comp.*, of superus, higher, upper; former, previous; loca superiōra, heights
- superō, I, I conquer, defeat; surpass
- supersum, -esse, -fui, I survive, am left, *with dat.*
- superus, -a, -um, above; dī superi, deūm superūm, (*gen. plur.*), m., the gods above
- supinus, -a, -um, lying on the back; of hands, with palms up; uplifted
- supplex, (*gen.*, -licis), in supplication, humble, humbly
- supplicium, -ī, n., punishment (*usually of death*); supplicium sūmō I inflict punishment
- suppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, I put under; put in place of, substitute; substitute falsely, falsify, forge; suppositus, under false pretences
- suprā, *adv.*, above, over; *prep. with acc.*, over, above, beyond
- suprēmus, -a, -um, *superl. of superus*, highest, topmost, last
- surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, I rise, get up, stand up
- surripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, I steal, take secretly
- suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, I undertake
- suscitō, I, I stir up, kindle; wake, rouse
- suspēnsus, -a, -um, anxious, troubled, distracted
- suspiciō, -ere, suspēxī, suspectus, I look up at, gaze at
- suspīcor, I, I mistrust, apprehend, suspect
- sustentō, I, I uphold, support, sustain
- sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, I hold out against, withstand, check; keep
- suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own, *reflex.*; as a noun, suī, suōrum, m., his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen; sua, suōrum, n., his (their) possessions
- Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., Syracuse, chief city of Sicily
- Syrācūsānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Syracusans, the inhabitants of Syracuse
- Syria, -ae, f., Syria
- Syriacus, -a, -um, of Syria, from Syria, a country roughly corresponding to Asiatic Turkey, conquered by Pompey about 64 B.C.

Syrtes, ium, *f. pl.*, the Syrtis, *two shallow bays, Syrtis Major and Syrtis Minor, on the N. coast of Africa; the adjacent coast of Africa*

## T

T., *abbreviation for Titus*

tabella, -ae, *f.*, a small board; a wax tablet; a little picture, small painting

taberna, -ae, *f.*, place of business, shop

tabescō, -ere, tabui, I melt

tabula, -ae, *f.*, picture, tablet

tabulātum, -ī, *n.*, floor, storey

taceō, -ēre, tacui, tacitum, I am silent

tacitus, -a, -um, silent, still

taeda, -ae, *f.*, torch; wedding-torch, marriage, wedlock

tālea, -ae, *f.*, ingot (*of iron*)

talentum, -ī, *n.*, a talent of gold

tālis, -is, -e, such, of such a kind;

tālis . . . quālis, such . . . as  
tam, *adv.*, so; tam . . . quam, so . . . as

tamen, *adv.*, however, yet, nevertheless

tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last

tangō, -ere, tetigi, tāctus, I touch, influence; reach

tantum, *adv.*, so much; only, merely

tantundem, *adv.*, just so much, to the same extent; all the same

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so big; tantus . . . quantus, as great . . . as

tardē, *adv.*, slowly

tardus, -a, -um, slow

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull, ox

tēctum, -ī, *n.*, house, dwelling

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, I cover, protect; adorn, crown; roof over

tēgula, -ae, *f.*, tile, roof-tile

tellūs, -ūris, *f.*, the earth; land, ground

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, recklessly

temperō, I, I am temperate; am indulgent; regulate, manage, govern, calm; *p.p.p.*, temperate

tempestās, -tātis, *f.*, weather, storm, hurricane; Tempestātēs, *pl.*, the storm-deities

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple

temptō, I, I test, try; investigate, sound out

tempus, -oris, *n.*, time; opportunity

tendō, -ere, tetendi, tentus or tēnsus, I stretch, stretch out; bend

tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, darkness, gloom, shade

Tenedus, -ī, *f.*, Tenedus

teneō, -ēre, -ui, I hold, bind; have; place under obligation; reach

tener, -era, -erum, tender, delicate, fair

tenuis, -is, -e, thin, fine, slender

tepeō, -ēre, I am warm, steaming

tepidus, -a, -um, luke-warm, warm

ter, *adv.*, thrice, three times

Terentius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Terentius

Varro, consul in 216 B.C.

tergum, -ī, *n.*, back, rear; terga vertō, I turn tail, turn and flee; ā tergō, from, in the rear

terminus, -ī, *m.*, boundary-line, limit

terō, -ere, trivi, tritus, I rub; tread upon; of time, fritter away, waste

terra, -ae, *f.*, land, earth, country

terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, I frighten, alarm

terribilis, -is, -e, dreadful, awful, terrible

terror, -ōris, *m.*, terror, panic, alarm

tertiō, *adv.*, for the third time

tertius, -a, -um, third

testa, -ae, *f.*, piece of burned clay; tile; piece of broken earthenware, potsherd

testis, -is, *m. f.*, witness

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise, shell; lyre, lute; vaulted roof, dome

tetigi, from tangō

Teucri, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Teucri, descendants of Teucer, Trojans

textum, -ī, *n.*, cloth, piece of cloth

Thapsus, -ī, *f.*, Thapsus, a town in North Africa

theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theatre

Thisbē, -ēs (*a Greek decln.*), *f.*, Thisbe, a girl of Babylon, in love with Pyramus

Ti., *abbreviation for Tiberius*

tibicen, -inis, *m.*, flute-player, flutist; pillar, support, prop

Tiburs, -urtis, Tiburtine, of or from Tibur, *modern Tivoli*

Ticinus, -i, *m.*, the Ticinus, a river in Cisalpine Gaul

timeō, -ēre, -uī, I fear, feel or have fear, am anxious, am afraid of, *with acc.*

timidus, -a, -um, fearful, timid, cowardly, afraid

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, terror

tingō, -ere, -tinxī, tinctus, I wet; colour; stain

tintinō, I, I tinkle, ring

titulus, -i, *m.*, title of honour, fame

Titus, -i, *m.*, Titus

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga

togātus, -a, -um, wearing a toga

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, I raise, lift, remove; extol

tonitrus, -ūs, *m.*, thunder

tonō, -āre, -uī, I make a loud noise

tormentum, -i, *n.*, artillery piece

torpeō, -ēre, I am stiff, numb, inactive

Torquātus, -i, *m.*, Torquatus, a Roman name

torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortus, I twist, turn; torture; control

torsit, *from torqueō*

torus, -i, *m.*, swelling; cushion; couch

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many; tot . . . quot, as many . . . as

totidem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many  
tōtiēns (or tōtiēs), *adv.*, so many times, so often

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire, all; *freely*, entirely, altogether

tractō, I, I touch, take in hand, handle

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, I give up, surrender; hand down

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, I lead over, lead across; hand over, surrender, assign, deliver, resign, hand down

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, I drag, pull; lure on; derive, obtain

trāciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, I take across; I cross

tranquillus, -a, -um, quiet, calm, unruffled

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, over

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itus, I go across, cross

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī -lātus, I carry over, transfer; remove  
trānscredior, -i, -gressus sum, I cross, cross over

transigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, I bring to an end, settle, finish

trāsmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, I send across; go across, pass over

Trānspadānus, -a, -um, beyond the Padus (*i.e.* the Po) river

trānstrum, -i, *n.*, bench, thwart of a boat

transverberō, I, I pierce through

Trasumennus, -i, *m.*, Trasimene, a lake in Etruria

Trebia, -ae, *f.*, the Trebia, a river in northern Italy

trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred

tremēscō, -ere, I tremble, am shaken

tremō, -ere, -uī, I tremble, shake, quiver

trepidō, I, I am in confusion, bustle about; am alarmed, anxious, nervous, panicky; dread

trepidus, -a, -um, trembling, alarmed, panicky

trēs, trēs, tria, three

tribūnus, -i, *m.*, a tribune; tribūnus militum, a military tribune (*army officer*); tribūnus plēbis, a tribune of the people (*civil officer, one of ten officials elected annually; originally intended to protect the plebians*)

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, I distribute; grant, assign, entrust, award

tridēns, -dēns, -dēns (-dentis) three-pronged

triennium, -i, *n.*, three year period, three years

trīgintā, *indecl., adj.*, thirty

triquetrus, -a, -um, triangular

tristis, -is, -e, gloomy, sad

triumphō, I, I celebrate a triumph, have a victory parade; triumph, exult, am glad

triumphus, -i, *m.*, triumphal procession; triumph, victory

Trōia, -ae, *f.*, Troy

Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan; as a noun, Trōiānus, -i, *m.*, Trojan



Trōiugena, -ae, *m.*, son of Troy, descendant of Trojans; the Romans (*i.e.* the old Roman nobility), aristocrat, 'blueblood'

trucidō, *l*, I slaughter, slay, massacre  
tū, tuī, you, *sing.*

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet

tueor, -ēri, tūtus sum, I watch over, guard, protect

tulī, from ferō

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time

tumēō, -ēre, I am swollen, puffed out  
tumulō, *l*, I bury, entomb

tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, uproar, disorder, confusion; revolt, rebellion

tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound; tomb

turba, -ae, *f.*, crowd, large number; crowd of supporters

turbidus, -a, -um, disordered; wild, tumultuous

turbō, -binis, *m.*, whirlwind

turgidus, -a, -um, swollen, swelling (*sail*)

turma, -ae, *f.*, squadron, troop (*of cavalry*)

turpis, -is, -e, disgraceful, foul

turris, -is, *f.*, tower

Tūsculānus, -a, -um, of Tusculum

tussiō, -ire, I have a cough, cough

tussis, -is, *f.*, a cough

tūtēla, -ae, *f.*, protection; keeper, guardian, protector

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

tuus, -a, -um, your, your own, *addressing one person*

tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, sovereign, king, absolute ruler; despot, tyrant

Tyrius, -a, -um, Tyrian, of Tyre

Tyrii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Tyrians, Carthaginians

Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um, Tyrrhenian, Etruscan, Tuscan

## U

ubi, *adv.*, where; *conj.*, when

ubicumque, *adv.*, wherever

ubique, *adv.*, everywhere

Ucalegōn, -ontis, *m.*, a Trojan; proximus ārdet Ucalegōn, *i.e.* the house of Ucalegon next door is on fire

ūdus, -a, -um, wet, damp

ulciscor, -ī, ultus sum, I punish, take vengeance on

Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, Ulysses

ūllus, -a, -um, some, any

ulterior, -ior, -ius, farther, further

ultimus, -a, -um, most distant, farthest

ultor, -ōris, *f.*, punisher, avenger

ultrā, *adv.*, beyond that, more

ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily, deliberately; taking the lead, taking the initiative, first

Umbra, -bra, -brum, Umbrian, from Umbria

umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow, gloom, darkness; a shadow, shade, spirit, ghost

umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder

umquam, *adv.*, ever

ūnā, *adv.* (ūnā viā), together with, along with, all together

unda, -ae, *f.*, wave, water

unde, *interrog. adv.*, from what place, from where, whence

undique, *adv.*, from, on all sides, from all quarters, everywhere

unguentum, -ī, *n.*, ointment, perfume

unguis, -is, *m.*, claw, nail, talon

ūnicus, -a, -um, sole, single, just one

ūniversus, -a, -um, all together, in a body; *as a noun*, ūniversī, -ōrum, the whole unit, all the men together

ūnus, -a, -um, one, a single; alone; only; ad unum, to a man; ūnā (*sc. viā*), together, along

urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, Roman bred; refined, courteous, elegant, nice

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city

urgeō, -ēre, urſī, I hang heavy over; press, press hard; court, woo; brood over; press toward, press out to

urna, -ae, *f.*, urn, jar

ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstum, I burn, burn up, annoy; *in pass.*, burn with passion

usque, *adv.*, all the way, even; with quaque, in every place, at every step

ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, practice; experience; advantage, service; ūsul sum, I am of service

ut, *conj.* with *indic.*, when; just as, as; with *subj.*, that, in order that, often best translated by *English* *in*-*fin*, with to; with verbs of fearing, that . . . not

uter, -tra, -trum, which (of two)  
utroque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both; *m. plur.*, both sides  
uterus, -i, *m.*, womb; belly

utilis, -is, -e, useful

utilitās, -tātis, *f.*, usefulness, expediency

utinam, *adv.*, Would that! I wish that!

ūtōr, -ī, ūsus sum, I use, have the use of, employ, show, display, with *abl.*

utrimque, *adv.*, on either side, on both sides

utrum, *conj.*, whether; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or

ūvidus, -a, -um, wet, dripping

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife; uxōrem dūcō, with *acc.*, I take to wife, marry

## V

vacō, I, I enjoy leisure, keep holiday  
vacuus, -a, -um, empty; without; with *abl.* fancy free

vadimōnium, -ī, *n.*, promise of appearance in court secured by bail; bail, security; with *faciō*, I require bail

vādō, -ere, I go, walk

vadum, -ī, *n.*, shoal; water

vagor, I, I wander, straggle

vagus, -a, -um, wandering, straying

valē, valēte, farewell; good-bye!

valēns, -ēns, -ēns, (*gen.* *valentis*), vigorous, powerful

valeō, -ēre, -uī, I am well

valētudō, -inis, *f.*, state of health, health (*good or bad*); infirmity

vāllum, -ī, *n.*, rampart, wall, earthen-work

validus, -a, -um, strong, mighty

vallis, -is, *f.*, valley, ravine

vānus, -a, -um, empty, vain, idle

vapor, -ōris, *m.*, heat, fire

vappa, -ae, *f.*, wine without flavour, cheap wine

vāpulō, I, I get a cudgelling, am beaten

varius, -a, -um, different, changeable

Varrō, -ōnis, *m.*, 1. Gaius Terentius Varro, a consul at Cannae; 2. Marcus Varro, an officer of Pompey

Vārus, -ī, *m.*, the Varus, a river forming the frontier between Italy and Gaul, the modern Var

vāstitās, -tātis, *f.*, devastation

vastō, I, I ravage, lay waste

vāstus, -a, -um, vast, huge

vatēs, -is, *m. f.*, bard; prophet, prophetess

-ve, *conj.* *enclitic*, or

vēctigālīa, -ium, *n. pl.*, taxes, revenues

vectis, -is, *m.*, crow-bar, lever

vehemēns, (*gen.* *vehementis*), violent, forceful, impetuous

vehementer, eagerly, violently, vigorously, forcibly, severely, seriously

vehō, -ere, vexī, vēctus, I bear, carry; equō, (*equis*) vehor, I ride on horseback

vel, *conj.*, or, or if you like, (*where the choice is a voluntary one*)

vēlāmen, -minis, *n.*, robe, garment, dressing robe; wrap; mantle

velle, from volō

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, sail

velut, *adv.*, just as, as if

vēnābulum, -ī, *n.*, hunting-spear

vēnālis, -is, -e, for sale

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.*, hunter

vendō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, I sell

venēnātus, -a, -um, poisoned

venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison

venia, -ae, *f.*, kindness, forgiveness; pardon

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, I come

venter, -tris, *m.*, stomach

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind

Venus, -eris, *f.*, Venus, goddess of Love and Beauty; venus, -eris, *f.*, love

Venusia, -ae, *f.*, Venusia, a town about thirty miles south-west of Cannae; famous later as the birth-place of the poet Horace

venustus, -a, -um, charming, agreeable

vēr, vēris, *n.*, spring; primō vēre, at the beginning of spring

(verber), -eris, *n.*, lash, whip  
 verberō, *l*, I lash  
 verbum, -i, *n.*, word  
 Vercingetorix, -igis, *m.*, Vercingetorix,  
*a Gallic chieftain*  
 vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, I fear  
 vergō, -ere, I turn, bend, look (*of the  
 lie of the land*)  
 vēritās, -tātis, *f.*, truth  
 vērō, *adv.*, to be sure, in truth, indeed  
 versō, *l*, I turn, twist  
 versor, *l*, I move about, move up and  
 down; am busy  
 versus, -ūs, *m.*, line, row; (*in writing*),  
 a line, verse  
 vertex, -icis, *m.*, whirlpool, eddy;  
 crown of the head, the head; top,  
 peak of anything  
 vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, I turn, overturn,  
 overthrow  
 vērus, -a, -um, true  
 Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, the goddess of  
 the Hearth  
 vester, -tra, -trum, your, your own,  
*addressing more than one person*  
 vestibulum, -i, *n.*, a forecourt, en-  
 trance-hall, porch; door  
 vestigium, -i, *n.*, footstep; trace; *in*  
*plur.* ruins  
 vestimentum, -i, *n.*, clothing, garment  
 vestiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, I clothe  
 vestis, -is, *f.*, clothing, dress, robe;  
 wrap, mantle  
 vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, I forbid,  
 order . . . not  
 vetus, (*gen.*, -eris), old, ancient  
 vexillum, -i, *n.*, standard, flag; signal  
 flag  
 vēxō, *l*, I shake; trouble, harass;  
 worry, vex; infest  
 via, -ae, *f.*, road, way, street  
 viātor, -ōris, *m.*, traveller, passenger  
 (vicis), *no nom. sing.*; *gen. vicis, acc.*  
*vicem, abl.*, vice, change; inter-  
 change, turn, shift; *in vicem, adv.*  
*phrase*, in turn, in its turn  
 vicies, *adv.*, twenty times  
 viciniā, *ae, f.*, neighbourhood; prox-  
 imity, propinquity, nearness  
 vicinus, -a, -um, neighbouring; *as a*  
*noun*, vicinus, -i, *m.*, neighbour  
 victor, -ōris, *m.*, victor; *as an adj.* vic-  
 torious

victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory  
 victrix, -icis, *f.*, *adj.* victorious  
 victus, -ūs, *m.*, sustenance; comfort-  
 able living  
 vīcus, -i, *m.*, village  
 videō, -ere, vidī, vīsus, I see; *in pass.*,  
 I am seen, seem, appear; it seems  
 good or best  
 vigil, vigilis, *m.*, sentinel, watchman  
 vigilia, -ae, *f.*, lack of sleep; watch,  
*one-fourth of the night-time*  
 vigilō, *l*, I watch, keep awake; am  
 watchful; awake  
 viginti, *indecl. adj.*, twenty  
 vilicus, -i, *m.*, bailiff; house steward,  
 agent  
 vilis, -is, -e, cheap, worthless  
 villa, -ae, *f.*, country-house, estate;  
 farm-house; cottage  
 villula, -ae, *f.*, a little villa, country-  
 house  
 villus, -i, *m.*, shaggy hair  
 vinclum, -i, *n.*, bond, fetter  
 vincō, -ere, vici victus, I conquer, de-  
 feat, overcome  
 vinculum, -i, *n.*, bond, fetter, chain  
 vindex, -icis, *m.*, defender, protector;  
 avenger, punisher; liberator  
 vinum, -i, *n.*, wine  
 violēns, (*gen. -entis*), wild, turbulent  
 vir, viri, *m.*, man, husband  
 vireō, -ēre, be green, bloom, flourish  
 virēs, -ium, *f. pl. from vīs*, strength  
 virga, -ae, *f.*, twig; bough; rod  
 virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden  
 viridis, -is, -e, green, fresh  
 virilis, -is, -e, manly, virile, masculine  
 virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage;  
 ability, merit; virtue  
 vis, vim, vī, *f.*, force; violence, fury;  
*in plur.*, virēs, virium, strength,  
 powers; summis viribus, with all  
 one's strength  
 visō, -ere, vīsi, vīsus, I behold, gaze  
 upon  
 vīsus, -ūs, *m.*, sight, spectacle  
 vita, -ae, *f.*, life; vitam agere, to live  
 vitis, -is, *f.*, vine, grape-vine  
 vitium, -i, *n.*, fault, flaw, blemish;  
 vice  
 vitō, *l*, I avoid, escape  
 vitrum, -i, *n.*, crystal, glass; woad,  
*a plant used for dyeing blue*

vīvō, -ere, vixī, victum, I live  
 vivus, -a, -um, alive, in life  
 vix, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly  
 vocō, I, I call, summon, invite; call  
 upon, invoke; call for, ask for  
 vōcula, -ae, *f.*, small, feeble voice  
 volātus, -ūs, *m.*, flying, flight  
 volō, I, I fly  
 volō, velle, voluī, I wish, am willing,  
 want  
 volūbilis, -is, -e, rolling  
 volucer, -cris, -cre, winged, swift  
 voluntārius, -a, -um, voluntary; vol-  
 untārii, (*sc. milites*), volunteers  
 voluntās, -tātis, *f.*, willingness, good-  
 will  
 voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, enjoyment; pleas-  
 ure, delight; passion  
 Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volusenus,  
 a tribune in Caesar's army  
 volvō, -ere, volvi, volūtus, I roll  
 vōmer, -eris, *m.*, ploughshare  
 vorō, I, I swallow up, eat greedily,  
 devour

vōs, vestrum or vestri, *pl. of tū*  
 vōtīvus, -a, -um, promised by a vow,  
 votive  
 vōtum, -ī, *n.*, prayer, vow; hope  
 voveō, -ēre, vovi, vōtus, I vow; pray  
 for  
 vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, utterance, cry,  
 word  
 vulgus, -ī, *n.*, crowd, common people  
 vulnerō, I, I wound  
 vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound  
 vultus, -ūs, *m.*, face, countenance;  
 look, gaze; *pl.*, features

## Z

Zama, -ae, *f.*, Zama, a town in Nu-  
 midia  
 Zēla, -ae, *f.*, Zela, a town in Asia  
 Minor  
 Zephyrus, -ī, *m.*, the West wind; *pl.*,  
 winds, breezes



# PRONUNCIATION OF NAMES IN ENGLISH

## Phonetics:

ā as in date  
ī as in mine  
ō as in vote  
û as in music

a as in cat  
i as in tin  
o as in nod  
u as in fuss

Acestes, A-sēs-teez  
Achates, A-kā-teez  
Achilles, A-kīl-leez  
Aeneas, Ee-neē-ass  
Aeneid, Ee-neē-id  
Aeolia, Ee-ō-lee-a  
Aeolus, Eē-o-lus  
Agamemnon, A-ga-mém-non  
Anchises, An-kī-seez  
Antiochus, An-tī-o-kus  
Apollo, A-pól-lō  
Arcturus, Ark-tū-rus  
Ascanius, A-scā-nee-us  
Atalanta, A-ta-lán-ta  
Aurora, Aw-rō-ra  
Baal, Bā-al  
Bacchus, Bák-kus  
Baucis, Baw-kis  
Boötes, Bo-ō-teez  
Centaurus, Sen-taw-rus  
Ceres, Sē-reez  
Charon, Ká-ron  
Charybdis, Kar-ib-dis  
Chimaera, Ki-meē-ra  
Cloanthus, Clō-án-thuss  
Creusa, Cree-ū-sa  
Cumae, Kū-mee  
Cybele, Sí-be-lee  
Cyclopes, Sí-klo-peeze  
Daedalus, Deē-da-lus  
Danaans, Da-nā-ans  
Demeter, De-meē-ter  
Deucalion, Dū-cā-lee-on  
Dido, Dí-dō  
Eclogues, Ek-lōgs  
Elysian, E-lī-see-an  
Entellus, En-tél-lus  
Euboea, Ū-beē-a  
Georgics, Jór-jiks  
Geryon, Gēr-ee-on

Gyas, Gí-ayz  
Hades, Há-deez  
Hamilcar, Ha-míl-car  
Hannibal, Hán-ni-bal  
Hasdrubal, Hás-dru-bal  
Hector, Hé-k-tor  
Helenus, Hé-le-nus  
Helice, Hé-lī-see  
Hippomenes, Hip-pó-me-neeze  
Icarus, Ik-a-rus  
Iarbas, Ee-ár-bas  
Iliad, Il-ē-ad  
Iulus, Eē-ū-lus  
Juno, Jú-nō  
Laocoön, Lā-o-cō-on  
Lenaeus, Len-eē-us  
Megareus, Me-ga-rūs  
Menoetes, Men-eē-teez  
Messina, Mes-seē-na  
Midas, Mí-das  
Minos, Mī-nos  
Mithridates, Mi-thri-dá-teez  
Mnestheus, Mnés-thūs  
Ninus, Nī-nus  
Odysseus, Ō-dis-sūs  
Odyssey, Ó-dis-see  
Orion, Or-í-on  
Parnassus, Par-nás-sus  
Patroclus, Pa-tró-clus  
Penates, Pe-ná-teez  
Pharnaces, Far-nā-seez  
Polyphemus, Pō-li-feē-mus  
Portunus, Por-tū-nus  
Priam, Prī-am  
Pristis, Prís-tis  
Prometheus, Pro-meē-thūs  
Prusias, Prú-see-ass  
Ptolemy, Tó-le-mee

Pyramus, Peér-a-mus  
Pyrrha, Peér-a  
Pyrrhus, Peér-us  
Satyr, Sá-ter  
Schoeneus, Skeé-nūs  
Scylla, Sí-la  
Semiramis, Se-mír-a-mis  
Sibyl, Sí-bil  
Sibyllae, Si-bíl-lee  
Silenus, Si-leé-nus

Sinon, Sí-non  
Spurinna, Spur-ín-na  
Strophades, Stro-fá-deez  
Styx, Stiks  
Tartarus, Tár-tar-us  
Thisbe, Thíz-bee  
Ucalegon, Ū-ká-le-gon  
Ulysses, U-lis-seez  
Venus, Veé-nus

## ABBREVIATIONS USED IN NOTES

abl., ablative	juss., jussive
abs., absolute	l., line
accus., accusative	lit., literally
act., active	loc., locative
adj., adjective	masc., masculine
adv., adverb	meas., measure
biog., biographical	mod., modifying
cf., compare (confer)	neut., neuter
com., command	nom., nominative
comp., complementary	obj., object
comparative	p., page
conc., concessive	part., participle
cond., condition	perf., perfect
condit., conditional	pl., plural
conj., conjunction	plup., pluperfect
co-ord., co-ordinating	poss., possession
dat., dative	possessive
dem., demonstrative	possessor
dep., depending	prep., preposition
desc., description	pres., present
diff., difference	pron., pronoun
dir., direct	purp., purpose
disc., discourse	quest., question
e.g., for example (exempli gratia)	rel., relative
fem., feminine	sc., supply (scilicet)
fut., future	sep., separation
gen., genitive	sing., singular
gov., governed	sub., subordinate
i.e., that is (id est)	subj., subjunctive
imper., imperative	subject, subject
imperf., imperfect	subjective
ind., indirect	temp., temporal
indic., indicative	tr., translate
infin., infinitive	translation
int., interest	trans., transitive
interrog., interrogative	viz., namely (videlicet)
intr., intransitive	voc., vocative
Introd., Introduction	

PA 2095 T23 1960

TAYLOR B C BERNARD CULLON  
1914-

SELECTED LATIN READINGS  
NL 39415654 CURR HIST



\*000007544687\*

EDUCATION  
CURRICULUM

~~7~~  
~~1914~~  
390733

~~EDUCATION~~

PA 2095 T23 1960

Taylor, Bernard Cullon, 1914-  
Selected Latin readings,

0321013B CURR

EDUCATION LIBRARY

~~7~~  
~~1914~~



# EASTERN MEDITERRANEAN





PONTUS EUXINUS

PONTUS

o Zela

BITHYNIA

PHRYGIA

CILICIA

SYRIA

CYPRUS

Sidon  
Tyros

PHOENICIA

alexandria

Pelusium

AEGYPTUS  
Nilius Fl.

Mare

Rubrum

Tigris Fl.

Euphrates Fl.

Babylon

